FUJIFILM

Workflow XMF

Ver. 3.1

— REFERENCE MANUAL —

Revision 3.0

Trademarks

- Acrobat, Distiller, InDesign, Illustrator, Photoshop, PageMaker, the Adobe logo, the Acrobat logo, Adobe PDF Print Engine, and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

- Macintosh, Mac, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

- Windows, Windows Server, Windows 2003, Windows XP, and Windows Vista are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

- PitStop and Pitstop Library are registered trademarks of Artwork Systems.

- CIP4 and the CIP4 logo are trademarks of the CIP4 Organization.

- JDF and the JDF logo are trademarks of the CIP4 Organization.

- "COLOR FINDER®" computer video simulation used in the product may not match the "COLOR FINDER®"-book, and additionally some printer color used in the product may also not match. Please use the "COLOR FINDER®" book to obtain the accurate color.
  TOYO INK MFG. CO., LTD. is the copyright owner of "COLOR FINDER®", which are licensed to FUJIFILM Corporation to distribute for use only in combination with XMF.
  "COLOR FINDER®" shall not be copied onto another diskette nor into memory unless as part of the execution of XMF.

  COLOR FINDER® SYSTEM AND SOFTWARE ©TOYO INK MFG. CO., LTD. 1991-2005.
  "COLOR FINDER®" is a registered trademark of TOYO INK MFG. CO., LTD.

- Ink data, which contain "DIC" in their own name, have been created based on the "DIC Color Guide® Ver.19" and "DIC Color Guide PART2® Ver.4". DIC and DIC Color Guide are trademarks of DIC Corporation.

- PANTONE® Colors displayed in the software application or in the user documentation may not match PANTONE-identified standards. Consult current PANTONE Color Publications for accurate color. PANTONE® and other Pantone, Inc. trademarks are the property of Pantone, Inc. ©Pantone, Inc., 2010.

  Pantone, Inc. is the copyright owner of color data and/or software which are licensed to FUJIFILM Corporation to distribute for use only in combination with XMF. PANTONE Color Data and/or Software shall not be copied onto another disk or into memory unless as part of the execution of XMF.

Table of Contents

Trademarks 2

Description of New Features and Feature Enhancements 6

1 - Main Client Desktop 8

1.1 - Login Window 10

1.2 - Job Queue 11

1.2.1 – Retry 12

1.2.2 – Search 13

1.2.3 – Archiver 13

1.2.4 – Unique ID 14

1.2.5 – Barcode Input 15

1.2.6 – Job Queue Management 16

1.2.6.1 – Request for Viewing Rendered Results from the Job Queue 17

1.3 - Download Manager 19

1.4 - Add Queue Dialog 20

1.4.1 – Custom Filter Dialog 20

1.4.2 – Create Filter Dialog 21

2 - Add Job 22

2.1 - Add Job Dialog 23

2.1.1 – TIFF Separations Dialog 26

3 - Job Edit 27

3.1 - Job Element Manager 28

3.1.1 – Document Options Popup Menu 29

3.1.2 – Page Options Drop-down Menu 30

3.1.2.1 – Split page for brochure 34

3.1.3 – Add Pages Dialog Box 36

3.1.4 – Section Options Menu 37

3.1.5 – Job Structure Page Context Menu 38

3.2 - Page Mapping Manager 39

3.3 - Pagination 41

3.3.1 – Signatures Panel 44

3.3.2 – Add Signatures Dialog Box 45

3.3.3 – Signature Management 46

3.3.4 – Sheets Panel 47

3.3.5 – Add Sheet Menu 48

3.3.6 – Sheet Management 49

3.3.7 – Sheet Groups Panel 51

3.3.8 – Add Sheet Group Menu 52

3.3.9 – Add Sheet Group Dialog 53

3.3.10 – Sheet Group Right-click Menu 54

3.3.11 – Assignation of Sheet Groups to Workflow Items 55

3.4 - Job Workflow Manager 56

3.4.1 – Workflow Items 59

3.4.2 – Presets 59

3.5 - Job Description 61

3.5.1 – Input 62

3.5.2 – Page Prep Preferences 64

3.5.3 – JDF Input Preferences 68

3.5.4 – PostScript Conversion 69

3.5.5 – Finished PDF/X 71

3.5.5.1 – Bypassing of Finished PDF/X Files 73

3.5.6 – Fonts 74

3.5.7 – Preflight and Action List 75

3.5.8 – Colour 76

3.5.9 – Inks 82

3.5.10 – Screening 83

3.5.11 – Trapping 86

3.5.12 – Overprint 88

3.5.13 – Versioning 89

3.5.14 – Job Information 90

3.5.15 – Customer Information 91

3.5.16 – Archiver Automation 92

3.5.17 – 3D Options 93

3.5.18 – File Information 94

3.5.19 – Page Boxes 95

3.5.20 – Job Page Properties 97

3.6 - Press 98

3.6.1 – Device Parameters 99

3.6.2 – Media 100

3.6.3 – Imposition 102

3.6.4 – Export Settings 103

3.6.5 – PDF Format 104

3.6.6 – Digital Print Settings 106

3.6.7 – Status Tracking Method for Digital Press 107

3.7 - Plates 108

3.7.0.1 – Layout JDF Support 108

3.7.1 – Imposition 109

3.7.2 – Device Settings 111

3.7.3 – JDF Target 113

3.7.4 – PDF Format 114

3.7.5 – Media 116

3.7.6 – Screening 118

3.7.7 – Inks 121

3.7.7.1 – Surface Inks 123

3.7.8 – Slugline 125

3.8 - RIP Proof 130

3.8.1 – Imposition 130

3.8.2 – Device Parameters 133

3.8.2.1 – Windows Printer Driver Support 136

3.8.3 – Export Settings 138

3.8.4 – PDF Format 139

3.8.5 – Media 141

3.8.6 – Screening 143
3.8.7 – Separations 145
3.8.8 – Colour Management 146
3.8.9 – Slugline 147
3.8.10 – Blueline Marks 151
3.8.11 – Generic Proofer Setting in Config Tool 153
3.9 - ROOM Proof 155
3.9.1 – Imposition 155
3.9.2 – Device Parameters 156
3.9.3 – Media 159
3.9.4 – Screening 160
3.9.5 – Separations 163
3.9.6 – Colour Management 164
3.9.7 – Blueline Marks 165
3.10 - PDF Export 167
3.10.1 – PDF Export Settings 167
3.10.2 – PDF Format 170
3.10.3 – PDF Layout 172
3.10.4 – Blueline Marks 174
3.11 - JDF Export 176
3.11.1 – File Location 176
3.11.2 – JDF Output Version 178
3.12 - Hold 179
3.12.1 – Hold 179
3.13 - Local Approval 180
3.13.1 – List of Approvers 180
3.13.2 – List of Approvals 181
3.14 - Finishing 183
3.14.1 – JDF Target 184
3.14.2 – Device Options 185
3.15 - Remote RIP Approval 186
3.15.1 – Imposition 187
3.15.2 – Device Settings 187
3.15.3 – Separations 188
3.15.4 – Approval 188
3.15.5 – Remote RIP Approval Job Settings 189
3.15.5.1 – Customer Info 189
3.15.5.2 – Preflight & Action Lists 190
3.15.5.3 – Customers..... 190
3.15.5.4 – JDF Export URLs 191
3.15.5.5 – Job Queue 191
3.15.5.6 – Job Filter 192
3.15.5.7 – Job Status 192
4 - Viewer 193
4.1 - 2D Viewer Mode 194
4.1.1 – Page Boxes 196
4.1.2 – Versioning 197
4.1.3 – Settings 198
4.2 - 3D Proofer (3D Viewer) 200
4.2.1 – 3D Display Range Change 203
4.2.2 – Lighting 204
4.2.3 – Surfaces 205
4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping) ... 206
4.3.0.1 – Guide Line Function 210
4.3.1 – Imposition 211
4.3.2 – Assembly Sections 213
4.3.2.1 – Bindery Signatures Dialog..... 214
4.3.3 – Sheets 216
4.3.4 – Signature 220
4.3.4.1 – N-Up and Come and Go 229
4.3.4.2 – Ribbon Support 232
4.3.4.3 – Multi-web Support 236
4.3.5 – Alignment 240
4.3.6 – Dynamic Marks 241
4.3.7 – Custom Marks 243
4.3.8 – Sheet Marks 251
4.3.9 – Plate Slugline 254
4.3.10 – Management Information 259
4.3.11 – Blueline Marks 264
4.3.12 – Settings 266
4.4 - Imposition Viewer (Layout) 268
4.4.0.1 – Guide Line Function 268
4.4.1 – Imposition 269
4.4.2 – Surfaces 270
4.4.3 – Imposition Content 272
4.4.4 – Alignment 274
4.4.5 – Custom Marks 275
4.4.6 – Plate Slugline 278
4.4.7 – Settings 278
4.5 - Section Proof Viewer 279
4.5.1 – Section Proof 280
5 - Status 281
5.1 - Job Status 282
5.1.0.1 – (+/-) button 283
5.1.1 – All Job 283
5.1.2 – Preflight Reports 284
5.1.3 – Page Preparation 284
5.1.4 – Job Status 285
5.1.5 – Imposition Preview 286
5.1.6 – Job Workflow Manager 288
5.1.7 – Job Log 288
5.2 - System and Device Status 289
5.2.1 – System Status 289
5.2.2 – Device Status 290

6 - Tools 293
6.1 - Preferences Dialog 294
6.2 - Add New Task Dialog 296
6.3 - Modify Existing Task Dialog 297
6.4 - Remove Selected Task Dialog 298
7 - Administration 299
7.1 - User Administration 301
7.1.1 – New User Dialog 302
7.1.2 – Edit User Dialog 303
7.1.3 – Confirm Delete Dialog 303
7.1.4 – Capability Set Administration Dialog 304
7.1.5 – Import/Export 305
7.2 - System Preferences 306
7.3 - Customers 307
7.3.1 – Customer Editor 308
7.3.2 – Confirm Delete Dialog 309
7.4 - Templates 310
7.4.1 – Job Templates 311
7.4.2 – Workflow Item Templates 312
7.4.3 – Workflow Parameter Templates 313
7.4.4 – Imposition Templates 314
7.4.5 – Stripping Sheet Templates 316
7.4.6 – File Name Templates 318
7.4.7 – Barcode Templates 321
7.5 - Ink Management 326
7.5.1 – Add New Ink Group Dialog 327
7.5.2 – Ink Edit Dialog 327
7.5.3 – Colorant Naming Rules Dialog 328
7.6 - Preflight and Action List Management 330
7.7 - Archiver 331
7.7.1 – Archiver Window 332
7.7.2 – Archiver Log Window 334
7.7.3 – Archiver Settings Dialog 335
7.8 - Press Device Profiles 338
7.8.1 – Press Device Profile Dialog 339
7.8.2 – Press Media Profile Dialog 343
7.8.2.1 – Characterisation for 'Back' Surface .. 345
7.8.3 – Media Type Editor 346
7.9 - JDF Export URLs 347
7.10 - ICC Profile Management 349
7.11 - Acrobat Submission Templates 350
7.12 - Custom Mark Management 351
7.12.1 – New Custom Mark Dialog 351
7.12.2 – Custom Mark Edit Dialog 352
7.13 - Imposition Patterns 353
7.13.1 – Edit Imposition Pattern 354
7.14 - Compound Screens 356
7.14.1 – Compound Screen Editor 357
7.15 - System Fonts 358
8 - Utilities 359
8.1 - Calibration Manager 360
8.1.1 – Media 360
8.1.2 – Cassettes 363
8.1.3 – Screen Sets 364
8.1.4 – Angle Families 366
8.1.5 – Recorders & Proofers 367
8.1.6 – Calibration 370
8.1.7 – Linearisation 370
8.1.8 – Characterisation 373
8.2 - Font Installer 378
INDEX 379

Description of New Features and Feature Enhancements

The following new functions and function enhancements have been implemented for Workflow XMF Version 3.1.
In this manual, information related to new functions and function enhancements are indicated with the following symbol: New.

Expanded JDF

- JDF output version
  ⟶ 3.11.2 - JDF Output Version, 7.8.1 - Press Device Profile Dialog
- Exporting finishing data
  ⟶ 3.14 - Finishing
- Improved digital press status
  ⟶ 3.6.7 - Status Tracking Method for Digital Press
- JDF V1.3 and V1.4 layout support
  ⟶ 3.7.0.1 - Layout JDF Support
- JDF colour information support
  ⟶ 3.5.3 - JDF Input Preferences
- Enhanced job identification function using JDF job IDs
  ⟶ 2.1 - Add Job Dialog, 3.5.14 - Job Information, 3.7.8 - Slugline, 3.8.9 - Slugline, 4.3.9 - Plate Slugline, 4.3.10 - Management Information
- JDF global stripping/layout resource
  ⟶ 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping)

Expanded the Imposition Function

- Support for N-Up different signatures
  ⟶ 4.3.4.1 - N-Up and Come and Go
- Assembly section settings by signature unit
  ⟶ 4.3.2 - Assembly Sections
- Importing and exporting imposition templates
  ⟶ 7.4.4 - Imposition Templates, 7.4.5 - Stripping Sheet Templates
- Added a function for changing batch settings for multiple sheets
  ⟶ 4.3.3 - Sheets, 4.3.4 - Signature, 4.3.7 - Custom Marks
- Default settings for the maximum sheet size and offset
  ⟶ 3.6.1 - Device Parameters, 4.3.12 - Settings, 7.8.1 - Press Device Profile Dialog
- Automatic margin control
  ⟶ 4.3.4 - Signature
- ASIR barcodes
  ⟶ 4.3.10 - Management Information, 7.4.7 - Barcode Templates

Improved the Pagenation Function

- Improved operability for signature panel
  ⟶ 3.3.3 - Signature Management
- Added a sheet moving function
  ⟶ 3.3.3 - Signature Management
- Added a function for deleting signatures linked to sheets
  ⟶ 3.3.6 - Sheet Management
- Added a function for the batch replacement of multiple sheets
  ⟶ 3.3.6 - Sheet Management

Improved the Section Proof Function

- Added a function for specifying "Work Style" during section proof splitting
  → 3.8.1 - Imposition, 3.10.3 - PDF Layout

Enhanced the Output Functions

- Windows printer driver supported
  → 3.8.2 - Device Parameters, 3.8.2.1 - Windows Printer Driver Support
- Clip to proof media
  → 3.8.2 - Device Parameters, 3.9.2 - Device Parameters, 4.3.12 - Settings
- Exporting PDFs by sheet
  → 3.10.1 - PDF Export Settings
- Changed the PPF
  → 7.8.1 - Press Device Profile Dialog
- Added paper thickness settings
  → 7.8.3 - Media Type Editor

Various Function Enhancements

- Enhanced the TIFF separations function for TIFF BYPASS
  → 2.1.1 - TIFF Separations Dialog
- New options for Client restarting and login
  → 1 - Main Client Desktop
- Added a function for the process colour conversion of Finished PDFs
  → 3.5.5 - Finished PDF/X

XMF Remote Connection Summary

- Remote RIP Approval workflow item
  → 3.15 - Remote RIP Approval
- Remote RIP Approval job settings
  → 3.15.5.1 - Customer Info, 3.15.5.2 - Preflight & Action Lists
- Changed the Administration window
  → 3.15.5.3 - Customers, 3.15.5.4 - JDF Export URLs
- Changed the Job Queue window
  → 3.15.5.5 - Job Queue, 3.15.5.6 - Job Filter
- Changed the Status window
  → 3.15.5.7 - Job Status

1 – Main Client Desktop

This is the main window displayed when the XMF Client is started. Various setup windows can be accessed from respective buttons.

Diagram: Main Client Desktop

About Main Client Desktop

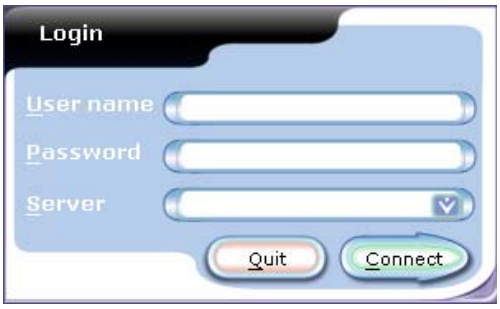
Name	Description
Minimise Toolbar	This stores all minimised client windows. Each minimised window is displayed in a colour that indicates the type of window. • Blue - Job Edit window • Purple - Admin, Tools and Download Manager windows • Red - Status window • Green - Queue window • Pink - Help window To minimise any window, click on the minimise icon. Once minimised, the window shrinks into the Toolbar and it's icon will be highlighted in light green, regardless of its type. To maximise the window again, just click on the minimised button in the Minimise Toolbar.
Restart New	**Function Summary** This function closes the session immediately when clicked and automatically restarts the Client. It is useful for operations such as repeatedly logging in to multiple servers. **Background** Because the same Client cannot be copied to the same PC, in previous versions, logging off and logging in had to be performed manually. The Restart button enables this operation to be performed with one click. **Screen Explanation** [1] Restart - Close the session and restart the Client.
Download Manager	Click the Download Manager icon to display progress information about any data being transferred to or from the server.
Add Queue	See 1.4 - Add Queue Dialog.
Help	This menu has three options. • Help contents - Takes you to the main help homepage for the whole product. • Help - Takes you to the Main Client Desktop Help window. • About - Opens a window with information about XMF software version and licensing agreement.

Name	Description
New	See 2 - Add Job.
Edit	See 3 - Job Edit.
Viewer	See 4 - Viewer.
Status	See 5 - Status.
Tools	See 6 - Tools.
Administration	See 7 - Administration.

1.1 – Login Window

The Login window controls access to the client software.

Diagram: Login window



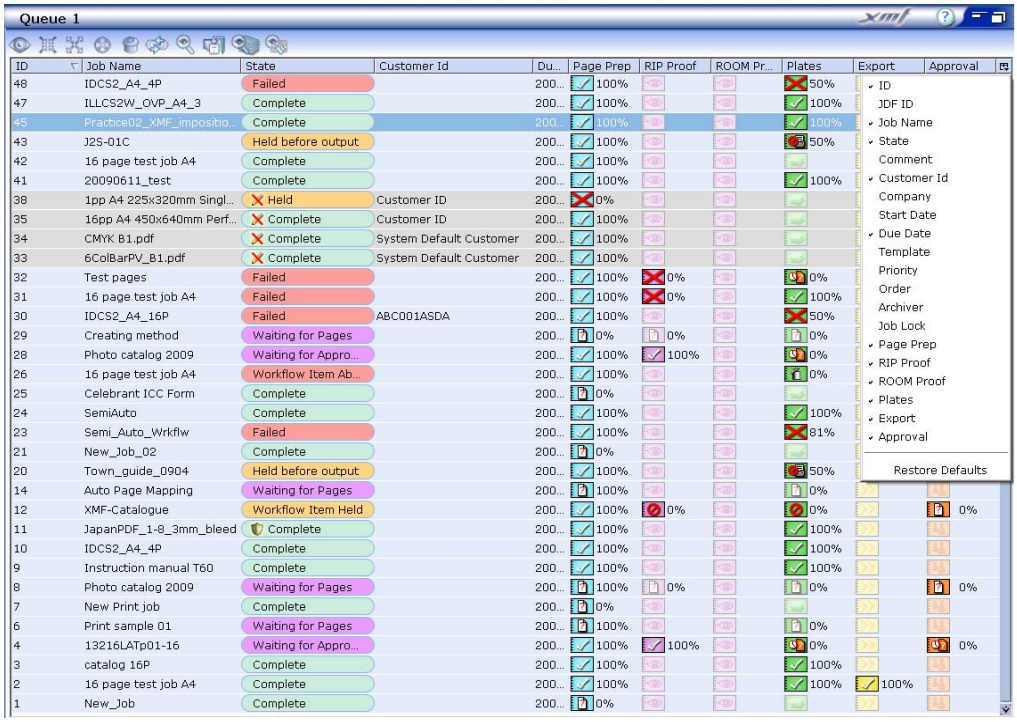
About Login window

Name	Description
User name	Each user is allocated a personal User Name. This gives access to the system and determines what functions of the software can be used by that person. User names are maintained through the User Administration window.
Password	Enter the password corresponding to the User Name.
Server	Enter the Windows networking name of the machine on which the XMF Server software is running. The client software can be run on the same machine as the server software.

1.2 – Job Queue

The Job Queue Window is used to display summary information about jobs in the XMF system.

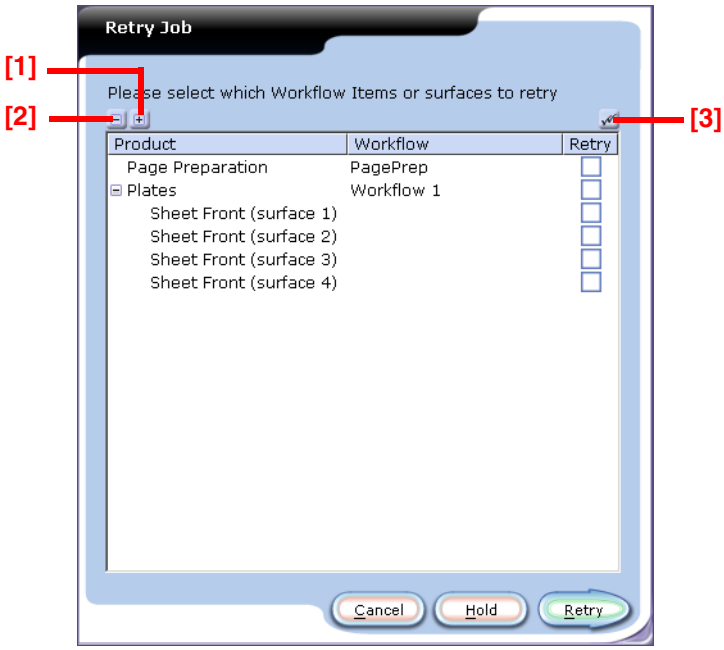
Diagram: Job Queue window



1.2.1 – Retry

To retry jobs, click the Retry Selected Jobs icon for the selected job(s). When the Retry Job dialog appears as shown below, click Retry.

Diagram: Retry Job dialog



Function Summary

When retrying a job, the target workflow or surface can be specified one by one.

Screen Explanation

The following areas of the **Retry Job** dialog can be operated.

[1]	Expand All	Displays all the product surfaces.
[2]	Collapse All	Hides all the product surfaces.
[3]	Select All	Enables all the surfaces in a job.

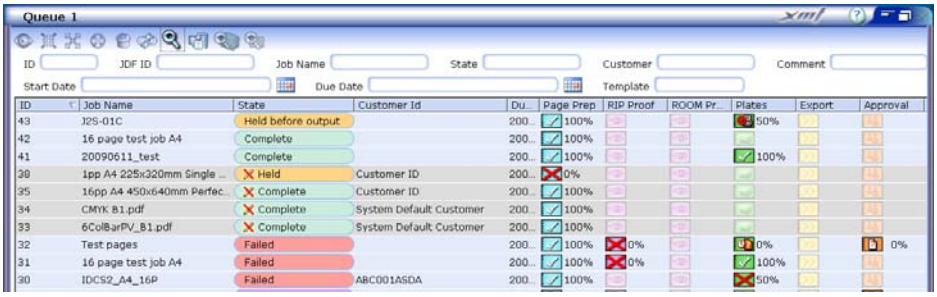
Restrictions

- The **Select All** button only ticks the **Retry** check boxes.
- To clear the ticks, each check box must be clicked individually.

1.2.2 – Search

To search for a job in a job queue, click on the Search for a Job button as shown in the image below.

Diagram: Queue window with search fields revealed



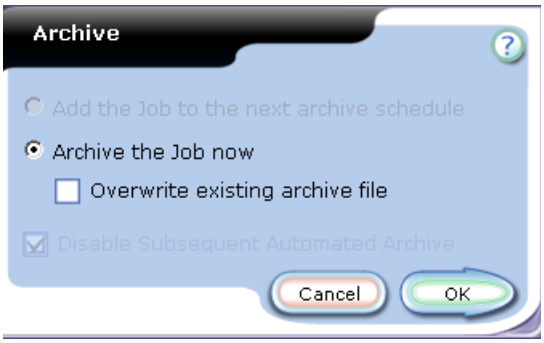
About Search Fields

Name	Description
ID	Search by the ID entered.
JDF ID	Search by the JDF ID entered.
Job Name	Search by the job name entered.
Status	Search by the state entered.
Customers	Search by the customer entered.
Comment	Search by the comment entered.
Start Date	Search by the start date entered.
Due Date	Search by the due date entered.
Templates	Search by the template entered.

1.2.3 – Archiver

To manually archive job(s), select the job(s) then click the Archive Selected Jobs button.

Diagram: Archive dialog



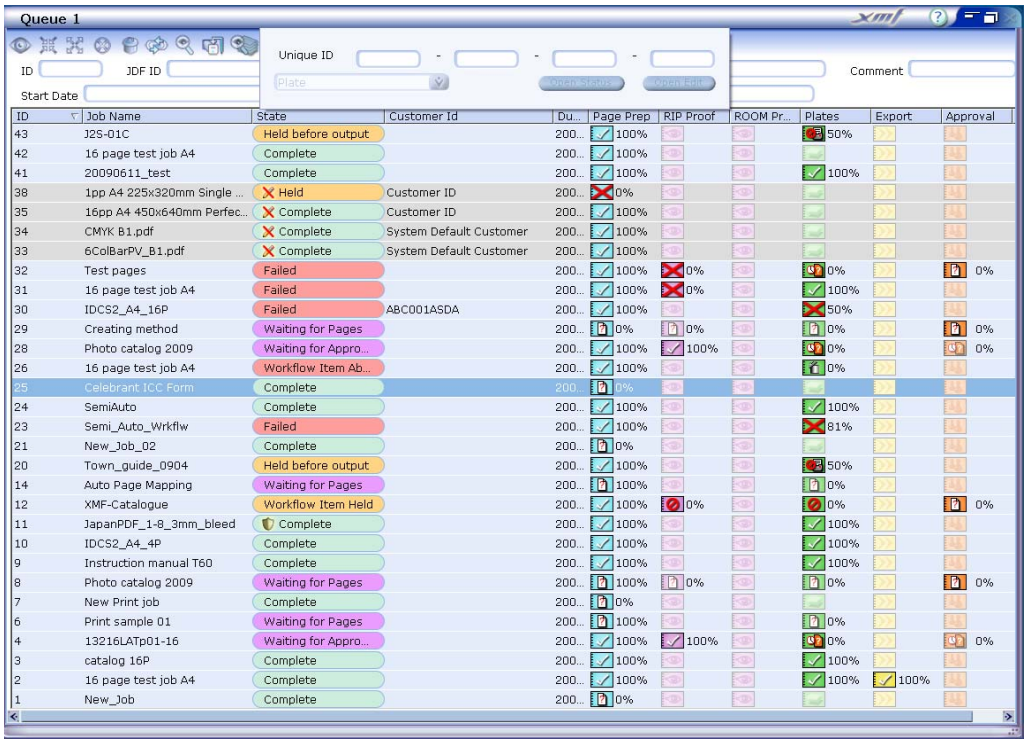
About Archive dialog

Name	Description
Add the Job to the next archive schedule	Enable to add the currently selected job to the next archive schedule so that it will be automatically archived.
Archive the Job now	Enable to archive the currently selected job immediately once OK is clicked.
Overwrite existing archive file	Enable to overwrite the existing archived file (if any) with the currently selected job.
Disable Subsequent Automated Archive	Enable to prevent the currently selected job from being subsequently archived.

1.2.4 – Unique ID

To search for a unique ID, click on the Search by Unique ID button.

Diagram: Unique ID



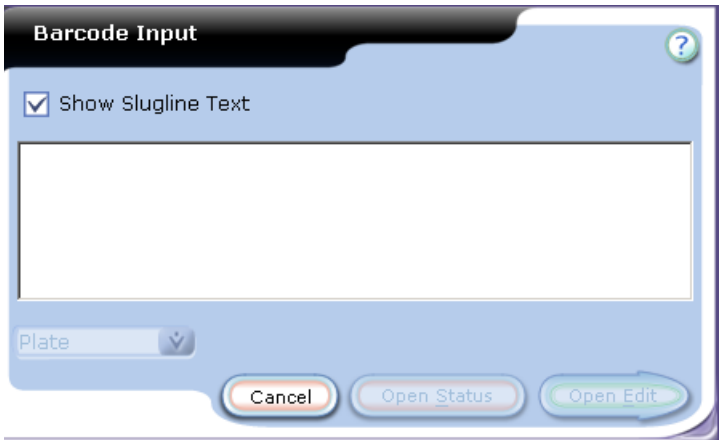
About Unique ID

Name	Description
Unique ID	Type in the unique ID of the plate or proof that is required.
Drop-down box	Since plates and ROOM proofs will share unique IDs the drop-down box allows the user to select either as required.
Open Status	Click to open the appropriate Job status window with either the separation or the proof selected.
Open Edit	Click to edit either the separation or proof.

1.2.5 – Barcode Input

Click on the Barcode Input button to open the Barcode Input dialog box.

Diagram: Barcode Input dialog



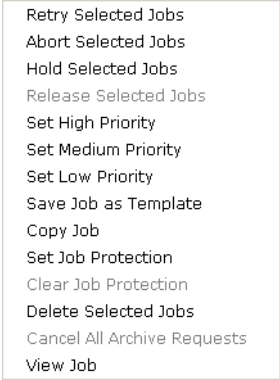
About Barcode Input dialog

Name	Description
Show Slugline Text	Tick to display the text box that is used to store the text taken from the barcode reader.
Text Box	The text box will display the information that has been scanned in by the barcode reader. Use the delete key to delete any unnecessary text.
Drop-down box	Since plates and ROOM proofs will share unique IDs, the drop-down box allows the user to select either as required.
Cancel	Click to close the dialog box without opening either the Status or Job Edit windows.
Open Status	Click to open the appropriate Job status window with either the separation or the proof selected.
Open Edit	Click to open the Job Edit window to edit either the separation or proof.

1.2.6 – Job Queue Management

Right-click on one or more jobs in the queue and run one of the management tasks in the table below.

Diagram: Context menu when a job is right-clicked



About the context menu

Name	Description
Retry Selected Jobs	Retries the selected jobs.
Abort Selected Jobs	Stops the processing for the selected jobs. The stopped jobs can be run again later.
Hold Selected Jobs	Pauses the selected jobs. Processing for the paused jobs is stopped until the pausing is cancelled.
Abort Selected Jobs	Restarts the paused jobs.
Set High Priority	Sets a high priority for the selected jobs.
Set Medium Priority	Sets a medium priority for the selected jobs.
Set Low Priority	Sets a low priority for the selected jobs.
Save Job as Template	Saves the selected job as a template. The saved template can be used for other jobs.
Copy Job	Copies the selected job (the source documents are not copied). A dialog is displayed. Enter the name of the job to copy and the job details.
Set Job Protection	Protects the selected jobs. Protected jobs cannot be edited or deleted. Retry, Abort, Pause and Release can be performed.
Clear Job Protection	Clears the protection for the selected jobs.
Delete Selected Jobs	Deletes the selected jobs.
Cancel All Archive Requests	Cancels all the archive requests.
Cancel XMF Remote Flags	Cancels the display of alerts for document updates on XMF Remote.
View Job	Outputs a request for viewing rendered results from the job queue. For details, see 1.2.6.1 - Request for Viewing Rendered Results from the Job Queue.

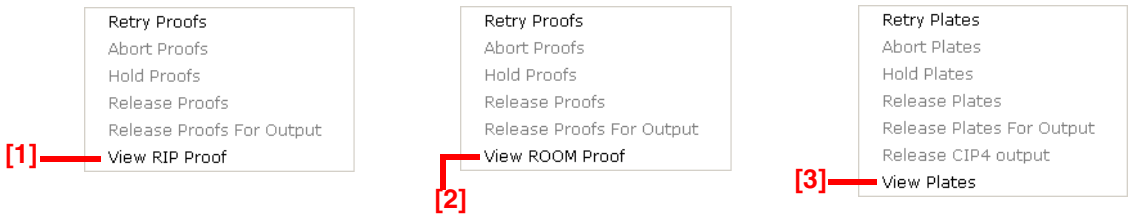
1.2.6.1-Request for Viewing Rendered Results from the Job Queue

Function Summary

Outputs a request for viewing rendered results from the job queue.
The request can also be performed individually for **Plates**, **RIP Proof** and **ROOM Proof**.

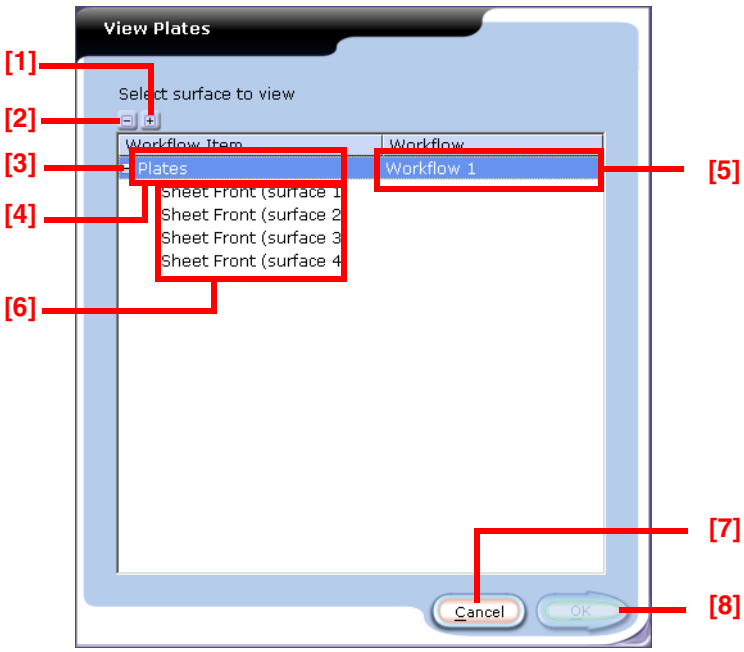
Screen Explanation

Job queue context menu



[1]	View RIP Proof	Click this option to open the **View RIP Proof** dialog.
[2]	View ROOM Proof	Click this option to open the **View ROOM Proof** dialog.
[3]	View Plates	Click this option to open the **View Plates** dialog.

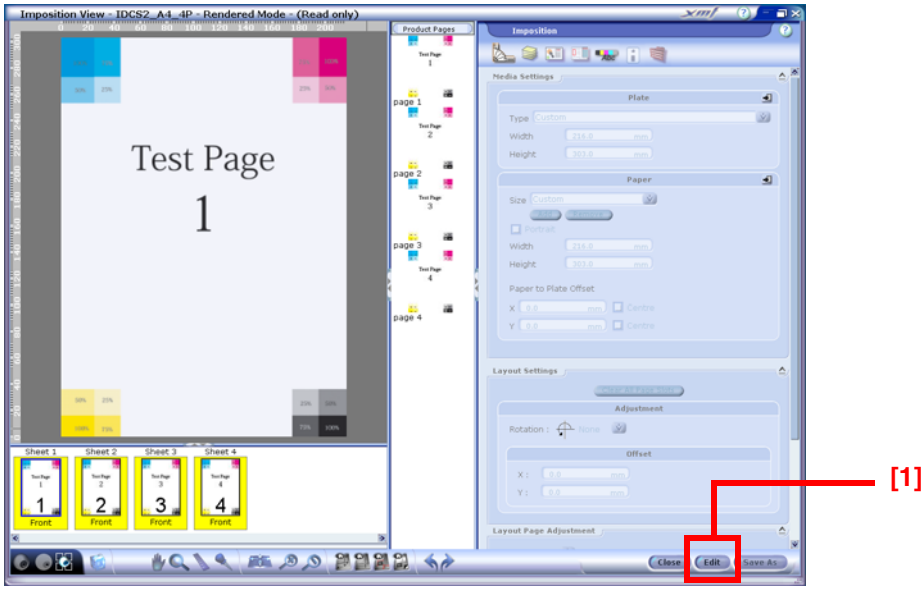
View Job dialog



[1]	Expand All (+)	Click this button to display all the surfaces.
[2]	Collapse All (-)	Click this button to hide all the surfaces.
[3]	Expand/Collapse Workflow Items	Click this icon to toggle between display and hide.
[4]	Workflow Item	• Displays the Workflow Item name. • Single-click to select the item. • Double-click to toggle between display and hide.
[5]	Workflow	Displays the name of the workflow containing the Workflow Item.
[6]	Surfaces	Single-click to select the surface. Double-click to open the surface in the **Read only** Imposition View.
[7]	Cancel	Closes the dialog.

[8]	OK	A surface is selected	Opens the target surface in the **Read only** Imposition View.
		A surface is not selected	Invalid
		A Workflow Item is selected	Invalid

Imposition View for the rendered results



[1]	Edit button	Click the **Edit** button to close this window and open the Job Edit window and the Imposition View for the target Workflow Item.

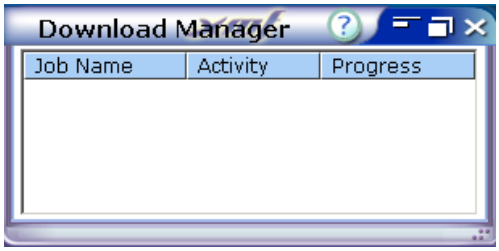
Restrictions

- When the Imposition View for viewing the rendered results is opened and the corresponding imposition is changed with the **Edit** button, and then the job is closed without saving it, the thumbnail of the Imposition View for viewing the rendered results and the Document Mode do not return to their previous states.
  The displayed results in Document Mode and the thumbnail panel are updated with the latest information when the rendered results are opened again.
- When the number of pages in a job increases and the job is not saved, the added sheet stays open and is not removed from the rendered results.
  If you try to edit this non-existing sheet, an error may result.
- A license for the Imposition Viewer is required to view the rendered results.

1.3 – Download Manager

The Download Manager is used to display information about data that is being transferred to and from the server.

Diagram: Download Manager



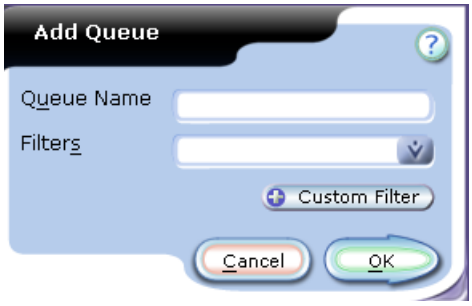
About Download Manager

Name	Description
Job Name	The name of the job being used for the upload or download.
Activity	This heading displays one of the following values: • Uploading - Status of data being transferred from the client machine, or from some other source, to the server. • Downloading - Status of data being transferred from the server to the client machine, or some other location.
Progress	This indicates the progress of the upload or download.

1.4 – Add Queue Dialog

This window is used to add a new job queue to the XMF desktop.

Diagram: Add Queue dialog



About Add Queue dialog

Name	Description
Queue Name	Enter a text. The name applied will be displayed in the title bar of each job queue window.
Filters	When a filter is selected, only the jobs that meet certain criteria will be displayed in a queue. If no filter is selected, all jobs will be shown.
Custom Filter	This button opens the Create Filter window to enable users to create, amend and delete filters.

1.4.1 – Custom Filter Dialog

Use this window to create, edit and delete filters. A filter is used to display only the jobs that meet certain criteria in a queue.

Diagram: Custom Filter dialog

About Custom Filter dialog

Name	Description
Help	Clicking this button opens the Help facility at the Custom Filters page.
Filters	All existing filters are listed in this window.
New Filter	To add a new filter, click this button. This opens the Create Filter dialog.
Edit Filter	To amend a filter, highlight it and click this button. This opens the Create Filter dialog.

Name	Description
Delete Filter	To delete a filter, highlight it and click this button. This removes the filter immediately and finally from the system.

1.4.2 – Create Filter Dialog

Use this window to create, edit and delete filters. A filter is used to display only the jobs that meet certain criteria in a queue.

Diagram: Create Filter dialog

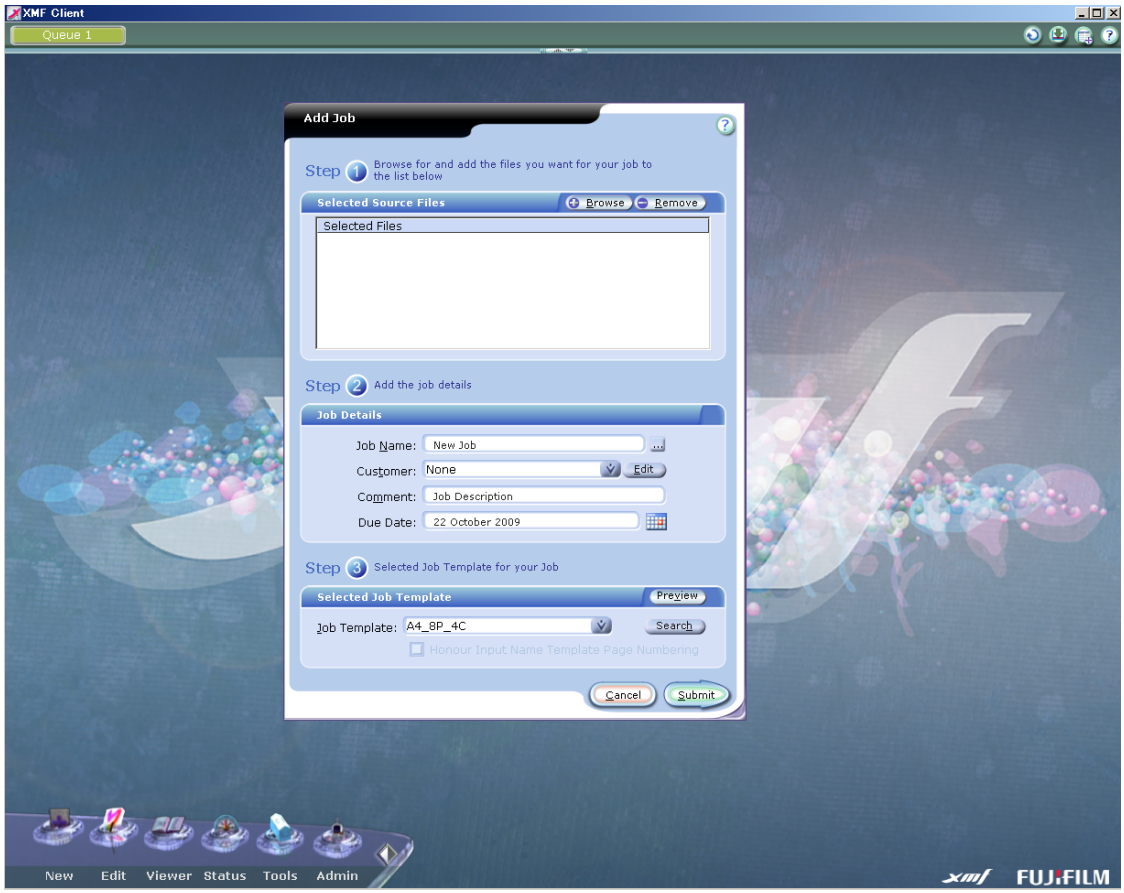
About Create Filter dialog

Name	Description
Rule Definition	• Filter Name - Enter the name of the filter. This is necessary to identify the filter in the Add Queue dialog. The filter name is also required for editing or deleting the filter.
Rule Definition	A filter uses one or more rules to decide whether or not to display a job in a job queue window. Each rule consists of three elements: • A field (e.g. Status, Customer) • A comparison condition that determines how the field and value are to be compared (e.g. 'is' for an exact match). • A value (e.g. Waiting)
Interaction Between Rules	This determines how the rules are used together in the filter. • ANY - If any of the conditions are met. • ALL - If all of the conditions are met. • Delete selected rule - This deletes the rule selected on the list.
Save	This saves the filter created.
Cancel	This cancels the filter creation.

2 – Add Job

Click the New button on the Main Function Tray on the XMF Main Client Desktop to display the Add Job dialog.

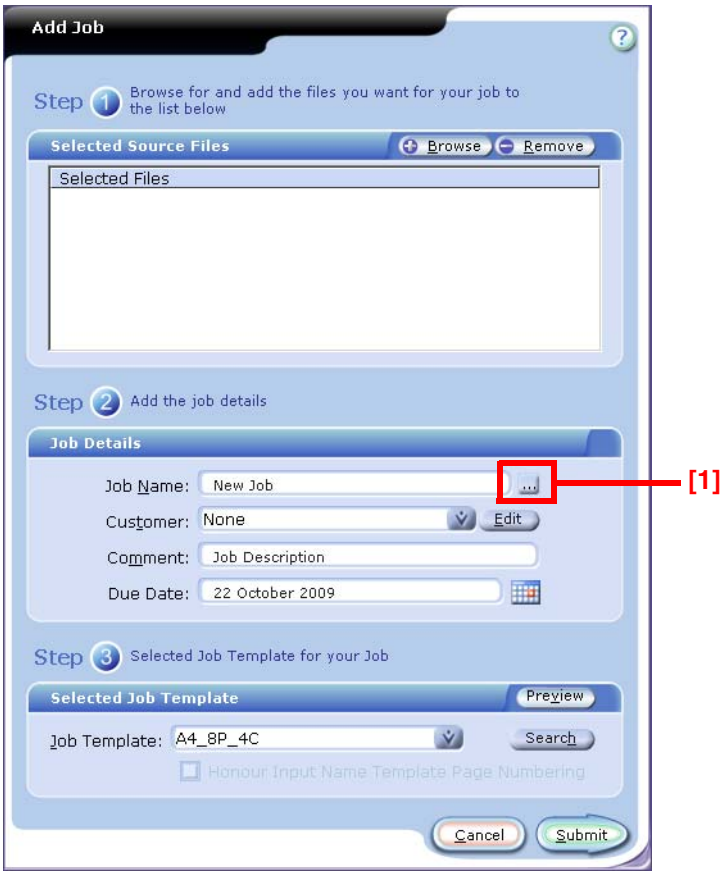
Diagram: Add Job



2.1 – Add Job Dialog

Use the Add Job dialog to enter information about a new Job.

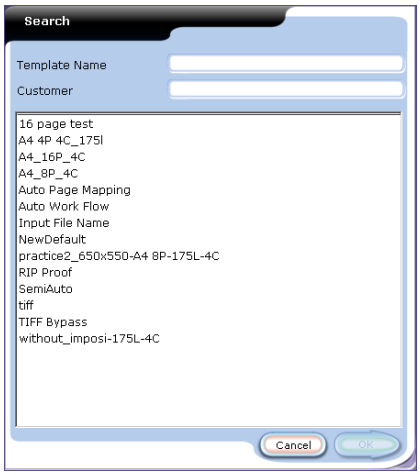
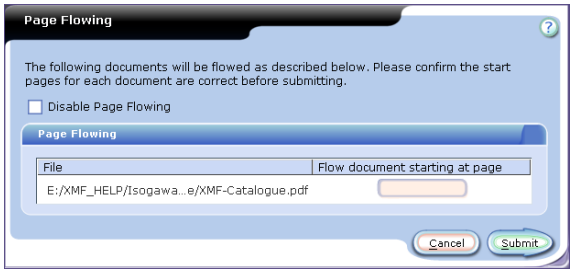
Diagram: Add Job dialog



About Add Job dialog

Name	Description
Selected Source Files	Select source files and add to the list, or remove source files from the list. • Browse - Add source files to the Selected Files list. • Remove - Remove source files from the Selected Files list. • Selected Files - A list of source files added.

Name	Description
Job Details	Enter Job information. • Job Name - A name to identify the job. • JDF Job ID button New **Function Summary** You can set a JDF Job ID for the job. **Background** Some users who use MIS manage their work with JDF Job IDs. In V3.1, a function for setting a JDF Job ID has been added to enable efficient job management. **Screen Explanation** [1]: [...] button - Click to display the box for entering the JDF Job ID. **Restrictions** • If a job is created without specifying the ID or leaving the field blank, the ID is assigned automatically based on the past ID. • The JDF Job ID of a job created from the JDF file cannot be edited. • Customer - The name of the customer for whom the job is being run. • Edit - See 7.3 - Customers. • Comment - An additional description which can be displayed in the job queue. • Due Date - The date on which the job is due to be output. • Calendar - An electronic calendar used to select the Due Date. Select Due Date here.

Name	Description
Selected Job Template	Select the Job Template. • Preview - Display the job template using the Job Edit window. • Job Template - A template with default settings for the new job. • Search - This starts the Job Template Search dialog to allow the user to search for a Job Template. - Template Name - Search by the Template Name. - Customer - Search by the Customer name.  • Honour Input Name Template Page Numbering - If the checkbox is enabled the Page Flowing dialog box will be displayed when the job is submitted. - Disable Page Flowing - Enable to disable the page flowing. - Flow document starting at page - The page numbers will default to the values specified by the input name template. To change the page numbers, enter page numbers in the text boxes, between 1 and 5000 for each document. - Submit - Click to add the files. - Cancel - Click to not add the files. 
Submit	Click to add the job into the XMF system.
Cancel	Click to cancel the job before it has been entered.

2.1.1 – TIFF Separations Dialog New

Enter 1 bit TIFF in the Add Job dialog to display the TIFF Separations dialog.

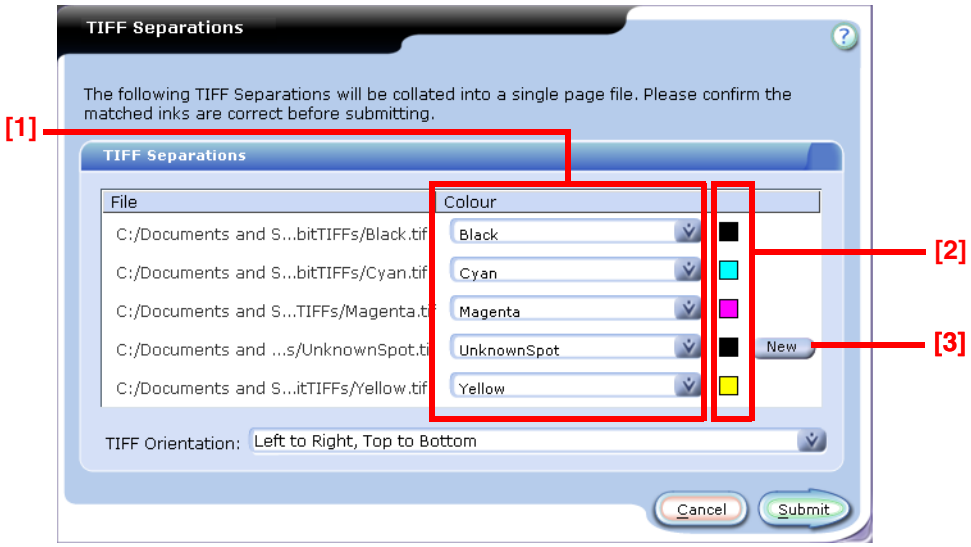
Function Summary

When 1 bit TIFF is entered, colour names are entered automatically based on the ink information contained in the 1 bit TIFF file, and the colour patches are displayed.
If an unknown colour is included, the file name is displayed in the Colour field. For this kind of colour, you can add ink information to the ink database by moving from this dialog to the **Ink Edit** window.

Background

The issue where the colour could not be replaced correctly when entering 1 bit TIFF was corrected.
Also, when an unknown colour is included, in previous versions the job adding had to be cancelled and the colour added to the database. But this procedure has now been eliminated to make TIFF separation simpler and more accurate.

Screen Explanation



[1]	Colour	Select and display an alternative colour from the inks registered in the ink database. Click a Colour item to change the colour.
[2]	Colour Patch	The colour patch for the colour assigned to Colour is displayed based on the colour information in the ink database.
[3]	New	Displayed automatically for colours that cannot be identified. Click to display the **Ink Edit** dialog and add the new ink information. For details about the **Ink Edit** dialog, see 7.5.2 - Ink Edit Dialog.

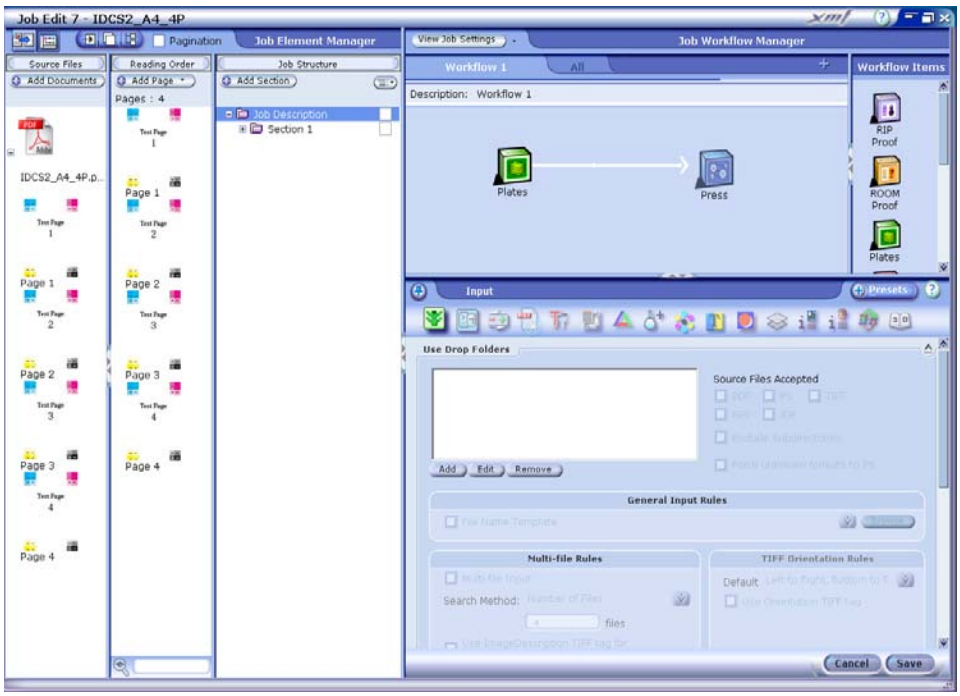
Restrictions

- When performing a TIFF Bypass process, if you enter a colour in the **Colour** field that duplicates another colour and send the job, it may cause problems in the display or output.

3 – Job Edit

Job Edit window can be broken down into three areas.

Diagram: Job Edit window



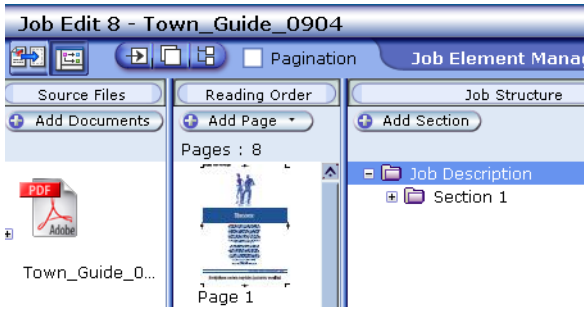
About Job Edit window

Name	Description
Job Element Manager	Controls the input and flow of pages from incoming files.
Workflow Construction Area	Creates/edits workflow.
Configures Workflow Item Parameters	Edits various setting parameters.

3.1 – Job Element Manager

Controls the input and flow of pages from incoming files.

Diagram: Job Element Manager



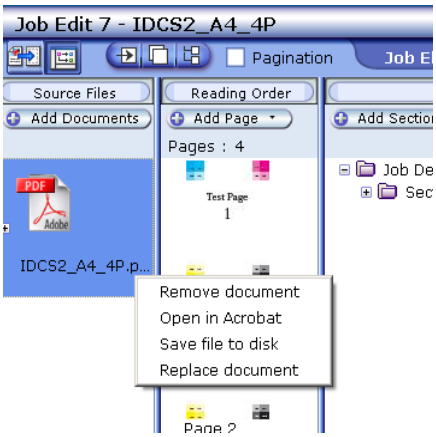
About Job Element Manager

Name	Description
Job Edit/Page Mapping Manager switching button	Switches between the Job Edit window and Page Mapping Manager. • Page Mapping Manager (left button) - Allows the advanced page mapping. • Job Edit (right button) - Sets the entire Job, constructing workflow.
Show/Hide columns	Enables the hiding or displaying of all the columns in the Job Element Manager. However, it is not possible to hide all three columns. At least one column must be displayed. • Left button - Hides/displays the Source Files column. • Middle button - Hides/displays the Reading Order column. • Right button - Hides/displays the Job Structure column.
Pagination check box	When checked, the Job Edit window turns into the Pagination Settings window. See 3.3 - Pagination for more details about pagination settings.
Source Files	All PDF, PS, EPS and 1-bit TIFF files that are added to a job appear here. Files can be dragged into this panel from the Explorer or Finder.
Reading Order	You can drag any pages from Source Files into this panel to construct the Reading Order sequence. The Reading Order represents the sequence in which pages flow into the final product.
Job Structure	A job structure consists of pages flowed from the Reading Order and collected together into Sections. A Section usually contains pages to which you want to apply a common set of processes, or pages which share a common output path.
Job Description	Click Job Description to control the file input setting of the entire job. • Input - This defines the drop folders, multi-file rules and input method, etc. • Page Prep Preferences - This panel allows for default ink mapping and Autoflow to be set up. • PostScript Conversion - This panel defines PostScript conversion. • Fonts - This panel controls font embedding, etc. • Preflight and Action List - This panel defines Preflight and Action List settings. • Colour - This panel defines colour conversion settings. • Inks - This manages inks used in a job. • Screening - This panel defines the screening to be used in a job. • Trapping - This panel defines the trapping settings. • Overprint - This panel defines the overprint settings. • Versioning - This panel manages the PDF layers. • Job Info - This panel defines the Job Name, Comment, Priority and Due Date, etc. • Customer Info - This panel defines information about the customer for whom this job was created.

3.1.1 – Document Options Popup Menu

Right-click on any document in the Source Files panel to display the Document Options popup menu.

Diagram: Document Options popup menu



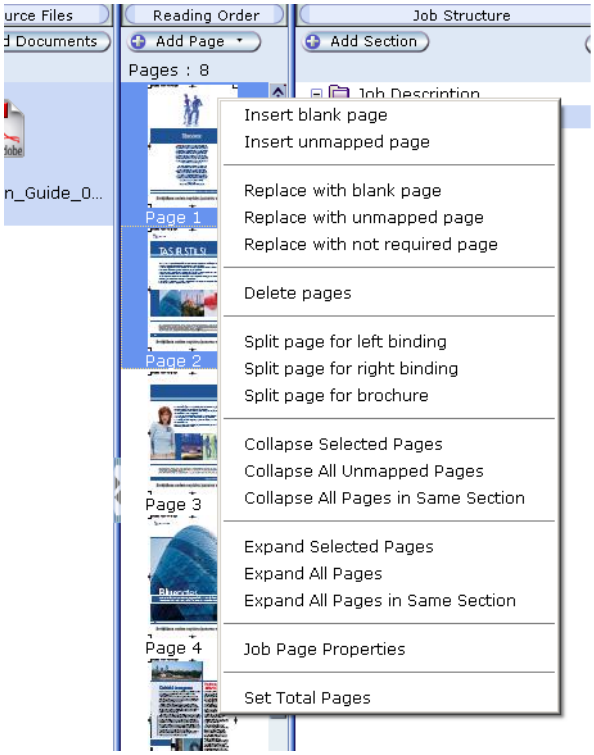
About Document Options popup menu

Name	Description
Remove document	Deletes a document from the Source Files panel. The file cannot be deleted if its pages are assigned to the Reading Order. All its pages need to be removed from the Reading Order. This function removes the file from the XMF system only and the file itself will not be deleted.
Open in Acrobat	Opens the selected file in Acrobat (non-PDF files would have been converted to PDF by Page Prep).
Import Acrobat Edit	This option only appears if you have opened a file using Open in Acrobat. It replaces the file with the edited Acrobat file. Before performing this option, the edited file must be saved and Acrobat must be closed. Selecting this option without closing Acrobat will not re-import the edited Acrobat file.
Save file to disk	This saves the selected file to the disk.
Replace document	This replaces the selected file by another file.
Flow document	Selecting this option while the selected file has not been flowed to the Reading Order will flow the pages to the Reading Order. It also flows the pages to the Job Structure.

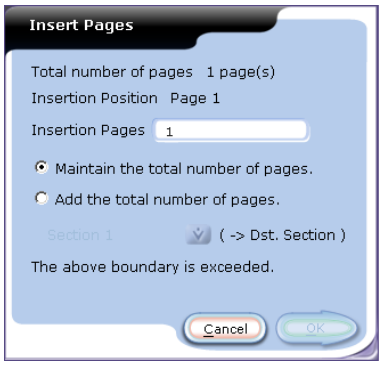
3.1.2 – Page Options Drop-down Menu

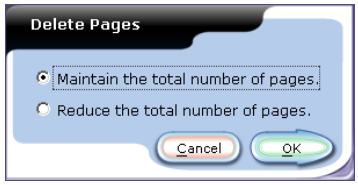
Right-click on any page in the Reading Order for the Page Options drop-down menu.

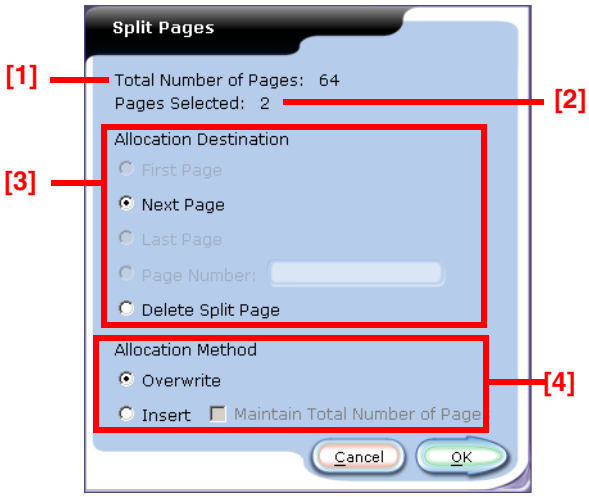
Diagram: Page context menu

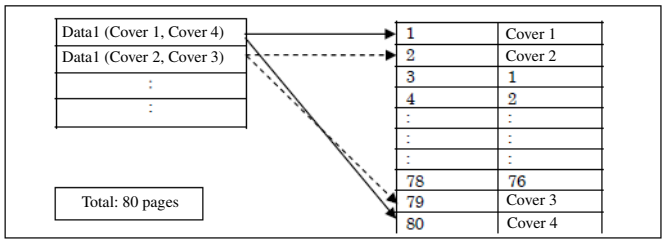
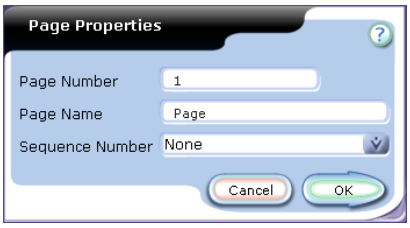


About Page context menu

Name	Description
Insert blank page	This option inserts blank pages after the selected page. The dialog box is displayed, and you can set the position or the number of pages to be inserted.  • Total number of pages - The total number of pages in the Reading Order is displayed. • Insertion Position - The page selected in the Reading Order is displayed. Pages are inserted after the displayed page. • Insertion Pages - Enter the number of pages to be inserted. You can specify a maximum of 999. • Maintain the total number of pages - The total number of pages in the Reading Order is maintained after the insertion. • Increase the total number of pages - The number of inserted pages is added to the total number of pages in the Reading Order. • (-> Dst. Section) - Select a section of the Job Structure to which you add pages.

Name	Description
Insert unmapped page	This inserts unmapped pages after the selected page. The same dialog box as Insert blank page is displayed.
Replace with blank page	Replace current page with a blank page.
Replace with unmapped page	Replace current page with a unmapped page.
Replace with not required page	Replace current page with a ‘not required’ page.
Delete pages	This permanently removes the selected pages from the Reading Order. The dialog is displayed, and you can set the total number of pages after deleting pages.  • Maintain the total number of pages - Total number of pages before deleting is kept. Pages after the selected pages are moved up and unmapped pages to the number of deleted pages are put in order from the last page. • Reduce the total number of pages - Selected pages are deleted, and as a result, the total number of pages is reduced.

Name	Description
Split page for left binding	**Function Summary** This enables the page to be split into two, with the left half having the lower page number. The **Split Pages** dialog box is displayed, and you can set a treatment of second page created by split. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Total Pages - Displays the number of page slots excluding the 'not required' page. [2]: Pages Selected - Displays the number of page slots selected during the page split. [3]: Allocation Destination - Assigns one of the following pages as the second page created by the split. - First Page - Assigns the first page as the second page created by the split. - Next Page - Assigns the next page as the second page created by the split. - Last Page - Assigns the final page as the second page created by the split. - Page - Assigns the page specified by the page number entered in the text box as the second page created by the split. Specify a number between 1 and the total number of pages. - Delete Split Page - The page is split, but the second page is deleted from the Reading Order pane. [4]: Allocation Method - Specifies one of the following methods for assigning the second page created by the split. - Overwrite - Overwrite the current page with the second page created by the split. - Insert - The second page created by the split is inserted into the specified page. a If the **Maintain Total Number of Pages** check box is selected, the number of pages does not change. b If the **Maintain Total Number of Pages** check box is cleared, the number fo pages increases.

Name	Description
Split page for left binding	**Operating Procedure** This section describes the procedures for splitting and assigning two pieces of double-page spread data entered for a left-binding job (Data1 (Cover 1, Cover 4), Data2 (Cover 2, Cover 3)).  ① Open the Job Edit window and add Page 80 to the **Reading Order** panel. ② Enter Data1 and Data2 in the job and assign page 1 and page 2 for each of them. ③ In the **Reading Order** panel, right-click on Data1 and select **Split page for right binding**. To assign Cover 4 as page 80, set **Last Page** as the **Allocation Destination** and **Overwrite** as the **Allocation Method** in the **Split Pages** dialog box. ④ For Data2, use the same procedures as ③ to run **Split page for left binding** and set "80" in the **Page** field in the **Split Pages** dialog box. This assigns Cover 3 to page 79. **Restrictions** • "Cover 1 - Cover 4" data for left binding puts page 4 on the left and page 1 on the right. If this is split using XMF's **Split page for left binding**, page 4 will come before page 1. You should therefore use XMF's **Split page for right binding** for splitting "Cover 1 - Cover 4" data, even for left binding. Likewise, you should also use **Split page for left binding** when splitting cover data for right binding.
Split page for right binding	This enables the page to be split into two, with the right half having the lower page number. The same dialog box as Split page for left binding is displayed.
Split page for brochure	You can select any 2 pages and split them using a brochure format fold pattern. For details, see 3.1.2.1 - Split page for brochure.
Collapse Selected Pages	The allows the selected pages to be collapsed.
Collapse All Unmapped Pages	This allows all unmapped pages in the Reading Order to be collapsed.
Collapse All Pages in Same Section	Pages in the same section as the selected page are collapsed.
Expand Selected Pages	This expands the collapsed pages selected.
Expand All Pages	This expands all collapsed pages in the Reading Order.
Expand All Pages in Same Section	All collapsed pages in the same section as the selected page are expanded.
Job Page Properties	This allows users to change the page name and page number. 

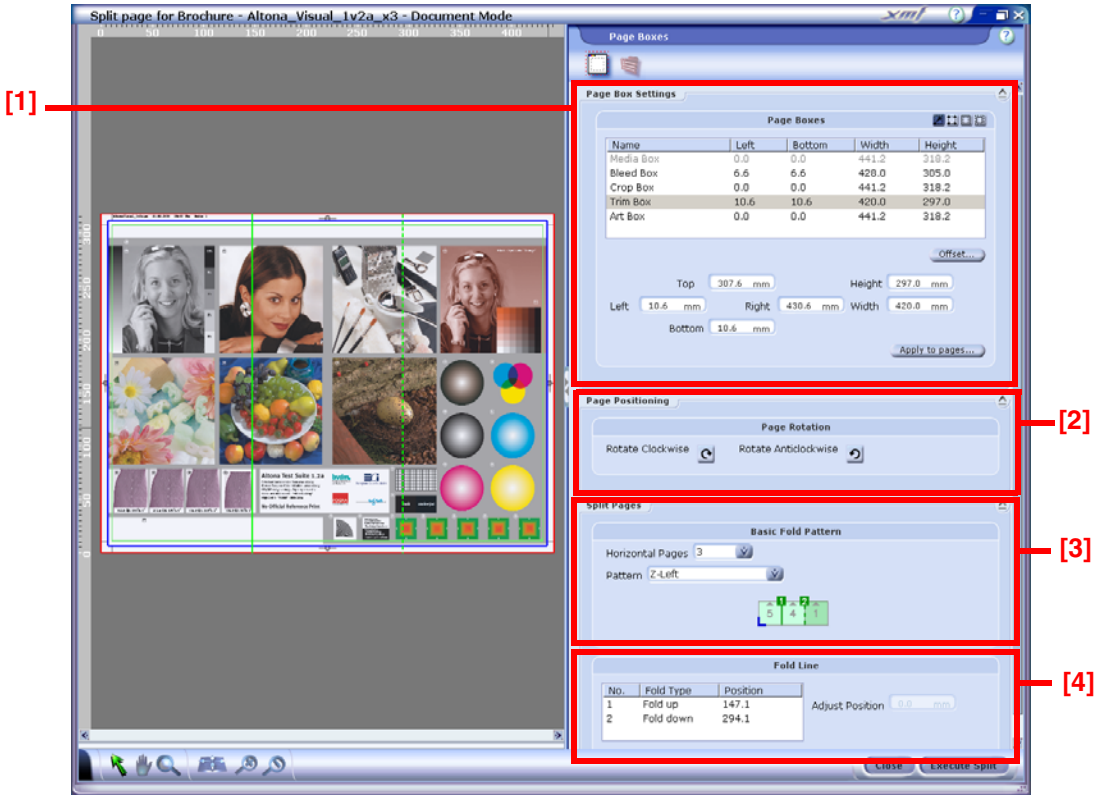
3.1.2.1- Split page for brochure

Function Summary

This splits pages using brochure format fold patterns (parallel fold, Z fold, gatefold).
The split page can be viewed in 3D Proofer.

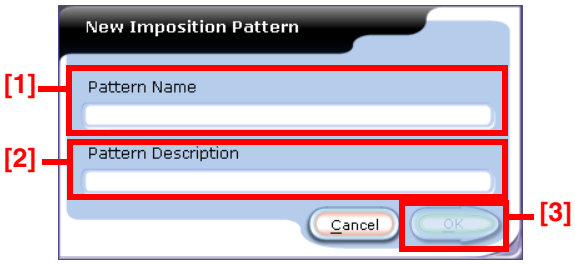
Screen Explanation

Split page for brochure contains the following areas.



[1]	Page Boxes	This area specifies settings for **Crop Box**, **Bleed Box**, **Trim Box** and **Art Box**.	
[2]	Page Rotation	Rotates the page.	
[3]	Basic Fold Pattern	Specifies the fold pattern to be displayed.	
		Horizontal Pages	Select the number of horizontal pages.
		Basic Fold Pattern	Select a fold pattern. **Only a fold pattern compatible with the number of pages specified by Horizontal Pages** is displayed.
[4]	Fold Line	This adjusts the position of the fold line. Select a fold line from the list and set its position. You can also use your mouse to move the fold line displayed in the preview.	

The **New Imposition Pattern** dialog box contains the following panels.



[1]	Pattern Name	Displays the selected basic fold pattern name. This may be changed as required.
[2]	Pattern Description	You can enter any description.
[3]	OK	Saves the imposition pattern and splits the page.

Operating Procedure

The procedures for splittng a page for brochure are shown below.

① Select 2 pages for the front and back surfaces in the **Reading Order** section, and right-click to display the context menu.

② Select **Split page for brochure** to display the **Split Page for Brochure** window.

③ In the **Page Boxes** panel, specify the settings for **Crop Box**, **Bleed Box**, **Trim Box** and **Art Box**.

④ In the **Page Rotation** panel, rotate the page.

⑤ In the **Basic Fold Pattern** panel, set the number of horizontal pages and the fold pattern.
The **Basic Fold Pattern** drop-down menu displays the only fold patterns compatible with the specified number of horizontal pages.

⑥ Select the fold lines in the **Fold Line** panel list, and adjust the fold line positions.
You can adjust the fold lines by moving them in the preview image of the page.

⑦ Click the **Execute Split** button.

⑧ If the **New Imposition Pattern** dialog box is displayed, save the imposition pattern under another name as required.
Imposition patterns that are saved here under another name can only be used in basic fold patterns.
The **New Imposition Pattern** dialog box is not displayed if the fold line position has not been changed.

⑨ In the **Reading Order** section of the Job Edit window, check that the split has resulted in the correct number of pages and page numbers for the specified fold pattern.

The procedures for setting an imposition pattern in **Plates** are shown below.

⑩ Open Imposition Viewer in **Plates**.

⑪ In **Signature Settings** in the **Signatures** panel, set the same fold pattern as ⑤ for **Imposition Pattern** in Sheet 1.
See 4.3.4 - Signature for more information about the **Signatures** panel in Imposition Viewer.

⑫ In the **Content Adjustment** settings in the **Signatures** panel, select **No Page Scaling** from the **Scaling** drop-down menu.

⑬ In the **Page Size** settings in the **Signatures** panel, select **Custom** from the **Size** drop-down menu.

⑭ In Imposition Viewer, click to select one page while holding doen the Alt key, and click **Adjust TrimBox** in the **Page Size** settings in the **Signatures** panel.

⑮ Perform the actions described in ⑭ for all pages.

⑯ Switch from Imposition Viewer to 3D Proofer, and check that a 3D image of the specified brochure format is displayed.

Restrictions

- You can only the specify the position of vertical fold lines in the image displayed in the **Split Page for Brochure** window. Horizontal fold lines cannot be set.
- The minimum space between adjacent fold lines is 1mm.
- Book format and brochure format cannot both be vewed at the same time in 3D Proofer. All pages are displayed in book format if you attempt to view two different formats in 3D Proofer.
- This function does not support layout imposition or grid imposition patterns.
- The following restrictions apply, depending on the imposition method.

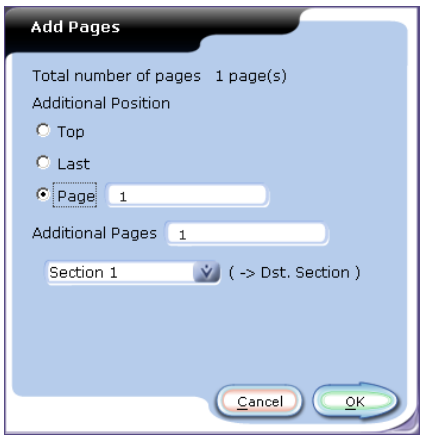
Imposition Method	Restrictions
Stripping Imposition	Flat work is not supported.
N-Up	
Come and Go	
Ribbon	
MultiWeb	
Step and Repeat	In book format, only the signature at the bottom left of the sheet will be displayed.

- This function cannot be used with Autoflow.
- This function splits pages for 3D Proofer. This results in a slightly different result to the one output by Plates. If you are using this function, we recommend that you register a different job to the workflow using the usual Plates.

3.1.3 – Add Pages Dialog Box

Click on the Add Page button at the top of the Reading Order to launch the Add Pages dialog box.

Diagram: Add Pages dialog box



About Add Pages dialog box

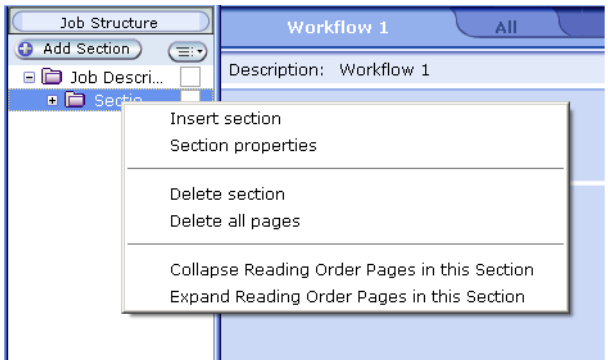
Name	Description
Total number of pages	Total number of pages in the Reading Order is displayed.
Additional Position	Select the position from the following: • Top • Last • Page - The unmapped page is added after the page specified. Enter the page number in the text box. When you select the page in the Reading Order, its number is displayed in the text box.
Additional Pages	Enter the number of pages to be added. You can specify a maximum of 999.

Name	Description
(-> Dst. Section)	Select a section of the Job Structure to which you add pages. If you select New Section, a section with the number following the last section number is created.

3.1.4 – Section Options Menu

Right-click on a section to bring up the Section Options drop-down menu.

Diagram: Section Options menu



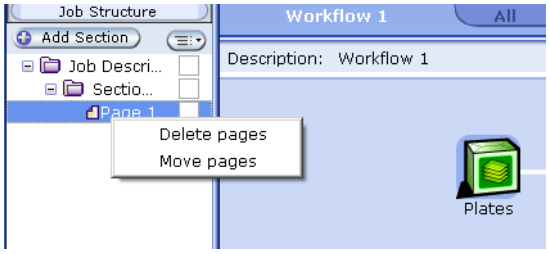
About Section Options menu

Name	Description
Insert section	Adds a new section below the current section.
Section properties	Allows a section to be renamed. Same can be achieved by double clicking on a section.
Delete section	Removes the current section and all the pages assigned under it (pages remain in the Reading Order).
Delete all pages	Removes all the pages from the current section and leaves the section empty.
Collapse Reading Order Pages in this Section	Collapses pages in the current section (collapsed in the Reading Order).
Expand Reading Order Pages in this Section	Expands pages in the current section (expands collapsed pages in the Reading Order).

3.1.5 – Job Structure Page Context Menu

When you right-click on the pages in the Job Structure, the page context menu is displayed.

Diagram: Page context menu



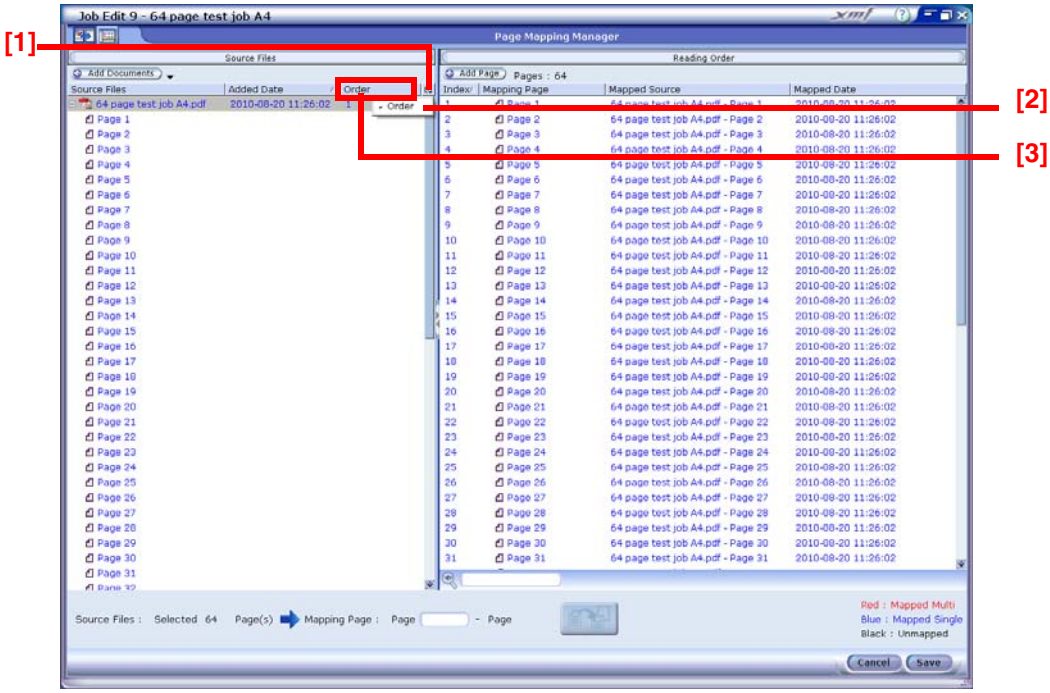
About Page context menu

Name	Description
Move pages	The selected page is moved to another section.
Delete pages	The selected page is deleted from the Job Structure.

3.2 – Page Mapping Manager

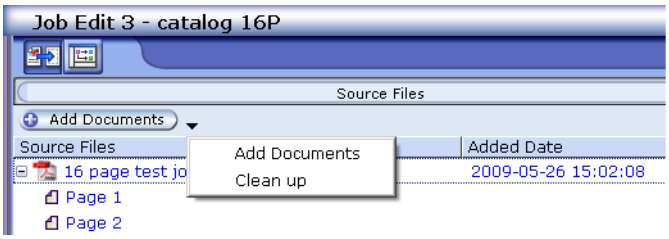
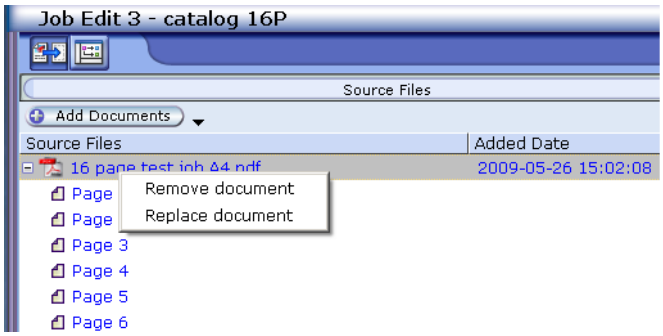
The Page Mapping Manager displays detailed mapping information for each page, and you can check the status of page mapping easily.

Diagram: Page Mapping Manager



About Page Mapping Manager

Name	Description
Order	**Function Summary** This shows which files have been sorted in the **Source Files** panel of Job Element Manager. Users may show/hide this section. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Source Files Display Settings - Click this button to display a list of the sections that can be shown/hidden in **Source Files** in Page Mapping Manager. Only **Order** is displayed in the list. [2]: Order - Click this item to toggle the display of **Order**. **The section is displayed when Order** is checked. [3]: Order section - Click the **Order** section header to toggle the ascending/descending sort order. The number in this section indicates the display order of the **Source Files** section in Job Element Manager. Numbers between 1 and the total number of files are assigned to the files. If the numbers ascend sequentially from 1, the Order is the same in both **Page Mapping Manager** and Job Element Manager. If the numbers descend sequentially from the largest number, the file order in **Page Mapping Manager** is the opposite of Job Element Manager. **Restrictions** • You cannot sort files in **Page Mapping Manager** by dragging and dropping them.

Name	Description
Add Documents	Adds documents to the Source Files area. You can clean up unnecessary source files that have no page to be assigned, by clicking the menu button on the side of Add Documents button then selecting Clean up. 
File option context menu	Right-click on any file in the Source Files to display the file option context menu.  • Remove document - The selected file is deleted. • Replace document - The selected file is replaced by another file.
Search box	When you enter the value (numeric character only) into the search box at the bottom of the Reading Order area, the page matching the value is highlighted.
Page Mapping button	The selected pages are mapped.
Save	Mapped pages are saved.

3.3 – Pagination

Function Summary

This allows you to create a job in the same way that you would with your normal "Pagination".
This is recommended for jobs that have multiple different export settings, such as magazines and books that have a lot of pages.
It has the following features.

- Manages pagination information by signatures, sheets and sheet groups.
- Lists all of a job's page and signature settings.

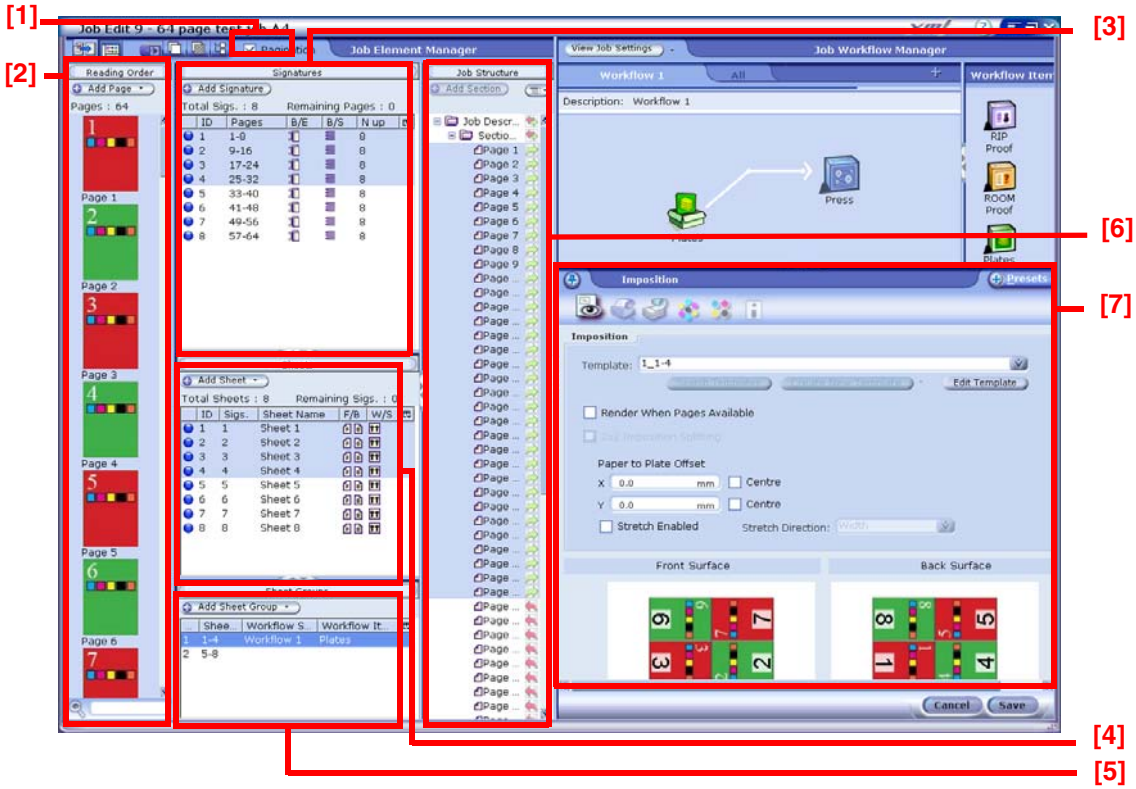
Definition of Terminology

The terminology used in Pagination is shown below.

Sheet	Indicates a combination of the front and back surfaces of the data exported as colors. For details, see 3.3.4 - Sheets Panel, 3.3.5 - Add Sheet Menu, and 3.3.6 - Sheet Management.
Sheet Group	A group of sheets with the same binding edge and export conditions. For details, see 3.3.7 - Sheet Groups Panel, 3.3.8 - Add Sheet Group Menu, 3.3.9 - Add Sheet Group Dialog, 3.3.10 - Sheet Group Right-click Menu, and 3.3.11 - Assignation of Sheet Groups to Workflow Items.
Assembly Section	Automatically groups together signatures with the same binding style and binding edge when there are signatures with different binding styles and edges. The edges of assembly sections are represented by border lines.

Screen Explanation

Pagination contains the following areas.



[1]	Pagination Check Box	When checked, the Job Edit window turns into the Pagination Settings window.
[2]	Reading Order	Displays the page order of the final product, in the same way as the Job Edit window does.
[3]	Signatures	Specifies signature settings. For details, see 3.3.1 - Signatures Panel.
[4]	Sheets	Specifies settings for sheets. For details, see 3.3.4 - Sheets Panel.
[5]	Sheet Groups	Specifies settings for sheet groups. For details, see 3.3.7 - Sheet Groups Panel.
[6]	Job Structure	Displays the job structure, in the same that the Job Edit window does.
[7]	Imposition	Specifies the imposition settings for each sheet inside a job's sheet groups. The results set here are exported in accordance with the workflow item settings set in the job. For details, see 3.3.11 - Assignation of Sheet Groups to Workflow Items.

Operating Procedure

There are two ways of using Pagination.

1. Specify the pagination settings for signatures, sheets and sheet groups, based on the current pagination information.
2. Create a sheet group from the current imposition template and automatically create signatures and sheets.

Specify settings with the following procedures if you are using method 1.

① In the Job Edit window, tick **Pagination Check Box** to switch to the **Pagination** window.

② Set the total number of pages.

③ Set the signatures.
See 3.3.1 - Signatures Panel.

④ Set the sheets.
See 3.3.4 - Sheets Panel, 3.3.5 - Add Sheet Menu, and 3.3.6 - Sheet Management.

⑤ Create a sheet template as required.
See 7.4.5 - Stripping Sheet Templates.

⑥ Set the sheet groups.

See 3.3.7 - Sheet Groups Panel, 3.3.8 - Add Sheet Group Menu, 3.3.9 - Add Sheet Group Dialog, and 3.3.10 - Sheet Group Right-click Menu.

⑦ Assign the sheet groups to the workflow items.
See 3.3.11 - Assignation of Sheet Groups to Workflow Items.

You can use method 2 to specify the settings if there is already an imposition template that can be used for Pagination,. For details, see 3.3.8 - Add Sheet Group Menu.

Restrictions

- The following criteria must be met in order to use Pagination.
  - You are using XMF Complete.
  - The job does not use TIFF Bypass.
  - The TIFF Bypass job template is not being used.
  - The Job Edit window is not read-only.
  - Autoflow is disabled.
- In order to use Pagination, you must cancel the job structure and workflow settings and delete the Auto Page Mapping settings created by Autoflow and Input File Name Templates. If you tick Pagination, a dialog box for confirming these will be displayed.
- You cannot apply job information obtained that has been obtained from MIS via JDF to Pagination.
- If this function is disabled, the Source Files column in the Job Edit window's default display is hidden.
- The following actions are not available in Job Structure when Pagination is being used.
  - Adding a section
  - Deleting a page
  - Moving a page
  - Assigning jobs to Plates or Digital Press

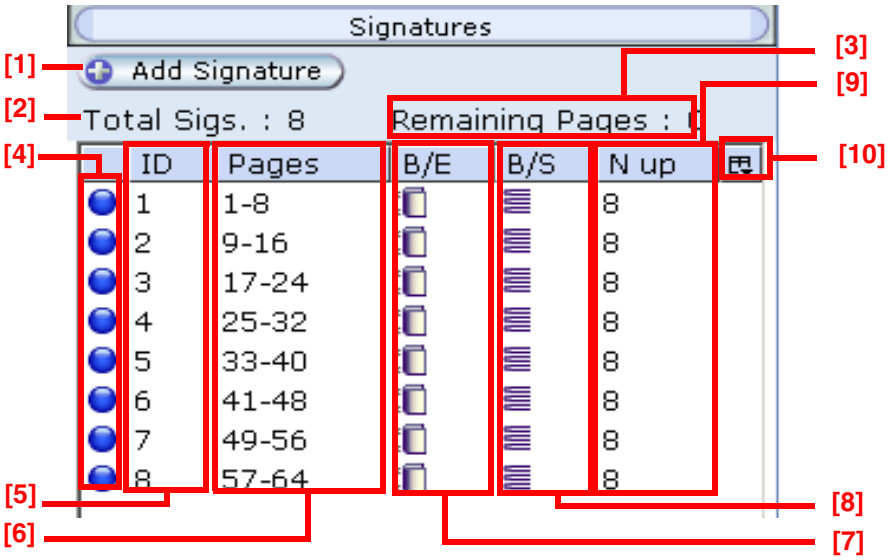
3.3.1 – Signatures Panel

Function Summary

The **Signatures** panel contains information about a signature's binding edge, binding style and the number of pages.

Screen Explanation

The **Signatures** panel contains the following items.



[1]	Add Signature	Displays the **Add Signature** dialog box. For details, see 3.3.2 - Add Signatures Dialog Box.
[2]	Total Sigs.	Displays the total number of signatures displayed in the **Signatures** panel.
[3]	Remaining Pages	Displays the number of pages assigned to each signature.
[4]	Assigned Icon	The icon colour indicates whether data has been assigned to the pages contained in the signature. White: There are some pages which have not been assigned data. Blue: Data has been assigned to all pages.
[5]	Number	Displays the signature’s sheet number.
[6]	Pages	Displays the page numbers of the pages in the signature.
[7]	B/E	Displays the binding edge with an icon. : Right : Left
[8]	B/S	Displays the binding style with an icon. : Perfect Binding : Saddle Stitch No icon: None
[9]	N Up	Displays the total number of front and back pages in the signature.
[10]	Toggle display button	Toggles the display of items. You can also display **Signature Name** as an item.

Restrictions

- If a sheet contains both Come and Go and a normal imposition, the signature's page number may not be assigned correctly.
- If you are using an imposition pattern with missing page numbers, a discrepancy will occur in the exported page numbers.

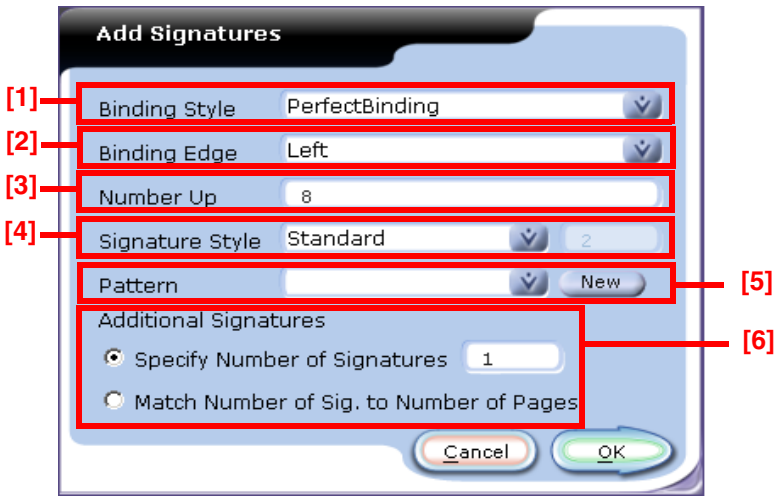
3.3.2 – Add Signatures Dialog Box

Function Summary

The **Add Signatures** dialog box is displayed if you click the **Add Signature** button in the **Signatures** panel.
The **Add Signatures** dialog box allows you to specify the settings for the binding style, binding edge and number of pages of the signature being added.

Screen Explanation

The **Add Signnatures** dialog box contains the following items.



[1]	Binding Style	Select one of the following binding types. • Perfect Binding • Saddle Stitch • None
[2]	Binding Edge	Select one of the following binding edges. • Left • Right
[3]	Number Up	Enter the total number of front and back pages in one signature. If you are generating Ribbon and MultiWeb impositions, enter the sum of the Ribbon and Web impositions.
[4]	Signature Style	Select one of the following signature styles. • Standard • N-Up - Enter the N-Up number (between 2 and 8) in the text box to the right. • Come and Go Head to Head • Come and Go Foot to Foot • Come and Go Head to Head Same Sheet • Come and Go Foot to Foot Same Sheet
[5]	Pattern	Select an imposition pattern. Only imposition patterns that conform with the number of sheets specified by N Up are displayed here. - New - Displays the **Imposition Patterns** window, in which you can create a new imposition pattern.
[6]	Additional Signatures	Specify the number of signatures being added and the additon method. - Specify Number of Signatures - Enter the number of signatures being added. - Match Number of Sig. to Number of Pages - The number of signatures being added is automatically calculated from the number of unassigned page slots and sheets.

3.3.3 – Signature Management

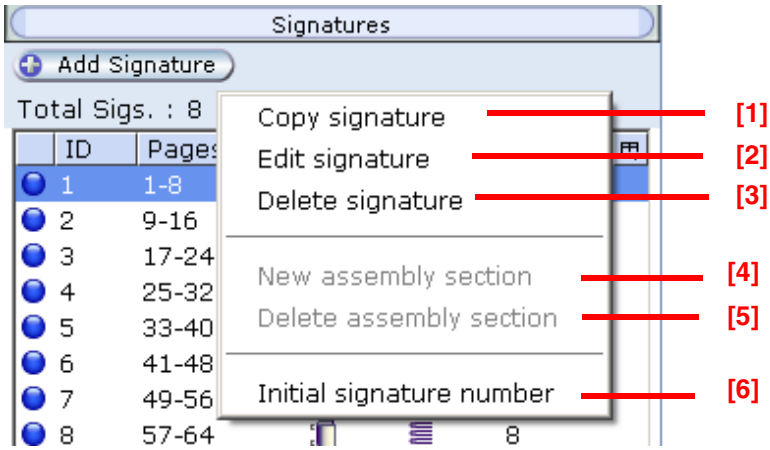
Function Summary

Once you have set a signature, you can copy, edit and delete it.
Use this to configure multiple signatures with the same settings, or to change a value during the setting process.

New In V3.1, signatures with different binding styles or assembly sections can now be placed on the same sheet.

Screen Explanation

The following context menu is displayed when you right-click any signature in the **Signatures** panel.



[1]	Copy signature	Displays the **Copy Signature** dialog box, in which you can copy a specified number of the selected signature.
[2]	Edit signature	Displays the **Edit Signature** dialog box, in which you can edit the settings of the selected signature. You can change the order of signatures by dragging and dropping them (The changes are updated in the **Signature** section of the **Sheet** panel).
[3]	Delete signature	Deletes the selected signature.
[4]	New assembly section	A border is inserted just before the selected signature to create the new assembly section. You can also directly change the assembly section's border by moving it in the **Signatures** panel. New In V3.1, signatures can now be moved even if they cross over assembly sections when they are dragged and dropped.
[5]	Delete assembly section	The selected border is deleted and the assembly sections either side of the border are merged.
[6]	Initial signature number	Displays the **Initial Signature Number Setting** dialog box, in which you can change the initial signature number.

Restrictions

- If the signature being copied or deleted is already assigned to a sheet or sheet group, the change cannot be made if it would have meant that the sheet ot sheet group settings could not be maintained.
- If the signature being copied or deleted is already assigned to a sheet or sheet group, some settings, such as number of sheets, signature style and imposition pattern, cannot be changed.
- You cannot add an assembly section between signature 1 and signature 2 if they have both been placed in sheet 1.
- Signatures with different binding edges cannot be placed on the same sheet.

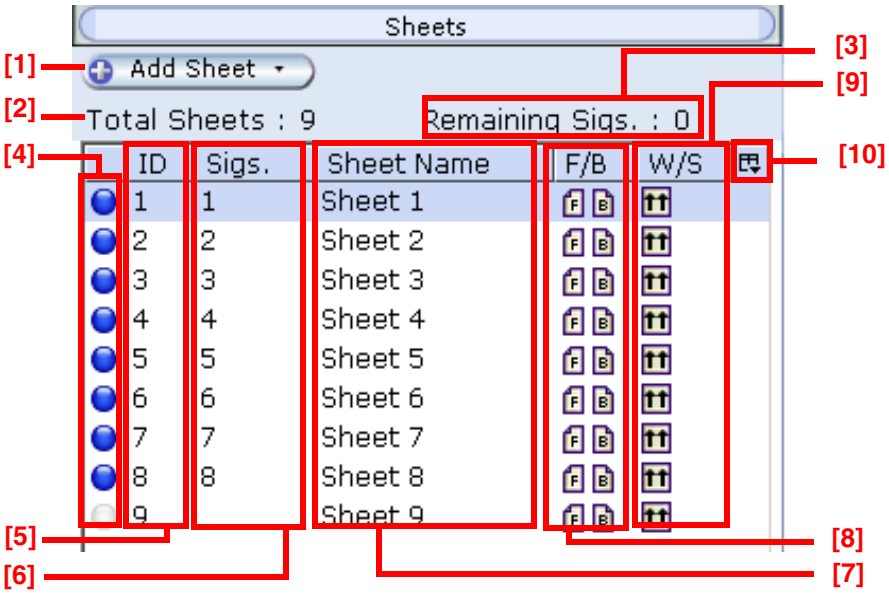
3.3.4 – Sheets Panel

Function Summary

The **Sheets** panel displays a sheet's imposition style and information about the signatures in the sheet.

Screen Explanation

The **Sheets** panel contains the following information.



[1]	Add Sheet	Displays the **Add Sheet** dialog box. For details, see 3.3.5 - Add Sheet Menu.
[2]	Total Sheets	Displays the number of sheets that are set in the Sheets panel.
[3]	Remaining Sigs.	Displays the number of signatures not assigned to each sheet.
[4]	Assigned Icon	The icon colour indicates whether data has been assigned to the all the signature's page slots in the sheet. The icon's left half shows information for the front cover and the right half shows information for the back cover. White: There are some pages which have not been assigned data. Blue: Data has been assigned to all pages.
[5]	Number	Displays the sheet number.
[6]	Sigs.	Displays the signature number in the sheet.
[7]	Sheet Name	Displays the sheet name.
[8]	F/B	Indicates with an icon whether the imposition set in the sheet is a front and back imposition or a one-sided imposition. : Front and back imposition : One-sided front imposition
[9]	W/S	Indicates with an icon the imposition style set in the sheet. : Sheet work : Perfecting : Flat Work : Work and tumble : Work and turn
[10]	Toggle display button	Toggles the display of items. You can also display **Template Name**.

3.3.5 – Add Sheet Menu

Function Summary

Click the **Add Sheet** button in the **Sheets** panel to display the Add Sheet menu that allows you to add sheets. There are three ways of adding a sheet.

Screen Explanation

The **Add Sheet** menu provides the following three ways of adding a sheet.

[1]	Add sheet	Displays the **Add Sheet** dialog box. When you select a sheet template, the corresponding signature for the sheet is automatically created. If you select **Default Sheet**, the unspecified sheet is added to the Sheets panel. For details about sheet templates, see 7.4.5 - Stripping Sheet Templates.
[2]	Add 1 sheet per selected signature	In the **Signatures** panel, click **Add Sheet** when multiple signatures with the same binding edge, binding style and number of sheets have been selected. Select a sheet template in the **Add Sheet** dialog box and create a sheet for each signature.
[3]	Add selected signatures to a single sheet	In the **Signatures** panel, click **Add Sheet** when one or more signatures have been selected. Signatures with different binding styles or assembly sections can be placed on the same sheet. Select a sheet template in the **Add Sheet** dialog box and create one sheet. You can also perform the same operation by selecting one or more signatures in the **Signatures** panel and dragging and dropping them into the **Sheets** panel.

Restrictions

- If you have created a sheet from a signature for which MultiWeb has been set, the same number of sheets as the number of Webs are added and a Web is placed in each sheet.

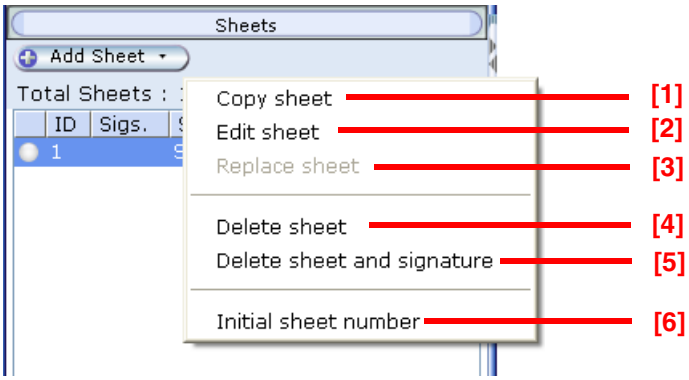
3.3.6 – Sheet Management

Function Summary

Once you have set a sheet, you can copy, edit and delete it.
Use this to configure multiple sheets with the same settings, or to change a value during the setting process.

Screen Explanation

The following context menu is displayed when you right-click any signature in the **Sheets** panel.



[1]	Copy sheet	Displays the **Copy Sheet** dialog box, in which you can copy a specified number of the selected sheet. The signature contained in the copied sheet is added to the end of the **Signatures** panel.
[2]	Edit sheet	Displays the Stripping Sheet Editor that allows you to edit the selected sheet. You can also perform the same operation by double-clicking the sheet in the Sheets panel. For details about the Stripping Sheet Editor, see 7.4.5 - Stripping Sheet Templates.
[3]	Replace sheet	Displays the Replace Sheet dialog box, in which you can replace the selected sheet with another sheet with the same number of signatures, binding edge, binding style and number of sheets. New In V3.1, if you run **Replace sheet** while multiple sheets are selected that have the same binding edge, binding style and number of pages, you can replace the stripping sheet template for all of them at the same time. **Restrictions** • Multiple pages to which two or more signatures have been assigned cannot be placed at the same time.
[4]	Delete sheet	Deletes the selected sheets.
[5]	Delete sheet and signature New	**Function Summary** In addition to the selected sheet, also deletes the signature that was placed in the sheet. **Background** In previous versions, if you wanted to delete a signature that had been placed on sheet, you had to delete the signature after deleting the corresponding sheet. This function was added to eliminate this operation.
[6]	Initial sheet number	Displays the Initial Sheet Number Setting dialog box, in which you can change the inital sheet number.

Restrictions

- You can change the order of sheets by dragging and dropping them, but you cannot move between sheets that have been set with multiple web-compatible signatures.
- You cannot use some of the functions of Stripping Sheet Editor that is launched by clicking **Edit sheet**. For example, you cannot create a new sheet. The actual differences are shown below.

Function	Stripping Sheet Templates	Stripping Sheet Editor
Imposition panel	All settings are possible.	You cannot change the settings of **Binding Settings** and **Creep Settings**.
Signatures panel > Sheet Settings > Binding Style	Selection is possible.	Cannot be changed.
Signatures panel > Sheet Settings > Creep	Setting is possible.	Setting is not possible.
Signatures panel > Signature Settings	All settings are possible.	The **Select Signature** and **Clone** buttons are displayed instead of the **New**, **Copy** and **Delete** buttons. • Select Signature - Allows you to assign a signature to a sheet and to cancel a signature's assignation. Select a signature in the **Select Signature** dialog box, tick the **Selected** check box and click the **OK** button. The selected signature is added to the sheet's original position in the imposition display area. • Clone - Duplicates a signature and its details, in the same way as the **Clone** button in the **Signatures** panel in Imposition Viewer.

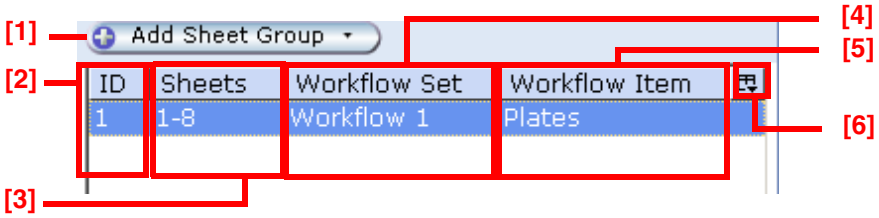
3.3.7 – Sheet Groups Panel

Function Summary

The **Sheet Groups** panel displays information about the sheets within a sheet group and information about the workflows that have been set.
The settings of the sheet groups set here can be exported.

Screen Explanation

The **Sheet Groups** panel contains the following information.



[1]	Add Sheet Group	Displays the Add Sheet Group menu. For details, see 3.3.8 - Add Sheet Group Menu.
[2]	ID	Displays the sheet group number.
[3]	Sheets	Displays the numbers of the sheets within the sheet group.
[4]	Workflow Set	Displays the name of the workflow set that has been set.
[5]	Workflow Item	Displays the name of the workflow items that have been set.
[6]	Toggle display button	Toggles the display of items. You can also display **Sheet Group Name**.

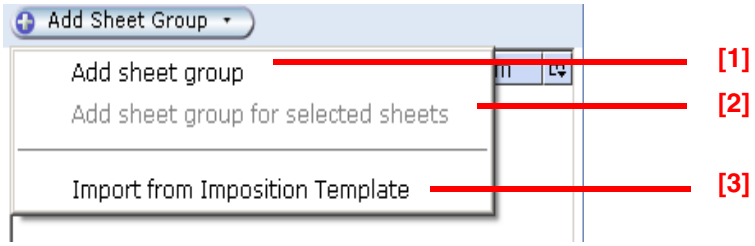
3.3.8 – Add Sheet Group Menu

Function Summary

Click the **Add Sheet Group** button in the **Sheet Groups** panel to display the **Add Sheet Group** menu that allows you to add a sheet group. There are three ways of adding a sheet group.

Screen Explanation

The **Add Sheet Group** menu provides the following three ways of adding a sheet group.



[1]	Add sheet group	Displays the Add Sheet Group dialog box, in which you can select a sheet that has not been assigned to any sheet groups. For details, see 3.3.9 - Add Sheet Group Dialog.
[2]	Add sheet group for selected sheets	The Add Sheet Group dialog box is displayed and one sheet selected in the Sheets panel is added as a sheet group. For details, see 3.3.9 - Add Sheet Group Dialog. You can also perform the same operation by selecting one or more sheets in the Sheets panel and dragging and dropping them into the Sheet Groups panel.
[3]	Import from Imposition Template	Displays the Import from Imposition Template dialog box. Select an imposition template and add a sheet group.

Restrictions

- If a sheet group is added from **Import from Imposition Template**, the signatures and sheets are automatically set on the basis of the information in the sheet group. However, the settings of the signatures, sheets and sheet groups that had already been set are all discarded.

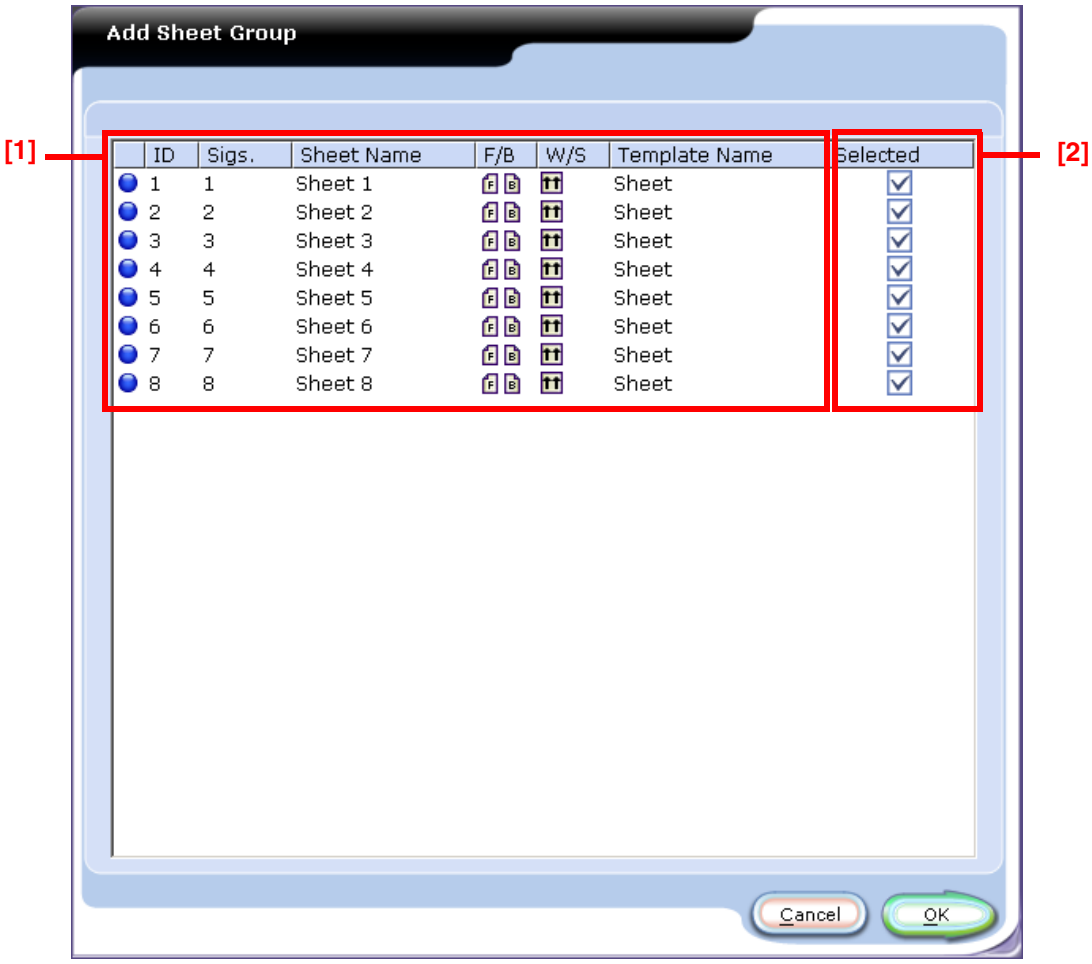
3.3.9 – Add Sheet Group Dialog

Function Summary

You can group sheets with the same binding edge and export conditions as a sheet group.
A sheet group can be assigned to a Plates or Digital Press imposition panel within a job.

Screen Explanation

The **Add Sheet Group** dialog box contains the following items and areas.



[1]	Sheet Information	Displays the sheets that do not belong to any sheet groups.
[2]	Selected	Select the check box of the sheets that you want to include in the sheet group being added. You can select multiple sheets at the same time if they have the same binding edge.

Restrictions

- If you have deleted a sheet that belongs to a sheet group, that sheet will be automatically deleted from the sheet group.
- If sheets contain a signature for which MultiWeb has been set, they will be assigned to the same sheet group.

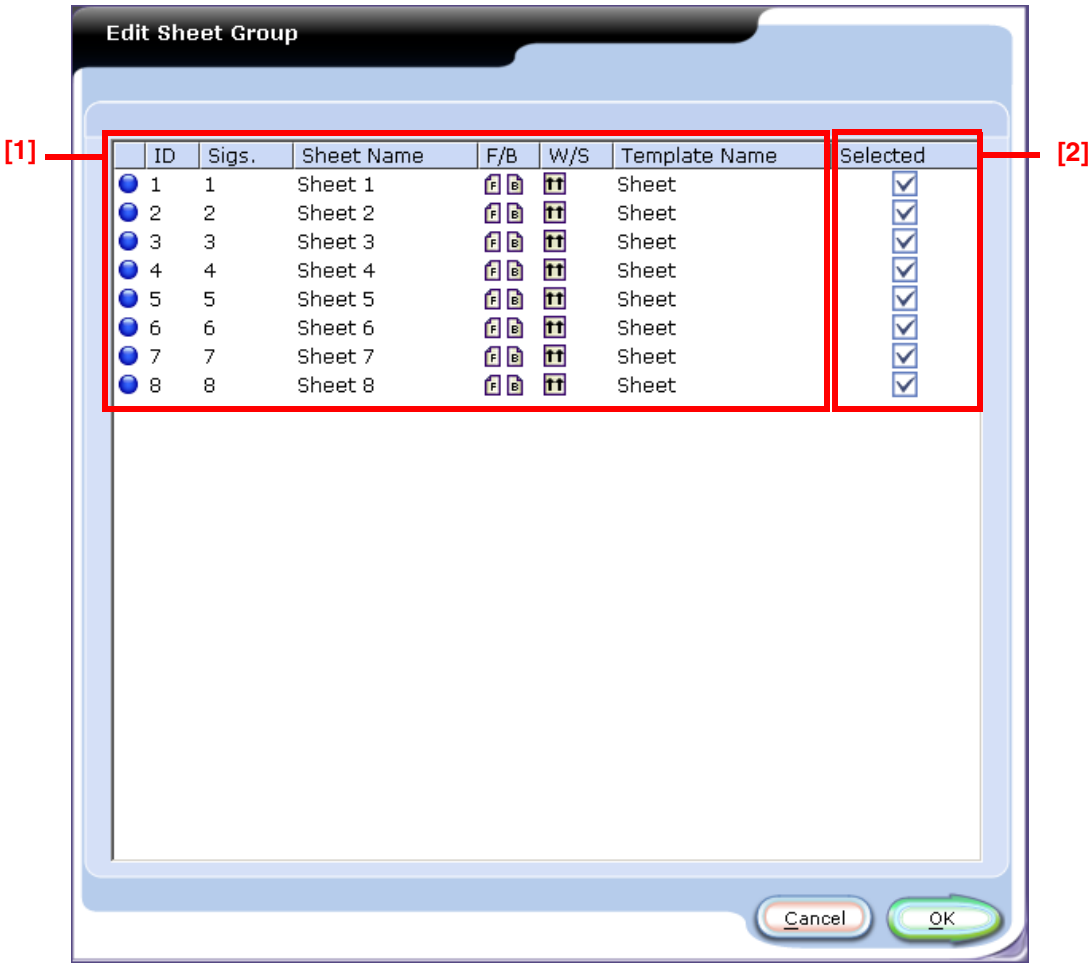
3.3.10 – Sheet Group Right-click Menu

Function Summary

This allows you to edit or delete an existing sheet group.

Screen Explanation

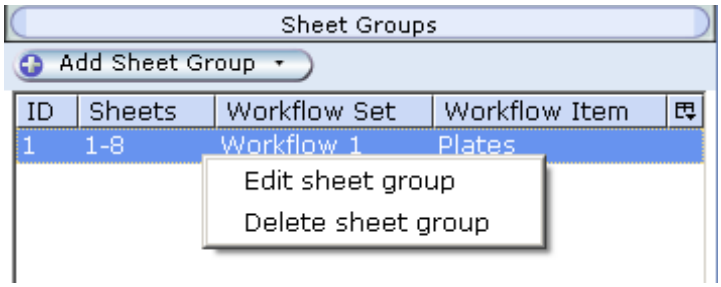
The **Edit Sheet Group** dialog box contains the following items and areas.



[1]	Sheet Information	This displays sheets with the same binding edge that do not belong to any sheet groups, and the sheets contained in the selected sheet group.
[2]	Selected	Tick the check box of the sheet that you want to add (or leave in the sheet group). Unticked sheets are not added to the sheet group.

Operating Procedure

Open the context menu by right-clicking any sheet group of your choice in the **Sheet Groups** panel.



If you select **Edit sheet group**, the **Edit Sheet Group** dialog box is displayed.
If you select **Delete sheet group**, the selected sheet group is deleted.

Restrictions

- If you delete a sheet group that has been assigned to a workflow item, that assignation is also automatically cancelled.
- The sheet group number of a deleted sheet group cannot be reused within the same job.

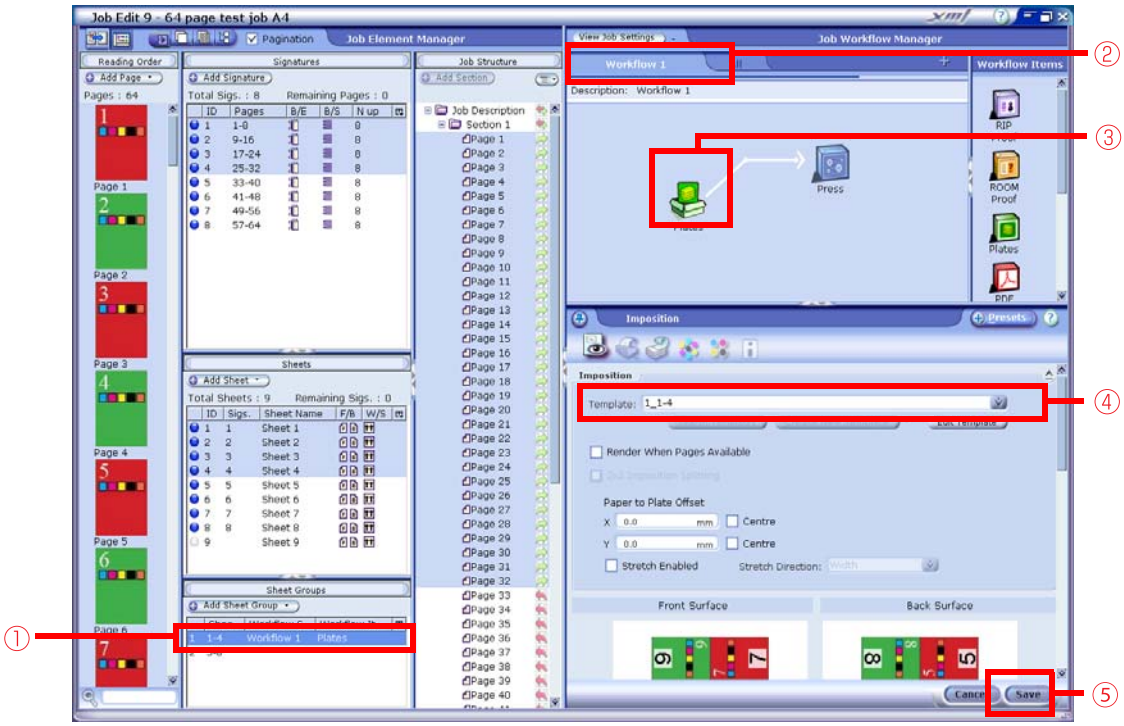
3.3.11 – Assignation of Sheet Groups to Workflow Items

Function Summary

You can set the output method of sheets within a sheet group by assigning the sheet group to the Plates and Digital Press workflow items.

Operating Procedure

The following procedures show how to assign a sheet group to workflow items.



① In the **Sheet Groups** panel select the sheet group that you want to assign.

② In the **Job Workflow Manager** panel, select the workflow set to which you want to assign the sheet group.

③ In the selected workflow set, select the workflow items that you want to output.

④ In the Template drop-down list in the **Imposition** panel, select the sheet group that was selected in step ①.
You can also assign a sheet group by dragging and dropping it in the workgroup item.
After you have set the sheet group, you edit the imposition by double-clicking on its thumbnail in the **Imposition** panel or by clicking the **Edit Template** button.

⑤ Click **Save** to send the job.

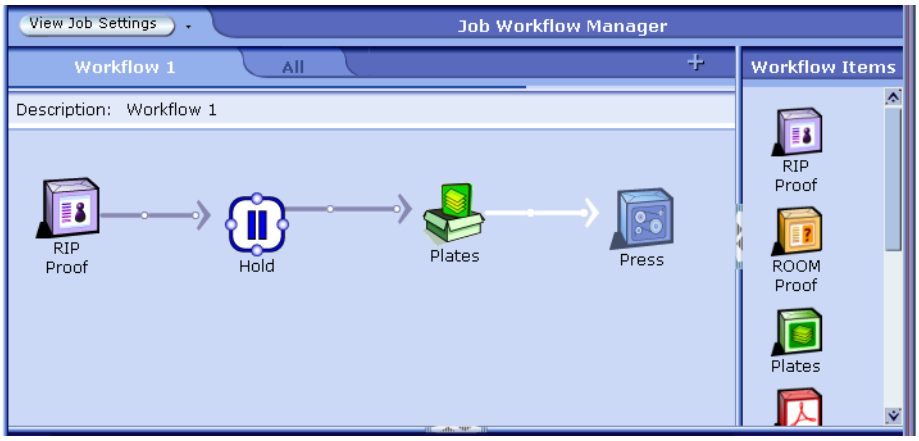
Restrictions

- You cannot assign a sheet group to any other workflow item apart from Plates or Digital Press, unless the other item has been set to inherit imposition settings from Plates or Digital Press.
- Impositions are edited in the Imposition Viewer medi settings, but the only functions that can be set are those that are shared by all sheets, such as emdia settings and collation marks.

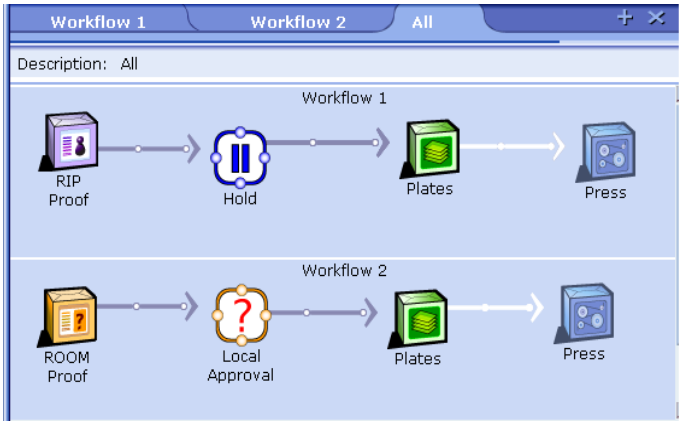
3.4 – Job Workflow Manager

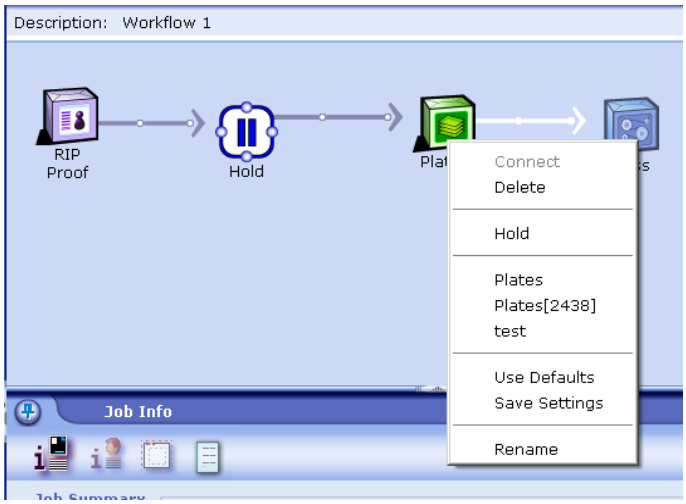
Workflow Construction Area in the Job Workflow Manager is used to create workflows to output jobs.

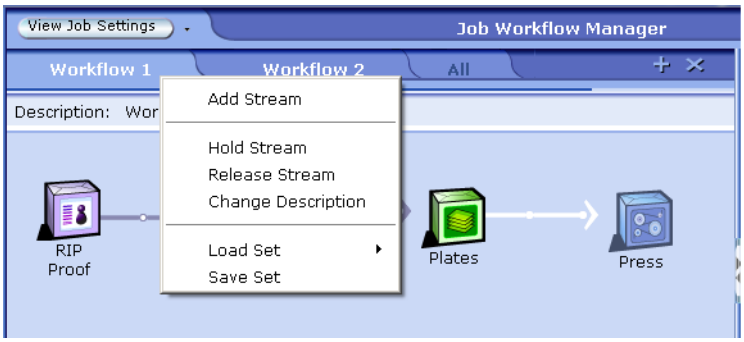
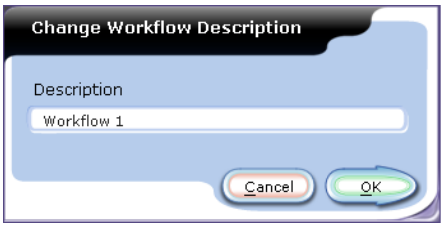
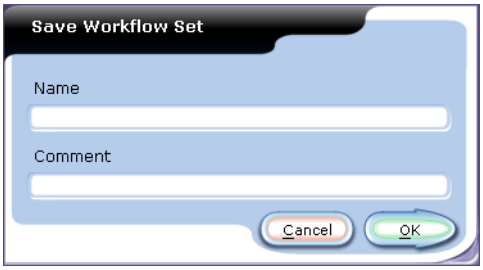
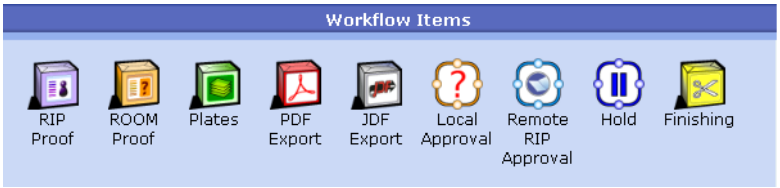
Diagram: Job Workflow Manager



About Job Workflow Manager

Name	Description
Workflow Construction Area	Workflows are created in this area.  • Add/Delete workflow icons - You can click the + (Add) and x (Delete) icons on the top right of the Workflow Construction Area in order to add/delete workflows in a job. • All tab - Click the All tab to see an overview of all the workflows in the job.

Name	Description
Workflow Construction Area	• Context menu (Workflow Item) - Displayed by right-clicking a workflow item.  - Connect - Connects two unconnected workflow items. Select both workflow items and select Connect. If the Connect option is grey, these workflow items cannot be connected. - Delete - Removes workflow items from the Workflow Construction Area. Right-click on the workflow item and select Delete. - Hold - Holds a workflow item. To release a held item, select Release. • Saving and Loading Workflow Item settings - Workflows can be constructed easily and quickly by using a Workflow Item template. To save the current settings as a Workflow Item template, right-click on the item and select Save Settings to save a set of parameters with your own choice of name. The saved Workflow Item templates appear on the context menu, as shown above, and can be used in any job (in the above example, Plates [2438] is the saved Workflow Item template).

Name	Description
Workflow Construction Area	• Context menu (Streams) - Right-click on a workflow tab or Description bar.  - Add Stream - Adds a stream. Adding a stream copies the original workflow to the new stream, so the name of the workflow tab changes. You can edit the name of the stream by clicking on the name in the Workflow Tab and typing a new name. - Hold Stream - Select Hold Stream to hold the stream. To release the held stream, select Release Stream. - Change Description - Allows the information displayed on the Description bar to be modified. Selecting Change Description brings up the Change Workflow Description dialog box.  - Saving and Loading Workflow Sets - Selecting Save Set saves a workflow set which can be used in any job. Enter Name and Comment in the Save Workflow Set dialog box that appears. To load a saved workflow set, right-click the workflow tab and select Load Set. 
Workflow Items Palette	Displays workflow items. 

3.4.1 – Workflow Items

Items in the Workflow Items Palette can be dragged into the Workflow Construction Area to construct a workflow.

Diagram: Workflow Items

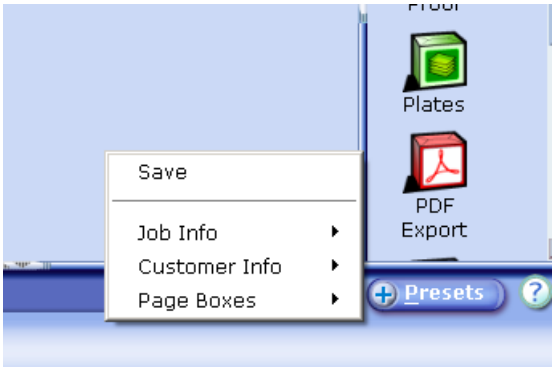
About Workflow Items

Name	Description
RIP Proof	See 3.8 - RIP Proof.
ROOM Proof	See 3.9 - ROOM Proof.
Plates	See 3.7 - Plates.
PDF Export	See 3.10 - PDF Export.
JDF Export	See 3.11 - JDF Export.
Local Approval	See 3.13 - Local Approval.
Web Approval	This function is not available in Japan.
Remote RIP Approval New	See 3.15 - Remote RIP Approval.
Hold	See 3.12 - Hold.
Finishing New	See 3.14 - Finishing

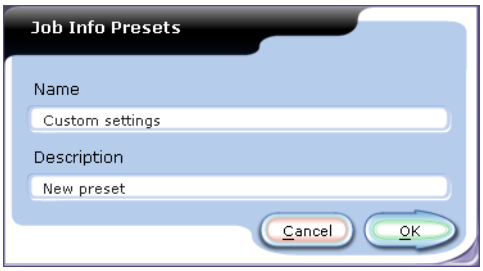
3.4.2 – Presets

As well as saving Workflow Item templates, it is also possible to save settings for each setting panel. These are known as Workflow Parameter Templates. To save Workflow Parameter templates, use the Presets button.

Diagram: The Presets button is clicked (the selected workflow item is Plates)

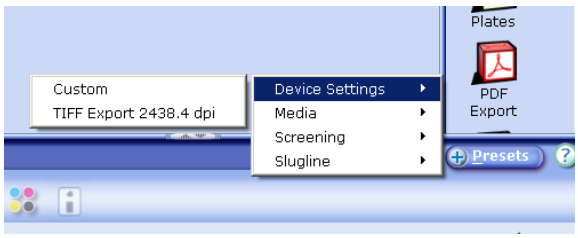


About Presets

Name	Description
Save	Saves a Workflow Parameter template. Click the Parameter Icon for the panel you wish to save, ensure the intended panel is displayed then click the Presets button, which brings up the menu shown above. Select Save from the menu to display the Presets dialog box where you can enter the workflow parameter template name and description of your choice (the example shown below is Device Settings Presets).  • Name - Enter a name of your choice. • Description - Enter information about this Workflow Parameter template.
Device Settings	Plates parameter.
Media	Plates parameter.
Screening	Plates parameter.
Slugline	Plates parameter.

To recall (load) a parameter template, click on the Presets button to display the Presets menu. Move the mouse over the type you wish to load (e.g. Device Settings) to display the saved templates for the type, then select from the list of Workflow Parameter Templates shown.

Diagram: Available Workflow Parameter Templates (Device Settings)



3.5 – Job Description

Job Description allows you to set up Input, Fonts, Inks, etc.

Diagram: Job Description

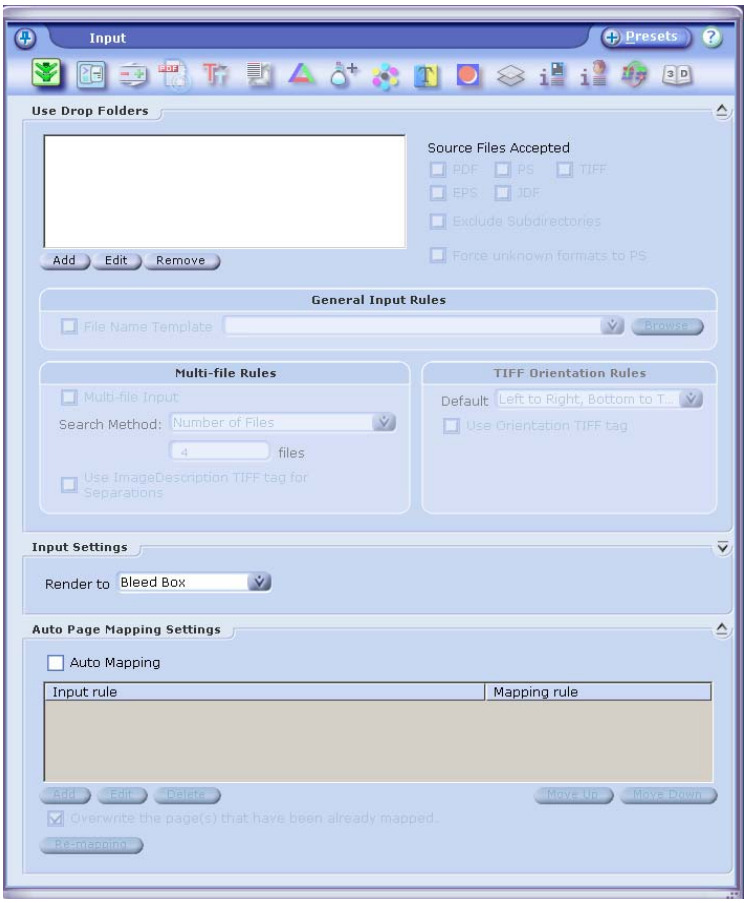
About Job Description

Name	Description
Input	See 3.5.1 - Input.
Page Prep Preferences	See 3.5.2 - Page Prep Preferences.
JDF Input Preferences New	See 3.5.3 - JDF Input Preferences.
PostScript Conversion	See 3.5.4 - PostScript Conversion.
Finished PDF/X	See 3.5.5 - Finished PDF/X.
Fonts	See 3.5.6 - Fonts.
Preflight and Action Lists	See 3.5.7 - Preflight and Action List.
Colour	See 3.5.8 - Colour.
Ink Management	See 3.5.9 - Inks.
Screening	See 3.5.10 - Screening.
Trapping	See 3.5.11 - Trapping.
Overprint	See 3.5.12 - Overprint.
Versioning	See 3.5.13 - Versioning.
Job Information	See 3.5.14 - Job Information.
Customer Information	See 3.5.15 - Customer Information.
Archiving Automation	See 3.5.16 - Archiver Automation.
3D Options	See 3.5.17 - 3D Options.
File Information	See 3.5.18 - File Information.
Page Boxes	See 3.5.19 - Page Boxes.
Job Page Properties	See 3.5.20 - Job Page Properties.

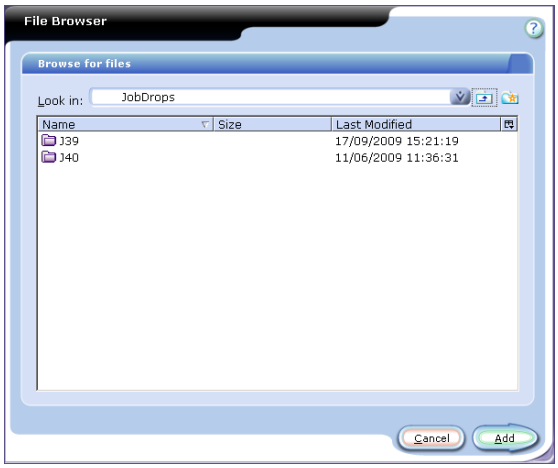
3.5.1 – Input

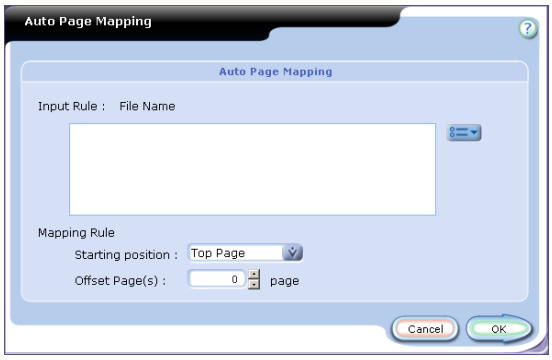
Defines document input settings.

Diagram: Input panel



About Input panel

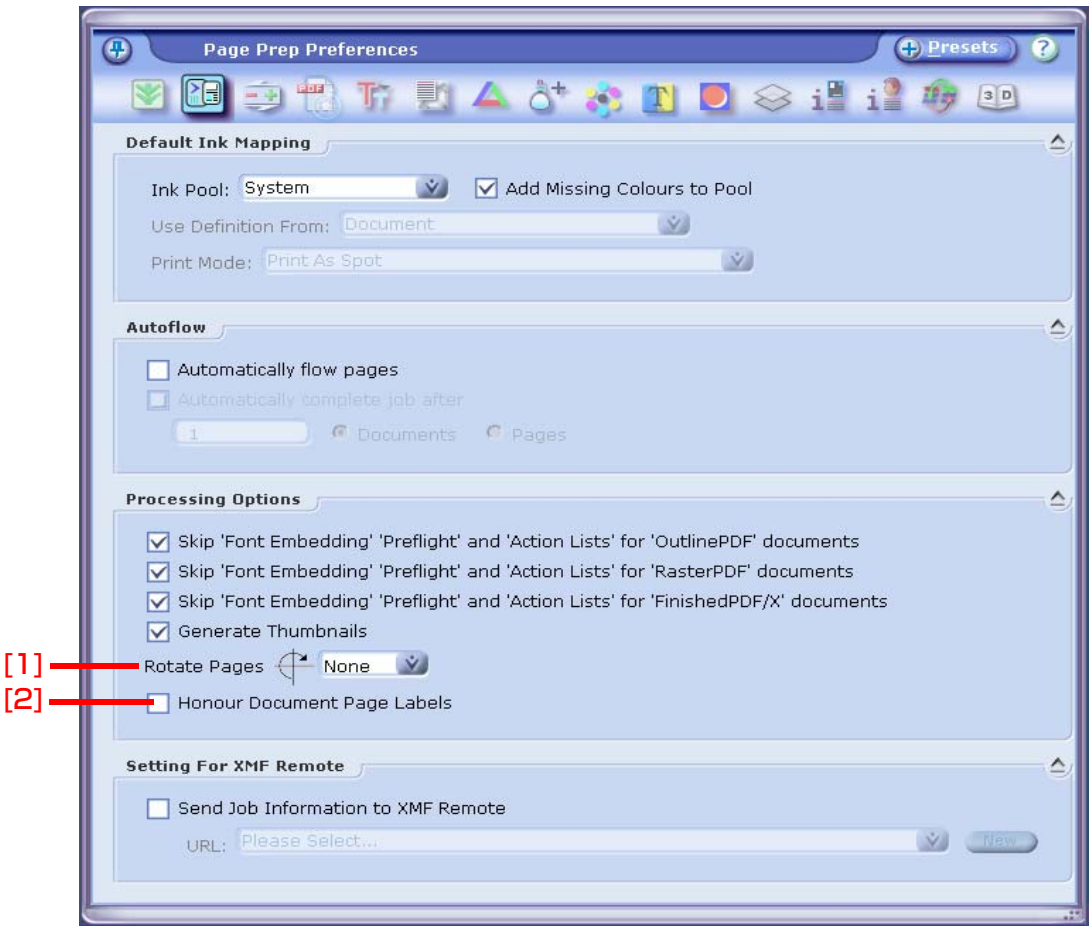
Name	Description
Use Drop Folders	Sets up drop folders. • Add - Select a folder to be used as a drop folder.  • Edit - Edit a folder to be used as a drop folder. • Remove - Remove a folder to be used as a drop folder.

Name	Description
Use Drop Folders	• Source Files Accepted - Specifies the types of source files accepted. When you input a JDF generated by Metrix, check JDF on the Source Files Accepted and Exclude Subdirectories. • General Input Rules - Input File Templates - Enabling this allows you to specify an input file template from the drop-down box. - Edit - Opens the Templates panel in the Admin window. You can edit an input file template in this screen. • Multi-file Rules - TIFFs are produced as 1-page files. Select from the two criteria to determine how multiple 1-bit TIFF files placed in the drop folder should be collated as a 1-page file. - Number of Files - When the specified number of files are placed in the drop folder, all are regarded as the same page. - Time files arriving - After the first file is placed in the drop folder, all subsequent files placed in the drop folder within a specified time are regarded as the same page. • TIFF Orientation Rules - You can use the default orientation or abide by the TIFF tags. Once these are set, you can continue to use the Drop Folder instead of setting each file up as a new job.
Input Settings	Normally select Render to Bleed Box.
Auto Page Mapping Settings	When Auto Mapping is checked, pages are assigned automatically according to the input rules.  • Auto Mapping - When checked, Auto Page Mapping is available. • Add - When you add a new rule, click the Add button. Auto Page Mapping dialog is displayed and you can create the input (file name) and mapping rules. • Edit - When you edit an existing input rule, select a rule that you want to edit and click the Edit button. The Auto Page Mapping dialog box is displayed and you can edit the rule. • Delete - When you select a rule and click the Delete button, you can remove a rule from the list. • Move Up, Move Down - A rule is applied beginning at the top of the list. By changing the order of rules, you can change the order of priority. Select a rule you wish to change and click either buttons to move up/down the rule on the list. • Overwrite the page(s) that have been already mapped. - When checked, pages that have already been mapped are overwritten by input pages. Blank pages and Not Required pages are also overwritten. When it is not checked, input pages are mapped into unmapped pages only. Input pages are not mapped into Blank pages, Not Required pages and pages that have been already mapped. • Re-mapping - Re-maps input file. When this button is clicked, a mapping that has been already finished is cancelled and the input file is re-mapped.

3.5.2 – Page Prep Preferences

This panel allows for default ink mapping and Autoflow to be set up.

Diagram: Page Prep Preferences panel

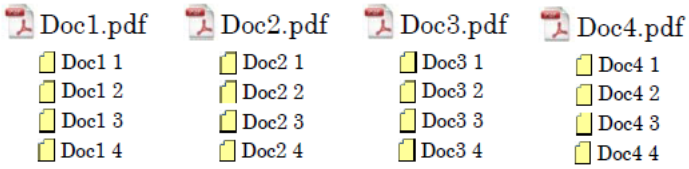
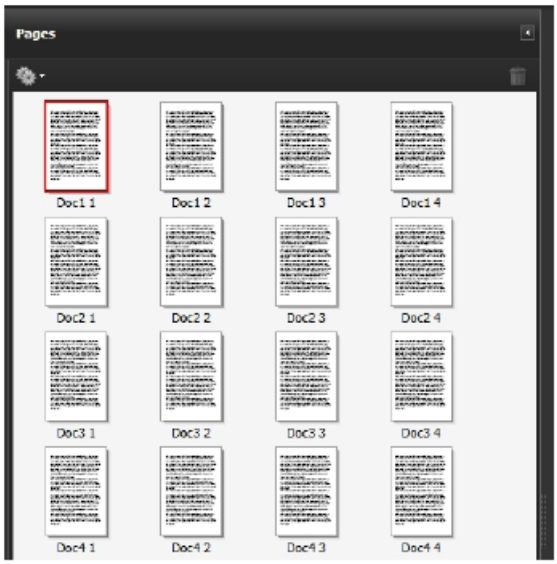


About Page Prep Preferences panel

Name	Description
Default Ink Mapping	• Ink Pool - Use to select the Ink Pool that colour definitions will either be added to or taken from depending on the Add Missing Colours to Pool setting. • Add Missing Colours to Pool - If the check box is checked, all the colours contained in the incoming documents, that are being added to the job, will be added to the selected ink pool unless they already exist in that pool (existing definitions will not be updated). • Use Definition from - Use to select one of the three options that control how inks are added to the job colour pool. 1. Document - If this option is selected, the inks added to the job will have “use definition from” set to “document” and all the ink parameters will be those extracted from the document. If the document does not contain all the ink information, the missing information will be taken from the description in the selected ink pool. 2. Ink Pool - If this option is selected, the inks added to the job will have “use definition from” set to “ink pool” and all the ink parameters will be those taken from the selected ink pool. - Ink Discovery - If the ink is not defined in the selected ink pool, when it is discovered in the input document then the job settings for the ink will be those extracted from the document. - Rendering - In this mode the renderer will, when converting from spot to process, use the ink values for the named ink in the selected ink pool instead of those in the job. If when rendering, the ink cannot be found in the selected ink pool, then the job values for the ink will be used.

Name	Description
Default Ink Mapping	3. Copy of Ink Pool - If this option is selected, the inks added to the job will have “use definition from” set to “override” and the ink parameters will be those taken from the ink pool. - Ink Discovery - If the ink is not in the ink pool, the settings will be taken from the document. - Rendering - In this mode the renderer will, when converting from spot to process, use the ink values in the job instead of those in the selected ink pool. • Print Mode - Use to select one of the three options that control the default printing behaviour when the inks are added to a job. The effects of this can be seen in the lists in the Ink Management workflow Item. This setting does not change inks that are already present in these lists. 1. Print as Spot - If this option is selected, all spot inks added will be set to output as spot colours. 2. Print as Process - If this option is selected, all spot inks added will be converted to process for output. 3. Local Printer Setting - If this option is selected, the output mode (print as spot or print as process) will be determined by the print mode setting in the named ink in the selected ink pool.
Autoflow	This determines the Autoflow behaviour. When enabled, the job processing will start when the input documents meet the specified number of documents/pages.
Processing Options	When Auto Mapping is checked, pages are assigned automatically according to the input rules. • Skip ‘Font Embedding’ ‘Preflight’ and ‘Action Lists’ for ‘OutlinePDF’ documents - If this option is selected and an outline PDF document is added, font embedding, preflight and action lists will not be performed. • Skip ‘Font Embedding’ ‘Preflight’ and ‘Action Lists’ for ‘RasterPDF’ documents - If this option is selected and a raster PDF document is added, font embedding, preflight and action lists will not be performed. • Skip 'Font Embedding' 'Preflight' and 'Action Lists' for 'FinishedPDF/X' documents - If this option is selected and a Finished PDF document is added, font embedding, preflight and action lists will not be performed. • Generate Thumbnails - If files are imported with this option selected, thumbnails will be generated and displayed in the Reading Order. Clear the option to disable the generation of thumbnails. If files are imported with this option disabled, thumbnails can be generated and displayed immediately by opening the Job Edit window and enabling the option. • Rotate Pages **Function Summary** You can specify rotation of 90°, 180° or 270° for all pages.

Name	Description
Processing Options	**Screen Explanation** [1]: Rotate Pages None - Maintains the original orientation of all input pages. 90 - Rotates all input pages 90° clockwise. 180 - Rotates all input pages 180°. 270 - Rotates all input pages 270° clockwise. **Operating Procedure** The example below shows how to set a job template for a workflow that includes one **Plates** project and that rotates input pages by 90°. ① Open the **Admin** window, select **Templates** and then select **Job Templates** from the drop-down menu. ② Select **NewDefault** from the list and click **New**. ③ Add the **Plates** to the workflow item. ④ Click **View Job Settings**, and click the **Preferences** icon. ⑤ Select **90** in the **Rotate Pages** drop-down menu. ⑥ Make other settings and save the template. That completes the procedures for this example. **Restrictions** • If CTP and the proofer require different orientations (for example CTP 90° and proofer 0°), you should rotate the pages in CTP and undo the rotation in the proofer. • Honour Document Page Labels **Function Summary** This is a function that handles the page labels of uploaded PDF manuscripts. When a document is uploaded to XMF, the number format, label prefixes and initial numbers are displayed, allowing the user to check the page order in XMF with the source PDF labels. **Screen Explanation** [2]: Honour Document Page Labels - If this is ticked, the PDF page labels are copied to Reading Order. If this is cleared, the PDF labels are displayed in the Reading Order, as they were in the previous XMF (page 1, page 2, etc).

Name	Description
Processing Options	**Operating Procedure** The following example describes the procedures for outputting a PDF that maintains page labels by using 4 source files with page labels (shown below).  ① Open a new job in XMF using the **NewDefault** job template. Click **New**, select **NewDefault** in Job Templates and click **Submit**. ② Open this job by double-clicking it in the queue. ③ Add a file by clicking **Add Dccuments** at the top of **Source Files**. ④ Select the desired file and click **OK**. ⑤ Click **View Job Settings**, and click the **Preferences** icon. ⑥ Enable **Honour Document Page Labels**. ⑦ Add PDF Export to the workflow. ⑧ Select the four documents in **Source Files** and drag them to PDF Export. ⑨ Specify a PDF output destination of your choice. ⑩ Select **Include Page Name and Number** in PDF Export Settings. ⑪ Click **Save**. ⑫ Open the PDF in Adobe Acrobat and view the labels. The diagram below shows what they should like.  **Restrictions** • Page labels are not maintained during the export of raster PDFs or stitched PDFs. • Page labels are not honoured when outputting Digital Press PDF documents. • In the Reading Order, the page label name never changes, but the label suffix does sometimes change. • A page label is honoured during PDF output if the label has been separately defined. • If you want to insert a space between the label name and the suffix in the Reading Order, you must add a space between the label name and the label suffix.

Name	Description
Setting For XMF Remote	Set the various settings in this panel to send job information to XMF Remote. • Send Job Information to XMF Remote - When checked, Job Information is sent to XMF Remote. • URL - Select URL where the JDF is exported. URL options displayed are those registered in the JDF Export URLs panel in the Admin window. • New - When this button is clicked, the JDF Export URLs panel in the Admin window is displayed and you can add new URLs.

3.5.3 – JDF Input Preferences New

Function Summary

This function selects whether or not to use the colour information contained in the JDF.

Background

Many systems send colour pool information contained in the JDF that has alias ink definitions to which various aliases have been attached. However, because the system on the sending side cannot judge the colour name from the PDF, the information has low credibility. On the other hand, important information related to spot colour mapping is also included in the JDF.
In previous versions, the JDF colour information was extracted in all cases, but in V3.1, a function was added to allow users to decide whether or not to use the JDF information, according to the conditions.

Screen Explanation

[1]	Use Colour Information defined in JDF	Tick the box to copy the colour control information to the job when creating a job from the JDF that was sent from the MIS system. When unticked, the colour control information is not copied.

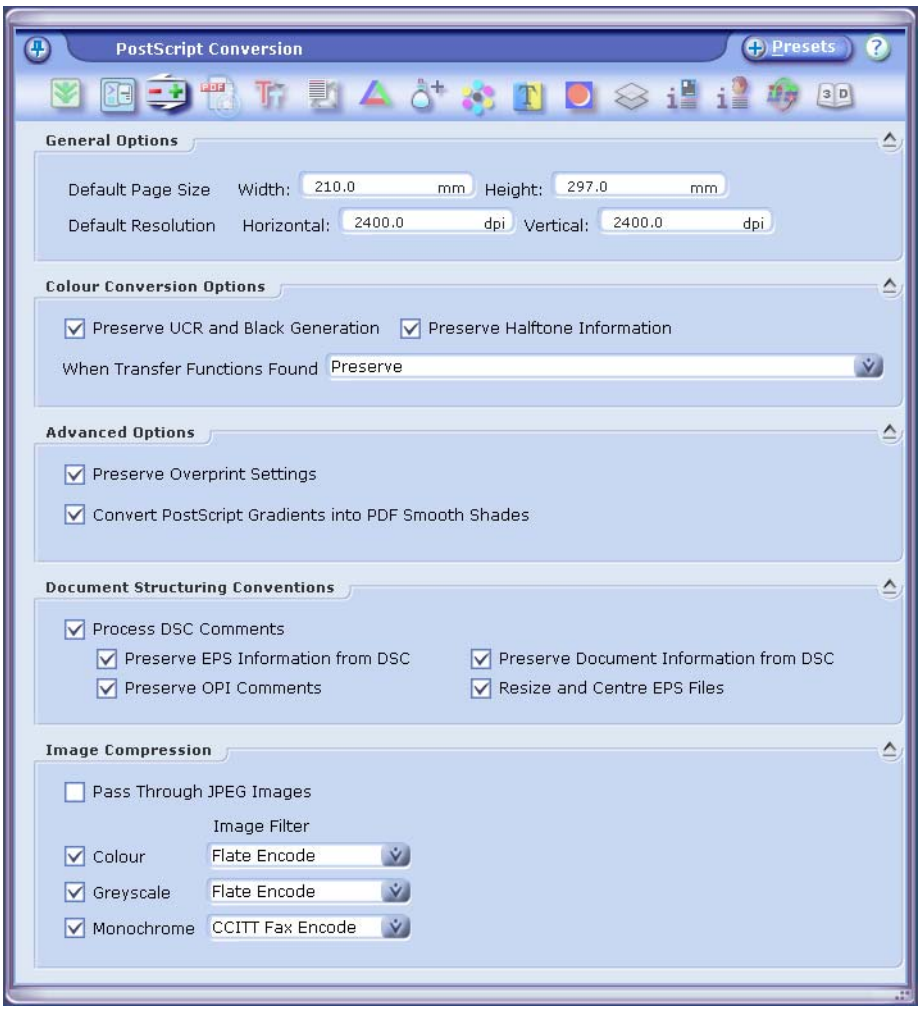
Restrictions

- This function cannot be used in jobs created from TIFF or PDF input, jobs created with the layout application's JDF, or jobs created with XMF Remote.
- The settings of this function cannot be saved or loaded.

3.5.4 – PostScript Conversion

You need to define the setting for converting PS/EPS files to PDF when they arrive at the system.

Diagram: PostScript Conversion panel



About PostScript Conversion panel

Name	Description
General Options	The default page size and resolution can be specified, in case they have not been specified in the document.
Colour Conversion Options	Ticking the option boxes means that colour information from the incoming file will be preserved, instead of using the UCR, Black Generation and Halftone information specified in the job template. You can also control what to do with any transfer functions found in the incoming document: Preserve, Remove, or Apply.
Advanced Options	• Preserve Overprint Settings - Check this box if you want to preserve the overprint settings within the input document. If this is not checked, the values in the Overprint panel will be used. • Convert PostScript Gradients into PDF Smooth Shades - Tick the box if required.

Name	Description
Document Structuring Conventions	These settings concern document structuring. • Process DSC Comments - Tick the box to keep the document structuring information from the source file. - Preserve EPS Information from DSC - Tick to keep information for an EPS, such as the originating application and creation date. - Preserve OPI Comments - If a For Placement Only (FPO) image or comment needs to be replaced with a high-resolution image, extra information is needed in the PDF file. Tick this option to preserve the OPI comments. - Preserve Document Information from DSC - Tick to keep information such as the title, creation date and time. - Resize and Centre EPS Files - Tick to resize and centre EPS (Encapsulated PostScript) files.
Image Compression	PDF allows images to be compressed. JPEG images are often highly compressed, so you can tick the option to skip compression of JPEG images. For other image types you can choose an appropriate compression type, or alternatively untick the boxes to leave them uncompressed.

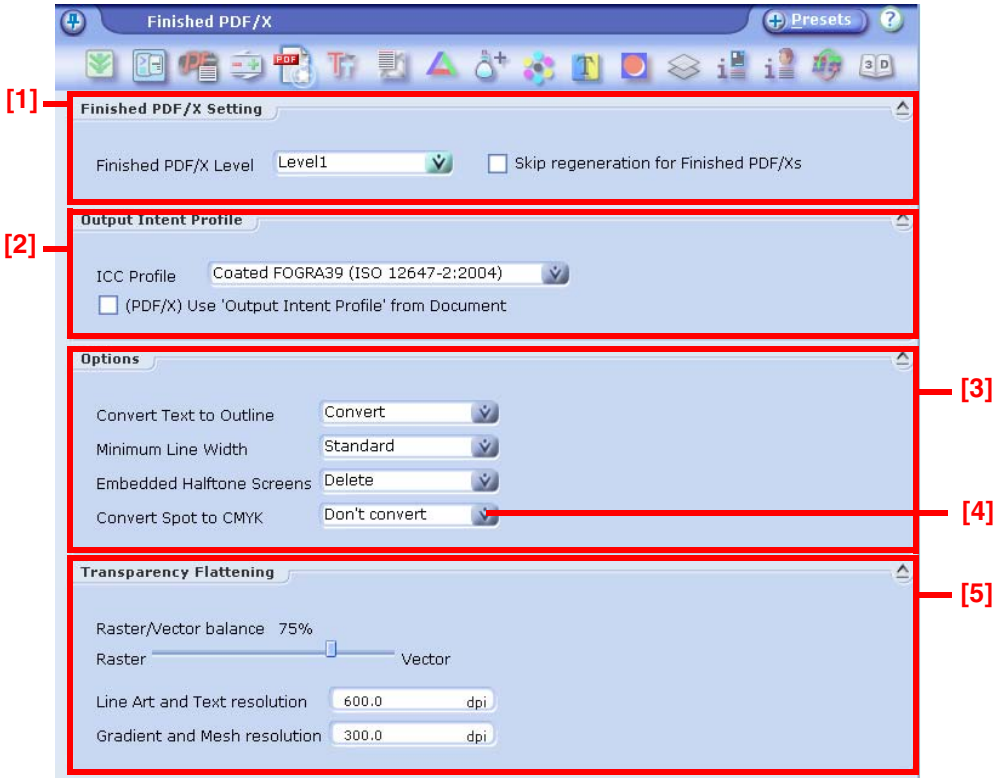
3.5.5 – Finished PDF/X

Function Summary

You can convert input data to file formats like Finished PDF/X that comply with PDF/X-1a and PDF/X-4.
By converting XMF intermediate files to Finished PDF/C format, you can ensure consistency of calculation results between proofs output by XMF and CTP, and consistency of calculation results when documents are output from a different system to XMF.
If you use the Finished PDF/X file as backup data, you can also ensure consistency with previously output versions, even if you are outputting after the RIP version has been updated.

Screen Explanation

The **Finished PDF/X** panel contains the following areas.



[1]	Finished PDF/X Setting	• Finished PDF/X Level - Select the Finished PDF/X level. - Level 1 - Generates a file that complies with PDF/X-1a. - Level 2 - Generates a file that complies with PDF/X-4. - Don't generate - The file is not converted to Finished PDF/X. - Skip regeneration for Finished PDF/Xs - Select whether you want to regenerate Finished PDF/X , if Finished PDDF/X has already been entered. If you check this, the file will not be regenerated and reconversion will be bypassed. For details, see 3.5.5.1 - Bypassing of Finished PDF/X Files.
[2]	Output Intent Profile	This is displayed when **Level 1** or **Level 2** are selected in **Finished PDF/X Setting**. • ICC Profile - Select an ICC profile from the drop-down list. - (PDF/X) Use 'Output Intent Profile' from Document - If this is checked when an output intent profile has been set in the input data, that profile is set as the Finished PDF/X output intent profile.

[3]	Options	This is displayed when **Level 1** or **Level 2** has been selected in **Finished PDF/X Setting**. • Convert Text to Outline - Select whether you want to outline embedded fonts. • Minimum Line Width - Select minimum line width conversion method. - Standard - Convert lines narrower than 0.12pt to 0.12pt. - Fine - Convert lines narrower than 0.06pt to 0.06pt. • Embedded Halftone Screens- Select whether to maintain or delete halftone screen information within the input file. • Convert Spot to CMYK New **Function Summary** You can perform a setting for converting the spot colours into process colours and outputting the results (performs the same process as "ConvertallColortoCMYK" in the Action Lists). **Background** In previous versions, if you wanted to convert spot colours into process colours, you had to register the process colour conversion setting in advance in the Action List. In V3.1, a setting option has been added to the option panel to simplify this procedure. **Screen Explanation** [4]: Convert Spot to CMYK - Select **Convert** to convert the spot colours to process colours when Finished PDF/X is generated. If you select **Don't convert**, the spot colour object is processed as a spot colour. **Restrictions** • If you enable this function and perform APPE output, the spot colour ink information will remain. If you then output in this condition, unnecessary spot colour ink information will be output as a blank separation. To avoid this, enable **Don't Output Blank Separations** in **Product Inks** of **Output Order** in the **Separations** panel, or enable **Set all Spots to Print as Process**.
[5]	Transparency Flattening	This is displayed when **Level 1** has been selected in **Finished PDF/X Setting**. Flattening is achieved using the Adobe PDF Print Engine's built-in flattening process. • Raster/Vector balance - Use the slider to set a value for object processing. • Line Art and Text resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised line art and text. • Gradient and Mesh resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised gradient and Illustrator mesh objects.

Restrictions

- You cannot reconvert a Level 1 Finished PDF/X file to a Level 2 Finished PDF/X file.
- If **Level 1** or **Level 2** has been selected in **Finished PDF/X Setting**, the **Overprint** item in the **Overpint** panel changes to **Finished PDF/X Overprint**. For details, see 3.5.12 - Overprint.
- If you select **Level 1** or **Level 2** in **Finished PDF/X Setting**, you will no longer be able to set separate layers for Plates, Rip Proofing and PDF Export in the **Versioning** panel. Instead, you will set for all of them at the same time. For details, see 3.5.13 - Versioning.
- When you are converting to Finished PDF/X format, the colour information contained in the input file is converted to CMYK and spot colours.
- When you are converting to Finished PDF/X format, the layer information in Trapping and Versioning is discarded.
- Data exceeding 1,000 pages or larger than 2GB cannot be converted to Finished PDF/X.
- TIFF data and separated PS/PDF data cannot be converted to Finished PDF/X.
- When converting to Finished PDF/X format, you must retry page preparation after making the versioning settings, if you want to update the Versioning panel settings in the 2D Viewer display.
- Fonts are embedded in the output when a Finished PDF is generated. The **Embed Fonts in the Output** check box is not displayed in the **Fonts** panel.
- Document retargeting is disabled when a Finished PDF is generated. Drop-down menus of the following check boxes are not displayed.
  - **Document Retargeting** box
  - **Document ICC Profile** drop-down menu
  - **(PDF/X) use 'Output Intent Profile' from Document** check box
  - **Use Device Link Profile** check box

- **Preserve Black**, **Preserve Primaries**, and **Keep 100% solid** check boxes (only if Adobe Colour Engine is selected) and the **Prefer Range Clipping**/**Prefer Range Compression** option buttons

3.5.5.1- Bypassing of Finished PDF/X Files

Function Summary

When using Finished PDF/X files as input files, you may bypass some inputting and reconversions to Finished PDF/X.

There are two ways of bypassing.

1. Setting in the Page Prep Preferences panel (See 3.5.2 - Page Prep Preferences - Processing Options)
2. Setting in the Finished PDF/X panel (See 3.5.5 - Finished PDF/X - Finished PDF/X Setting)

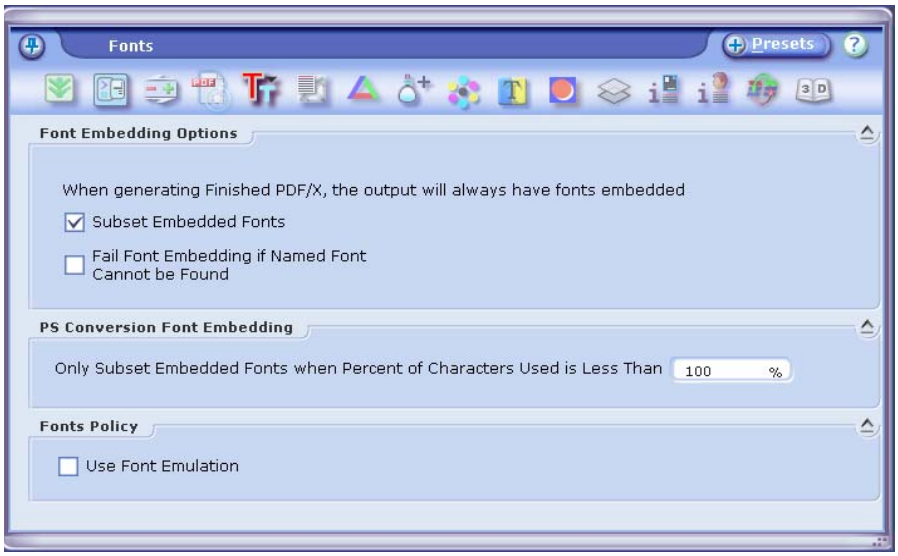
Restrictions

- A Finished PDF/X file that has been generated on Level 2 can be converted to Level 1 format (without bypass), even if **Skip regeneration for Finished PDF/X** is ticked in the **Finished PDF/X** panel.
- A Finished PDF/X file that has been generated on Level 1 cannot be converted to Level 2 format (with bypass), even if **Skip regeneration for Finished PDF/X** is cleared in the **Finished PDF/X** panel.
- If you have reconverted a Finished PDF/X file to the same level, or reconverted from Level 2 to Level 1, you cannot undo an irreversible converson that was made during the generation of the first Finished PDF/X file. For example, you cannot change the **Minimum Line Width** setting of a Finished PDF/X file back from **Standard** to **Fine**.

3.5.6 – Fonts

This panel defines settings for font embedding etc.

Diagram: Fonts panel



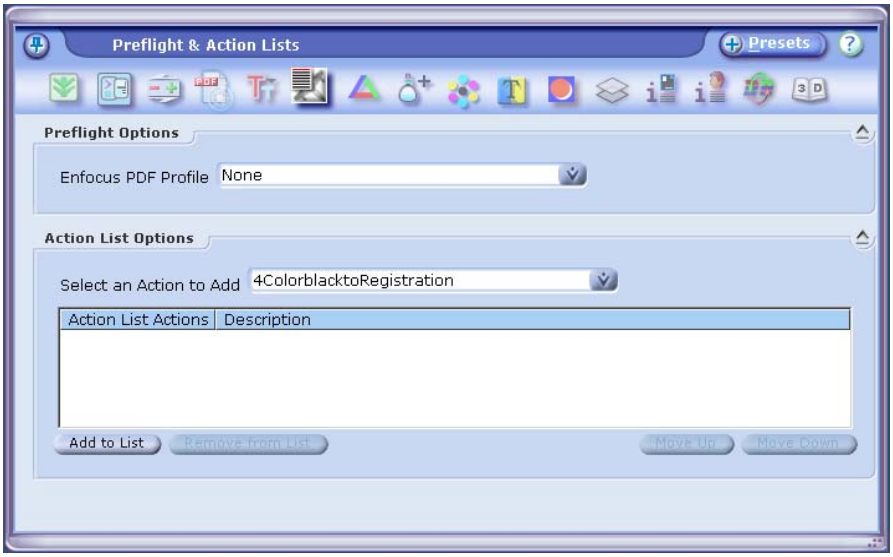
About Fonts panel

Name	Description
Font Embedding Options	These options control the embedding of fonts in the prepared PDF. • Embed Fonts in the Output - Tick this option to embed any fonts that have not already been embedded. • Subset Embedded Fonts - Tick this option to embed only a necessary subset of the fonts. • Fail Font Embedding if Named Font Cannot be Found - Tick this option to fail the job if the required font cannot be located.
PS Conversion Font Embedding	Tick this option to save time when embedding a subset of a font. When the percentage of characters used in a font is less than the specified amount then the subset is calculated and embedded, otherwise the whole font is embedded.
Fonts Policy	• Use Font Emulation - Tick this option to use Adobe font emulation technology. This will emulate a font that is required and cannot be found in the document.

3.5.7 – Preflight and Action List

Preflight and action lists are created in the Enfocus Pitstop application.

Diagram: Preflight and Action List panel



About Preflight and Action List panel

Name	Description
Preflight Options	• Enfocus PDF Profile - Select a PDF profile to apply from the drop-down list.
Action List Options	Adds an Action. • Select an Action to Add - Select an Action to add from the drop-down list. • Action List Actions - Displays added Actions. • Add to List - Adds the Action selected in Select an Action to Add. • Remove from List - Remove the added Action from the Action List Actions.

3.5.8 – Colour

This panel defines colour conversion settings for the processing in general and document elements (Image/Line Art/Text/Smooth Shades) of different colour types of CMYK, RGB and Grey.

Diagram: Colour panel (with Adobe Colour Engine selected)

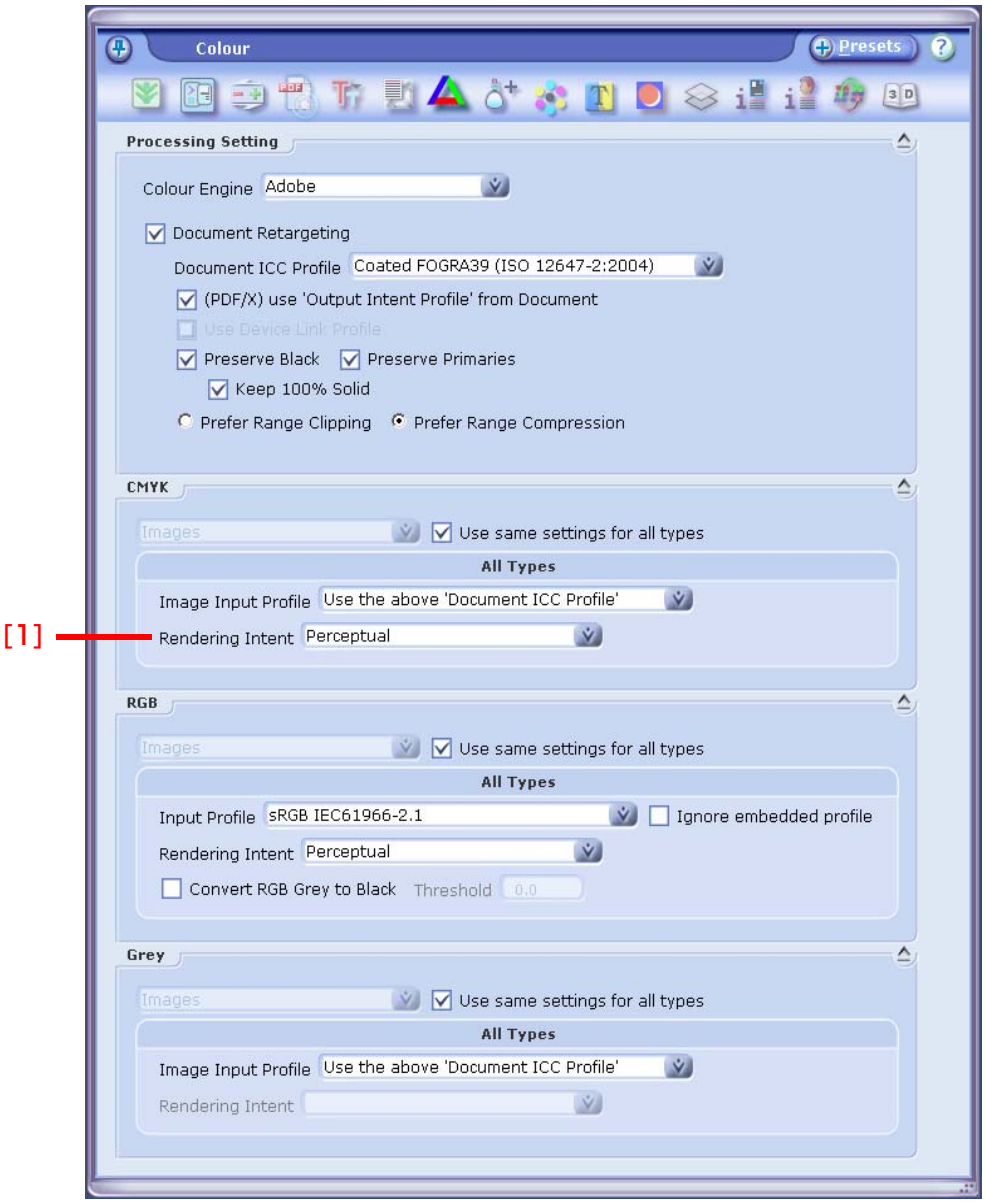
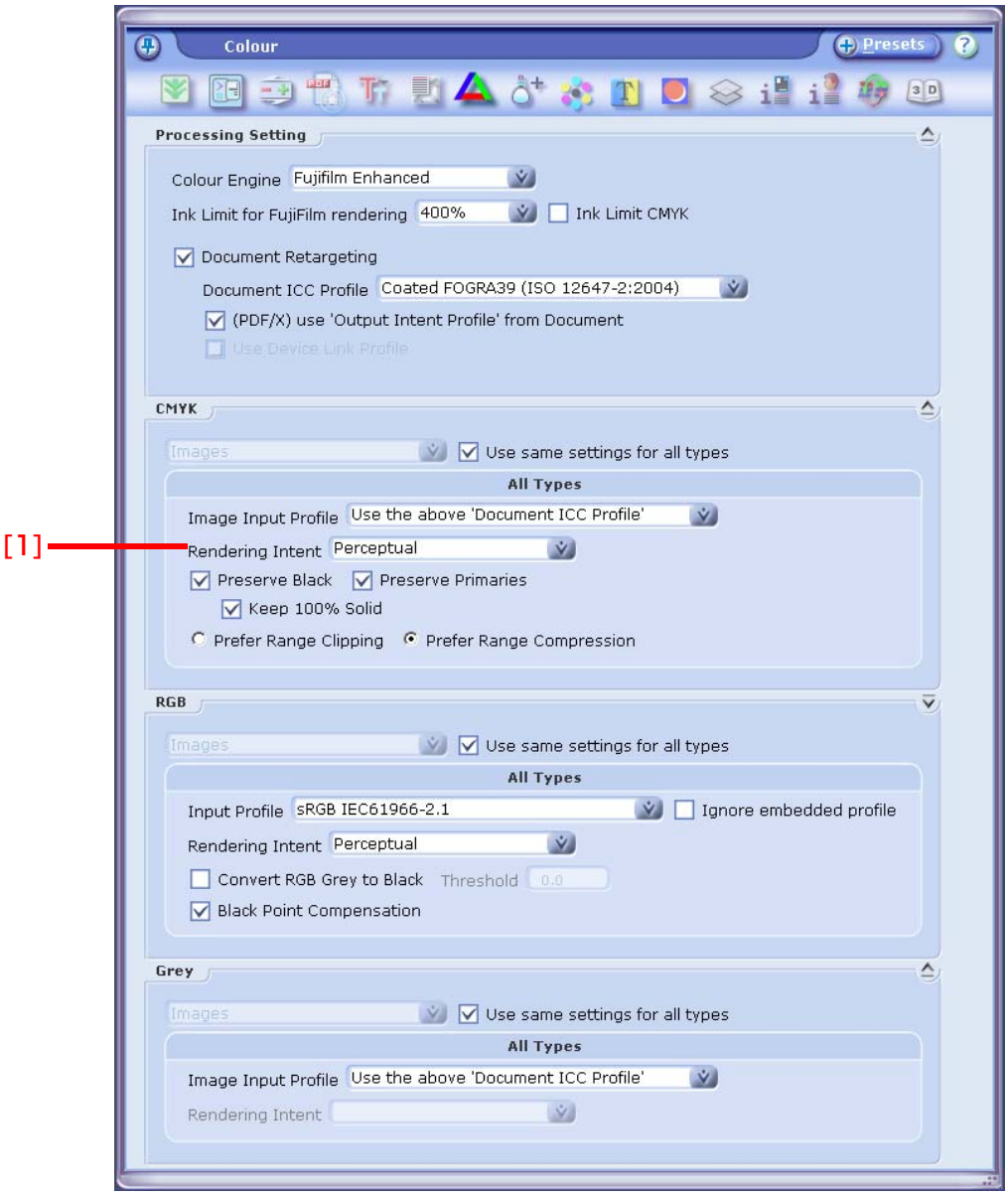


Diagram: Colour panel (with Fujifilm Enhanced Colour Engine selected)



About Colour panel

Name	Description
Processing Setting	• Colour Engine - Colour engine is used to convert various coloured elements in a document (e.g. CMYK, RGB and Grey) to the press colours (e.g. CMYK). There are two colour conversion engines available: Adobe and Fujifilm Enhanced. The CMYK, RGB and Grey panels below change depending on the Colour Engine selected. The set of controls that are available on the remainder of the Colour panel depends on the Colour Engine selected. • Ink Limit for Fujifilm rendering - Sets a total ink limit for the colour (sum of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow and Black tint values) of elements after conversion when using any of the Fujifilm rendering intents. This field defines the total limit (if 400% is selected, the total ink limit does not apply).

Name	Description
Processing Setting	• Document Retargeting - When Document Retargeting is used, documents prepared for printing on one printing system can be converted to allow them to be printed on another printing system without affecting colours. • Document ICC Profile - Specifies an ICC profile that represents the characteristics of the printing press for which the document was designed. • (PDF/X) use ‘Output Intent Profile’ from Document - PDF/X conforming documents already include an ICC profile (the ‘Output Intent’ profile) that represents the intended printing condition. Check this option if you wish to use the Output Intent profile from any document as the Document ICC Profile. • Use Device Link Profile - You can use the Device Link Profile while Document Retargeting is available. When this check box is checked, the drop-down menu of Device Link Profile is displayed. You can select a profile from the Device Link Profiles registered on the XMF system. • Preserve Black - When checked, elements that include only a black colour component (for example black text) will be output only to the black separation. • Preserve Primaries - When checked, elements that use only Cyan, Magenta or Yellow ink will be converted so that the resulting colour uses only the single primary ink. • Keep 100% solid - This option is only available when one of Preserve Black or Preserve Primaries is checked. When checked, it will preserve solid (100%) elements for output (preserving black elements when Preserve Black is checked or primary colour elements when Preserve Primaries is checked). • Prefer Range Clipping / Prefer Range Compression - This setting is effective when performing colour conversion from a printing process with a large colour gamut to a printing process with a smaller colour gamut (e.g. colours intended for coated paper printing are converted for uncoated paper). Selecting Prefer Range Clipping clips colours that are outside the smaller colour gamut and retain colour accuracy inside the gamut while Prefer Range Compression compresses colours inside the gamut and so avoid clipping.

Name	Description
CMYK	This panel defines colour conversion settings for the CMYK document elements (Images/Line Art/Text/Smooth Shades). (Those with * are for Fujifilm Enhanced Colour Engine only) • Use same settings for all types - When checked all element types will be processed using the same set of parameters. • Input Profile / Image Input Profile - The selected profile will be used to process document elements that have no associated ICC profile. However, if **Ignore embedded** profile is checked, the selected ICC profile will be applied to all document elements. However, the available settings vary depending on the conditons set by **Document Retargeting** and **Use same settings for all types**. For details, see Restrictions. • Ignore embedded profile - When checked, the selected profile will be used for all document elements in place of any embedded profile. • Rendering Intent **Function Summary** The specified rendering intent is used for colour conversion. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Rendering Intent - Specify the rendering intent that you want to use. - Assume Document Output Intent - If you select this option, the rendering intent specified for the document will be used for colour conversion. **Restrictions** • This function is not displayed if colour conversion is not being performed. • You cannot select **Assume Document Output Intent** in **Rending Intent** if the Fujifilm Enhanced colour conversion engine is being used. • Preserve Black* - When checked, elements that include only a black colour component (for example black text) will be output only to the black separation. • Preserve Primaries* - When checked, elements that use only Cyan, Magenta or Yellow ink will be converted so that the resulting colour uses only the single primary ink. • Keep 100% solid* - This option is only available when one of Preserve Black or Preserve Primaries is checked. When checked, it will preserve solid (100%) elements for output (preserving black elements when Preserve Black is checked or primary colour elements when Preserve Primaries is checked). • Prefer Range Clipping / Prefer Range Compression* - This setting is effective when performing colour conversion from a printing process with a large colour gamut to a printing process with a smaller colour gamut (e.g. colours intended for coated paper printing are converted for uncoated paper). Selecting Prefer Range Clipping clips colours that are outside the smaller colour gamut and retain colour accuracy inside the gamut while Prefer Range Compression compresses colours inside the gamut and so avoid clipping. • Preserve 100% Black* - This option is only available when Fujifilm Rendering Intent is specified. When checked, it ensures that solid black document elements are preserved as solid (100%) black. • Preserve Black Density/ Preserve Black Tint* - This is only available when a relative colour (Fuji) is specified for Rendering Intent. Selecting Preserve Black Density ensures that colour conversion is performed without changing the density of the black separation. Selecting Preserve Black Tint ensures that colour conversion is performed without changing the tint value of the black separation. • Preserve Pure Solid Colour* - This is only available when Fujifilm Rendering Intent is specified. When checked, ensures that document elements that use pure solid colours of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow and Black are preserved as pure solid colours. • Preserve Pure Colour* - This is only available when Fujifilm Rendering Intent is specified. When checked, ensures that 0% colours are output as 0%.

Name	Description
RGB	This panel defines colour conversion settings for the RGB document elements (Image/Line Art/Text/Smooth Shades). • Use same settings for all types - Same as the CMYK panel. • Input Profile / Image Input Profile - Same as the CMYK panel. • Ignore embedded profile - Same as the CMYK panel. • Rendering Intent - Same as the CMYK panel. • Convert RGB Grey to Black - When checked, document elements that use equal values of RGB will be converted to black-only elements (C=M=Y=0). • Threshold - Specifies the threshold from which colours defined as equal RGB values are converted to black-only (C=M=Y=0). • Black Point Compensation* - When checked, the tone scale will be adjusted during colour conversion so that the darkest neutral colour of the RGB colour space is mapped to the darkest neutral colour of the press CMYK space.
Grey	This panel defines colour conversion settings for the grey document elements (Image/Line Art/Text/Smooth Shades). • Use same settings for all types - Same as the CMYK panel. • Input Profile / Image Input Profile - Same as the CMYK panel. • Ignore embedded profile - Same as the CMYK panel. • Rendering Intent - Same as the CMYK panel.

Restrictions

- The settings available for **Input Profile** and **Image Input Profile** in the **CMYK** and **Grey panels**, and the display of the **Ignore embedded profile** check box, change in the following way, depending on the conditions set in **Document Retargeting** and **Use same settings for all types**.
  Case 1: If **Document Retargeting** has been disabled, and **Use same settings for all types** has been enabled or **Image** has been selected as the document element

Item selected in **Image Input File**	**Ignore embedded profile** setting
Don't convert CMYK Don't convert Grey	Check box is hidden and no settings can be made.
Assume Document Output Intent	
Registered profile	Check box is displayed, and the option can be enabled/disabled.

  Case 2: If **Document Retargeting** has been disabled, and **Use same settings for all types** has been disabled and either **Line Art**, **Text** or **Smooth Shades** has been selected as the document element

Item selected in **Input File**	**Ignore embedded profile** setting
Don't convert CMYK Don't convert Grey	In either case, the check box is hidden and no settings can be made.
Assume Document Output Intent	

  Case 3: If **Document Retargeting** has been enabled, and **Use same settings for all types** has been enabled and **Image** has been selected as the document element

Item selected in **Image Input File**	**Ignore embedded profile** setting
Use the above 'Document ICC Profile'	Check box is hidden and no settings can be made.
Assume Document Output Intent	
Registered profile	Check box is displayed, and the profile can be enabled/disabled.

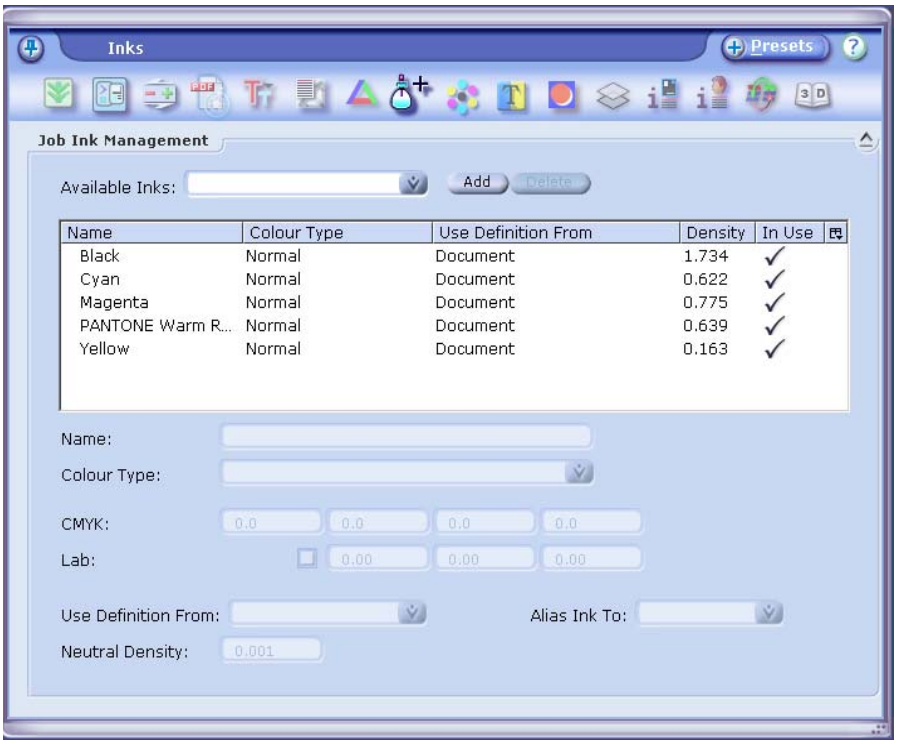
  Case 4: If **Document Retargeting** has been enabled, and **Use same settings for all types** has been disabled and either **Line Art**, **Text** or **Smooth Shades** has been selected as the document element

Item selected in **Input File**	**Ignore embedded profile** setting
Use the above 'Document ICC Profile'	In either case, the check box is hidden and no settings can be made.
Assume Document Output Intent	

3.5.9 – Inks

The Inks panel controls spot colours contained in incoming documents. Inks found in documents are shown in the list box.

Diagram: Inks panel



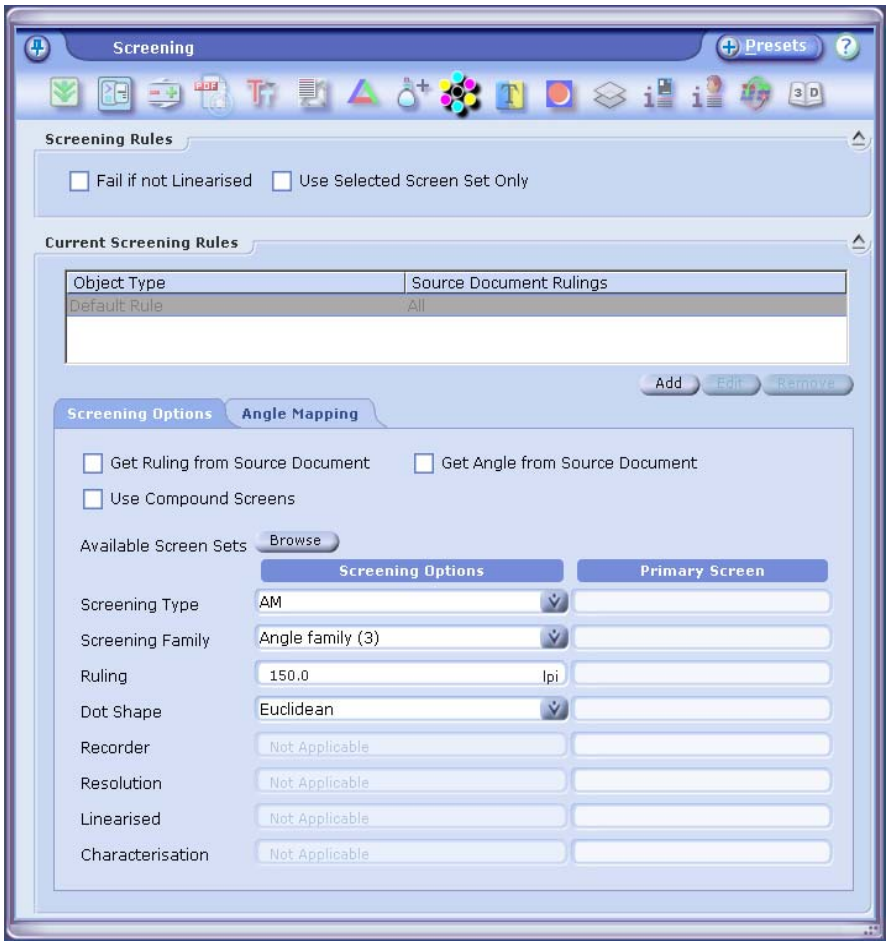
About Inks panel

Name	Description
Job Ink Management	• Available Inks - Available inks can be selected from the pull-down list. • Add - Adds an ink shown in the pull-down list to the list box. • Delete - Removes the selected ink from the list box. • Name - Enter a name to identify the ink. • Colour Type - Select from the following: - Die Line - For die line inks, to ensure that underlying items trap. - Normal - For traditional process inks and most spot inks. - Transparent - For varnishes, to ensure that underlying items trap. - Opaque - For heavy, opaque inks to prevent trapping of underlying colours, but allow for trapping along ink edges, like metallic inks. - Opaque Ignore - For heavy, opaque inks to prevent trapping of underlying colours, and to prevent trapping along ink edges. • CMYK - If CMYK values are to be used when converting to process, enter the CMYK values for the colour. • Lab - If the check box is selected, the Lab colours will be used in preference to the CMYK colour. If it is cleared the CMYK colour will be used. If Lab values are to be used when converting to process, enter the Lab values for the colour.
Job Ink Management	• Use Definition From - The definition for colours can come from either the document or the ink pool. Override can also be selected. • Alias Ink To - You can select another ink to be used instead. • Neutral Density - The most accurate method of determining an ink's neutral density value is by using a commercial densitometer.

3.5.10 – Screening

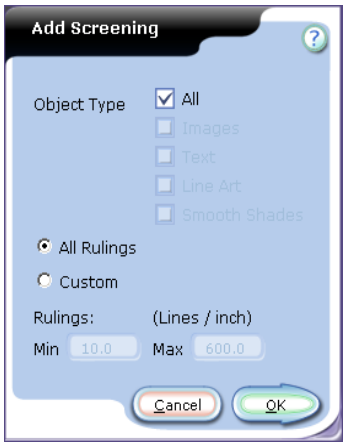
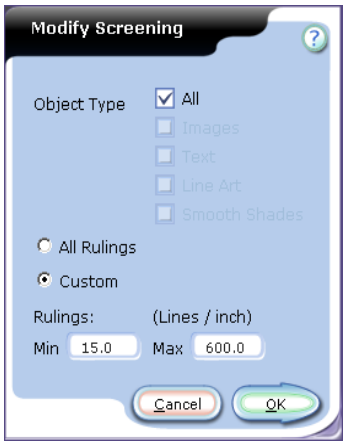
This panel defines the screening applied to incoming pages, including a set of rules to alter the required screens according to the content of the incoming page.

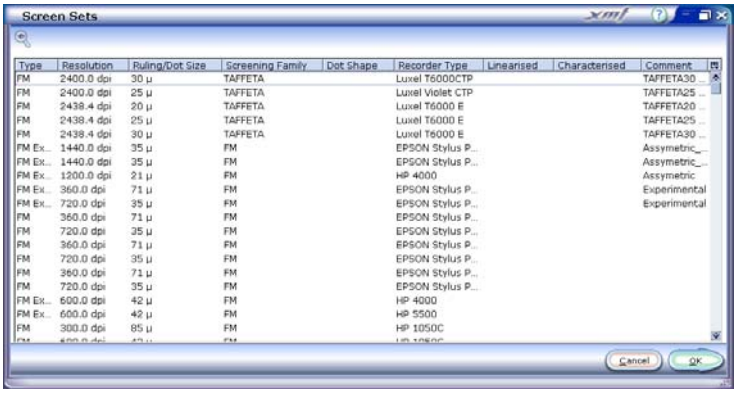
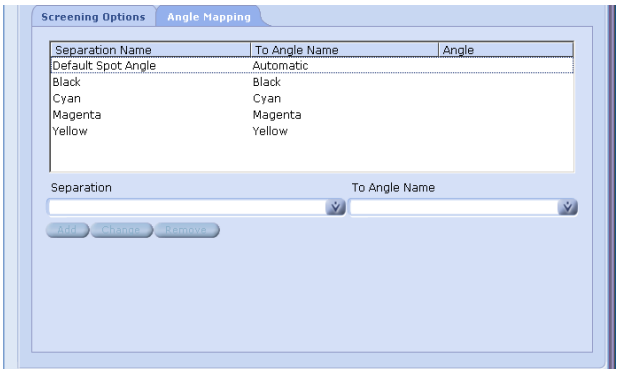
Diagram: Screening panel



About Screening panel

Name	Description
Screening Rules	• Fail if not Linearised - Tick this box to fail the job if the selected screen is not linearised. • Use Selected Screen Set Only - Tick this box to look for an exact match to the Screening Options settings only.

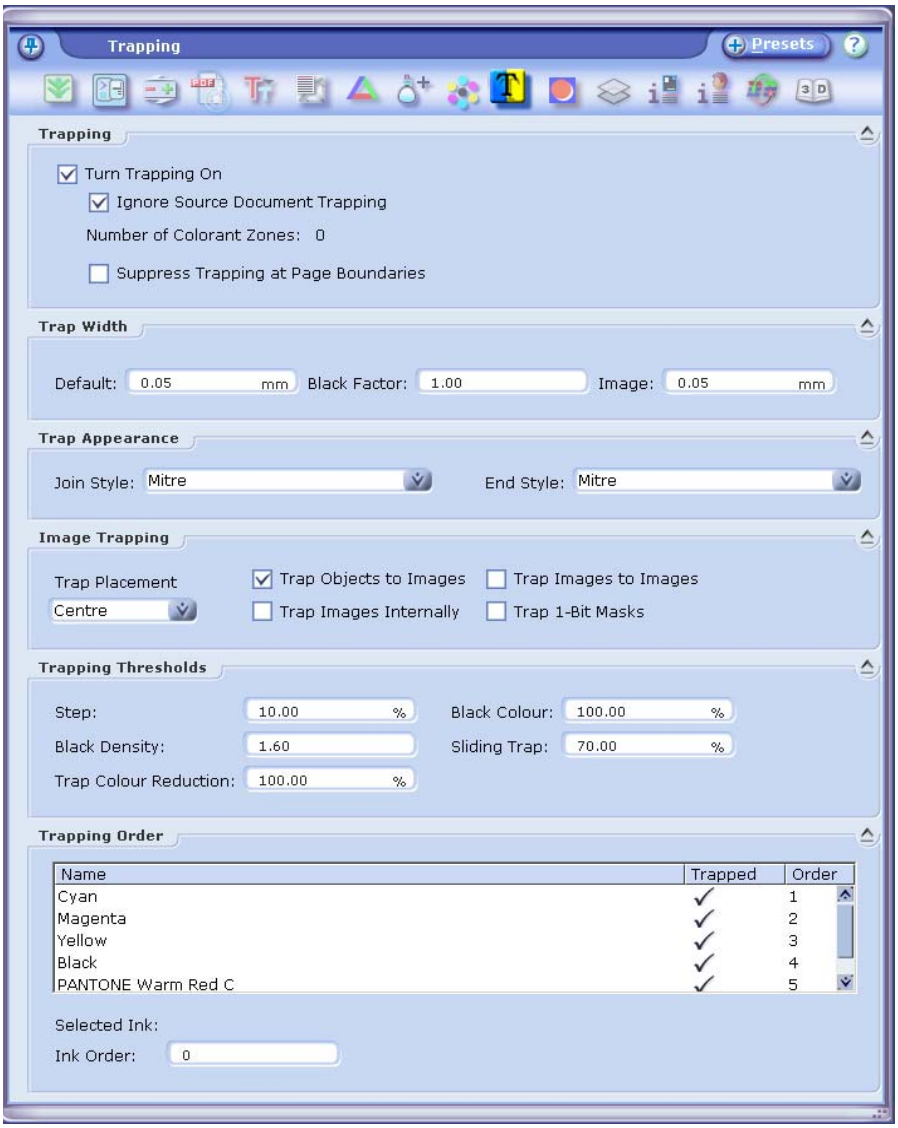
Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	A screening rule can be set for each object type (Images, Text, Line Art or Smooth Shades), and different screen types can be applied according to the screen rulings (line/inch) set for the objects. • Current Screening Rules - Displays the list of object types as well as the min and max screen rulings. • Add - Click to open the Add Screening dialog box. This allows you to select the object type and the min and max screen rulings  • Edit - If you click this when a screen is highlighted in the list, the Modify Screening dialog box is displayed. This allows you to change the object type and the min and max screen rulings.  • Remove - Click this to remove the screen highlighted in the list.

Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	• Screening Options tab - Get Ruling from Source Document / Get Angle from Source Document - Tick these options to use the screen ruling and angle from the source document, otherwise the values will be overridden by your default values for Screening Type, Screening Family, Ruling and Dot Shape. The XMF Server will choose the screen that most closely matches your settings according to the Screen Set defined in the Calibration Manager. - Use Compound Screens - Tick this to display the Secondary Screen. - Browse - Click to open a list of screen sets available from the Calibration Manager, and select the most appropriate one for this ruling. Alternatively, enter selections manually in the Screening Options boxes.  • Angle Mapping tab - Spot colours defined in the job can be mapped to the angle of one of the process colours. - Separation - Select a spot colour from the drop-down list. - To Angle Name - Select a process angle to match from the drop-down list. - Add / Change buttons - Click to add to the list/change the spot colour/process angle selected above. 

3.5.11 – Trapping

You need to define the setting for converting PS/EPS files to PDF when they arrive at the system.

Diagram: Trapping panel



About Trapping panel

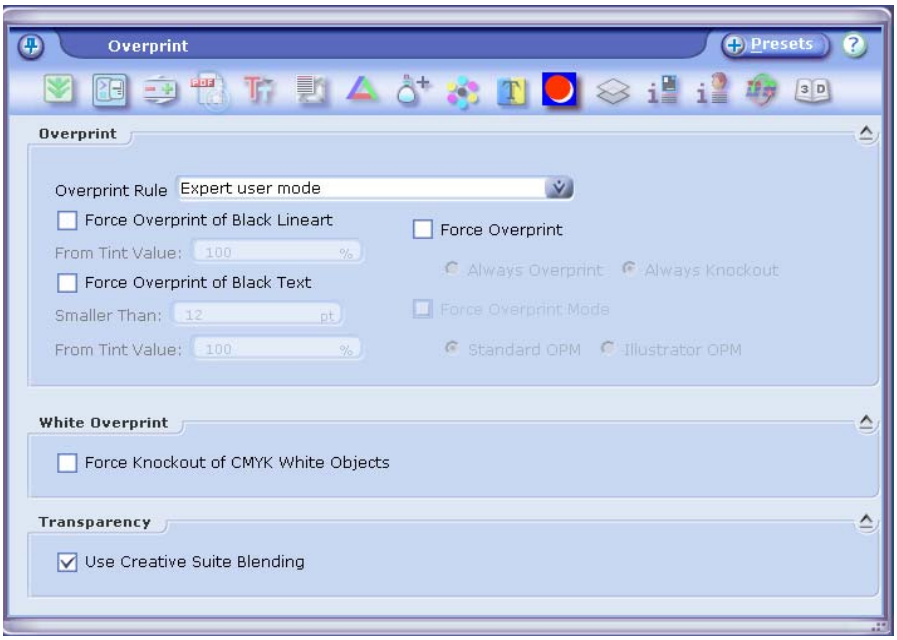
Name	Description
Trapping	• Turn Trapping On - Settings from this panel are added to the trapping options from the incoming document. • Ignore Source Document Trapping - Tick to discard the settings from the incoming document and control the entire trapping options using this panel.
Trap Width	Trap width specifies the amount of overlap for each trap. • Default - Specifies the trap width for trapping all colours, except those involving solid black. • Black - The distance that inks spread into solid black, or the holdback amount — the distance between black edges and underlying inks for trapping rich blacks. • Image - The distance that inks spread into solid images, or the holdback amount — the distance between image edges and underlying inks.

Name	Description
Trap Appearance	These options define what the trap should look like when it joins another trap, or comes to an end. • Join Style - The shape of the outside join of two trap segments. Choose from: Mitre, Round, Bevel. • End Style - the shape of the intersection of three-way traps. Choose from: Mitre, Overlap.
Image Trapping	You can set trapping options to control traps within images, and to control traps between bitmap images (e.g. Photoshop, raster PDF files) and vector objects (e.g. those from a drawing program and vector PDF files). • Trap Placement - Determines where the trap falls when you trap vector objects to bitmap images; all options create a visually consistent edge. - Centre - Creates a trap that straddles the edge between objects and images. - Choke - Causes objects to overlap the abutting image. - Normal - Causes the trapping between images and objects to follow the same rules used for trapping between objects. - Spread - Causes the bitmap image to overlap the abutting object. • Trap Objects To Images - Ensures that vector objects (e.g. frames used as keylines) trap to images, using the Trap Placement settings. • Trap Images To Images - Turns on trapping along the boundary of overlapping or abutting bitmap images. • Traps Images Internally - Turns on trapping among colours within each individual bitmap image, not just where they touch vector objects. • Trap 1-Bit Masks - Ensures that 1-bit images trap to abutting objects.
Trapping Thresholds	Trap thresholds are adjusted, as recommended by your prepress service provider, to correspond to printing conditions. • Step - Specifies the colour change threshold at which the trapping engine creates a trap. • Black Colour - The minimum amount of black ink required before the Black trap width setting is applied. • Black Density - Indicates the neutral density value from which an ink is considered to be black. • Sliding Trap - Indicates the percentage difference between the neutral densities of abutting colours. • Trap Colour Reduction - In order to prevent certain abutting colours (such as pastels) from making an unsightly trap that is darker than either colour, specify the degree to which components from abutting colours are used to reduce the trap colour.
Trapping Order	Specify which separations are trapped and which order to do them in.

3.5.12 – Overprint

This panel holds the overprint settings.

Diagram: Overprint panel



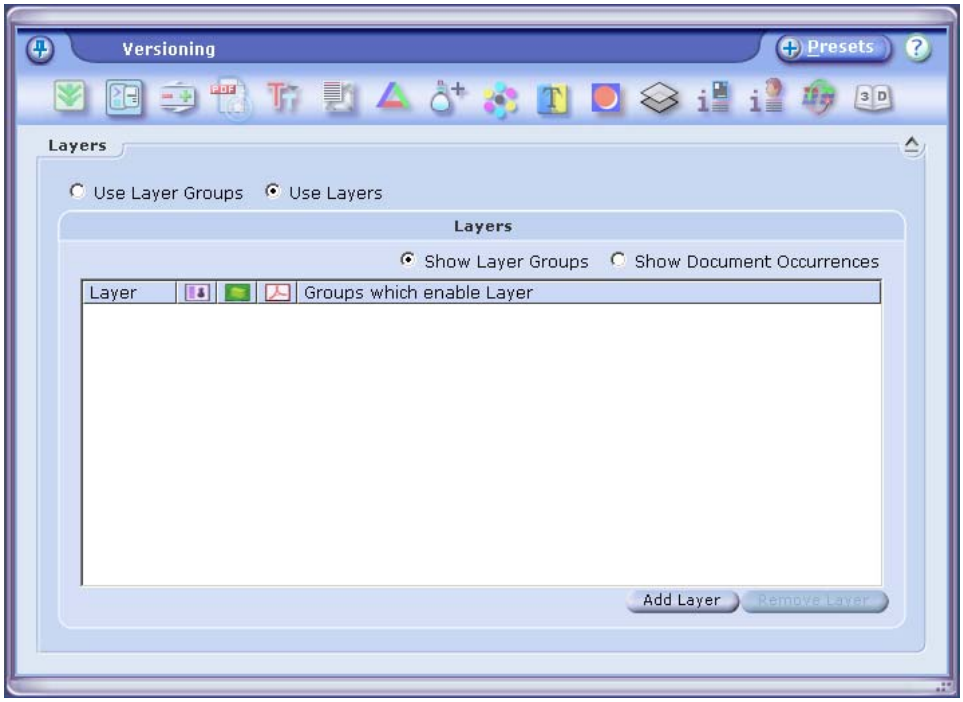
About Overprint panel

Name	Description
Overprint	• Overprint Rule - The drop-down menu has the following options available: - Respect document settings - Force overprint black text and lineart - Force knockout of all elements - Force knockout except for black text - Force knockout except black text and lineart - Expert user mode - Expert user mode allows users to select any of the options below. • Force Overprint of Black Line Art - Overprints all black vector graphics with a tint greater than the specified percentage. • Force Overprint of Black Text - Overprints all black text with a lower point size than the one specified and a tint greater than the specified percentage. • Force Overprint - Forces all elements with the option to always overprint or always Knockout. • Force Overprint Mode - Force the Overprint mode to be Standard Over-Print Mode (OPM - 0) or Illustrator OverPrint Mode (OPM-1). **Restrictions** • If you are generating a Finished PDF/X, this item changes into **Finished PDF/X Overprint**. **In Finished PDF/X Overprint**, you can only set whether to maintain or delete Overprint Rule, or whether to enable/disable Force Overprint of Pure Black. For details about Finished PDF/X, see 3.5.5 - Finished PDF/X.
White Overprint	• Force Knockout of CMYK White Objects - If the box is checked, overprint behaviour of all white objects will be changed to knockout. If the check box is unchecked (default setting) the behaviour is unchanged.
Transparency	• Use Creative Suite Blending - Checking this check box will ensure compatibility with Adobe's Appearance Based Blending. By default this box is checked as this provides a consistent result from one device to another and matches the result produced by Adobe's Creative Suite when converting spot colours to process.

3.5.13 – Versioning

Users can select either Use Layer Groups or Use Layers at the job level.

Diagram: Versioning panel



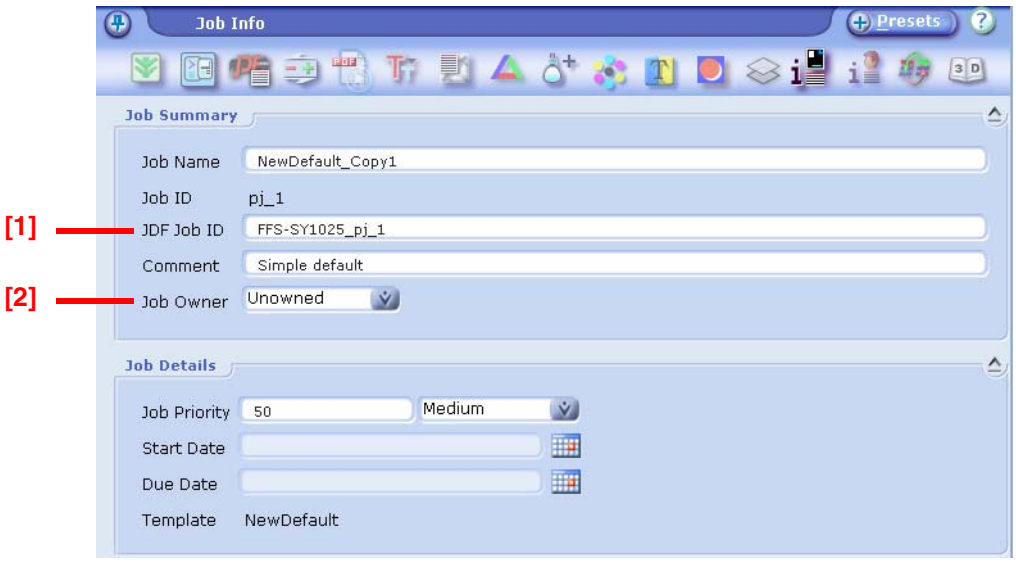
About Versioning panel

Name	Description
Layers	Use Layer Groups and Use Layers show different list contents. • Use Layer Groups - The first column shows the name of each of the layer groups (OCCDs). The next column shows which OCCD is selected. The Layers in Group column lists all the OCGs that the OCCD switches on by default. The last three columns show the status for plate, RIP Proof and PDF Export output. If the Show Document Occurrences option button is selected, the names of source documents will be displayed. - Add Group/Remove Group - Allows to add/remove a layer group. • Use Layers - The first column shows the names of the layers (OCG). The next three columns show whether the layer is enabled for plate, RIP Proof and PDF Export output. The last column shows either the OCCDs that by default enable the specified OCG if the Show Layer Groups option button is selected, or the names of all the source documents that have an OCG if the Show Document Occurrences option button is selected. - Add Layer/Remove Layer - Allows to add/remove a layer. **Restrictions** • If you are generating a Finished PDF/X file, you will no longer be able to set separate layers for Plates, Rip Proofing and PDF Export. Instead, you will set for all of them at the same time. For details about Finished PDF/X, see 3.5.5 - Finished PDF/X.

3.5.14 – Job Information

This panel holds the job information.

Diagram: Job Info panel



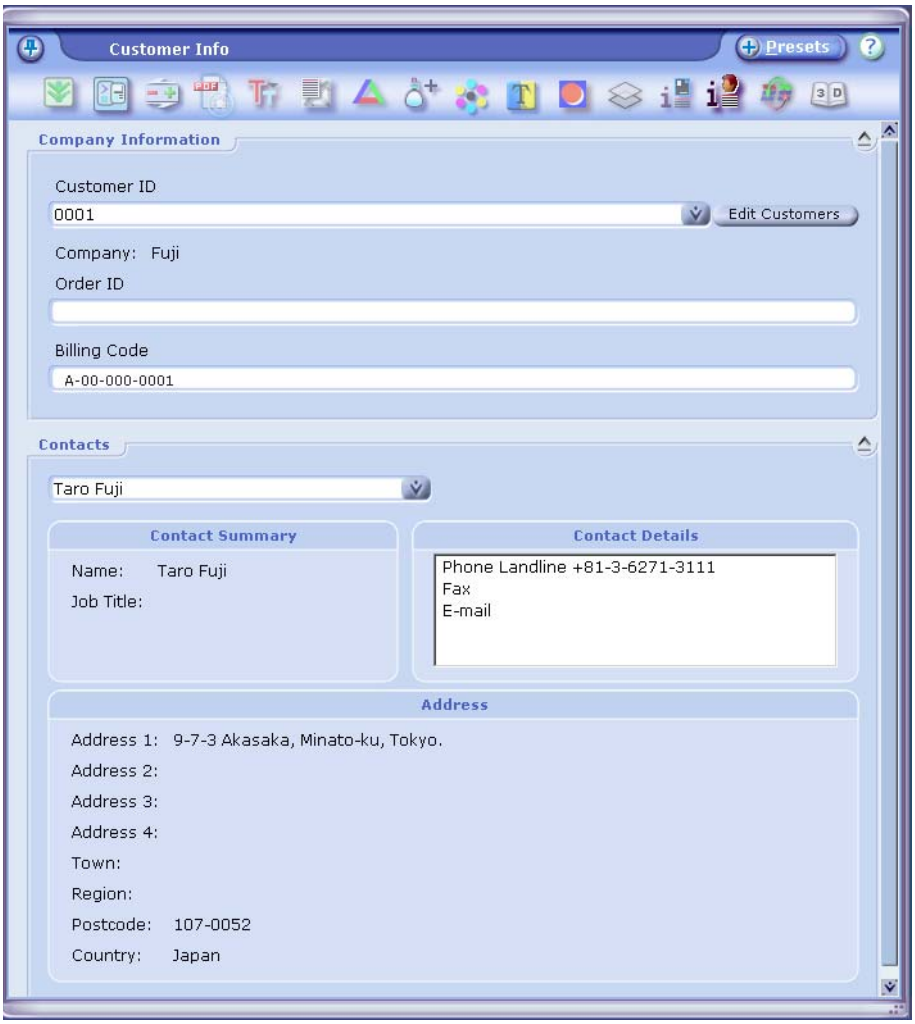
About Job Info panel

Name	Description
Job Summary	• Job Name - Enter the job name. • Job ID - Shows the Job ID. • [1]: JDF Job ID New - Shows the JDF Job ID. You can edit the ID here. For details about the JDF Job ID, see 2.1 - Add Job Dialog. • Part ID - Shows the Part ID. • Comment - Enter a comment for the job. • Job Owner **Function Summary** You can specify a job owner (manager) for a job. It can also help users find their own job quickly, because it can be used as a queue filter parameter. **Screen Explanation** [2]: Job Owner - In this menu, you can select a registered user or **Unowned**. The selected user becomes the job manager. The job owner can be changed when the job is being saved.
Job Details	• Job Priority - Defines Job Priority, ranging from 0 (low) to 100 (high). • Start Date - Shows the start date of the job. • Due Date - Shows the date the job is to be completed. • Template - Shows the job template name.

3.5.15 – Customer Information

The panel holds information about the customer for whom this job was created.

Diagram: Customer Info panel



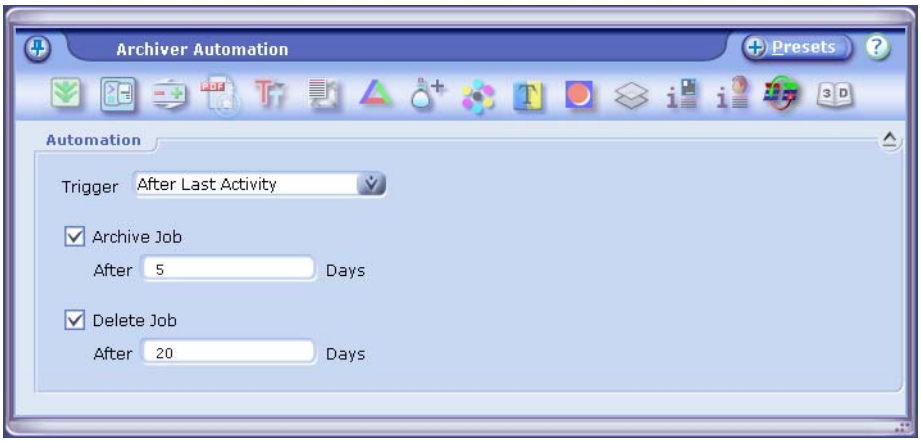
About Customer Info panel

Name	Description
Company Information	• Customer ID - Select a Customer ID. The Edit Customers button is a shortcut to the Customers panel in the Admin window, where you can edit information of the selected customer. • Company - Shows the company name. • Order ID - Allows users to enter an order ID. • Billing Code - The billing code can be displayed/edited here.
Contacts	This shows information about the contact person. Select a name from the list to show details. • Contact Summary - Shows the name and the title of the contact person. • Contact Details - Shows the contact details. • Address - Shows the detailed address.

3.5.16 – Archiver Automation

The scheduled archiver archives jobs for which the automation conditions match the Archiver settings in the Admin window. The trigger defines the condition of the current job to be archived/deleted. The job can be set to be archived or deleted after a maximum of 365 days from the date defined by the trigger.

Diagram: Archiver Automation panel



About Archiver Automation panel

Name	Description
Automation	• Trigger - Select either After Due Date or After Last Activity from the drop-down list. • Archive Job - Enable to automatically archive the job after the number of days specified. • Delete Job - Enable to automatically delete the job after the number of days specified.

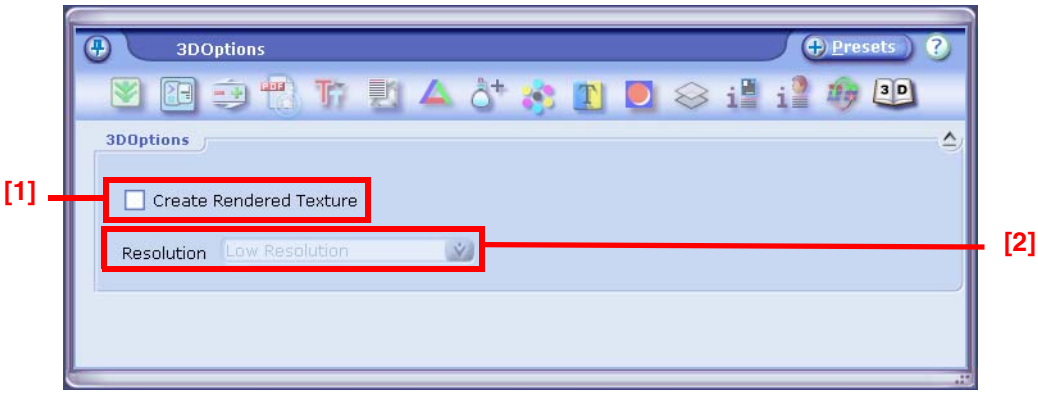
3.5.17 – 3D Options

Function Summary

If you render an image after ticking **Create Rendered Texture** in this panel, the gutter and creep settings will be applied to the 3D image displayed in 3D Proofer. You can also select the resolution of the image displayed in 3D Proofer.
You can display the 3D image, to which the settings have been applied, by selecting **Rendered Mode** or **Transition Mode** in **Display Settings** in the **Settings** panel in Imposition Viewer.
For details about 3D Proofer, see 4.2 - 3D Proofer (3D Viewer).

Screen Explanation

The **3D Options** panel contains the following areas.



[1]	Create Rendered Texture	Check this before rendering an image, if you want to generate an image to display in 3D Proofer.
[2]	Resolution	Set the resolution of the 3D image that you will display in 3D Proofer. • Low Resolution - Generates a 72 dpi image. • High Resolution - Generates a 150 dpi image.

Operating Procedure

The procedures for creating an image with rendered texture.

① Click the 3D Options button in the **Job Description** panel in the Edit Job window.

② Tick **Create Rendered Texture** in the **3D Options** panel.

③ Select a resolution of your choice from the **Resolution** drop-down.

④ Add **Plates** to the workflow, assign a source file, and make imposition settings of your choice.

⑤ Save the job and start rendering.

⑥ Open the job's Imposition Viewer, and select **Rendered Mode** or **Transition Mode** in **Display Settings** in the **Settings** panel (See for details).

⑦ Open 3D Proofer and view the 3D image to which the imposition settings have been applied.

Restrictions

- You must have Plates in the workflow in order to use this function. If Plates is not in the workflow, an image will not be created for 3D Proofer in Rendered Mode, even if 3D Options has been set. An image will also not be created for 3D Proofer in Rendered Mode if the Plate rendering is not completed.
- If a job contains an image that has already been created for 3D Proofer, the image for 3D Proofer in Rendered Mode will only be recreated if there has been a change in the job's settings.
- This function does not support the display of 3D images in Edge of Binding View.
- Depending on the specifications of your graphics board, you may not be able to display a page image larger than A3 properly.

3.5.18 – File Information

In the Job Edit window, click on a document in the Source Files panel to show File Information.

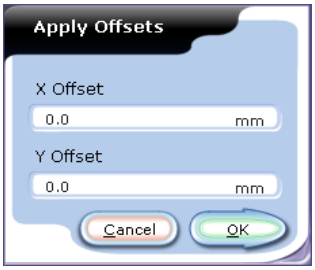
Diagram: File Information

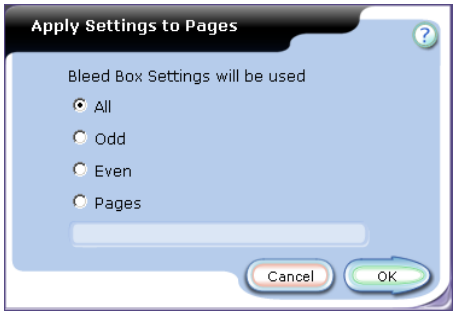
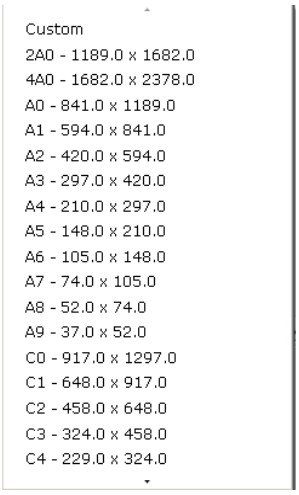
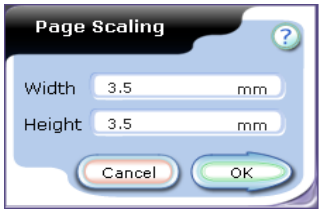
3.5.19 – Page Boxes

In the Job Edit window, click on a document in the Reading Order panel, then select the Page Boxes icon to show the Page Boxes panel.

Diagram: Page Boxes panel

About Page Boxes panel

Name	Description
Page Box Settings	The page boxes can be adjusted by highlighting the name (e.g. Bleed box, Trim box) and changing the values in the relevant fields. The settings can be adjusted using the Display Mode buttons at the top right. • Display Mode buttons - As Position and Size, As Absolute Positions, As Margins relative to the Media Box, and As Margins relative to the Trim Box. • Offset button - Click to open the Apply Offsets dialog shown below. Enter values to set up offsets. 

Name	Description
Page Box Settings	• Apply to pages button - Click after the changes have been made. The Apply Settings to Pages dialog appears. Select the pages to which the changes will be applied. 
Page Positioning	• Page Rotation - Page Boxes can be rotated using either the Clockwise or Anticlockwise controls. Pages can be rotated by 90, 180 or 270 degrees. • Page Scaling - Size can be scaled either to a specified size (width and height) or by a scale factor (see image).  • If Custom is selected from the list, the Page Scaling dialog will be displayed. Enter the new document size to scale pages. 

3.5.20 – Job Page Properties

This panel shows the job page properties.

Diagram: Job Page Properties panel

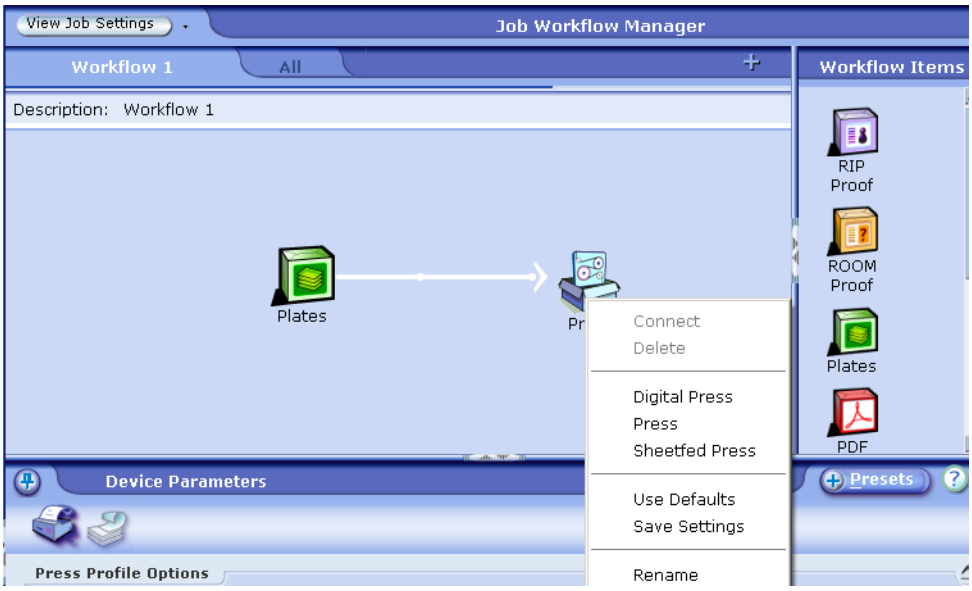
About Job Page Properties panel

Name	Description
Page Properties	• Page Name - Displays the name of the selected page. • Page Number - Displays the number of the selected page. • Override Creep - If the check box is not checked, normal creep adjustment (face and spine) will be applied. If the check box is checked, the creep adjustment specified using the buttons below will be applied. - No Creep Adjustment - Select to apply no creep adjustment to the selected page. - Creep Adjustment for Face only - Select to apply creep adjustment for the face only on the selected page.

3.6 – Press

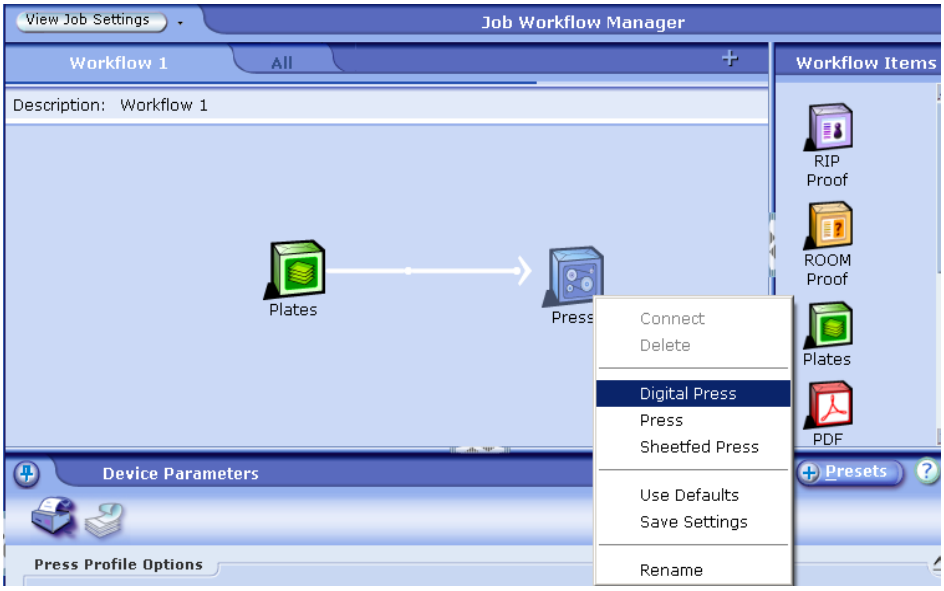
Press is a workflow item that controls creation of plates to a CTP (Computer-to-plate) device or the pages printed on a digital press device.

Diagram: Press



Right-click on the Press workflow item and select a device other than **Digital Press**.

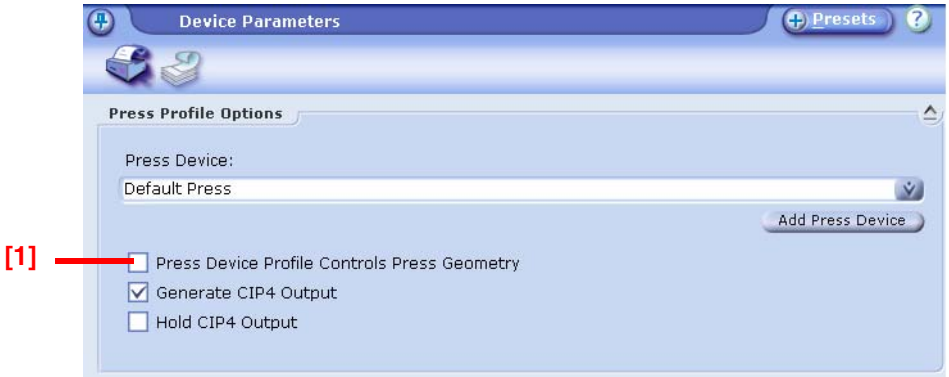
Diagram: Digital Press



Right-click on the Press workflow item and select **Digital Press**.

3.6.1 – Device Parameters

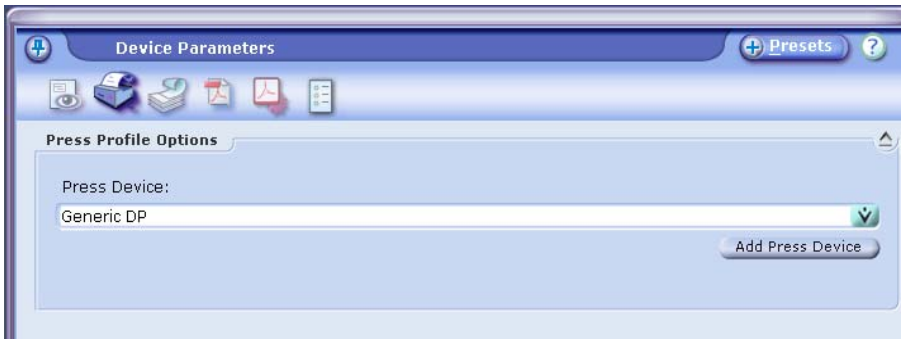
Diagram: Device Parameters (non-digital press)



About Device Parameters panel (non-digital press)

Name	Description
Press Profile Options	• Press Device - The Press item you select should match the actual press which is the target for your job. However, if you do not know the press for this job use the Default Press. - Add Press Device - Click to set up a new Press. Click to open the Press Device Profiles panel in the Admin window. • [1]: Press Device Profile Controls Press Geometry New - Select to set the highest priority to the offset, punch height and gripper height settings that are selected with the Press Device Profile. • Generate CIP4 Output - Select to enable the generation of CIP4 output. • Hold CIP4 Output - Select to hold the CIP4 output in the queue.

Diagram: Device Parameters (Digital Press)



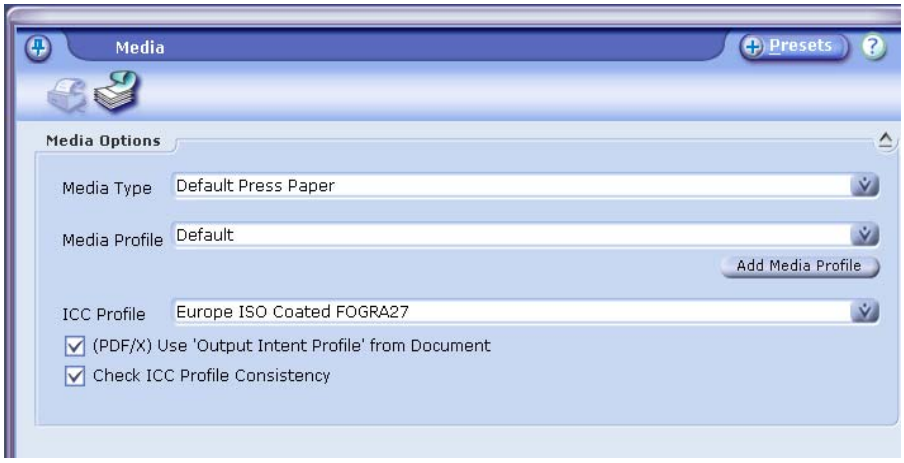
About Device Parameters panel (digital press)

Name	Description
Press Profile Options	• Press Device - A digital press is selected.

3.6.2 – Media

This panel defines media type, media profile and ICC profile.

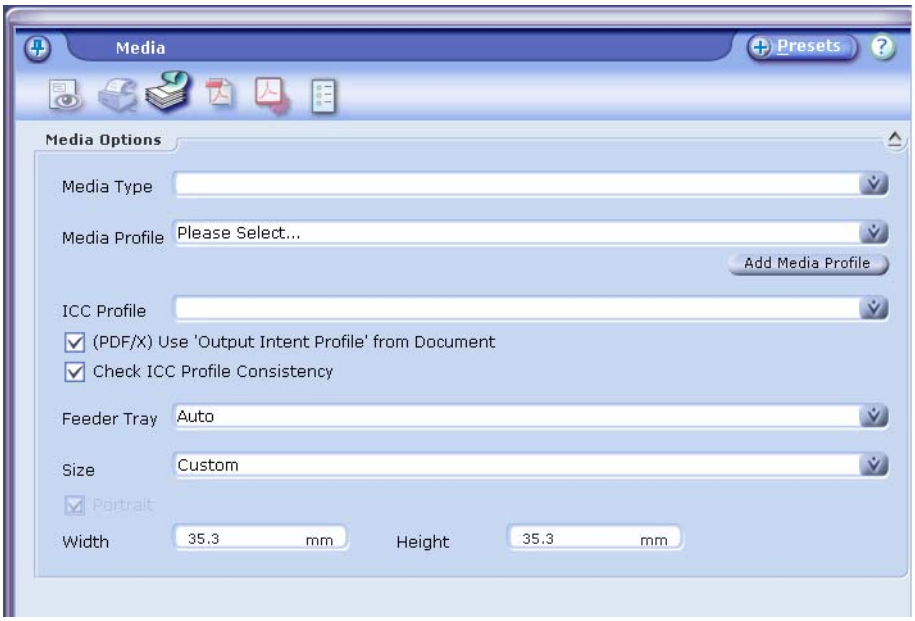
Diagram: Media panel (non-digital press)



About Media panel (non-digital press)

Name	Description
Media Options	• Media Type - Select a media type from the drop-down list. • Media Profile - Select a media profile from the drop-down list. - Add Media Profile - Use this to set up a new media profile. Click to open the Press Device Profiles panel in the Admin window. • ICC Profile - Select an ICC profile from the drop-down list. - (PDF/X) use ‘Output Intent Profile’ from Document - When checked, the ICC profile specified in the input document's output intent is given preference. - Check ICC Profile Consistency - Enable to check ICC Profile Consistency.

Diagram: Media panel (Digital Press)



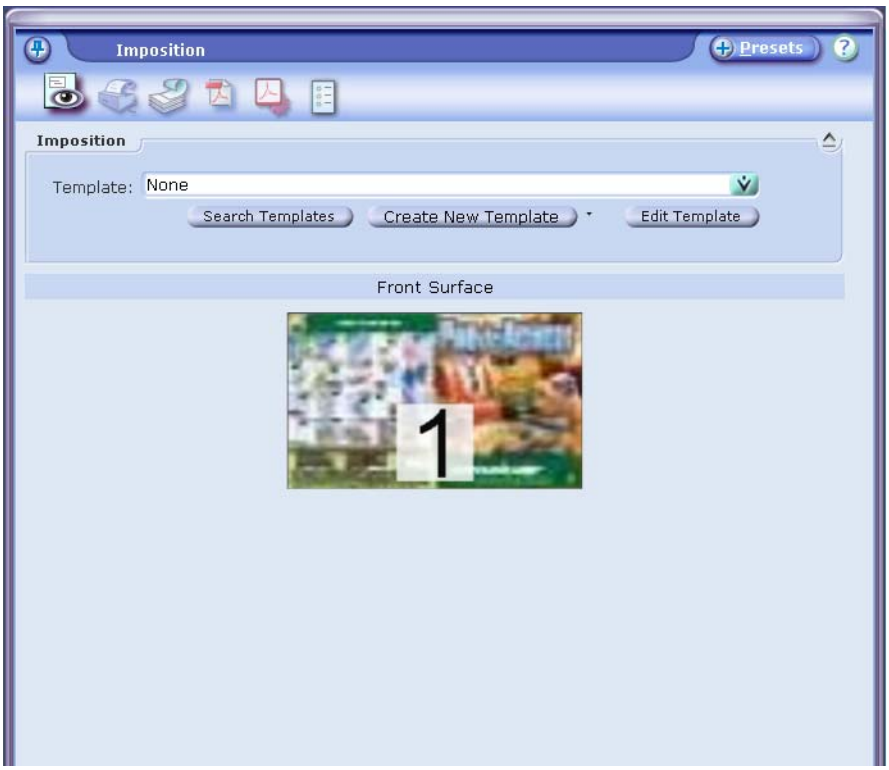
About Media panel (Digital Press)

Name	Description
Media Options	• Media Type - Select a media type from the drop-down list. • Media Profile - Select a media profile from the drop-down list. - Add Media Profile - Use this to set up a new media profile. Click to open the Press Device Profiles panel in the Admin window. • ICC Profile - Select an ICC profile from the drop-down list. - (PDF/X) use ‘Output Intent Profile’ from Document - When checked, the ICC profile specified in the input document's output intent is given preference. - Check ICC Profile Consistency - Enable to check ICC Profile Consistency. • Feeder Tray - Set to Auto and cannot be changed. • Size - Select the size of media from the drop-down list. • Portrait - If the media is to be fed through the digital press with the long edge first, click the Portrait check box. • Width/Height - Enter appropriate values.

3.6.3 – Imposition

The Imposition panel allows an existing imposition template to be selected or a new imposition template to be created.

Diagram: Imposition panel



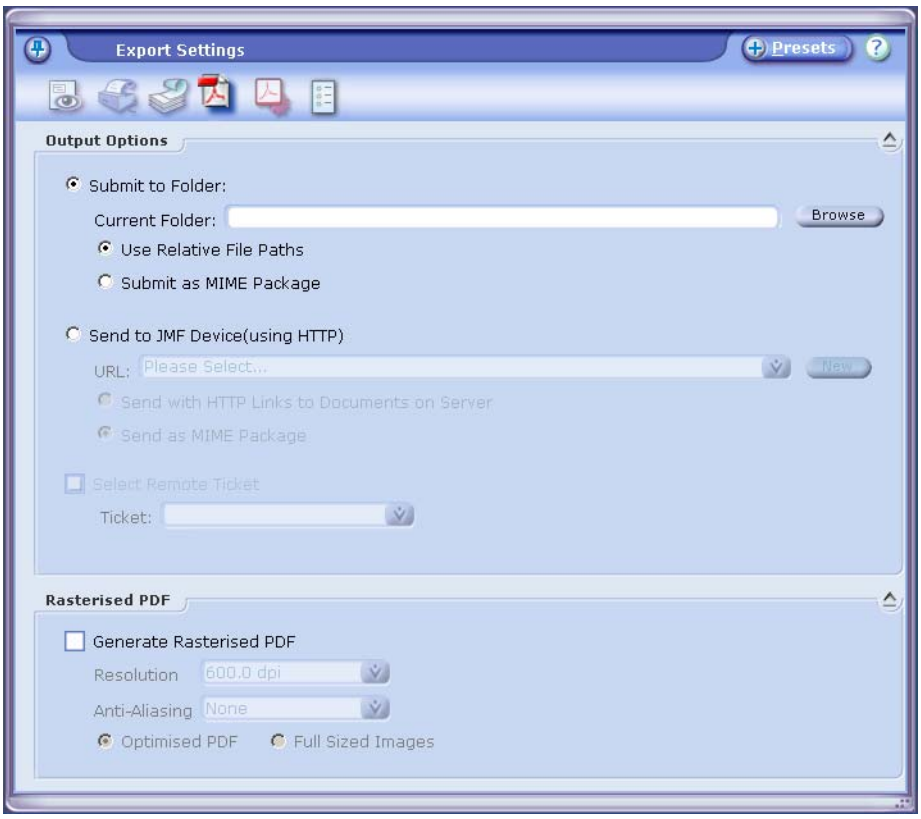
About Imposition panel

Name	Description
Imposition	• Template - Select a template from the drop-down list. • Search Templates - Click to search templates. • Create New Template - Click to create a new template. • Edit Template - Click to edit the selected template.

3.6.4 – Export Settings

This panel defines the export settings.

Diagram: Export Settings panel



About Export Settings panel

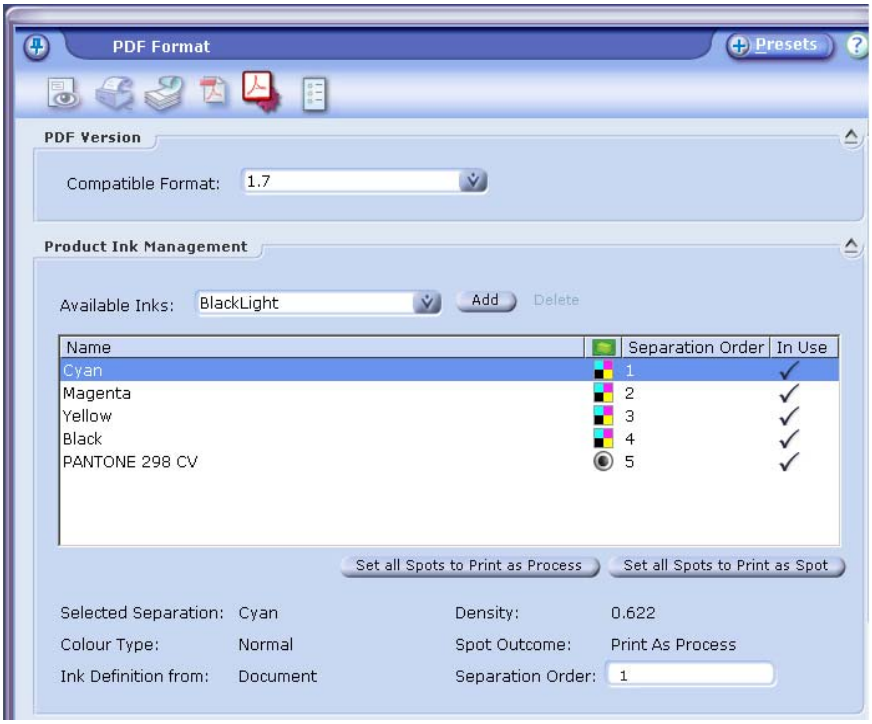
Name	Description
Output Options	There are two ways to output files: • Submit to Folder - Outputs to a folder. - Browse - Click this button to open a browser to find the output folder. - Use Relative File Paths - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo Press. - Submit as MIME Package - Tick this box to create MIME encoded output. • Send to JMF Device (using HTTP) - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package. - New - When this button is clicked, the JDF Export URLs panel in the Admin window is displayed where you can set up remote URLs. - Send with HTTP Links to Documents on Server - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo press. - Send as MIME Package - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package, with a template. - Select Remote Ticket - Can be used to send JDF to third party applications like Celebrant. - Ticket - Select from the drop-down list to define a job ticket at the remote location.

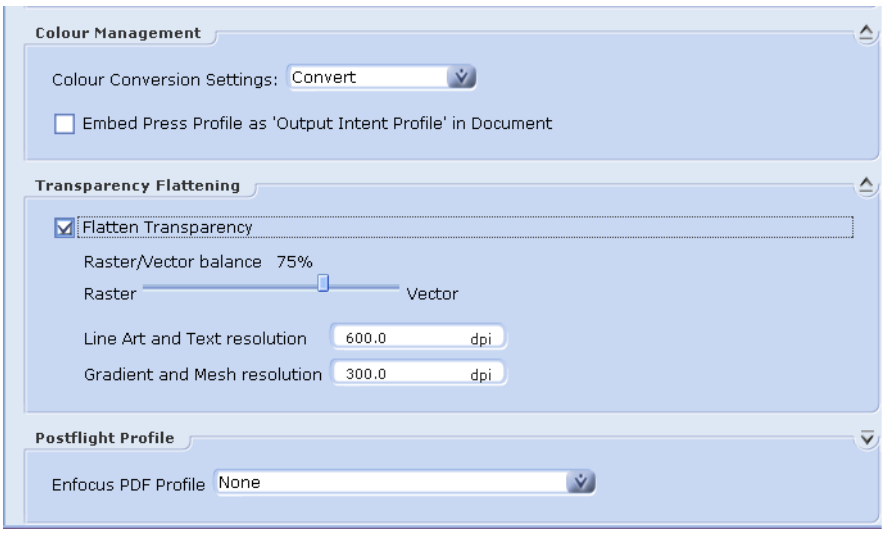
Name	Description
Rasterised PDF	• Generate Rasterised PDF - When ticked the ‘Page Boxes’ section is disabled and the page boxes from the imposition will be used. • Resolution - Defines the resolution at which the document pages will be rendered. A drop down list will contain the resolutions that are specified for the selected device. • Anti-Aliasing - Select from the drop-down list the amount of anti-aliasing that will be performed by the renderer. • Optimised PDF - Select to break up the rasterised images into smaller parts by extracting images, that are separated by white space, from the content and then produce an image in the PDF for each extracted image. • Full Sized Images - Select to produce a single image for the CMYK separation plus an image for each spot colour that is rendered.

3.6.5 – PDF Format

This panel defines the format of the output PDF file and related options.

Diagram: PDF Format panel





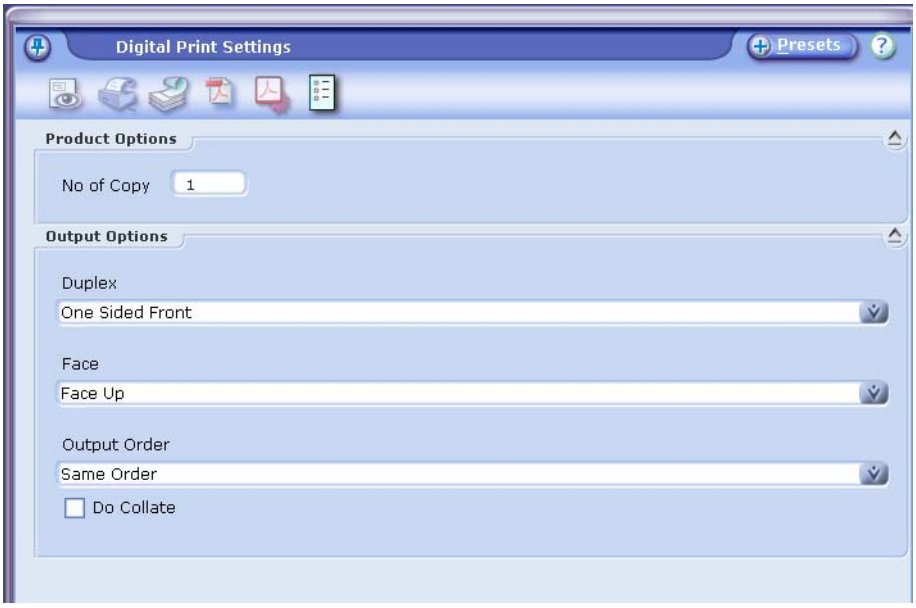
About PDF Format panel

Name	Description
PDF Version	• Compatible Format - Define the PDF Version (format level) for output. Versions available are: - 1.3 - 1.4 - 1.5 - 1.6 - 1.7 - PDF/X-1a: 2001 - PDF/X-1a: 2003 - PDF/X-3: 2002 - PDF/X-3: 2003 This field will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected on the JDF Target panel.
Product Ink Management	This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified in the job, which inks are to be printed and in what order. • Available Inks - If you don't see what you're looking for, click Add to add more. 1. Print Mode - By clicking and changing the icon to the right of each ink name, you can change how the ink is output: - Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. - Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change). - Don't Print - The ink will not be output. 2. Separation Order - This is the order in which the colours will be processed. To change the order, highlight an ink in the list and change its order number. The rest of the inks in the list will be moved automatically. 3. In Use - The In Use column is ticked if the colour is actually used in the current job. • Set all Spots to Print as Process - Click to print all of the spots as process colours. • Set all Spots to Print as Spot - Click to print all of the spots as spot colours.
Colour Management	• Colour Conversion Settings - Select Convert, or Retag the PDF file with the new colour settings.This field will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected on the JDF Target panel. • Embed Press Profile as 'Output Intent Profile' in Document - Enable if you wish to save the output ICC profile in the PDF.
Transparency Flattening	Flattening is achieved using the Adobe PDF Print Engine's built-in flattening process. • Flatten Transparency - Tick this box to enable the flattening function mentioned above. • Raster/Vector balance - Use the slider to set a value for object processing. • Line Art and Text resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised line art and text. • Gradient and Mesh resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised gradient and Illustrator mesh objects. This field will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected on the JDF Target panel.
Postflight Profile	• Enfocus PDF Profile - Once the PDF has been generated, a Postflight check can be performed using an Enfocus profile. This field will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected on the JDF Target panel.

3.6.6 – Digital Print Settings

The information entered in this panel controls the output of XMF documents on digital press devices.

Diagram: Digital Print Settings panel



About Digital Print Settings panel

Name	Description
Product Options	• No of Copy - Enter the number of copies required.
Output Options	• Duplex - Select the Duplex option as follows: - One Sided Front - Select if the imposition style is flat work. - Two Sided Flip ShortEdge - Select if the imposition style is sheet work. - Two Sided Flip LongEdge - Select if the imposition style is perfecting. • Face - Select whether you want the paper in the output tray to be face up or face down. • Output Order - Set the output order to either the same order as the job or the reverse order. • Do Collate - Check this box if the pages are to be collated.

3.6.7 – Status Tracking Method for Digital Press New

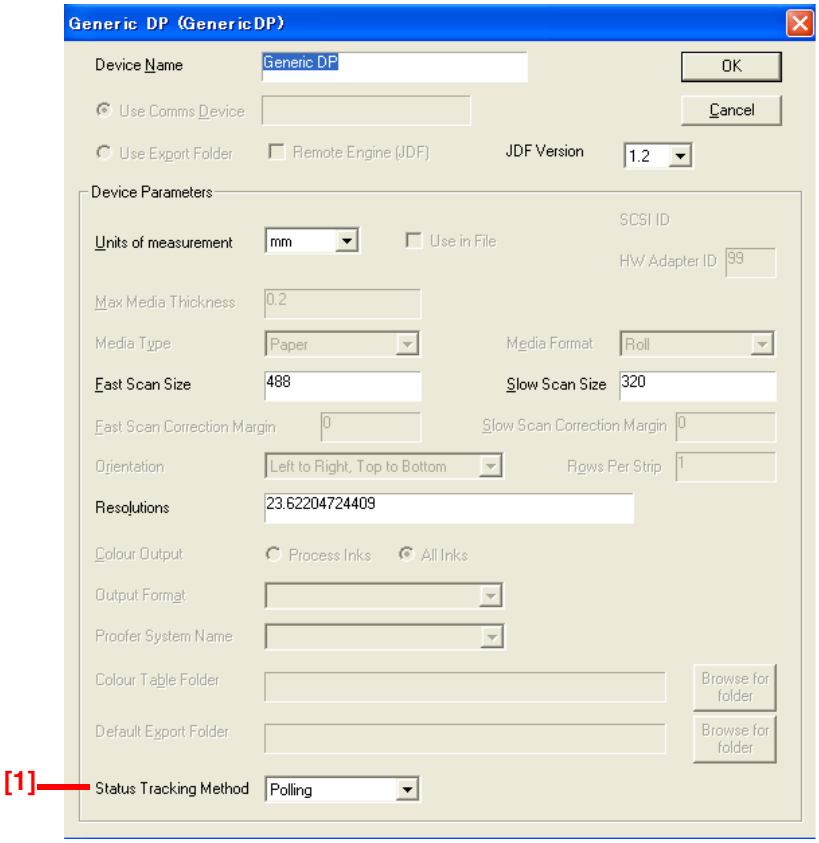
Function Summary

In Config Tool, you can select the status tracking method for the Digital Press device.

Background

Previous versions of XMF enabled you to track the status of the Digital Press device with the JMF polling method, but the status could not be accurately ascertained from the XMF Client.
In V3.1, the progress level is displayed to allow more accurate status tracking. Also, a subscription method can now be selected for devices that do not support the JMF polling method.

Screen Explanation



[1]	Status Tracking Method	Select **Polling** or **Subscription** as the status tracking method. When **Polling** is selected, the progress level is displayed for the job.

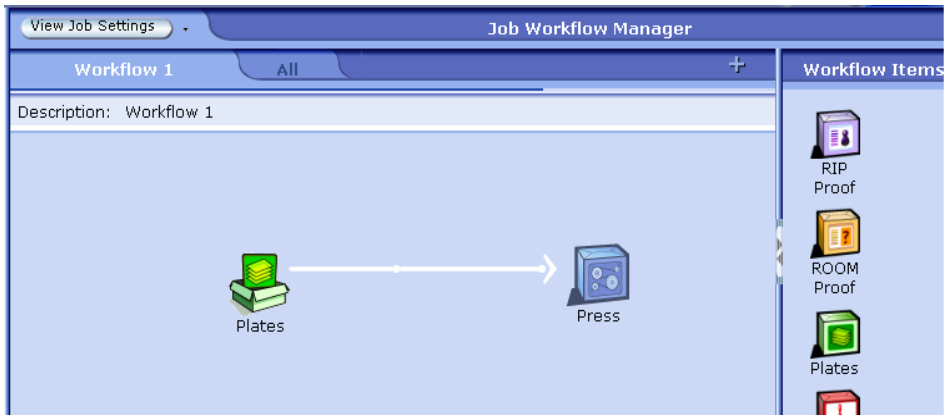
Restrictions

- If the Digital Press device supports only the polling method or only the subscription method, the non-supported method is not displayed in the pull-down list.

3.7 – Plates

Plates is a workflow item that controls the output of impositions and plates to CTP (Computer-to-Plate) devices.

Diagram: Plates



3.7.0.1- Layout JDF Support New

Function Summary

This function supports a wide variety of sheet size and media settings based on the JDF information when creating a job using the JDF.

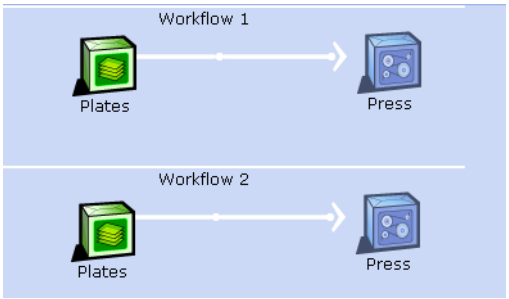
Background

In previous versions of XMF, one Plates item was created for one job when JDF was entered. However, because XMF's Plates use a uniform plate and sheet size, problems sometimes occurred in jobs that had multiple sheet sizes.
To resolve this problem, in V3.1, the workflow is split based on the entered JDF information and a separate Plates item is added to the workflow.

Screen Explanation

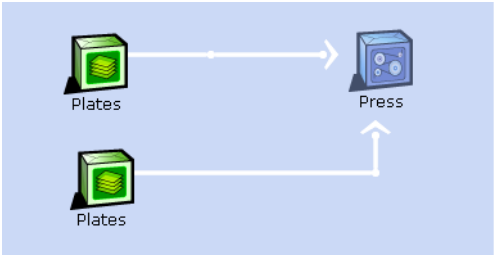
XMF identifies the media type and paper size from the various setting items in the JDF.
If the JDF contains multiple media types, the workflow is split for each media type as shown in the diagram below.

Diagram: Split workflow



Alternatively, if the JDF contains multiple paper sizes, a Plates item is added for each paper size as shown in the diagram below.

Diagram: Added Plates item



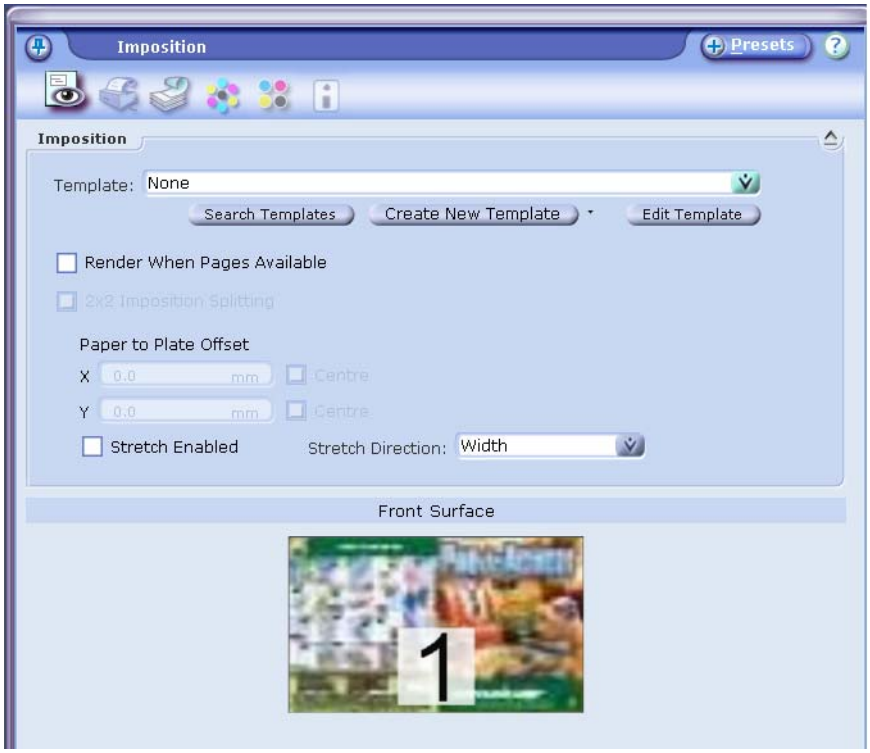
Restrictions

- XMF cannot process layout JDFs that do not contain Signature Name, Sheet Name or Side keys, or layout JDFs with these keys in a different order.
- Even if it contains the Signature element, when a layout JDF is partitioned it is judged to be an invalid file and causes an error. We do not recommend the JDF V1.2 partition. Further, we do not guarantee proper operation with the JDF V1.3 or V1.4 Signature.
- XMF does not read layout information that is split below the Surface level.
- The workflow may not be split depending on the imposition software that created the JDF.

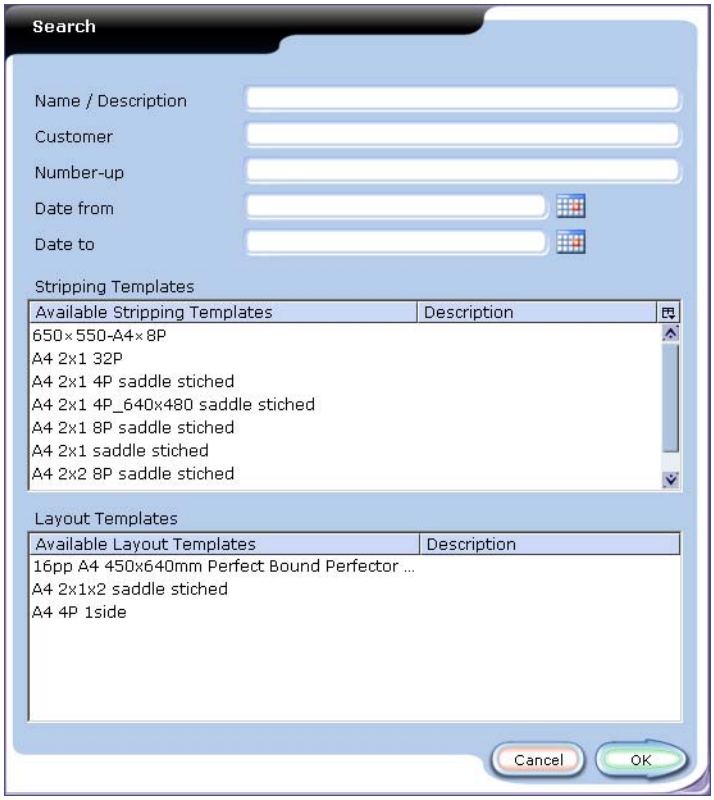
3.7.1 – Imposition

The Imposition Panel allows users to select an existing Imposition template or create a new one.

Diagram: Imposition panel



About Imposition panel

Name	Description
Imposition	• Template - Select from the drop-down list. - None - This option applies no imposition and treats the flowed pages as single sheets. - Double Sided - If selected the layout will have odd pages on the front surfaces and even pages on the back surfaces (PPF exported by the CIP4 stage will use the layout). - Custom - An imposition specifically set up for this specific job. This often represents a standard imposition that has been changed for a specific job, such as a different combination of marks. • Search Templates - Click this to open the Search dialog. The search dialog displays templates that match the set criteria and filters out the rest. For example, if you enter 4-up in the Template Name, the list will change to show only those templates that have ‘4-up’ in their name. The upper list shows Stripping Templates and the lower shows Layout Templates.  • Create New Template - Click to create a new template. This opens Imposition Viewer. See 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping) and 4.4 - Imposition Viewer (Layout). • Edit Template - Click to edit the selected template. This opens Imposition Viewer. See 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping) and 4.4 - Imposition Viewer (Layout). • Render When Pages Available - When enabled, allows proofs to be made when all the pages of the applicable surface (e.g. Front of Sheet 1 only, Back of Sheet 2 only) are available. • 2 x 2 Imposition Splitting - When enabled, allows each signature to be split into a series of 2 by 2 sections. • Paper to Plate Offset - Specify X & Y offset values. Ticking Centre adjusts the signature position. • Stretch Enabled - Check this to apply paper stretch. • Stretch Direction - When Stretch is enabled, select the direction (width or height). • Imposition thumbnails view - Shows the imposition pattern selected by the template.

3.7.2 – Device Settings

Options displayed in this panel are specific to the device selected - in this example, TIFF Export.

Diagram: Device Settings panel

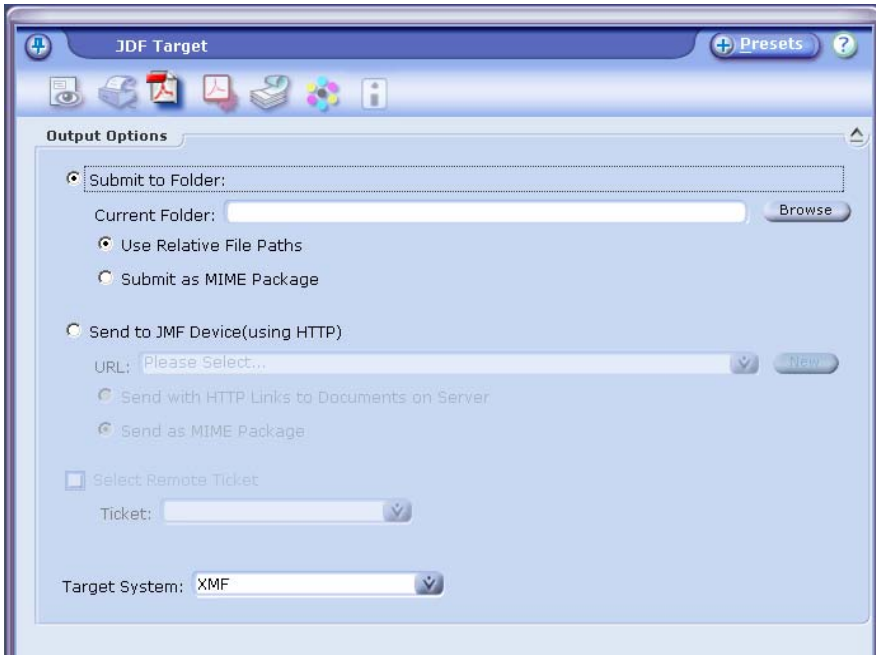
About Device Settings panel

Name	Description
Device Options	• Device - Select TIFF Export, CTP device or a Basic Remote Plate Device. • Resolution - Select an output resolution here (this is device dependent). • Rotation - Select a rotation value for output. Each click rotates the icon by 90 degrees. • Lateral Reversal - Allows lateral reversal output. • Negative Polarity - Allows negative polarity output. • Hold Before Output - Tick this box to Hold the job before the rendered surfaces are sent to the device. • Output When All Surfaces are Ready - When checked, it sends data to the output device when rendering of all surfaces and paper stretch application are completed. This option is greyed out when Hold Before Output is enabled. • Save each page in its own file - This outputs a file per page. • Clip image to paper size - This outputs files clipped to the paper size. • Anti-Aliasing - This applies anti-aliasing.
File Details	• Save in Folder - Click on the Browse button to specify the location where output files such as 1-Bit TIFF will be saved. • Write SOJ and EOJ files - Enable to create a start of job (SOJ) file and an end of job (EOJ) file for each set of separations. • Filename Template - Defines the format of the output filename. A sample file name is displayed beneath the drop-down menu. - Browse - Click to edit the selected file name template. • Number of copies - Total number of copies of the rendered image. • File Format - Select from TIFF Image, TIFF Image in PDF, TIFF Image in PostScript for a printer, TIFF image in Encapsulated PostScript, JPEG Image or PNG Image. • Pixel Format - Select from Mono 1-bit, Mono 8-bit, RGB 24-bit or CMYK 32-bit. (some may not be shown depending on the file format).
Image Compression	• Compress Images - Tick the box to enable image compression. • Compression Type - Select from the drop-down list.
Device Orientation	• Pixel Order - Select from the drop-down list below: - Left to Right, Bottom to Top - Right to Left, Bottom to Top - Left to Right, Top to Bottom - Right to Left, Top to Bottom - Bottom to Top, Left to Right - Bottom to Top, Right to Left - Top to Bottom, Left to Right - Top to Bottom, Right to Left

3.7.3 – JDF Target

This panel defines the JDF Target settings. The settings can be defined when the Basic Remote Plate Device is selected at the "Device Settings" of Plates.

Diagram: JDF Target panel



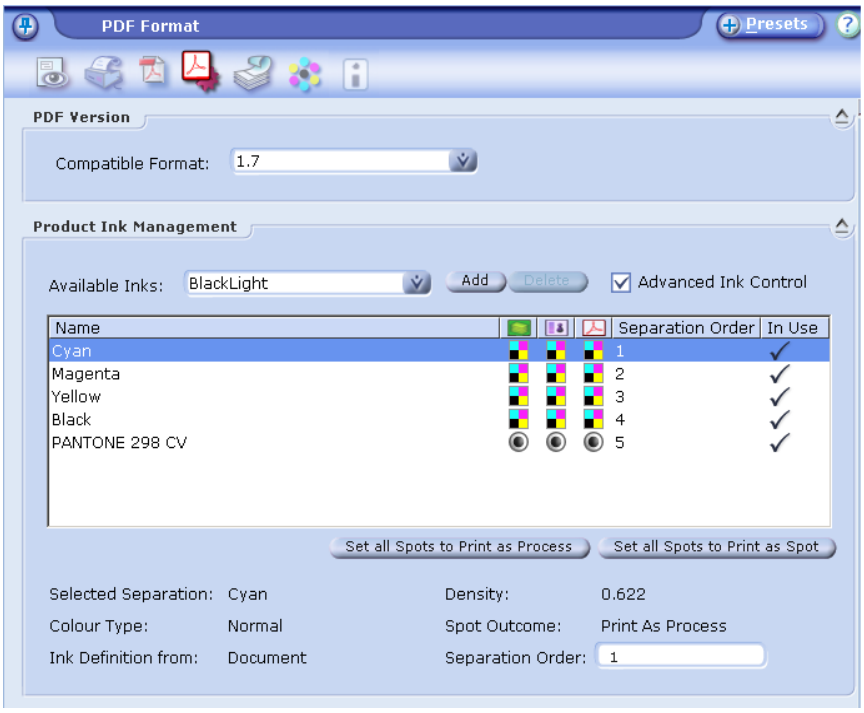
About JDF Target panel

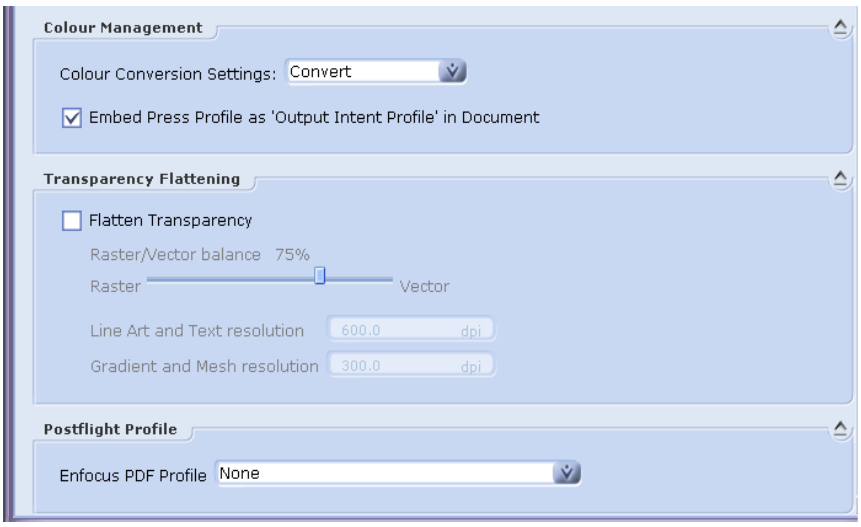
Name	Description
Output Options	There are two ways to output files: • Submit to Folder - Outputs to a folder. - Browse - Click this to open a browser to find the output folder. - Use Relative File Paths - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo Press. - Submit as MIME Package - Tick this box to create MIME encoded output. • Send to JMF Device (using HTTP) - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package. - New - When this button is clicked, the JDF Export URLs panel in the Admin window is displayed where you can set up remote URLs. - Send with HTTP Links to Documents on Server - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo press. - Send as MIME Package - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package, with a template. - Select Remote Ticket - Can be used to send JDF to third party applications like Celebrant. - Ticket - Select from the drop-down list to define a job ticket at the remote location. • Target System - Select from the options of Generic, Celebrant or XMF.

3.7.4 – PDF Format

This panel defines the format of the output PDF file and related options. The settings can be defined when the Basic Remote Plate Device is selected at the "Device Settings" of Plates.

Diagram: PDF Format panel





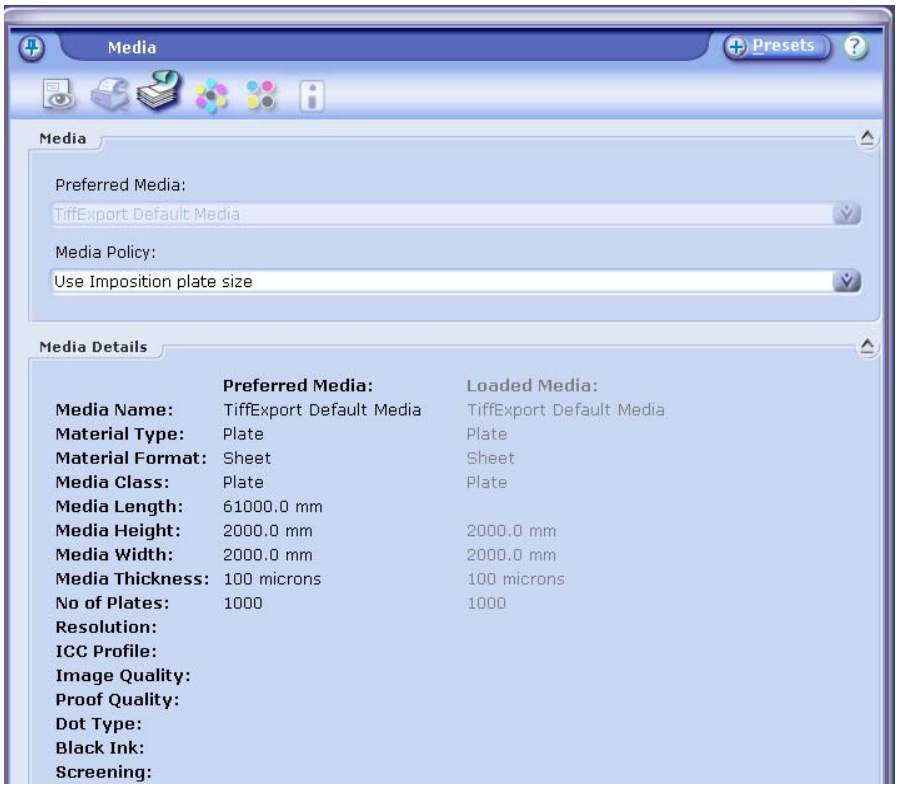
About PDF Format panel

Name	Description
PDF Version	• Compatible Format - Define the PDF Version (format level) for output. Versions available are: - 1.3 - 1.4 - 1.5 - 1.6 - 1.7 - PDF/X-1a: 2001 - PDF/X-1a: 2003 - PDF/X-3: 2002 - PDF/X-3: 2003
Product Ink Management	This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified in the job, which inks are to be printed and in what order. • Available Inks - If you don't see what you're looking for, click Add to add more. • Advanced Ink Control - Enable to display the ink outcomes for each workflow item that uses the layout from the selected Plates item. The first column will show the outcomes for the Plates, the second for the RIP Proof and the third for the PDF Export item. 1. Print Mode - By clicking and changing the icon to the right of each ink name, you can change how the ink is output: - Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. - Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change). - Don't Print - The ink will not be output. 2. Separation Order - This is the order in which the colours will be processed. To change the order, highlight an ink in the list and change its order number. The rest of the inks in the list will be moved automatically. 3. In Use - The In Use column is ticked if the colour is actually used in the current job. • Set all Spots to Print as Process - Click to print all of the spots as process colours. • Set all Spots to Print as Spot - Click to print all of the spots as spot colours.
Colour Management	• Colour Conversion Settings - Convert - Converts the data to the press's colour space. - Retag - Changes the ICC profile linked to the data. If it is not linked, creates a new link. • Embed Press Profile as 'Output Intent Profile' in Document - Enable if you wish to save the output ICC profile in the PDF.
Transparency Flattening	Flattening is achieved using the Adobe PDF Print Engine's built-in flattening process. • Flatten Transparency - Tick this box to enable the flattening function mentioned above. • Raster/Vector balance - Use the slider to set a value for object processing. • Line Art and Text resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised line art and text. • Gradient and Mesh resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised gradient and Illustrator mesh objects.
Postflight Profile	• Enfocus PDF Profile - Once the PDF has been generated, a Postflight check can be performed using an Enfocus profile.

3.7.5 – Media

Options displayed in this panel are specific to the device selected - in this example, TIFF Export.

Diagram: Media panel



About Media panel

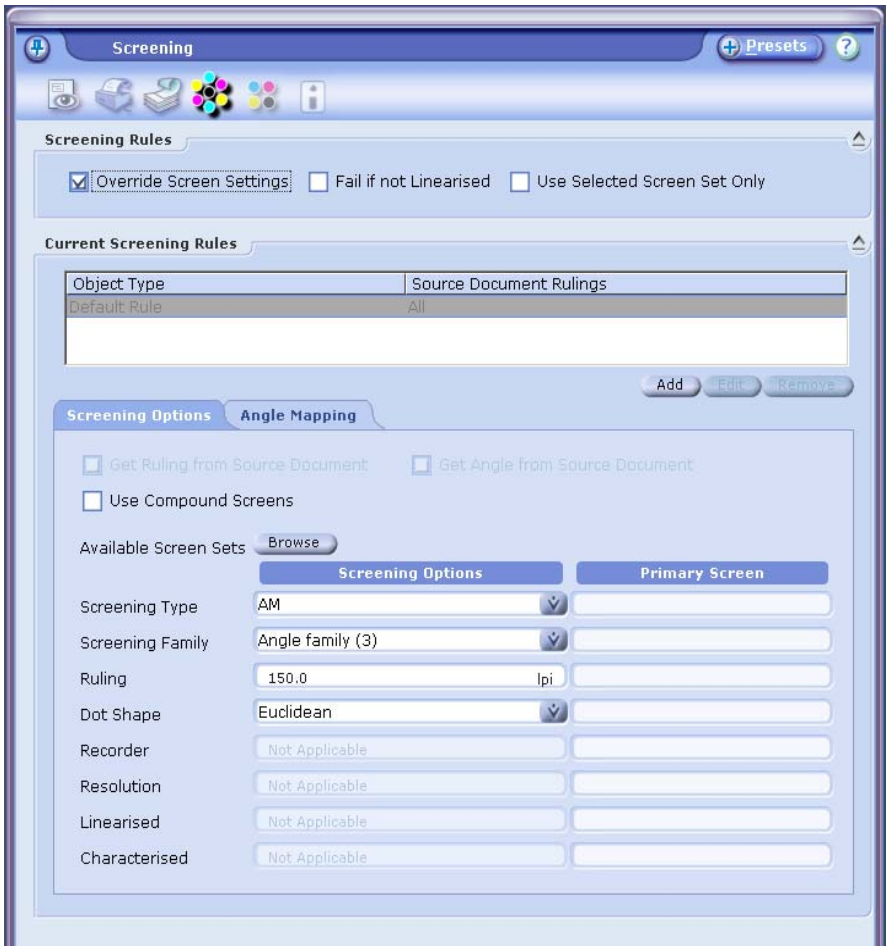
Name	Description
Media	Select your preferred media from the predefined list set up within the Calibration Manager. • Preferred Media - Media depend on the device chosen and may be uploaded from the device automatically, installed by the installer or can be created using the Calibration Manager. • Media policy - Don’t use Imposition plate size - The plate size defined in the Imposition Viewer will not be used. Select from the Preferred Media above. - Use Imposition plate size - The plate size defined in the Imposition Viewer will be used. Preferred Media field above will be disabled.

Name	Description
Media Details	Details of the selected media are displayed in this section. To understand the relationship of media, see 8.1 - Calibration Manager. • Media Name - Name of the media • Material Type - Film, Plate, Paper • Material Format - Roll, Sheet, Roll as sheet • Media Class - The following options are available: - High contrast film - (for film) - Low contrast film - (for film) - Plate - (for Plate) - Proofer paper - (for Paper) - Photosensitive paper - (for Paper) - Press paper - (for Paper) • Media Length - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • Media Width - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • Media Thickness - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • No of Plates - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings.

3.7.6 – Screening

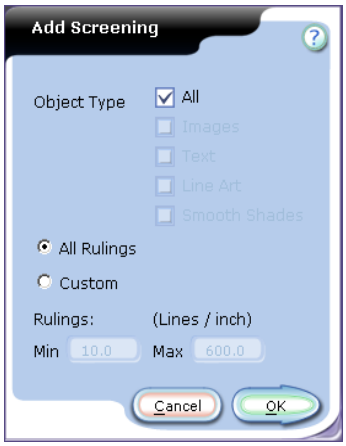
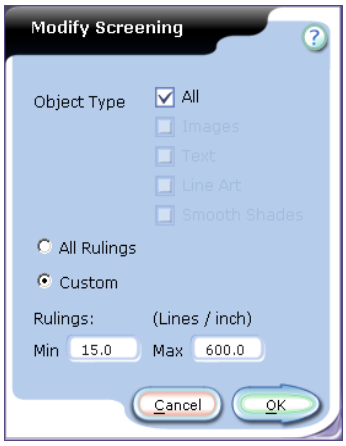
This panel defines the screening applied to incoming documents. You can also set rules for changing the screening in accordance with the contents of the input document. The settings can be defined at the job or page level.

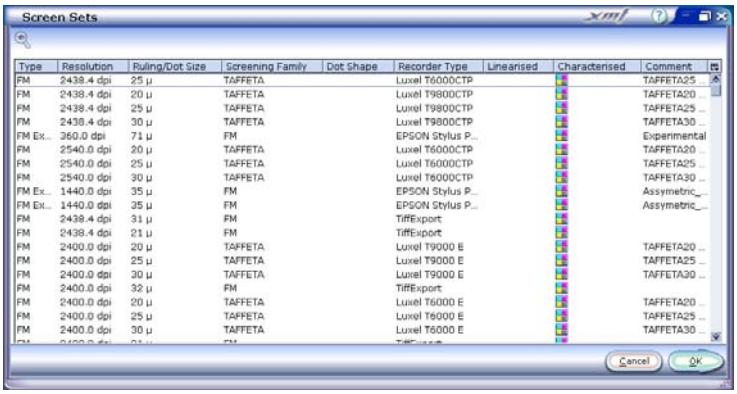
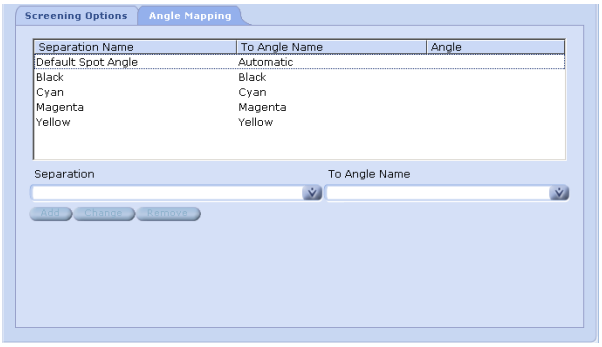
Diagram: Screening panel



About Screening panel

Name	Description
Screening Rules	• Override Screen Settings - Tick this to override the screen settings. • Fail if not Linearised - Tick this box to fail the job if the selected screen is not linearised. • Use Selected Screen Set Only - Tick this box to look for an exact match to the Screening Options settings only.

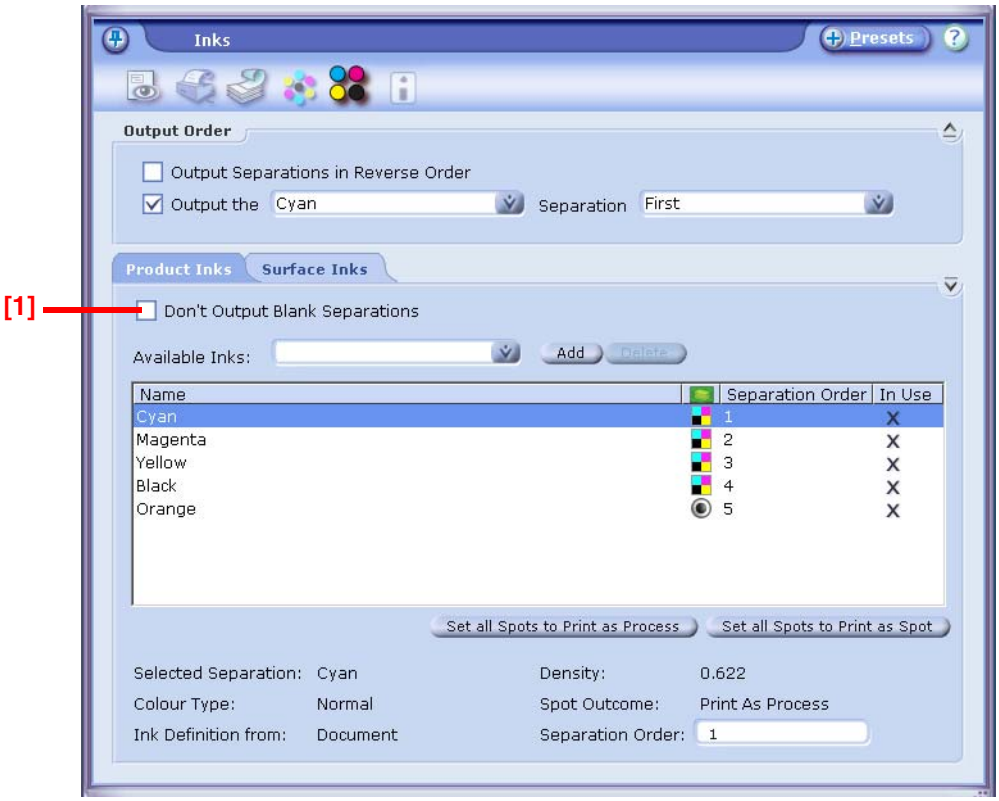
Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	A screening rule can be set for each object type (Images, Text, Line Art or Smooth Shades), and different screen types can be applied according to the screen rulings (line/inch) set for the objects. • Current Screening Rules - Displays the list of object types as well as the min and max screen rulings. • Add - Click to open the Add Screening dialog box. This allows you to select the object type and the min and max screen rulings  • Edit - If you click this when a screen is highlighted in the list, the Modify Screening dialog box is displayed. This allows you to change the object type and the min and max screen rulings.  • Remove - Click this to remove the screen highlighted in the list.

Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	• Screening Options tab - Use Compound Screens - Tick this to display the Secondary Screen. - Browse - Click to open a list of screen sets available from the Calibration Manager, and select the most appropriate one for this ruling. Alternatively, enter selections manually in the Screening Options boxes.  • Angle Mapping tab - Spot colours defined in the job can be mapped to the angle of one of the process colours. - Separation - Select a spot colour from the drop-down list. - To Angle Name - Select a process angle to match from the drop-down list. - Add / Change buttons - Click to add to the list/change the spot colour/process angle selected above. 

3.7.7 – Inks

This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified, which inks are to be printed and in what order.

Diagram: Inks panel



About Inks panel

Name	Description
Output Order	• Output Separations in Reverse Order - Tick to output separations in reverse order. • Output - Tick and select a colour separation and its output order.
Product Inks	This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified in the job, which inks are to be printed and in what order. • Don't Output Blank Separations **Function Summary** You can prevent the output of blanks and unnecesary inks by ticking the **Don't Output Blank Separations** check box, XMF can automatically determine which separations are blank, allowing it to avoid unnecessary output without imposing additional work on the user. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Don't Output Blank Separations - When enabled, this prevents the output of a plate in which the rendered content is not contained within the trim lines. When a separation is not output because the plate does not contain rendered content, a message to that effect is added to the job log. **Restrictions** • If marks such as collation marks are placed on the outside of trim lines when **Don't Output Blank Separations** is ticked, the separation is not output if XMF cannot find content within the trim lines. Always use the required colour for marks placed outside trim lines if you want to ensure output. • The rendering time is not reduced for blank separations. • Available Inks - If you don’t see what you’re looking for, click Add to add more.

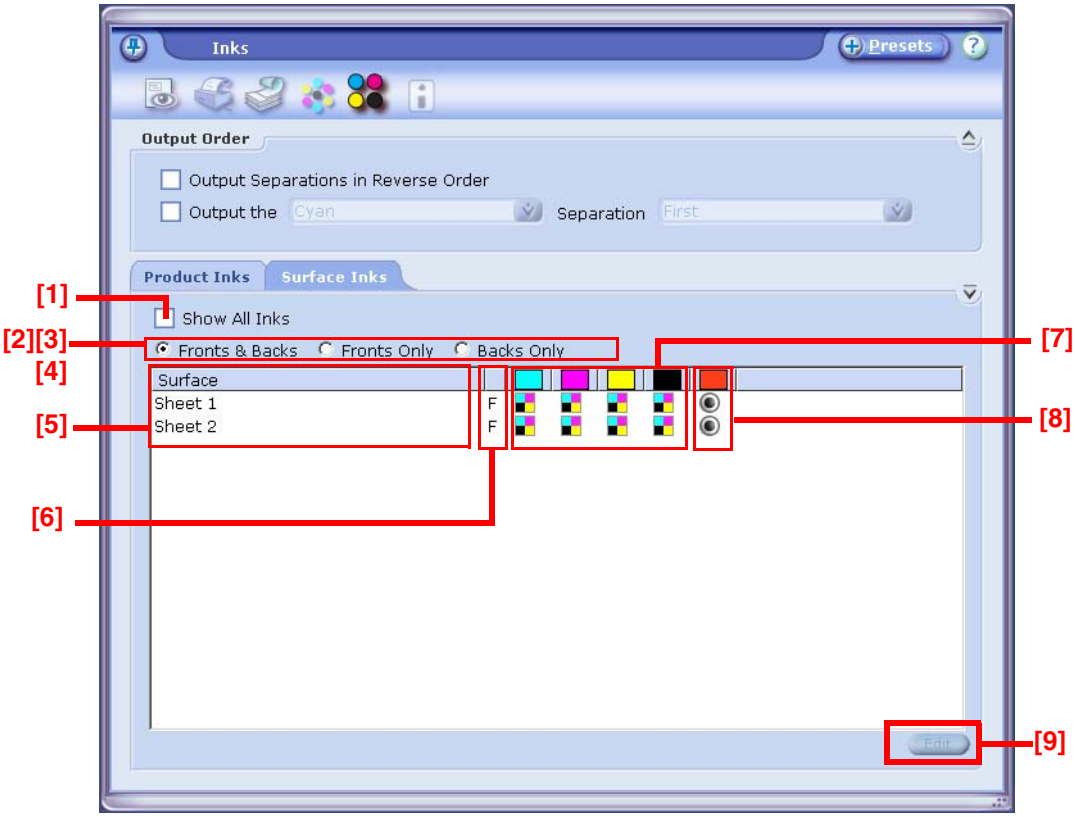
Name	Description
Product Inks	• Advanced Ink Control - Enable to display the ink outcomes for each workflow item that uses the layout from the selected Plates item. The first column will show the outcomes for the Plates, the second for the RIP Proof and the third for the PDF Export item. 1. Print Mode - By clicking and changing the icon to the right of each ink name, you can change how the ink is output: - Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. - Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change). - Don't Print - The ink will not be output. - Print As Process (Keep Overrides) - Print As Spot (Keep Overrides) **Function Summary** You can change product inks while maintaining the settings made for each surface in the **Surface Inks** tab. In such a case, an orange mask is added to the icon in order to indicate that a different ink to the product ink has been set in the **Surface Inks** tab. 2. Separation Order - This is the order in which the colours will be processed. To change the order, highlight an ink in the list and change its order number. The rest of the inks in the list will be moved automatically. 3. In Use - The In Use column is ticked if the colour is actually used in the current job. • Set all Spots to Print as Process - Click to print all of the spots as process colours. • Set all Spots to Print as Spot - Click to print all of the spots as spot colours.
Surface Inks	Controls ink settings for each surface. For details, see 3.7.7.1 - Surface Inks.

3.7.7.1- Surface Inks

Function Summary

The **Surface Inks** tab allows you to set the ink output to each separation.

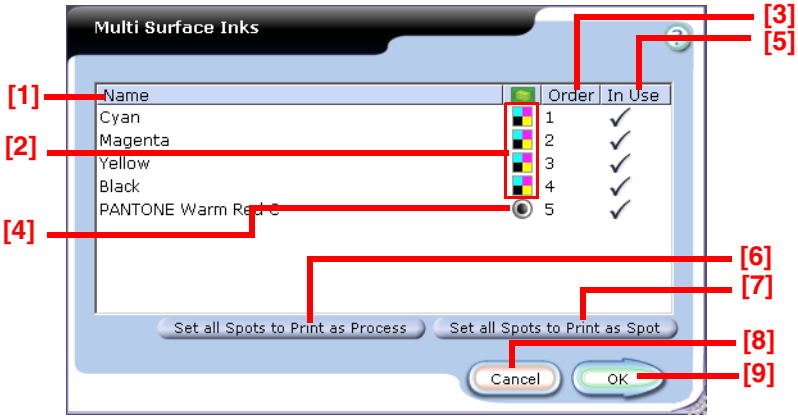
Screen Explanation
Surface Inks tab



[1]	Show All Inks	When ticked, displays all product inks. When unchecked, displays only the inks used on at least separation. • Spot colours that are set in either **Don't Print** or **Print As Process** are not displayed on all surfaces. • Inks that are not being used in the Product Inks tab are not displayed.
[2]	Fronts & Backs	When selected, a list of all surfaces is displayed.
[3]	Fronts Only	When selected, a list of fronts only is displayed.
[4]	Backs Only	When selected, a list of backs only is displayed.
[5]	Surfaces	Displays the surface's page name and page number. Place the cursor over a surface to display in a tooltip the page currently assigned to the surface.
[6]	Surface	Displays the front and back surfaces.
[7]	CMYK surface ink preferences	Click this icon to change status (in the order of **Print As Process** and **Don't Print**).
[8]	Spot surface ink preferences	Click this icon to change status (in the order of **Print as Spot**, **Print As Process** and **Don't Print**).
[9]	Edit button	Opens the **Multi Surface Inks** dialog box. • If no surface has been selected - Unavailable • If one or more surfaces has been selected - Available

Multi Surface Inks dialog box

Select multiple surfaces while holding down the Shift and Ctrl keys, and click the **Edit** button. This opens the **Multi Surface Inks** dialog box, in which you can edit surface inks in multiple surfaces.



[1]	Name	Displays the ink name.
[2]	CMYK surface ink preferences	Click this icon to change status (in the order of **Print As Process** and Don't Print). The changes are immediately reflected in the **Surface Inks** tab.
[3]	Order	This is the output order of separations defined in the Product Inks tab.
[4]	Spot surface ink preferences	Click this icon to change status (in the order of **Print as Spot**, **Print As Process** and **Don't Print**).
[5]	In Use	If this is ticked, the ink is being used on the imposition. However, it does not necessarily mean that it is being used on the selected surface.
[6]	Set all Spots to Print as Process	If you click this button, all spot colours are output as CMYK. This is similar to the button of the same name in the **Product Inks** tab, but this button only applies to surfaces selected in the Surface Inks tab.
[7]	Set all Spots to Print as Spot	If you click this button, all spot colours on the selected surface are output as spot colours. This is similar to the button of the same name in the **Product Inks** tab, but this button only applies to surfaces selected in the **Surface Inks** tab.
[8]	Cancel	If you click the button the changes in the surface ink settings are discarded and the dialog box is closed.
[9]	OK	If you click the button the changes in the surface ink settings are maintained and the dialog box is closed.

Operating Procedure

This example shows how to change the settings to ensure that the Cyan ink that has been set to be outputted to the back surface of **Sheet 2** is not output.

① Input to XMF data of your choice that has two or more sheets.

② Add **Plates** to the workflow.

③ Assign the data that was input in ① to **Plates**.

④ Select **Plates**, and click the **Ink** icon.

⑤ Select the **Surface Inks** tab, and tick the **Backs Only** radio button.

⑥ Click the **Sheet 2** Cyan once to change it to .

⑦ The Cyan ink on the back surface of **Sheet 2** is not output.

Restrictions

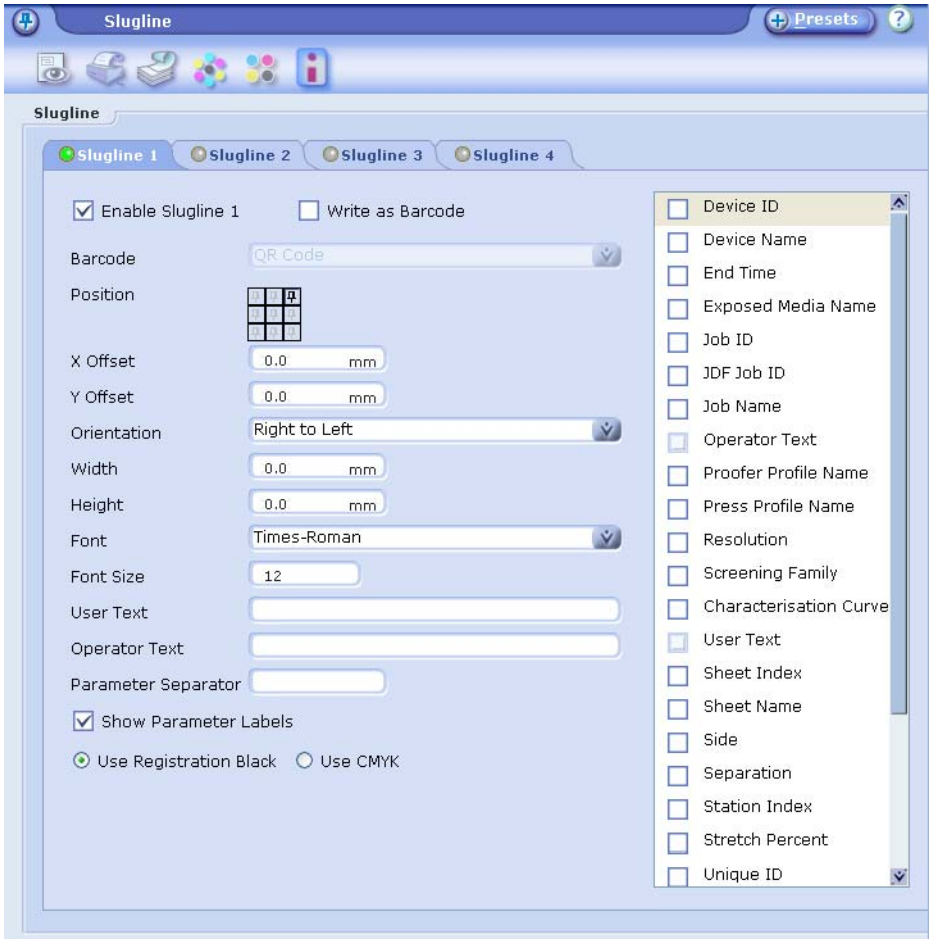
- When you make surface ink settings, they do not apply to a specific surface but to the nth surface in a sequence of surfaces. For example, if you have set the preference of the third surface in an imposition, the setting will always be applied to the third surface, even if the folding order is changed. We therefore recommend that surface ink settings be applied after the imposition has been completed.
- You cannot view or edit surface ink settings in the **Plates** template.
- The **Surface Inks** tab does not show which inks are being used on which surface.

- You cannot set inks with surface ink settings not to be printed in the **Product Inks** tab. When surface ink settings are applied, that ink is automatically set to print at the product level.
- Surface ink settings cannot be applied to **PDF Export**, even if **PDF Export** is connected to **Plates**.
- Surface ink settings cannot be applied to a section proof.
- If an **RIP Proof**, that uses a **Plates** surface for which surface ink preferences have been specified, is connected to a remote device, preference is given to the surface ink setting in **RIP Proof** for inks that have been enabled in both **Plates** and **RIP Proof**.
- If an **RIP Proof** that has been created on a remote system is connected to **Plates**, **Honour Remote Surface Overrides** is disabled without any display of a warning.
- If the imposition of an **RIP Proof** created on a remote system is changed, the warning about surface ink settings is not displayed.
- If you save a **RIP Proof** product, that has been created on a remote system, as a workflow item template, the surface ink settings will not be maintained.

3.7.8 – Slugline

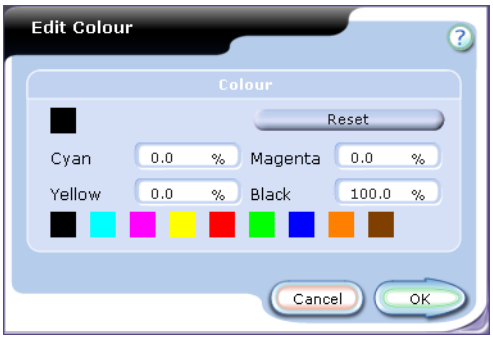
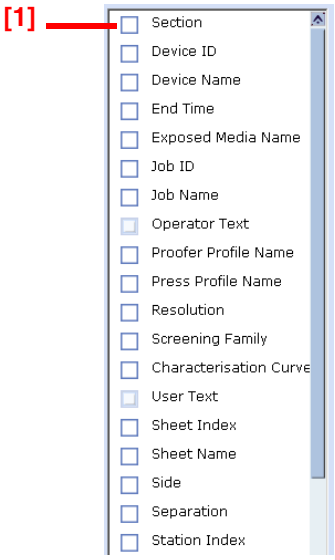
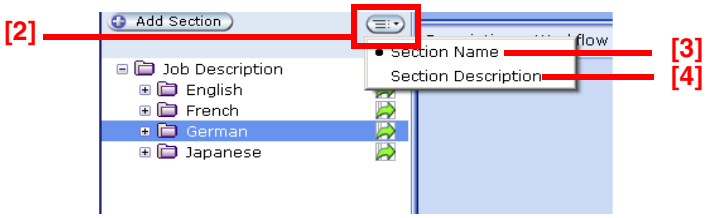
The Slugline panel gives users the option of deciding on the location, content and fonts to be printed.

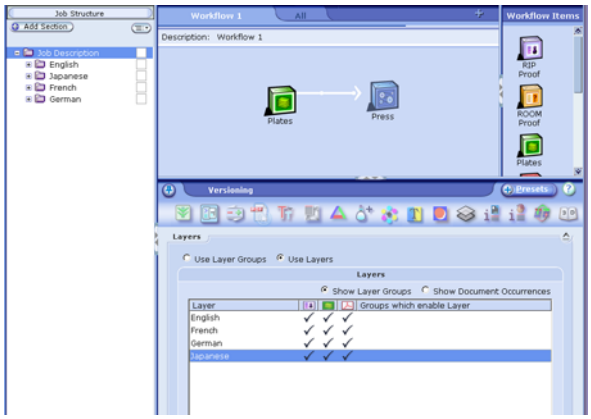
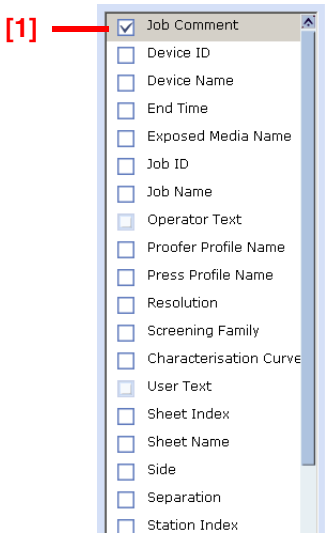
Diagram: Slugline panel

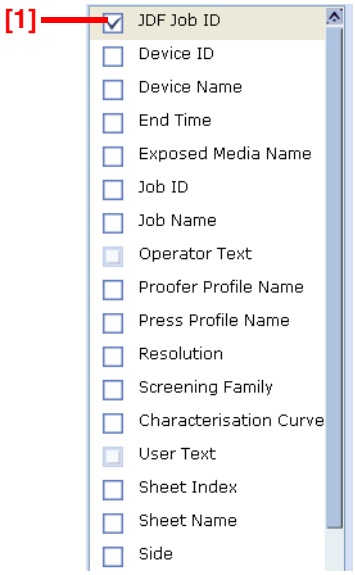


About Slugline panel

Name	Description
Slugline	Up to four sluglines can be set up. • Enable Slugline - Tick the box to enable the slugline and its settings. • Write as Barcode - Enable the check box to encode the slugline content as a barcode and not text. The only supported format of barcode is the 2D QR code. • Position - Select the reference point by clicking one of the nine points of the icon on the right. • Offsets - The X and Y offset values are relative to the reference position. • Orientation - Select the direction of the text. • Width - Specifies the maximum width for the text slugline. The slugline is wrapped to the next line if it exceeds the width specified - the value 0 means the full width of the plate. If Write as Barcode is enabled, the width defines both the width and height of the barcode. If the width is set to 0, the barcode will automatically be resized so it is large enough to contain all the required information and still be of a suitable quality for scanning (each module in the image is 0.4 mm). A warning will be displayed if a non-zero value is entered and it will cause the barcode to be too small to be of a suitable quality for scanning. • Height (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Specifies the max height for the slugline. If the slugline text is greater than the specified height, the text will be cropped - the value 0 means no limit on the height. • Font (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - The slugline font can be chosen from those in the drop-down list. Fonts cannot be added to this menu. • Font Size (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Sets the font size. • User Text - Free text. • Operator Text - Free text. • Parameter Separator - Enter the character(s) to be used as the separator. The default character is a space. • Show Parameter Labels - To include the parameter labels in the slugline, check this check box. • All Separations (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on all separations. • Single Separation (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on one separation only. Select the separation that is to include the barcode from the drop-down list. • Use Registration Black (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the slugline to the registration colour. • Use CMYK (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the slugline to the selected CMYK colour.

Name	Description
Slugline	• Edit Colour (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - When Use CMYK is selected, a square box of the colour currently set appears on the right, together with its CMYK values. Double click on the box to bring up the Edit Colour dialog. A preview is displayed on the top left. Either click the required coloured box or enter CMYK values to set the colour for the slugline.  • Parameter list (Device ID, Device Name, End Time, Exposed Media Name, Job ID, etc.) - Check appropriate boxes in the list to place the corresponding items on the slugline. The Operator Text field is enabled if it contains any text, otherwise it is disabled (greyed out). Similarly for the User Text field. These components are printed in the order in which they are listed. To change the order, select a component and drag it to its new position then click the Update button. • Section - The section name or the section description information is displayed on the slugline to enable different versions on the plate to be identified. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Section - If you select the **Section** check box, the section information string is displayed in the plate. The displayed content depends on the setting of the [2] Show Section Label icon in the diagram below.  [3]: Section Name - The section name is displayed on the plate. [4]: Section Description - The section description is displayed on the plate.

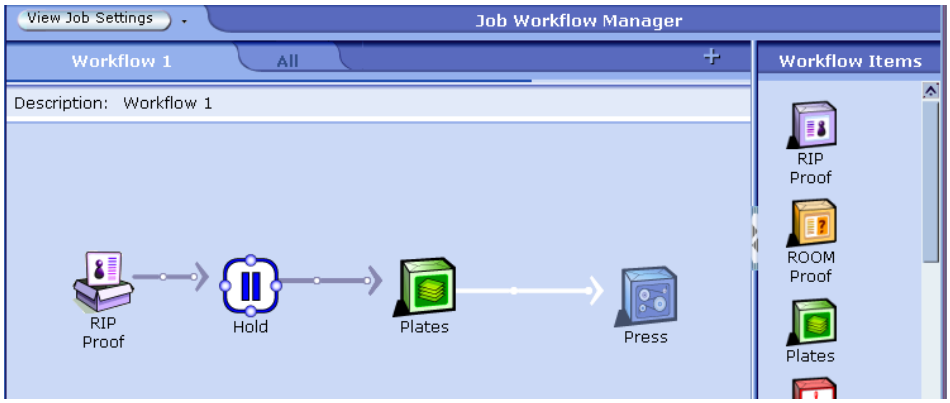
Name	Description
Slugline	**Operating Procedure** The following example show how to create a job that displays four different versions in the slugline. The PDF in this job contains 4 layers (English, Japanese, French and German) that are hidden. Four PDFs can be used separately in each version. ① Create a new job using the "NewDefault" job template, and input the PDF. ② Open the new job and add the Plates workflow item to the workflow. ③ Drag the source file to Plates four times to create four sections. ④ Double-click **Section 1** and change the name to **English**. ⑤ Click **Versioning** and enable the display of the **English** layer. ⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ on **Section 2~4**. The job should look the diagram below.  ⑦ Select the **Plates** workflow item and select **Slugline**. **Enable Slugline 1**. ⑧ Tick the **Dst. Section** check box in the item list on the right. ⑨ This completes the user actions in this example. To complete the job, set **Plates** / **Press** and click **Save**. • Job Comment **Function Summary** You can add a job comment to **Slugline**. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this checkbox to export job comments to the slugline. By default, the check box is at the bottom of the list. However, you can move it to the top by clicking it.

Name	Description
Slugline	• JDF Job ID New **Function Summary** A JDF Job ID can now be added to the slugline. For details about the JDF Job ID, see 2.1 - Add Job Dialog. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this checkbox to export JDF Job IDs to the slugline.

3.8 – RIP Proof

RIP Proof is a workflow item that controls the output of impositions and single sheets to proofing devices.

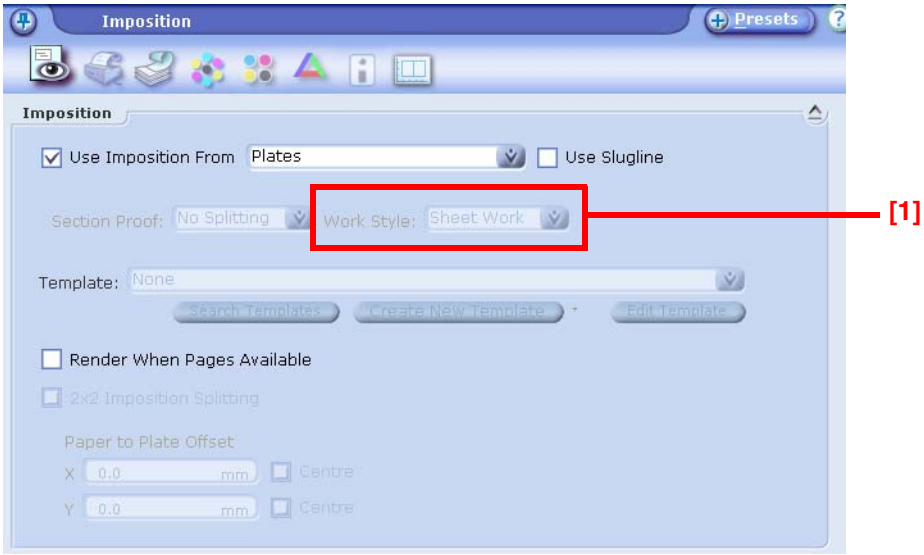
Diagram: RIP Proof



3.8.1 – Imposition

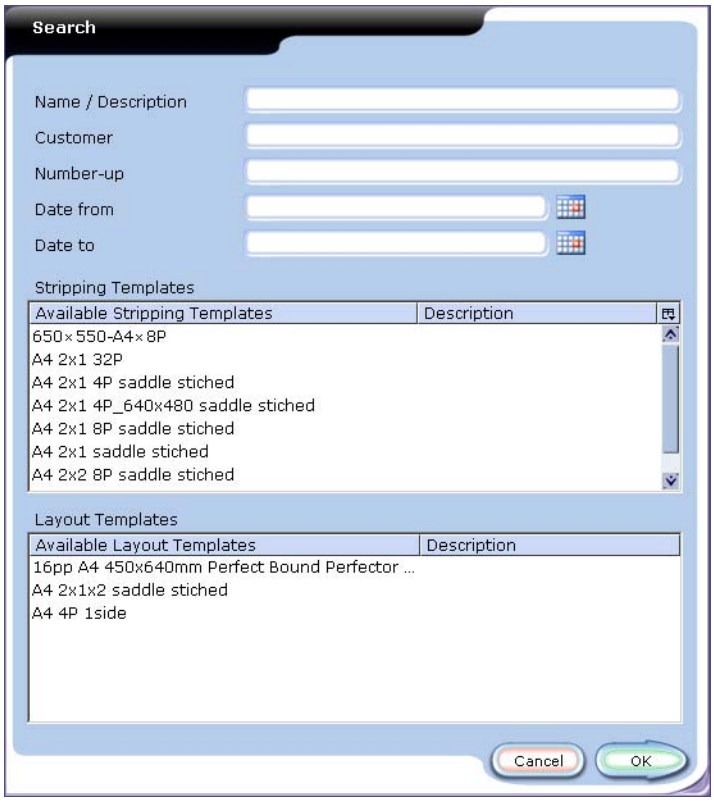
The Imposition Panel allows users to select an existing Imposition template or create a new one.

Diagram: Imposition panel



About Imposition panel

Name	Description
Imposition	• Use Imposition From - Tick this box to enable the drop-down menu on the right, where you can select another workflow item. The imposition used by the selected workflow item will be applied. • Use Slugline - Tick to use the slugline of the workflow item selected for “Use Imposition From”. • Section Proof - If you select a section splitting patern from the drop-down list, the result of the split will be updated in the preview. When the previewer is clicked, the Section Proof Viewer is launched and the result of the split can be viewed. To cancel the split, select **No Splitting** from the drop-down menu. • Work Style New **Function Summary** You can specify the work style (Sheet Work/Perfecting) when setting the split for the section proof. **Background** In previous versions, the Plates work style setting was kept for the flipping direction for the section proof split, but the flipping direction also had to be adjusted for the digital press at the same time. In V3.1, the work style can be set separately from Plates, enabling a flipping direction suitable for the output device to be set on the XMF side. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Work Style - Select the flipping direction from the pull-down list. **Restrictions** • If section proof splitting is not set, the setting is fixed at **Sheet Work** and cannot be changed. • This setting does not affect the forward or backward rotation of the section proof. • When the split pattern is changed after running the section proof split, the section proof split is run immediately with the set Work Style. • Template - Select a template from the drop-down menu. There are three basic template options as below: - None - This option applies no imposition and treats the flowed pages as single sheets. - Double Sided - If selected the layout will have odd pages on the front surfaces and even pages on the back surfaces (PPF exported by the CIP4 stage will use the layout). - Custom - An imposition specifically set up for this specific job. This often represents a standard imposition that has been changed for a specific job, such as a different combination of marks.

Name	Description
Imposition	• Search Templates - Click this to open the Search dialog. The search dialog displays templates that match the set criteria and filters out the rest. For example, if you enter 4-up in the Template Name, the list will change to show only those templates that have ‘4-up’ in their name. The upper list shows Stripping Templates and the lower shows Layout Templates.  • Create New Template - Click to create a new template. This opens Imposition Viewer. See 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping) and 4.4 - Imposition Viewer (Layout). • Edit Template - Click to edit the selected template. This opens Imposition Viewer. See 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping) and 4.4 - Imposition Viewer (Layout). • Render When Pages Available - When enabled, allows proofs to be made when all the pages of the applicable surface (e.g. Front of Sheet 1 only, Back of Sheet 2 only) are available.. • 2 x 2 Imposition Splitting - When enabled, allows each signature to be split into a series of 2 by 2 sections. • Imposition thumbnails view - Shows the imposition pattern selected by the template.

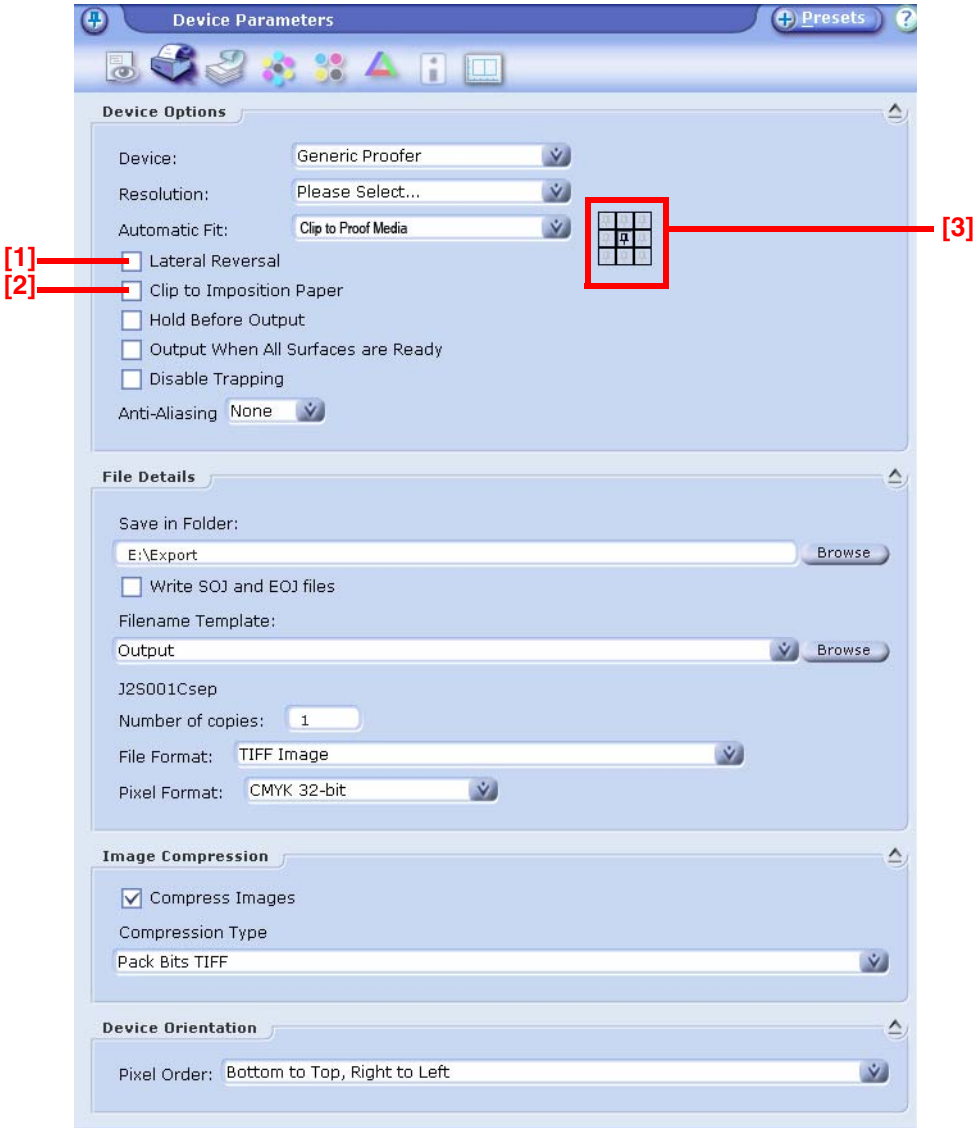
Restrictions

- From V3.0, the **Section Proof** function allowed splitting into a 1x1 imposition pattern. However, if jobs created in systems before V2.5 were run on the upgraded V3.0 or later system, the section proof was output with the old settings. To output with V3.0 or later settings, you have to re-edit the job in the version you use.

3.8.2 – Device Parameters

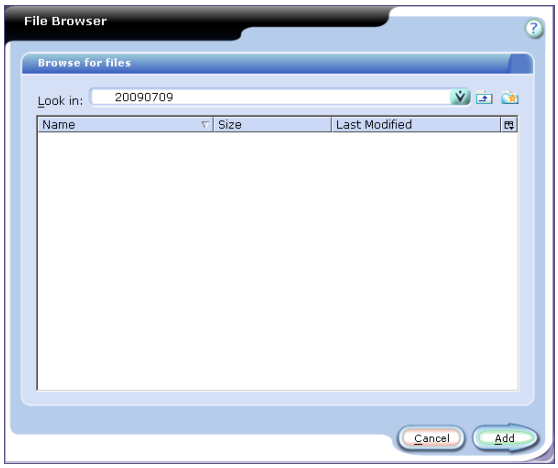
Options displayed in this panel are specific to the device selected - in this example, Generic Proofer.

Diagram: Device Parameters panel



About Device Parameters panel

Name	Description
Device Options	• Device - Select Generic DP, Generic Proofer, Preview or a Basic Remote Proof Device from the drop-down list. New In V3.1, you can also select the Windows printer driver. For details, see 3.8.2.1 - Windows Printer Driver Support. • Resolution - Select from the drop-down list. This is device dependent. • Automatic Fit - Select an option from the drop-down list to fit the source document larger than the media. - Clip to Proof Media New **Function Summary** By clipping the proofing images, jobs can be output even for proofers using media smaller than the paper size that was set with the imposition. **Background** To save the media, in some cases output is performed at a media size that is smaller than the proofing images. In previous versions, this processing resulted in an error, but in V3.1, the user can select whether or not clip, which supports output to various media sizes. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Clipping area selector - Displayed by selecting **Clip to Proof Media** in **Automatic Fit**. Select the reference position for clipping from the areas that have been split into nine. **Restrictions** • This function does not operate correctly unless RIP Proof is connected to Plates on the workflow. • If the proofing images are larger than the proofing media, the area around the selected reference position is clipped. • Clipping is applied to each surface. For this reason, images rendered on the front and back of RIP Proof are placed in different positions on the sheet. • Lateral Reversal - The mirror-reversed image can be displayed. **Screen Explanation** [2]: "Lateral Reversal" check box - Rotated images can be output (horizontally rotated images). **Operating Procedure** If you want to output the a rotated source file in a CTP device and the original unrotated image in a proofer, enabled lateral reversal in **Plates** and disable lateral reversal in **RIP Proof**. ① Open the **Admin** window, select **Templates** and then select **Job Templates** from the drop-down menu. ② Select **NewDefault** from the list and click **New**. ③ Enter a job name of your choice in the job name field. ④ Drag **Plates** to the workflow. ⑤ Specify a device of your choice in **Device Settings** in **Plates**. ⑥ Specify the resolution for the device. ⑦ Enable **Lateral Reversal**. ⑧ Connect **RIP Proof** to the **Plates** from ④ and place them in the workflow. ⑨ Specify the media and resolution of the selected device. ⑩ Save the template. That completes the procedures for this example. **Restrictions** • If the **Plates** connected to **ROOM Proof** reverses output, **ROOM Proof** will also reverse output. • This does not support **RIP Proof** that outputs to a digital press. • Rotated images are not displayed in **Document Mode** or **Transition Mode**.

Name	Description
File Details	• [3]: Clip to Imposition Paper New - The rendered images are clipped to fit the paper size set with imposition. This option can be set when **Clip to Proof Media** is selected in **Automatic Fit**. • Hold Before Output - Tick this box to Hold the job before the rendered surfaces are sent to the device. • Output When All Surfaces are Ready - When checked, it sends data to the output device when rendering of all surfaces and paper stretch application are completed. • Disable Trapping - When ticked, it disables trapping while proofing. • Anti-Aliasing - Select the amount of anti-aliasing to be applied to the output from the drop-down list. • Save in Folder - Click on the Browse button to open a browser to specify where to save the output file.  • Write SOJ and EOJ files - Enable to create a start of job (SOJ) file and an end of job (EOJ) file for each set of separations. • Filename Template - Defines the format of the output filename. A sample file name is displayed beneath the drop-down menu. • Browse - Click to edit the selected file name template. • Number of copies - Total number of copies of the rendered image. • File Format - Select from TIFF Image, TIFF Image in PDF, TIFF Image in PostScript for a printer, TIFF image in Encapsulated PostScript, JPEG Image or PNG Image. • Pixel Format - Select from Mono 1-bit, Mono 8-bit, RGB 24-bit or CMYK 32-bit. (some may not be shown depending on the file format).
Image Compression	• Compress Images - Tick the box to enable image compression. • Compression Type - Select from the drop-down list.
Device Orientation	• Pixel Order - Select from the drop-down list below: - Left to Right, Bottom to Top - Right to Left, Bottom to Top - Left to Right, Top to Bottom - Right to Left, Top to Bottom - Bottom to Top, Left to Right - Bottom to Top, Right to Left - Top to Bottom, Left to Right - Top to Bottom, Right to Left

3.8.2.1- Windows Printer Driver Support New

Function Summary

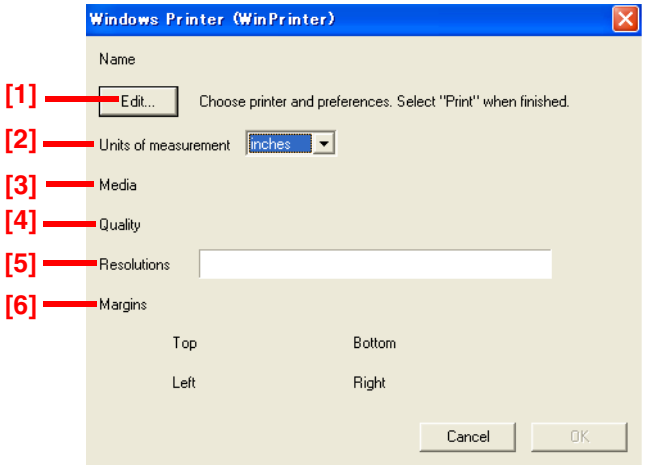
Printers that communicate with XMF using a Windows printer driver supplied by the printer manufacturer can be set as Windows Printer devices.

Background

In previous versions, when users wanted to use newly released printers with XMF, they had to wait for official XMF support. However, many users wanted to use these new printers immediately for simple proof output, such as for checking layouts.
In V3.1, a function has been added that outputs from XMF via the Windows printer driver, enabling new hardware to be used immediately.

Screen Explanation

Added Windows Printer settings to Config Tool.



[1]	Edit	Click to display the standard Windows print dialog. In the print settings dialog, click **Print** to return to this dialog.
[2]	Units of measurement	Select the measurement units in the Windows Printer device dialog from the pull-down list.
[3]	Media	Displays the name and size of the media selected with the printer driver.
[4]	Quality	Displays the output quality selected with the printer driver.
[5]	Resolutions	Enter the resolution (DPI value) that XMF can use when generating contone images, separated by commas.
[6]	Margins	The margins are the non-printed areas to the top, bottom, left and right that are defined by the printer driver. These margins are not included in the XMF's output calculation.

Operating Procedure

This section describes how to set the Config Tool and how to create an XMF job template, using an example of outputting with a Windows printer for checking the XMF's imposition layout.

First, set the Config Tool.

① Open the Config Tool, and drag the **Windows Printer** icon from the device list to the system configuration area.
② When the **Windows Printer** settings window opens, click **Edit**.
③ Select the target printer in the printer selection window, and perform any other settings required for the device.
④ Save the settings and click **Print** in the printer selection window to return to a Config Tool window that is updated with the settings.
⑤ Enter the DPI value in the **Resolutions** field.
⑥ Click **OK** to complete the Config Tool settings.

Next, perform the XMF settings.

⑦ Create a job in which Plates and RIP Proof are connected.

⑧ Open the **Device Parameters** panel of RIP Proof, and select the target Windows printer in the **Devices** panel of the **Device Options** panel.

⑨ Set **Resolution** in the **Device Options** panel.

⑩ In **Automatic Fit** of the **Device Options** panel, select **Scale to fit**.

⑪ In **Preferred Media** of the **Media** panel, select **Windows Printer Media Size** (**Media Size** changes as appropriate).

⑫ Set the Plates device and imposition.

⑬ Add a document to the job and map pages to Plates.

⑭ When the job is saved, the rendering process advances, and the rendered RGB image is sent to the printer driver.

This completes the operations for the output settings. Check that output can be actually performed via the printer driver.

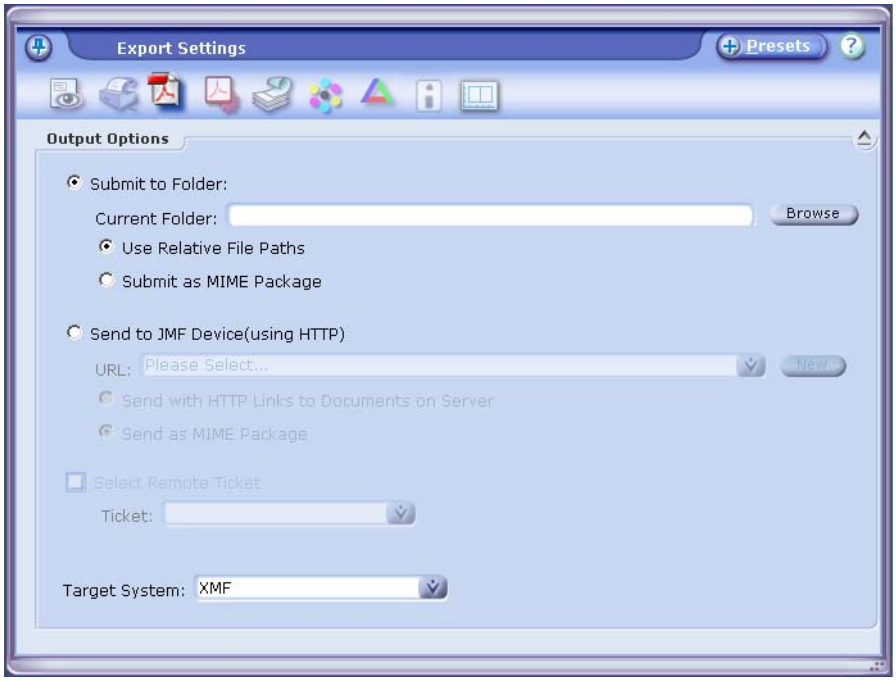
Restrictions

- The printer driver used by this function must support raster images.
- Only one media size can be set for one device.
- Rendered images cannot be viewed in Imposition View.
- Double sided printing is not supported.
- If the printer driver is updated, the corresponding Windows Printer device must be reset with the Config Tool.
- When outputting from XMF, several options in the Windows Printer dialog may not function.
- Even if the printer has a Windows printer driver, it may not be possible to link it to the output module.

3.8.3 – Export Settings

This panel is only available if either a Basic Remote Proof Device or Generic DP is selected in "Device" in "Device Parameters".

Diagram: Export Settings panel



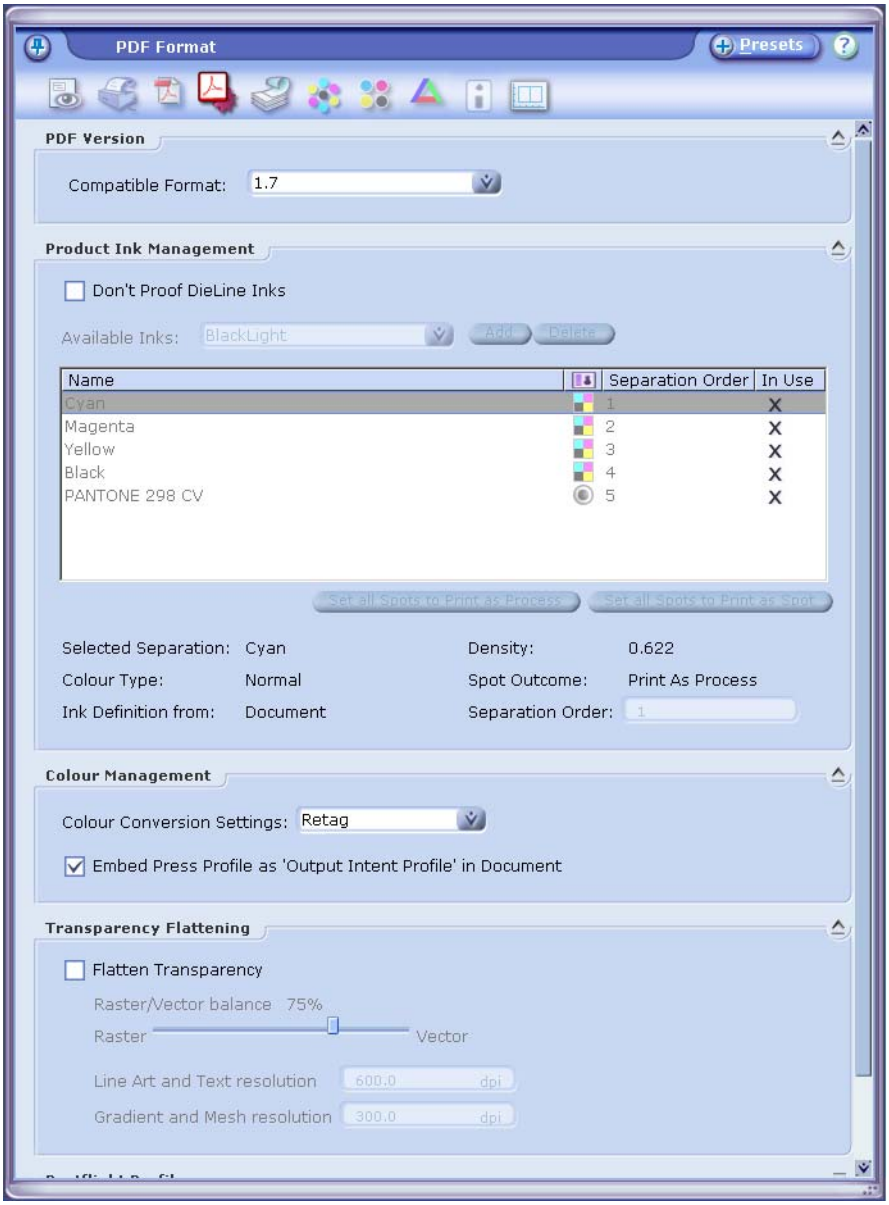
About Export Settings panel

Name	Description
Output Options	There are two ways to output files: • Submit to Folder - Outputs to a folder. - Browse - Click this to open a browser to find the output folder. - Use Relative File Paths - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo Press. - Submit as MIME Package - Tick this box to create MIME encoded output. • Send to JMF Device (using HTTP) - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package. - New - When this button is clicked, the JDF Export URLs panel in the Admin window is displayed where you can set up remote URLs. - Send with HTTP Links to Documents on Server - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo press. - Send as MIME Package - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package, with a template. - Select Remote Ticket - Can be used to send JDF to third party applications like Celebrant. - Ticket - Select from the drop-down list to define a job ticket at the remote location.
Rasterised PDF	• Generate Rasterised PDF - When ticked the ‘Page Boxes’ section is disabled and the page boxes from the imposition will be used. • Resolution - Defines the resolution at which the document pages will be rendered. A drop down list will contain the resolutions that are specified for the selected device. • Anti-Aliasing - Select from the drop-down list the amount of anti-aliasing that will be performed by the renderer. • Optimised PDF - Select to break up the rasterised images into smaller parts by extracting images, that are separated by white space, from the content and then produce an image in the PDF for each extracted image. • Full Sized Images - Select to produce a single image for the CMYK separation plus an image for each spot colour that is rendered.

3.8.4 – PDF Format

This panel defines the format of the output PDF file and related options.

Diagram: PDF Format panel



About PDF Format panel

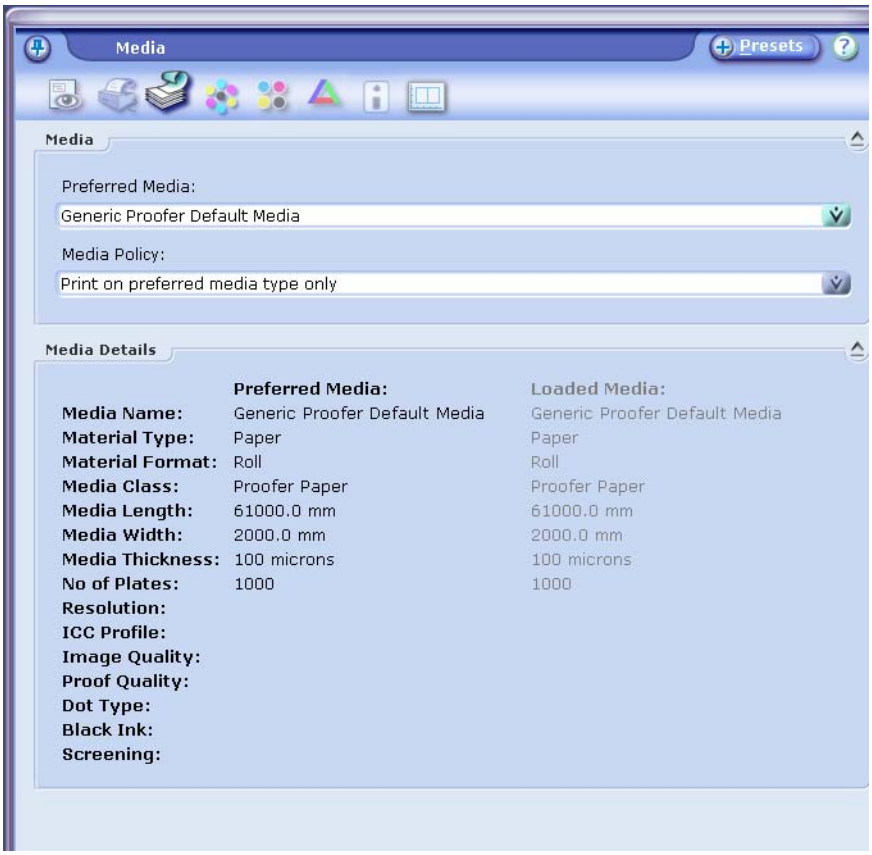
Name	Description
PDF Version	Define the PDF Version (format level) for output. Versions available are: • Compatible Format - 1.3 - 1.4 - 1.5 - 1.6 - 1.7 - PDF/X-1a: 2001 - PDF/X-1a: 2003 - PDF/X-3: 2002 - PDF/X-3: 2003

Name	Description
Product Ink Management	This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified in the job, which inks are to be printed and in what order. • Don't Proof DieLine Inks - Check the box if you don't want to output the DieLine Inks to the output files. DieLine Inks must be defined as Die Line in the Ink Management panel in the Admin window. • Available Inks - If you don't see what you're looking for, click Add to add more. • List of inks 1. Print Mode - By clicking and changing the icon to the right of each ink name, you can change how the ink is output: - Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. - Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change) - Don't Print - The ink will not be output. 2. Separation Order - This is the order in which the colours will be processed. To change the order, highlight an ink in the list and change its order number. The rest of the inks in the list will be moved automatically. 3. In Use - The In Use column is ticked if the colour is actually used in the current job. • Set all Spots to Print as Process - Click to print all of the spots as process colours. • Set all Spots to Print as Spot - Click to print all of the spots as spot colours.
Colour Management	• Colour Conversion Settings - Select Convert, or Retag the PDF file with the new colour settings. • Embed Press Profile as 'Output Intent Profile' in Document - Enable if you wish to save the output ICC profile in the PDF.
Transparency Flattening	Flattening is achieved using the Adobe PDF Print Engine's built-in flattening process. • Flatten Transparency - Tick this box to enable the flattening function mentioned above. • Raster/Vector balance - Use the slider to set a value for object processing. • Line Art and Text resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised line art and text. • Gradient and Mesh resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised gradient and Illustrator mesh objects.
Postflight Profile	• Enfocus PDF Profile - Once the PDF has been generated, a Postflight check can be performed using an Enfocus profile.

3.8.5 – Media

This defines media.

Diagram: Media panel

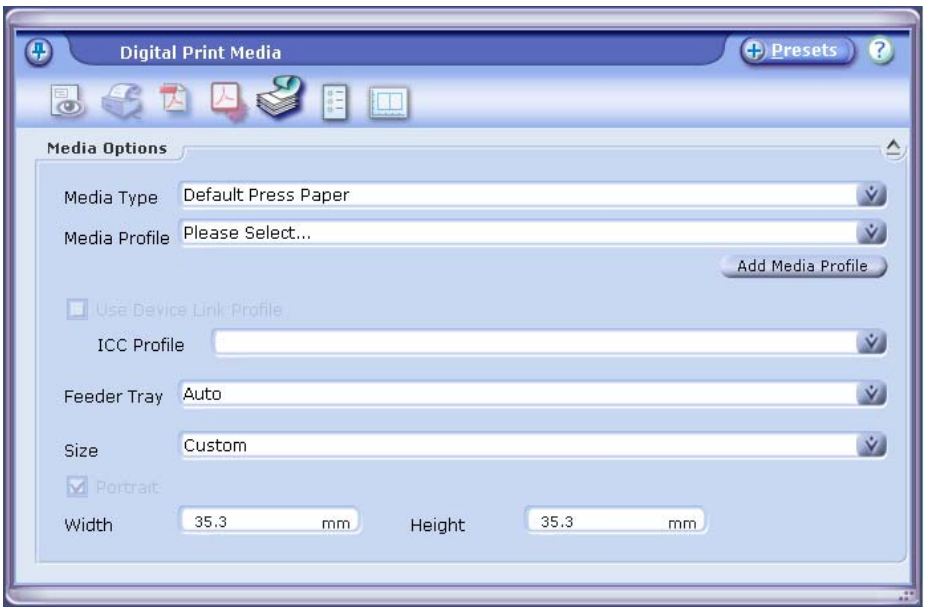


About Media panel

Name	Description
Media	Select your preferred media from the predefined list set up within the Calibration Manager. • Preferred Media - Select your preferred media from the drop-down list. • Media Policy - Select a media policy from the drop-down list: - Print on any Media - Allows the system to use the closest matching media to the media specified. - Print on preferred media type only - Will fail the job if it cannot find the selected media.

Name	Description
Media Details	Details of the selected media are displayed in this section. To understand the relationship of media, see 8.1 - Calibration Manager. • Media Name - Name of the media • Material Type - Film, Plate, Paper • Material Format - Roll, Sheet, Roll as sheet • Media Class - The following options are available: - High contrast film - (for film) - Low contrast film - (for film) - Plate - (for Plate) - Proofer paper - (for Paper) - Photosensitive paper - (for Paper) - Press paper - (for Paper) • Media Length - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • Media Width - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • Media Thickness - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • No of Plates - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings.

Diagram: Media panel (when a digital press has been selected as the device)



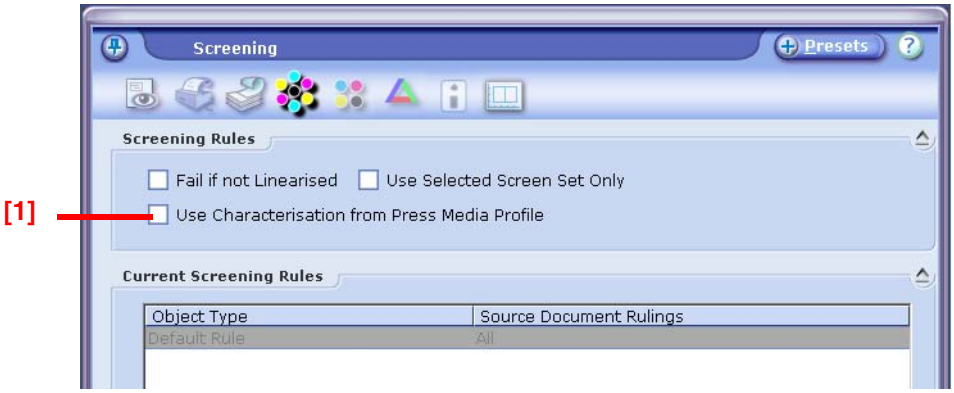
About the Media panel

Name	Description
Media Options	• Media Type - Select a media type from the drop-down list. • Media Profile - Select a media profile from the drop-down list. - Add Media Profile - Use this to set up a new media profile. Click to open the Press Device Profiles panel in the Admin window. • Use Device Link Profile - When this check box is checked, Device Link Profile is displayed in the ICC profile drop-down menu. • ICC Profile - Select an ICC profile from the drop-down list. Please select an ICC profile. • Feeder Tray - Set to Auto and cannot be changed. • Size - Select the size of media from the drop-down list. • Portrait - If the media is to be fed through the digital press with the long edge first, click the Portrait check box. • Width/Height - Enter appropriate values.

3.8.6 – Screening

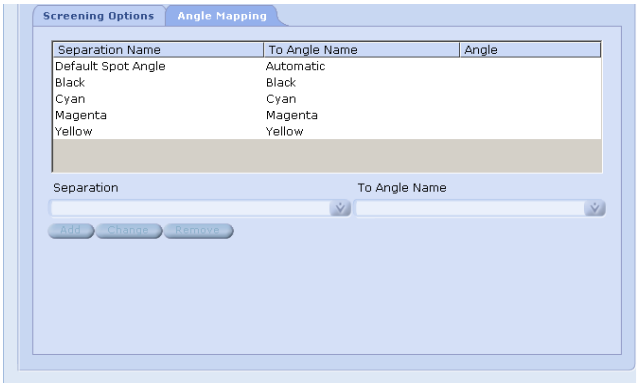
This panel defines the screening applied to incoming documents. The settings can be defined at the job, section or page level.

Diagram: Screening panel



About Screening panel

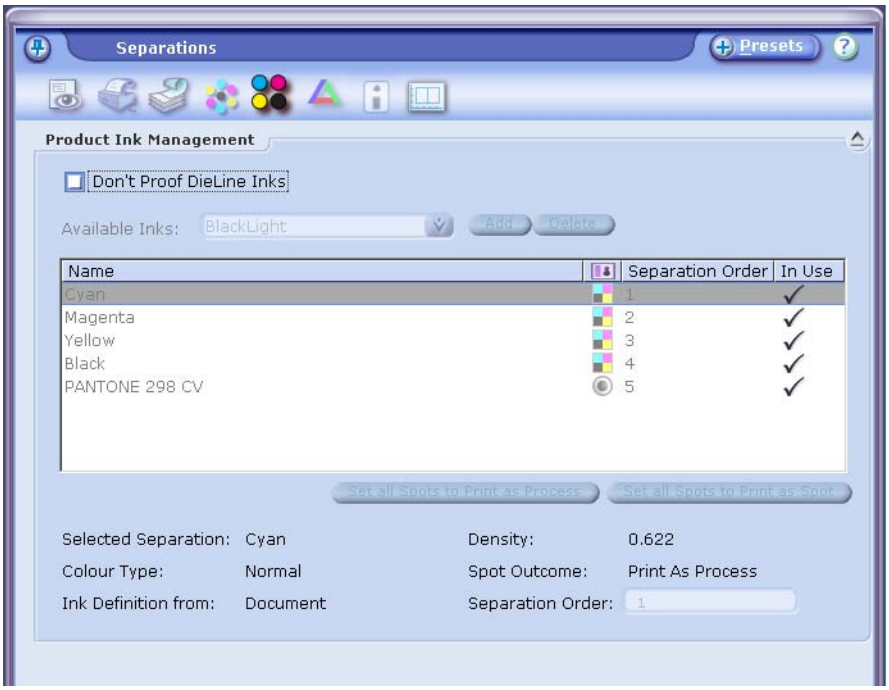
Name	Description
Screening Rules	• Fail if not Linearised - Tick this box to fail the job if the selected screen is not linearised. • Use Selected Screen Set Only - Tick this box to look for an exact match to the Screening Options settings only. • Use Characterisation from Press Media Profile **Function Summary** This uses a characterisation curve from the press media profile selected in the workflow's **Press** item. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Use Characterisation from Press Media Profile - If this item is ticked, the characterisation curve from the press media profile selected in the workflow's Press item is used. This item is only enabled if **Pixel Format** is **Mono 1-bit**. The default setting is OFF. During upgrade all existing jobs and job templates are set to OFF. The availability of settings for each pixel format are shown below. · CMYK 32-bit - Unavailable · Mono 8-bit - Unavailable · Mono 1-bit - Available **Operating Procedure** See the **instructions** in 3.8.11 - Generic Proofer Setting in Config Tool. **Restrictions** • This function is available only if Generic Proofer has been selected as the device.

Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	A screening rule can be set for each object type (Images, Text, Line Art or Smooth Shades), and different screen types can be applied according to the screen rulings (line/inch) set for the objects. • Current Screening Rules - Displays the list of object types as well as the min and max screen rulings. • Screening Options tab - Use Compound Screens - Tick this to display the Secondary Screen. - Browse - Click to open a list of screen sets available from the Calibration Manager. • Angle Mapping tab - Spot colours defined in the job can be mapped to the angle of one of the process colours. - Separation - Select a spot colour from the drop-down list. - To Angle Name - Select a process angle to match from the drop-down list. - Add / Change buttons - Click to add to the list/change the spot colour/process angle selected above. 

3.8.7 – Separations

This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified, which inks are to be printed and in what order.

Diagram: Separations panel



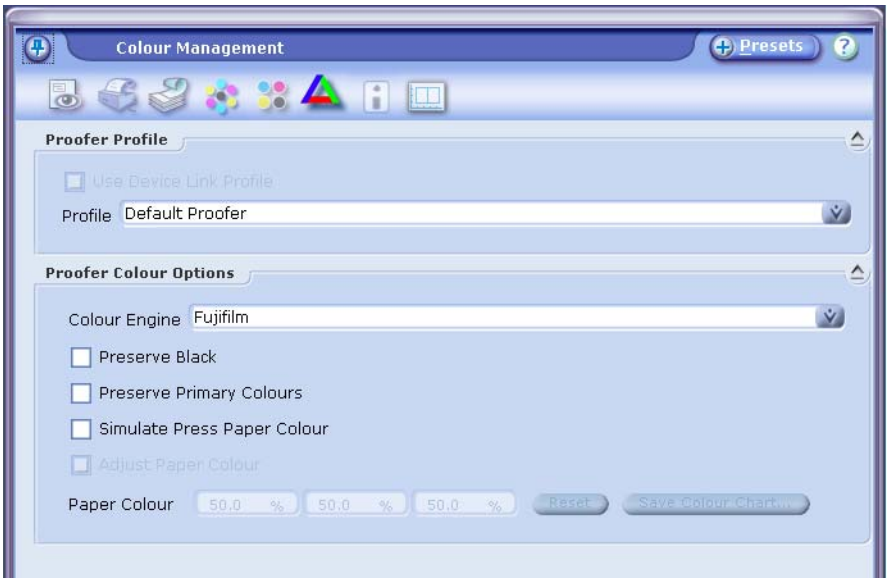
About Separations panel

Name	Description
Product Ink Management	This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified in the job, which inks are to be printed and in what order. • Don't Proof DieLine Inks - Check the box if you don't want to output the DieLine Inks to the output files. • Available Inks - If you don't see what you're looking for, click Add to add more. 1. Print Mode - By clicking and changing the icon to the right of each ink name, you can change how the ink is output: - Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. - Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change). - Don't Print - The ink will not be output. 2. Separation Order - This is the order in which the colours will be processed. To change the order, highlight an ink in the list and change its order number. The rest of the inks in the list will be moved automatically. 3. In Use - The In Use column is ticked if the colour is actually used in the current job. • Set all Spots to Print as Process - Click to print all of the spots as process colours. • Set all Spots to Print as Spot - Click to print all of the spots as spot colours.

3.8.8 – Colour Management

The Colour Management panel is used to define colour management settings for the simulation and output of colour specifically for proofs.

Diagram: Colour Management panel



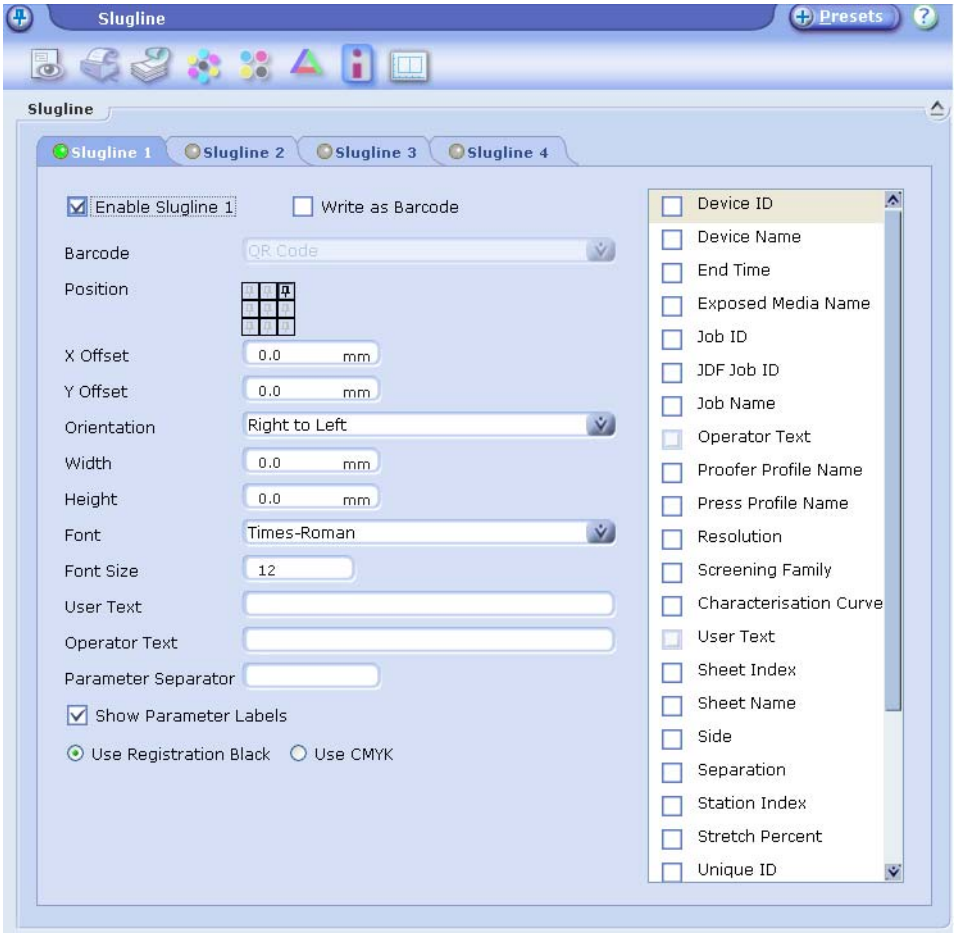
About Colour Management panel

Name	Description
Proofer Profile	When the output device is Generic Proofer, a profile is needed to get the right colour correction. • Use Device Link Profile - When this check box is checked, the drop-down menu of Device Link Profile is displayed. • Profile - Select the proofer profile to be used from the drop-down menu.
Proofer Colour Options	• Colour Engine - The following settings are available: 1. None - No colour management will be applied to the output (the four options below will not be available). 2. Adobe - Use the Adobe CMM to colour manage the output (the four options below will not be available). 3. Fujifilm - Use the FujiFilm CMM, which enables the four options below to be applied. - Preserve Black - Tick this to keep the black point when simulating the press. - Preserve Primary Colours - Tick this to keep the colour for pure colours (colours that consist of only C, M and Y) when simulating the press. - Simulate Press Paper Colour - Uses the press media profiles paper colour to simulate the press paper on the proof. - Adjust Paper Colour - if Simulate Press Paper Colour is enabled this option allows the selection of a new paper colour (see below). a Paper Colour - Enter the percentage values for the new paper to simulate. b Reset - Changes the CMY values to 0.0%. c Save Colour Chart - Generates a calibration page file on disk which, when output to your press, gives a reference for the correct paper values to enter.

3.8.9 – Slugline

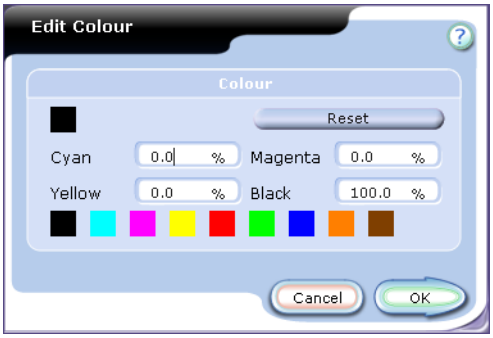
The Slugline panel gives users the option of deciding on the location, content and fonts to be printed.

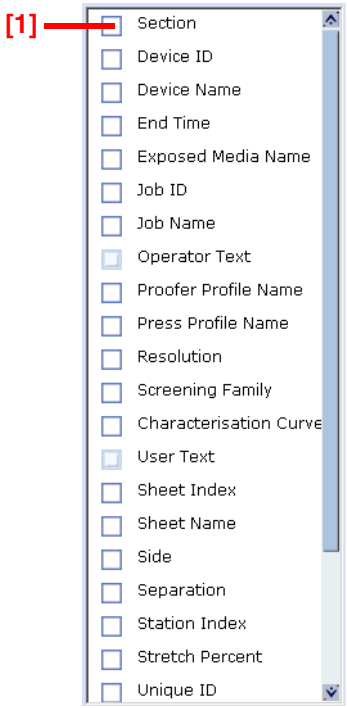
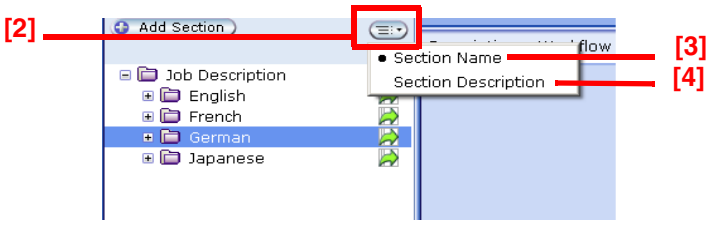
Diagram: Slugline panel

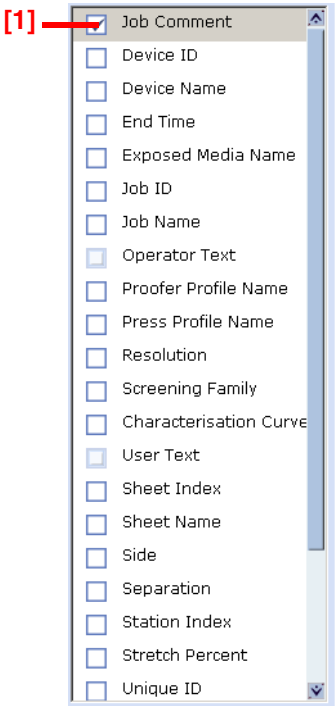
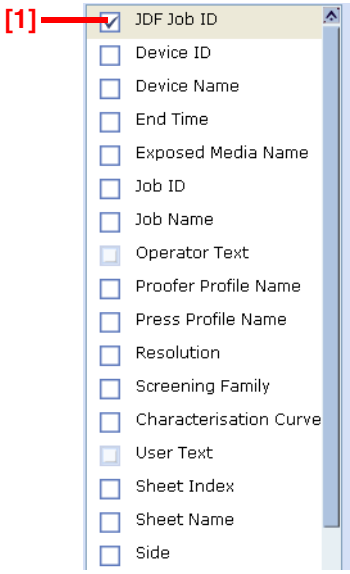


About Slugline panel

Name	Description
Slugline	Up to four sluglines can be set up. • Enable Slugline - Tick the box to enable the slugline and its settings. • Write as Barcode - Enable the check box to encode the slugline content as a barcode and not text. The only supported format of barcode is the 2D QR code. • Position - Select the reference point by clicking one of the nine points of the icon on the right. • Offsets - The X and Y offset values are relative to the reference position. • Orientation - Select the direction of the text. • Width - Specifies the maximum width for the text slugline. The slugline is wrapped to the next line if it exceeds the width specified - the value 0 means the full width of the plate. If Write as Barcode is enabled, the width defines both the width and height of the barcode. If the width is set to 0, the barcode will automatically be resized so it is large enough to contain all the required information and still be of a suitable quality for scanning (each module in the image is 0.4 mm). A warning will be displayed if a non-zero value is entered and it will cause the barcode to be too small to be of a suitable quality for scanning.

Name	Description
Slugline	• Height (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Specifies the max height for the slugline. If the slugline text is greater than the specified height, the text will be cropped - the value 0 means no limit on the height. • Font (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - The slugline font can be chosen from those in the drop-down list. Fonts cannot be added to this menu. • Font Size (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Sets the font size. • User Text - Free text. • Operator Text - Free text. • Parameter Separator - Enter the character(s) to be used as the separator. The default character is a space. • Show Parameter Labels - To include the parameter labels in the slugline, check this check box. • All Separations (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on all separations. • Single Separation (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on one separation only. Select the separation that is to include the barcode from the drop-down list. • Use Registration Black (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the slugline to the registration colour. • Use CMYK (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the slugline to the selected CMYK colour. • Edit Colour (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - When Use CMYK is selected, a square box of the colour currently set appears on the right, together with its CMYK values. Double click on the box to bring up the Edit Colour dialog. A preview is displayed on the top left. Either click the required coloured box or enter CMYK values to set the colour for the slugline.  • Parameter list (Device ID, Device Name, End Time, Exposed Media Name, Job ID, etc.) - Check appropriate boxes in the list to place the corresponding items on the slugline. The Operator Text field is enabled if it contains any text, otherwise it is disabled (greyed out). Similarly for the User Text field. These components are printed in the order in which they are listed. To change the order, select a component and drag it to its new position then click the Update button.

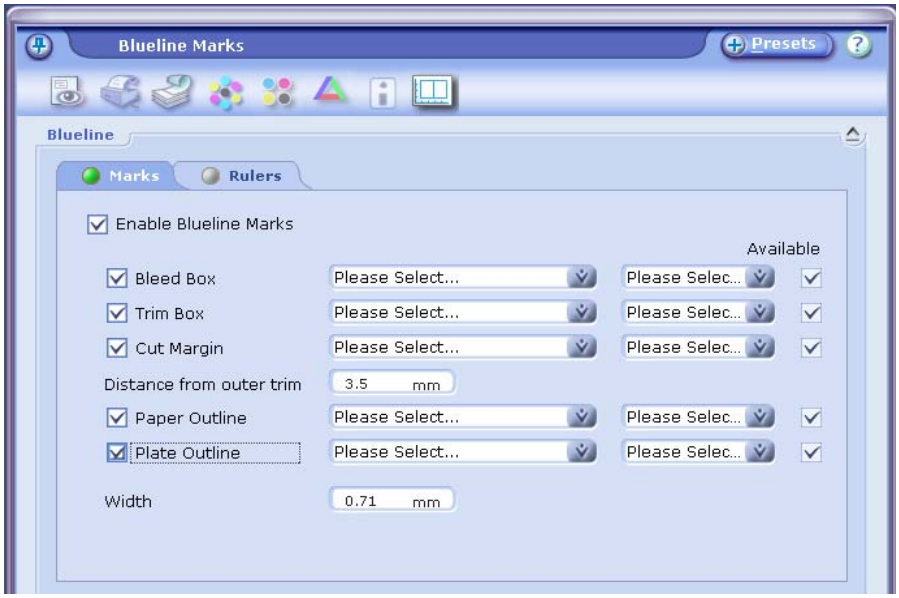
Name	Description
Slugline	• Section - The section name or the section description information is displayed on the slugline to enable different versions on the plate to be identified. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Section - If you select the **Section** check box, the section information string is displayed in the plate. The displayed content depends on the setting of the [2] Show Section Label icon in the diagram below.  [3]: Section Name - The section name is displayed on the plate. [4]: Section Description - The section description is displayed on the plate.

Name	Description
Slugline	• Job Comment - You can add a job comment to **Slugline**. **Screen Explanation**  • [1]: Tick this checkbox to export job comments to the slugline. By default, the check box is at the bottom of the list. However, you can move it to the top by clicking it. • JDF Job ID New **Function Summary** A JDF Job ID can now be added to the slugline. For details about the JDF Job ID, see 2.1 - Add Job Dialog. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this checkbox to export JDF Job IDs to the slugline.

3.8.10 – Blueline Marks

Select the Marks tab or Rulers tab. The Marks tab is used to define lines that will appear on the proof output. The Rulers tab allows users to create a horizontal and or vertical ruler that runs across the output.
This allows the output of spot colour lines and rulers.

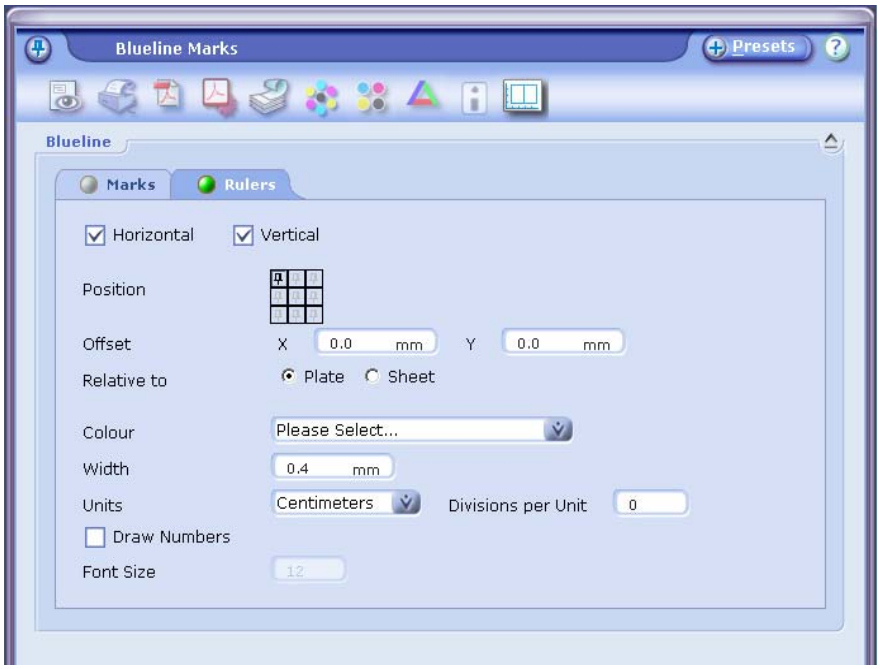
Diagram: Marks tab



About Marks tab

Name	Description
Enable Blueline Marks	Tick this to set up the following settings.
Bleed Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Bleed Box outline from the drop-down list.
Trim Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Trim Box outline from the drop-down list.
Cut Margin	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Cut Margin outline from the drop-down list.
Distance from outer trim	Enter a value to define the distance from the outer trim.
Paper Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Paper outline from the drop-down list.
Plate Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Plate outline from the drop-down list.
Available	These check boxes indicate whether it is possible to draw the corresponding mark. Select Solid, Dashed or White Dash from the drop-down list for the corresponding mark.
Width	Enter the line width.

Diagram: Rulers tab



About Rulers tab

Name	Description
Horizontal	Tick to create a horizontal ruler.
Vertical	Tick to create a vertical ruler.
Position	Select the origin of the horizontal and vertical rulers from the nine points. The units and divisions to be drawn on the rulers will have this point as the origin.
Offset	Enter an offset from the position defined by the Position control above.
Relative to	Enable to make the Position and Offset settings relative to either the plate or the sheet.
Colour	Select the colour for the rulers from the drop-down list.
Width	Enter the required length of the main graduations in points (to two decimal places to a maximum of 99.99 points).
Units	Select either Centimetres or Inches from the drop-down list. The main graduations will be drawn across the main line at every unit away from the origin in both directions.
Divisions per Unit	Enter the value each unit to display.
Draw Numbers	Tick to draw numbers next to each main division line (0 will not be included). The scale will show positive numbers in both directions from the origin and the digits will be placed on the side of the main ruler line nearest to the middle of the paper.
Font Size	Enter the required font size.

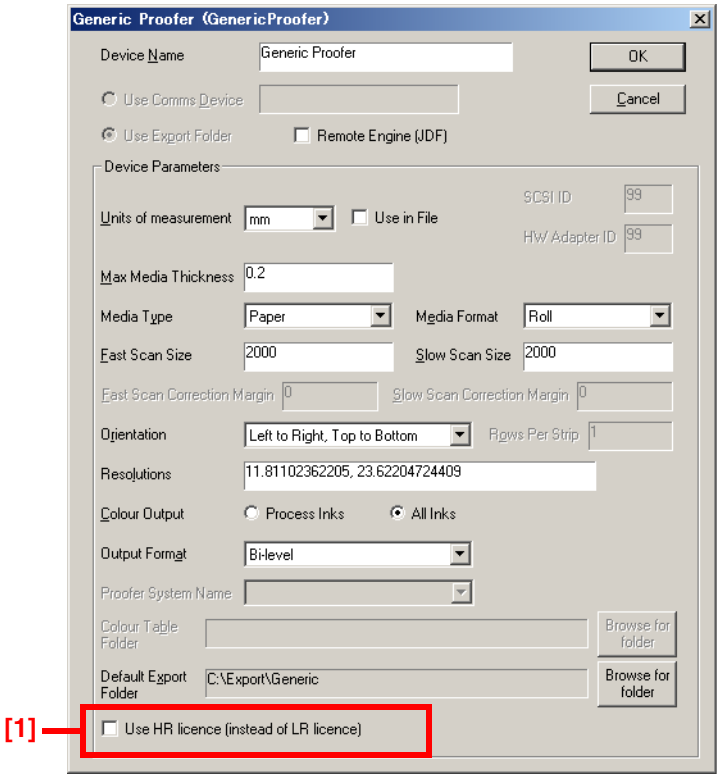
3.8.11 – Generic Proofer Setting in Config Tool

Function Summary

This is a function that uses a HR licence instead of a LR licence in Generic Proofer.

Screen Explanation

The **Use HR licence (instead of LR licence)** check box is located at the bottom of the **Generic Proofer** window in **Config Tool**.



[1]	Use HR licence (instead of LR licence)	If you tick this item, Generic Proofer will use an HR licence of an LR licence. This output format is only enabled for binary images. By default, all existing or new devices are disabled.	
		Use HR licence (instead of LR licence)	Resolution > 2880 dpi
		Ticked	There is no problem. Output at a lower resolution than 2880 dpi is possible for binary images (Example: 1200 dpi, 2400 dpi).
		Not ticked	Generic Proofer returns an error during output.
		Output Format	Enabled/disabled
		Binary image	Enabled
		Colour contour image	Disabled
		Composite contour image	Disabled

Operating Procedure

The example below shows how to create a job with the same resolution and screen settings for a plate and a proof. This example uses a resolution of 2400 dpi.

① If a resolution of 2400 dpi has not been set in Generic Proofer, open **Config Tool** before starting the server and enter 2400 in the Resolution field.

② Save the setting, and close Config Tool.

③ Start the XMF server and open the XMF client.

④ Create a new job, and add Plates and RIP Proof to the workflow.

⑤ Click the **Screening** icon in **Job Description**.

⑥ Select a screening of your choice.

⑦ Select **Rip Proof** and click the **Device Parameters** icon.

⑧ Select **Generic Proofer** as the **Device** and **2400 dpi** as the **Resolution**.

⑨ Set **Mono 1-bit** as the **Pixel Format**.

⑩ Click the **Screening** icon, and select the screening that you chose in step ⑥.

⑪ Select **Plates** and click the **Device Settings** icon.

⑫ Select **Tiff Export** as the **Device** and **2400 dpi** as the **Resolution**.

That completes the setting.

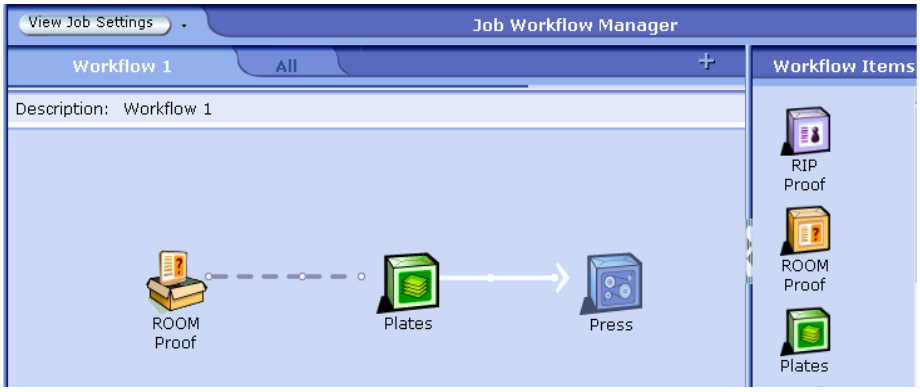
Restrictions

- High resolution screening output from Generic Proofer is possible in ROOM Proof, but we would not recommend that you reapply the screening after descreening from Plates, because it may result in problems such as moire defects.
- If you have one HR licence and one LR licence, and are using CTP (or a film setter, Tiff Export or a high resolution rasterised PDF) and Primo, the Primo will use the LR licence.
  Alternatively, you could buy an HR licence for the Primo.

3.9 – ROOM Proof

A ROOM Proof (RIP Once, Output Many) is a process where the data goes through the RIP workflow stage only once and produces a descreened version of the output data for proofing and a screened version for the output device.

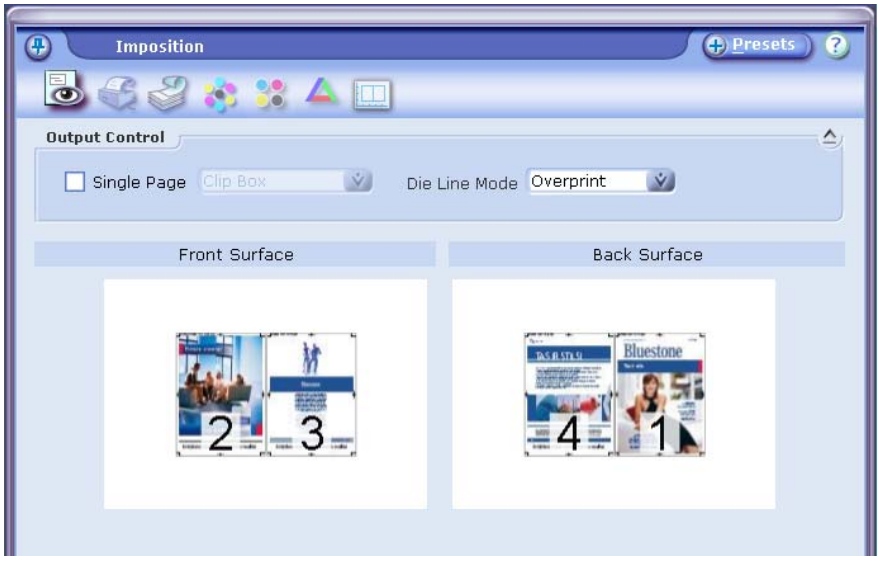
Diagram: ROOM Proof



3.9.1 – Imposition

The ROOM Proof product output can be either single pages or imposed pages; when an imposition pattern is used, it is linked to the Plates settings and the ROOM Proof cannot have its own imposition pattern.

Diagram: Imposition panel



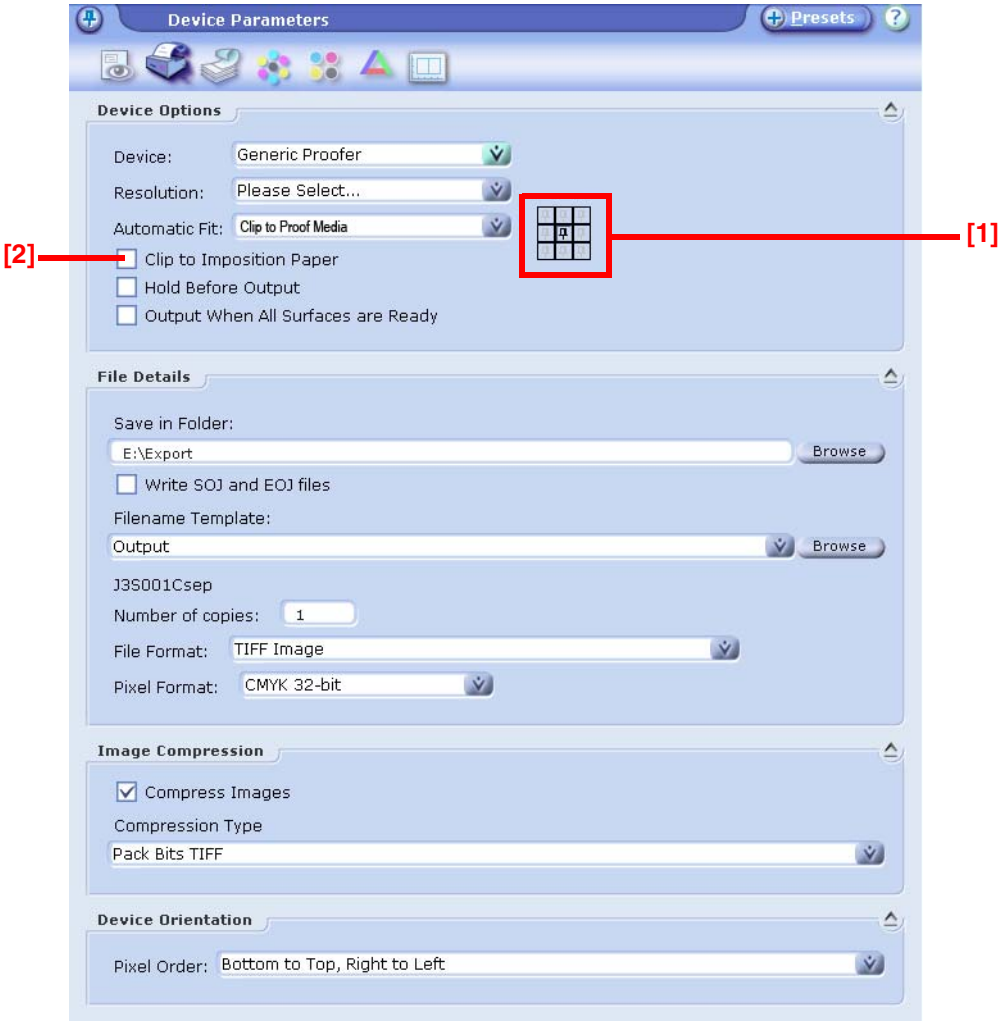
About Imposition panel

Name	Description
Output control	• Single Page - By selecting the Single Page option, you can select either TrimBox or ClipBox from the drop-down list. • Die Line Mode - Select either Knockout or Overprint.

3.9.2 – Device Parameters

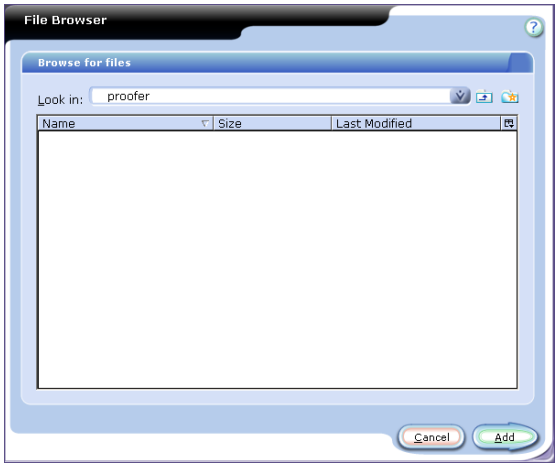
Options displayed in this panel are specific to the device selected - in this example, TIFF Export. Generic Proofer is selected in the example.

Diagram: Device Parameters panel



About Device Parameters panel

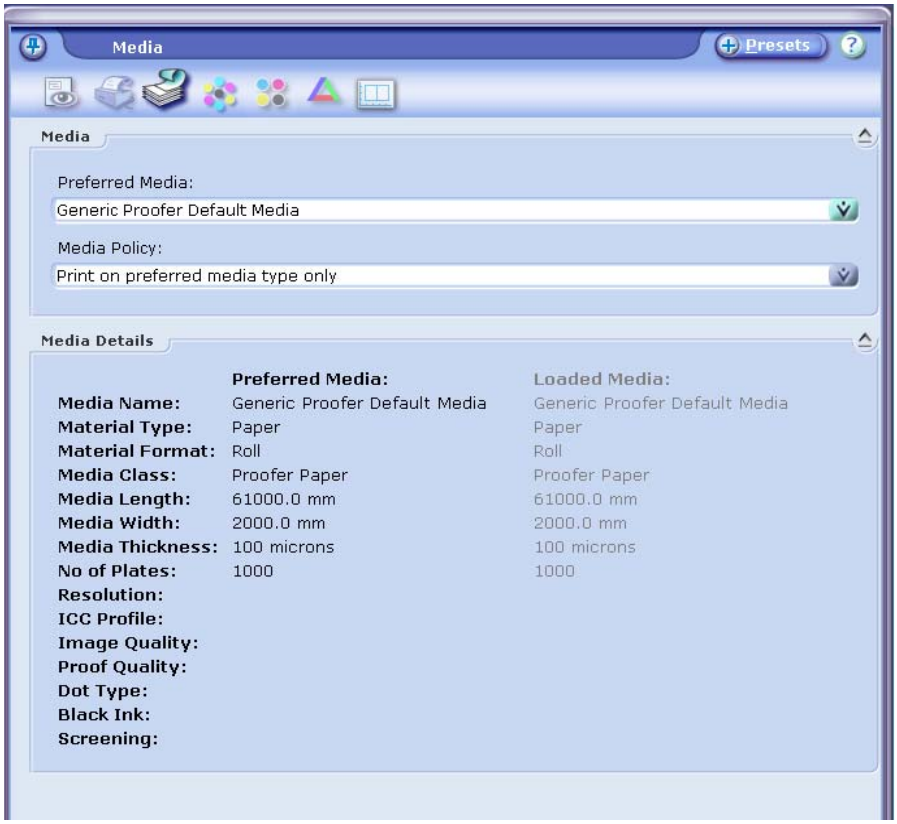
Name	Description
Device Options	• Device - Select Generic Proofer or a proofer device from the drop-down list. • Resolution - Select from the drop-down list. This is device dependent. • Automatic Fit - Select an option from the drop-down list to fit the source document larger than the media. - Clip to Proof Media New **Function Summary** By clipping the proofing images, jobs can be output even for proofers using media smaller than the paper size that was set with the imposition. **Background** To save the media, in some cases output is performed at a media size that is smaller than the proofing images. In previous versions, this processing resulted in an error, but in V3.1, the user can select whether or not clip, which supports output to various media sizes. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Clipping area selector - Displayed by selecting **Clip to Proof Media** in **Automatic Fit**. Select the reference position for clipping from the areas that have been split into nine. **Restrictions** • This function does not operate correctly unless RIP Proof is connected to Plates on the workflow. • If the proofing images are larger than the proofing media, the area around the selected reference position is clipped. • [2]:Clip to Imposition Paper New - The rendered images are clipped to fit the paper size set with imposition. This option can be set when **Clip to Proof Media** is selected in **Automatic Fit**. • Hold Before Output - Tick this box to Hold the job before the rendered surfaces are sent to the device. • Output When All Surfaces are Ready - When checked, it sends data to the output device when rendering of all surfaces and paper stretch application are completed.

Name	Description
File Details	• Save in Folder - Click on the Browse button to open a browser to specify where to save the output file.  • Write SOJ and EOJ files - Enable to create a start of job (SOJ) file and an end of job (EOJ) file for each set of separations. • Filename Template - Defines the format of the output filename. A sample file name is displayed beneath the drop-down menu. • Browse - Click to edit the selected file name template. • Number of copies - Total number of copies of the rendered image. • File Format - Select from TIFF Image, TIFF Image in PDF, TIFF Image in PostScript for a printer, TIFF image in Encapsulated PostScript, JPEG Image or PNG Image. • Pixel Format - Select from Mono 1-bit, Mono 8-bit, RGB 24-bit or CMYK 32-bit. (some may not be shown depending on the file format).
Image Compression	• Compress Images - Tick the box to enable image compression. • Compression Type - Select from the drop-down list.
Device Orientation	• Pixel Order - Select from the drop-down list below: - Left to Right, Bottom to Top - Right to Left, Bottom to Top - Left to Right, Top to Bottom - Right to Left, Top to Bottom - Bottom to Top, Left to Right - Bottom to Top, Right to Left - Top to Bottom, Left to Right - Top to Bottom, Right to Left

3.9.3 – Media

This defines media.

Diagram: Media panel



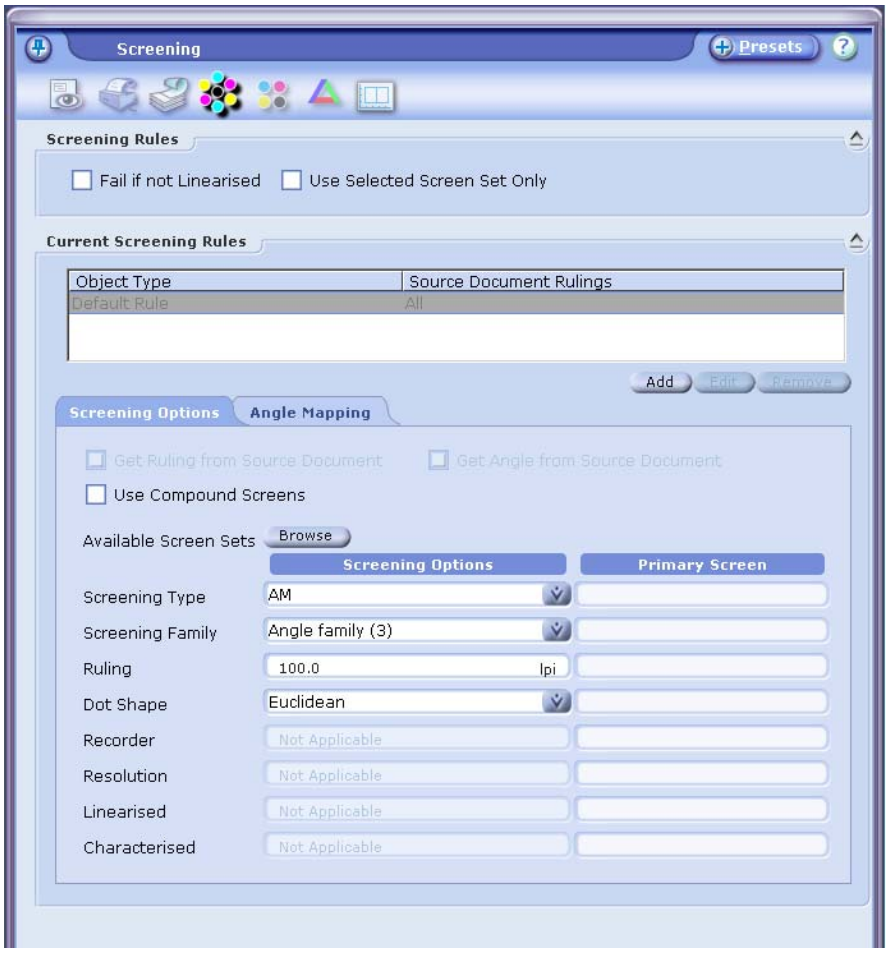
About Media panel

Name	Description
Media	Select your preferred media from the predefined list set up within the Calibration Manager. • Preferred Media - Select your preferred media from the drop-down list. • Media Policy - Select a media policy from the drop-down list: - Print on any Media - Allows the system to use the closest matching media to the media specified. - Print on preferred media type only - Will fail the job if it cannot find the selected media.
Media Details	Details of the selected media are displayed in this section. To understand the relationship of media, see 8.1 - Calibration Manager. • Media Name - Name of the media • Material Type - Film, Plate, Paper • Material Format - Roll, Sheet, Roll as sheet • Media Class - The following options are available: - High contrast film - (for film) - Low contrast film - (for film) - Plate - (for Plate) - Proofer paper - (for Paper) - Photosensitive paper - (for Paper) - Press paper - (for Paper) • Media Length - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • Media Width - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • Media Thickness - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings. • No of Plates - As defined in the Calibration Manager in the Dimensions settings.

3.9.4 – Screening

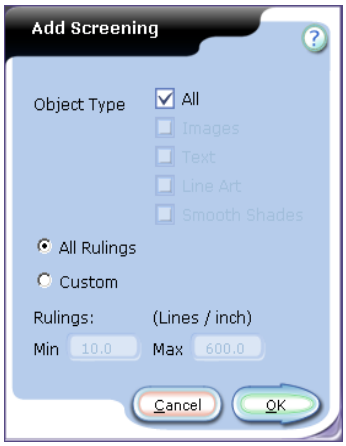
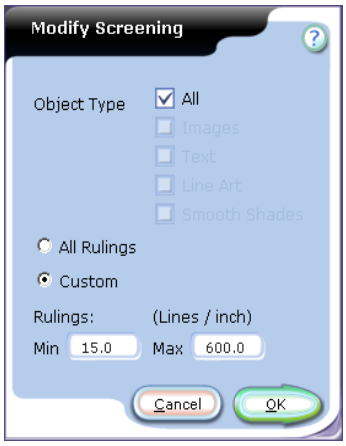
This panel defines the screening applied to incoming documents. The settings can be defined at the job, section or page level.

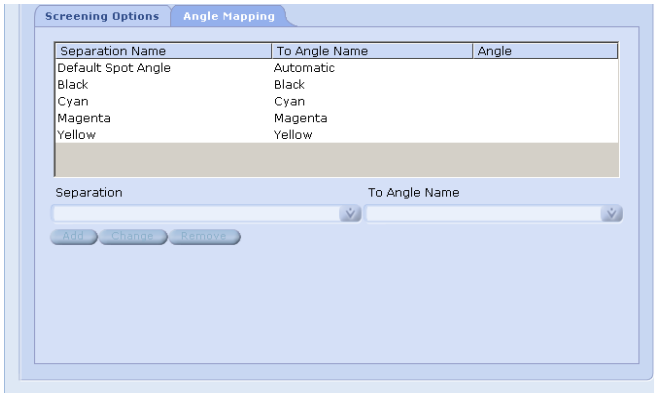
Diagram: Screening panel



About Screening panel

Name	Description
Screening Rules	• Fail if not Linearised - Tick this box to fail the job if the selected screen is not linearised. • Use Selected Screen Set Only - Tick this box to look for an exact match to the Screening Options settings only.

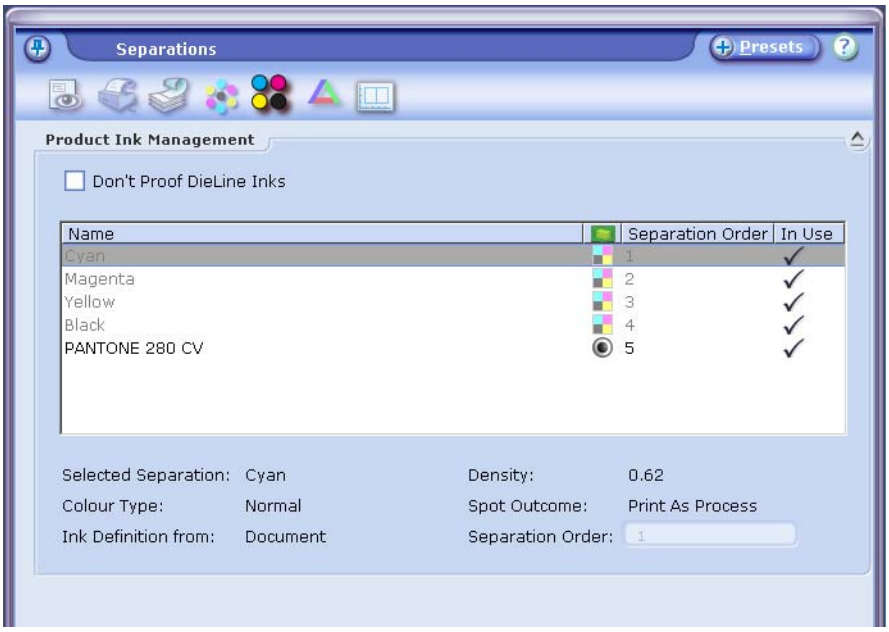
Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	A screening rule can be set for each object type (Images, Text, Line Art or Smooth Shades), and different screen types can be applied according to the screen rulings (line/inch) set for the objects. • Current Screening Rules - Displays the list of object types as well as the min and max screen rulings. • Add - Click to open the Add Screening dialog box. This allows you to select the object type and the min and max screen rulings  • Edit - If you click this when a screen is highlighted in the list, the Modify Screening dialog box is displayed. This allows you to change the object type and the min and max screen rulings.  • Remove - Click this to remove the screen highlighted in the list. • Screening Options tab - Use Compound Screens - Tick this to display the Secondary Screen. - Browse - Click to open a list of screen sets available from the Calibration Manager.

Name	Description
Current Screening Rules	• Angle Mapping tab - Spot colours defined in the job can be mapped to the angle of one of the process colours. - Separation - Select a spot colour from the drop-down list. - To Angle Name - Select a process angle to match from the drop-down list. - Add / Change buttons - Click to add to the list/change the spot colour/process angle selected above. 

3.9.5 – Separations

This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified, which inks are to be printed and in what order.

Diagram: Separations panel



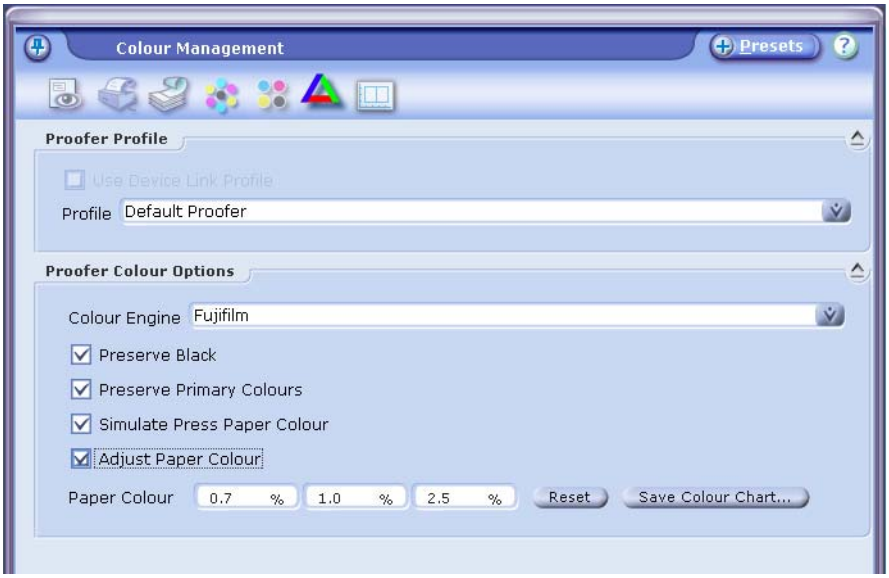
About Separations panel

Name	Description
Product Ink Management	Unlike the Product Ink Management panel of RIP Proof, this only controls whether to output spot colours or not. • Don’t Proof DieLine Inks - Check the box if you don’t want to output the DieLine Inks to the output files. DieLine Inks must be defined as Die Line in the Ink Management panel in the Admin window. • Print Mode - Output method is indicated by the icon to the right of each ink name. - Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. - Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change). When clicked, the icon will change to the Don’t Print icon (described below) and the output method will change. - Don’t Print - The ink will not be output. When clicked, the icon will change to the Print as Spot (described above) and the output method will change.

3.9.6 – Colour Management

The Colour Management panel is used to define colour management settings for the simulation and output of colour specifically for proofs.

Diagram: Colour Management panel



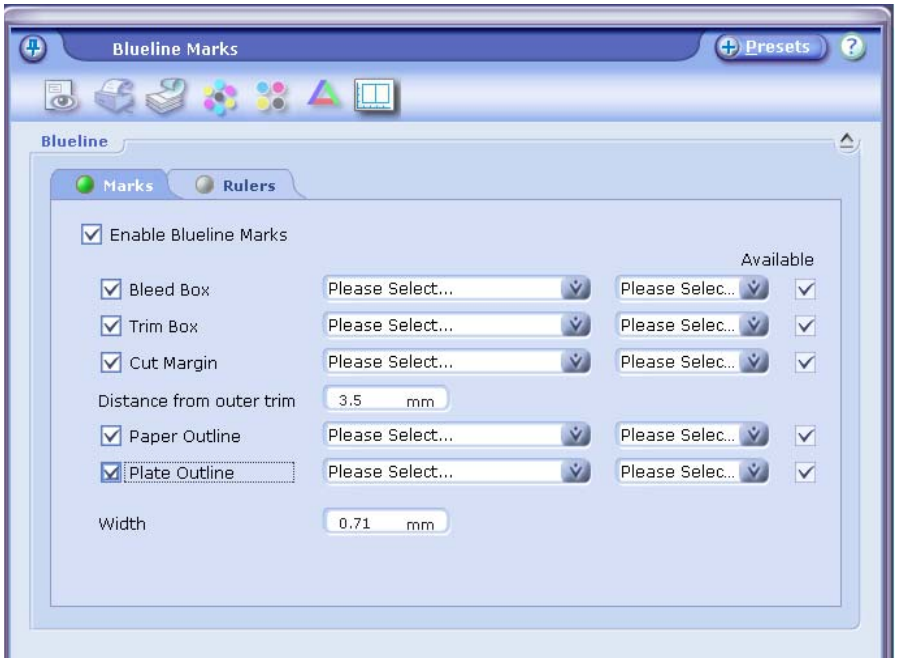
About Colour Management panel

Name	Description
Proofer Profile	When the output device is Generic Proofer, a profile is needed to get the right colour correction. • Use Device Link Profile - When this check box is checked, the drop-down menu of Device Link Profile is displayed. • Profile - Select the Device Link profile to be used from the drop-down menu.
Proofer Colour Options	• Colour Engine - The following settings are available: 1. None - No colour management will be applied to the output (the four options below will not be available). 2. Adobe - Use the Adobe CMM to colour manage the output (the four options below will not be available). 3. Fujifilm - Use the FujiFilm CMM, which enables the four options below to be applied. - Preserve Black - Tick this to keep the black point when simulating the press. - Preserve Primary Colours - Tick this to keep the colour for pure colours (colours that consist of only C, M and Y) when simulating the press. - Simulate Press Paper Colour - Uses the press media profiles paper colour to simulate the press paper on the proof. - Adjust Paper Colour - if Simulate Press Paper Colour is enabled this option allows the selection of a new paper colour (see below). a. Paper Colour - Enter the percentage values for the new paper to simulate. a. Reset - Changes the CMY values to 0.0%. b. Save Colour Chart - Generates a calibration page file on disk which, when output to your press, gives a reference for the correct paper values to enter.

3.9.7 – Blueline Marks

Select the Marks tab or Rulers tab. The Marks tab is used to define lines that will appear on the proof output. The Rulers tab allows users to create a horizontal and or vertical ruler that runs across the output.
This allows the output of lines when using the grey press profile.

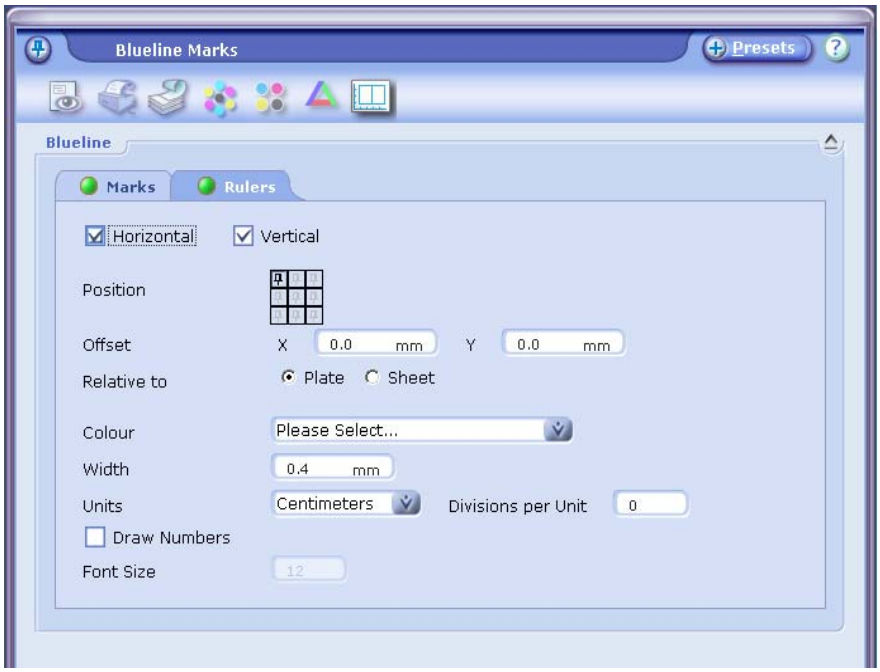
Diagram: Marks tab



About Marks tab

Name	Description
Enable Blueline Marks	Tick this to set up the following settings.
Bleed Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Bleed Box outline from the drop-down list.
Trim Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Trim Box outline from the drop-down list.
Cut Margin	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Cut Margin outline from the drop-down list.
Distance from outer trim	Enter a value to define the distance from the outer trim.
Paper Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Paper outline from the drop-down list.
Plate Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Plate outline from the drop-down list.
Available	These check boxes indicate whether it is possible to draw the corresponding mark. Select Solid, Dashed or White Dash from the drop-down list for the corresponding mark.
Width	Enter the line width.

Diagram: Rulers tab



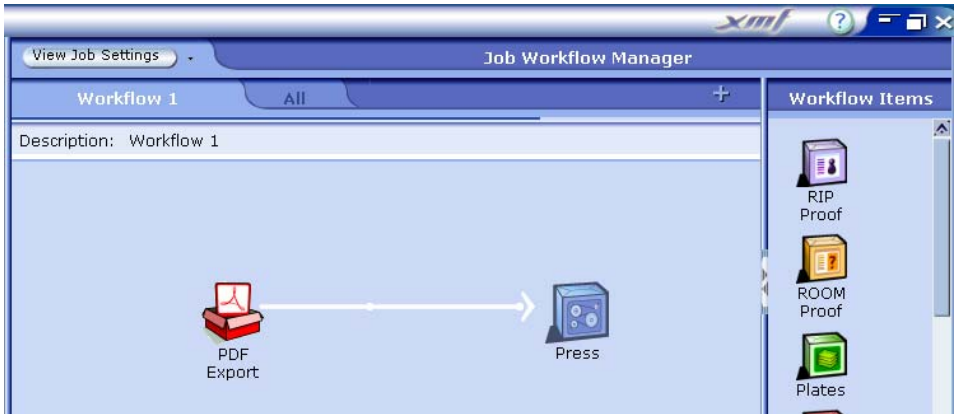
About Rulers tab

Name	Description
Horizontal	Tick to create a horizontal ruler.
Vertical	Tick to create a vertical ruler.
Position	Select the origin of the horizontal and vertical rulers from the nine points. The units and divisions to be drawn on the rulers will have this point as the origin.
Offset	Enter an offset from the position defined by the Position control above.
Relative to	Enable to make the Position and Offset settings relative to either the plate or the sheet.
Colour	Select the colour for the rulers from the drop-down list.
Width	Enter the required length of the main graduations in points (to two decimal places to a maximum of 99.99 points).
Units	Select either Centimetres or Inches from the drop-down list. The main graduations will be drawn across the main line at every unit away from the origin in both directions.
Divisions per Unit	Enter the value each unit to display.
Draw Numbers	Tick to draw numbers next to each main division line (0 will not be included). The scale will show positive numbers in both directions from the origin and the digits will be placed on the side of the main ruler line nearest to the middle of the paper.
Font Size	Enter the required font size.

3.10 – PDF Export

PDF Export is a workflow item that outputs PDF files. It can also Postflight the resultant PDF files, to check that the files meet the required specification.

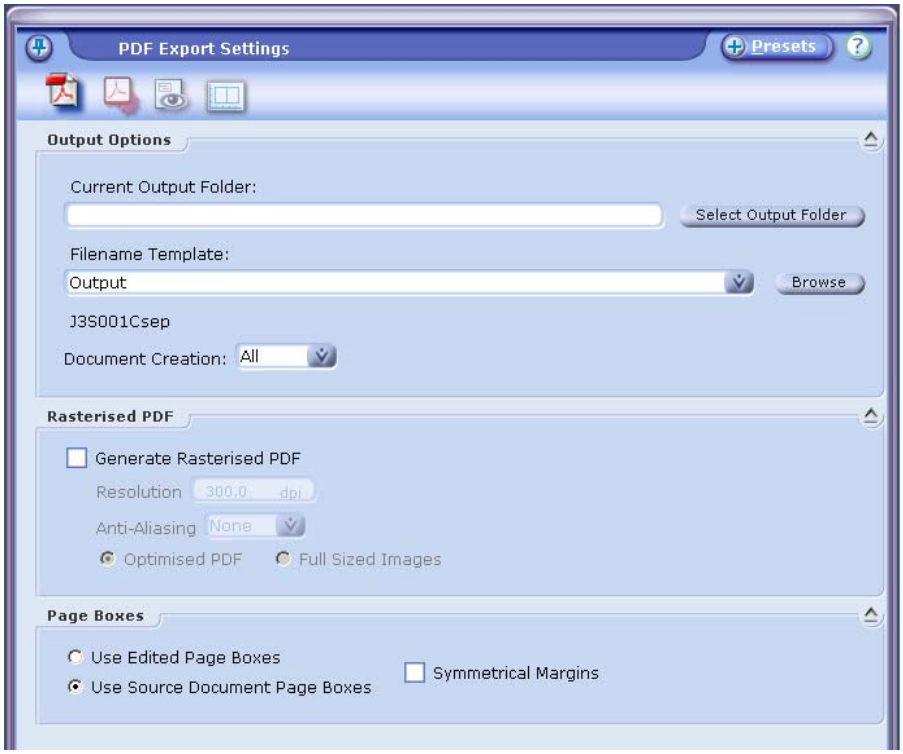
Diagram: PDF Export



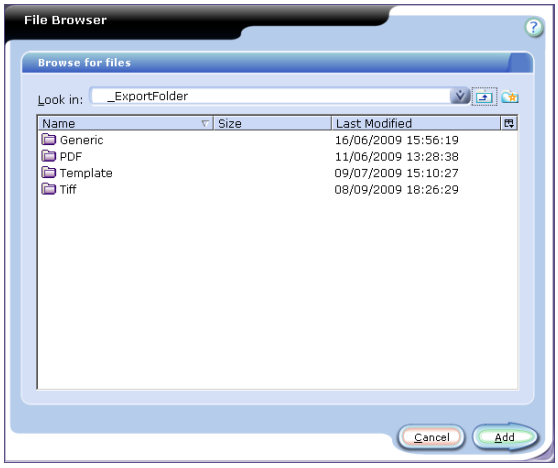
3.10.1 – PDF Export Settings

This panel holds settings that define the output folder, the file name template and the format of the output file.

Diagram: PDF Export Settings panel



About PDF Export Settings panel

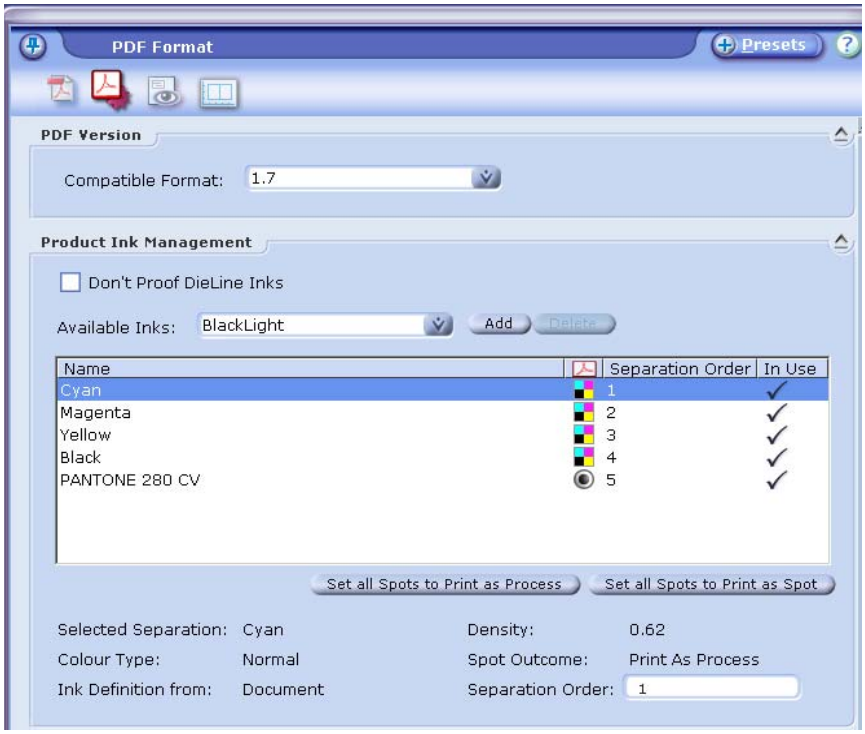
Name	Description
Output Options	• Current Output Folder - Specifies the location where the output file will be saved. • Select Output Folder - Click this button to open a browser to locate the output folder.  • Filename Template - Defines the format of the output filename. • Browse - Click this to open the Templates Panel in the Admin Window. • Document Creation - Select the file output method from the drop-down list. - All - Select this to output all pages as one PDF file. - Pages - Select this to output a PDF file for every page. - Sheet New **Function Summary** Outputs a PDF file for each sheet. A two-page PDF file is output for double sided sheets, and a one-page PDF file is output for single sided sheets. **Background** In versions before V3.0, outputs of PDFs greater than 2 GB had to be performed as a single sided sheet. This meant that the user had to check the page order and front/back combination, complicating the proofing of double sided sheets. In this version, a function has been added for outputting the different sheets (front and back) as separate PDF files, making the proofing easier. **Restrictions** • If an imposition template has not been set in the imposition PDF of an item (**None** is set in the template), each page is output to a separate file.
Rasterised PDF	• Generate Rasterised PDF - When ticked the 'Page Boxes' section is disabled and the page boxes from the imposition will be used. • Resolution - Defines the resolution at which the document pages will be rendered. • Anti-Aliasing - Select from the drop-down list the amount of anti-aliasing that will be performed by the renderer. • Optimised PDF - Select to break up the rasterised images into smaller parts by extracting images, that are separated by white space, from the content and then produce an image in the PDF for each extracted image. • Full Sized Images - Select to produce a single image for the CMYK separation plus an image for each spot colour that is rendered.

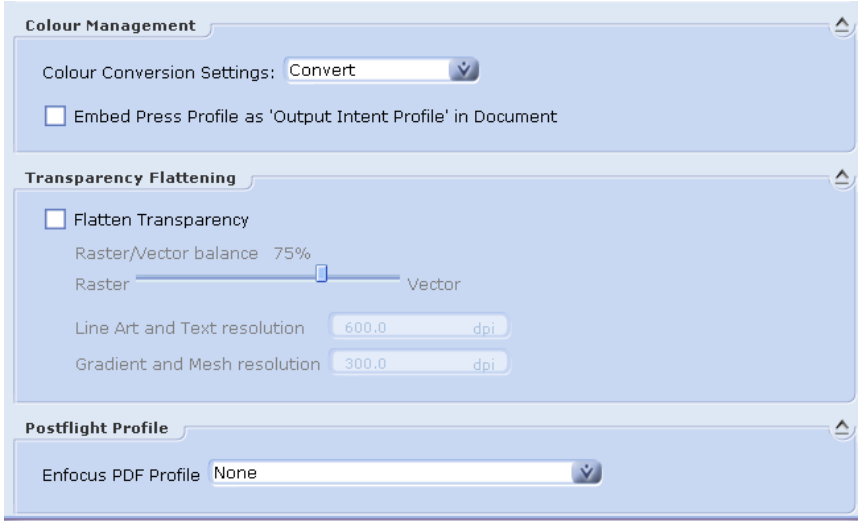
Name	Description
Page Boxes	• Use Edited Page Boxes - Select to reflect the page box settings for each page as defined in the Page Box Settings panel. • Use Source Document Page Boxes - Select to retain the original page boxes from the source documents, instead of applying the settings defined in the Page Box Settings panel. • Symmetrical Margins - Check this check box to make the media box and art box symmetrical about the trim box.

3.10.2 – PDF Format

This panel defines the format of the output PDF file and related options.

Diagram: PDF Format panel





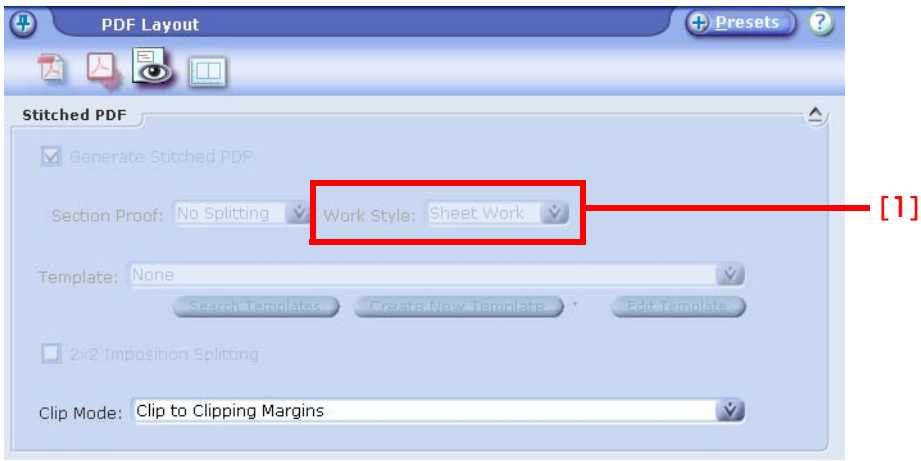
About PDF Format panel

Name	Description
PDF Version	This will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected. Define the PDF Version (format level) for output. Versions available are: • Compatible Format - 1.3 - 1.4 - 1.5 - 1.6 - 1.7 - PDF/X-1a: 2001 - PDF/X-1a: 2003 - PDF/X-3: 2002 - PDF/X-3: 2003
Product Ink Management	This panel allows control over the print process regarding the inks specified in the job, which inks are to be printed and in what order. • Don't Proof DieLine Inks - Check the box if you don't want to output the DieLine Inks to the output files. DieLine Inks must be defined as Die Line in the Ink Management panel in the Admin window. • Available Inks - If you don't see what you're looking for, click Add to add more. 1.Print Mode - By clicking and changing the icon to the right of each ink name, you can change how the ink is output: • Print as Process - Spot inks will be converted and output as process colours. • Print as Spot - All spot inks will be output as spot colours (unless the original ink is a process colour, in which case the icon will not change) • Don't Print - The ink will not be output. 2. Separation Order - This is the order in which the colours will be processed. To change the order, highlight an ink in the list and change its order number. The rest of the inks in the list will be moved automatically. 3. In Use - The In Use column is ticked if the colour is actually used in the current job. • Set all Spots to Print as Process - Click to print all of the spots as process colours. • Set all Spots to Print as Spot - Click to print all of the spots as spot colours.
Colour Management	• Colour Conversion Settings - Select Convert, or Retag the PDF file with the new colour settings. This will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected. • Embed Press Profile as 'Output Intent Profile' in Document - Enable if you wish to save the output ICC profile in the PDF.
Transparency Flattening	This will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected. Flattening is achieved using the Adobe PDF Print Engine's built-in flattening process. • Flatten Transparency - Tick this box to enable the flattening function mentioned above. • Raster/Vector balance - Use the slider to set a value for object processing. • Line Art and Text resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised line art and text. • Gradient and Mesh resolution - Set the resolution for the rasterised gradient and Illustrator mesh objects.
Postflight Profile	This will not be displayed when Generate Rasterised PDF is selected. • Enfocus PDF Profile - Once the PDF has been generated, a Postflight check can be performed using an Enfocus profile.

3.10.3 – PDF Layout

The PDF Layout panel allows an existing imposition template to be selected or a new imposition template to be created.

Diagram: PDF Layout panel



About PDF Layout panel

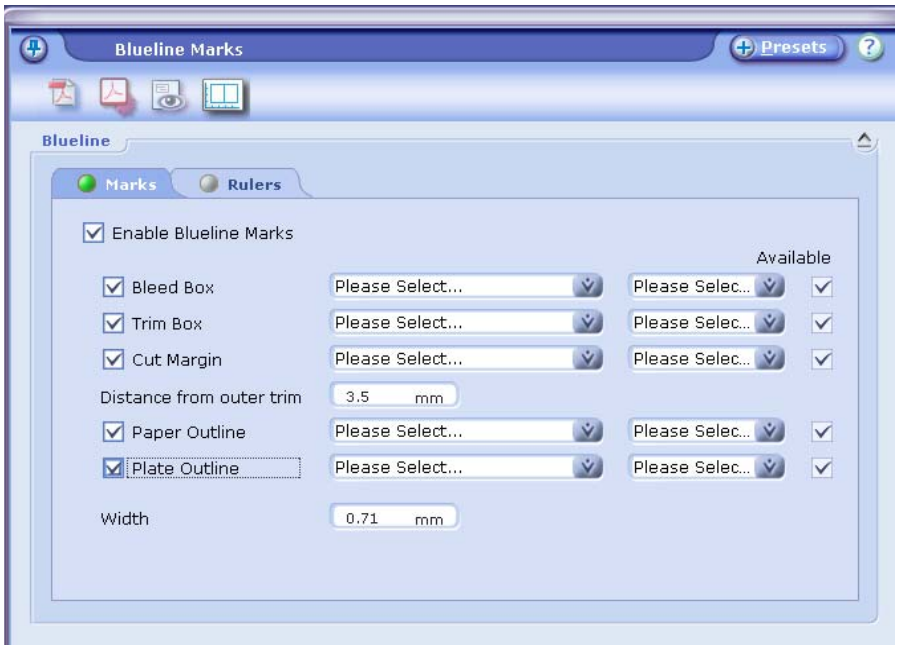
Name	Description
PDF Layout	• Generate Stitched PDF - Check this to output stitched PDF. • Section Proof - If you select a section splitting patern from the drop-down list, the result of the split will be updated in the preview. When the previewer is clicked, the Section Proof Viewer is launched and the result of the split can be viewed. To cancel the split, select **No Splitting** from the drop-down menu. • Work Style New **Function Summary** You can specify the work style (Sheet Work/Perfecting) when setting the split for the section proof. **Background** In previous versions, the Plates work style setting was kept for the flipping direction for the section proof split, but the flipping direction also had to be adjusted for the digital press at the same time. In V3.1, the work style can be set separately from Plates, enabling a flipping direction suitable for the output device to be set on the XMF side. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Work Style - Select the flipping direction from the pull-down list. **Restrictions** • If section proof splitting is not set, the setting is fixed at **Sheet Work** and cannot be changed. • This setting does not affect the forward or backward rotation of the section proof. • When the split pattern is changed after running the section proof split, the section proof split is run immediately with the set Work Style.

Name	Description
PDF Layout	• Template - Select a template from the drop-down list. • Search Templates - Click to search templates. • Create New Template - Click to create a new template. • Edit Template - Click to edit the selected template. • 2 x 2 Imposition Splitting - When enabled, allows impositions to be generated in a way that each signature is split into a series of 2 by 2 sections, and displayed in the thumbnail view. If a work style which does not allow splitting is selected, the check box will be disabled. The check box is only available when the following conditions apply: - There is only one signature on the sheet. - The imposition pattern allows “NumberUp” to be 2 x 2 after splitting, e.g. F16-8. • Clip Mode - Select to set the crop box to either the Clipping Margins, Sheet or Plate. This dictates how the PDF will be displayed in other applications.

3.10.4 – Blueline Marks

Select the Marks tab or Rulers tab. The Marks tab is used to define lines that will appear on the proof output. The Rulers tab allows users to create a horizontal and or vertical ruler that runs across the output.

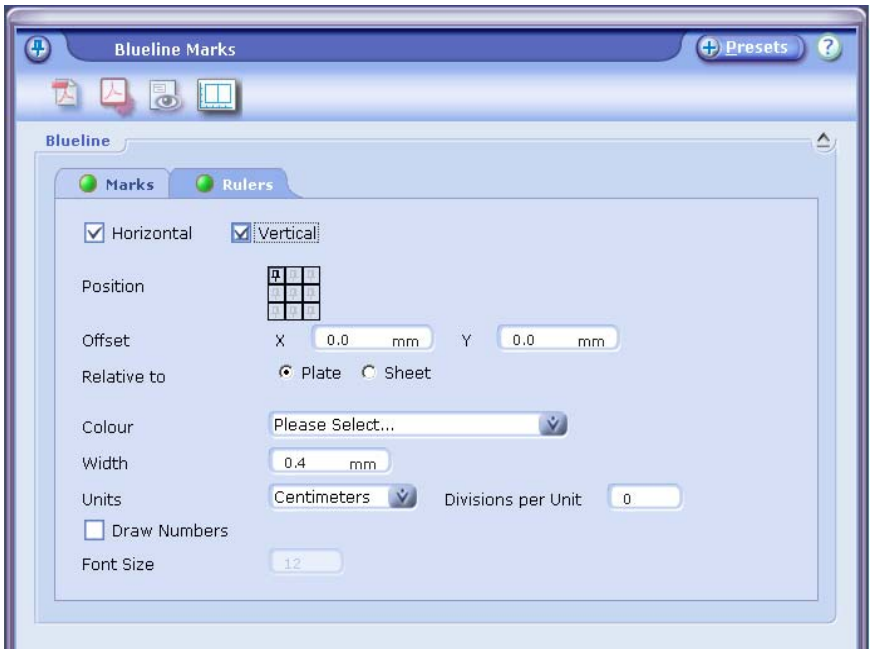
Diagram: Marks tab



About Marks tab

Name	Description
Enable Blueline Marks	Tick this to set up the following settings.
Bleed Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Bleed Box outline from the drop-down list.
Trim Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Trim Box outline from the drop-down list.
Cut Margin	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Cut Margin outline from the drop-down list.
Distance from outer trim	Enter a value to define the distance from the outer trim.
Paper Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Paper outline from the drop-down list.
Plate Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Plate outline from the drop-down list.
Available	These check boxes indicate whether it is possible to draw the corresponding mark. Select Solid, Dashed or White Dash from the drop-down list for the corresponding mark.
Width	Enter the line width.

Diagram: Rulers tab



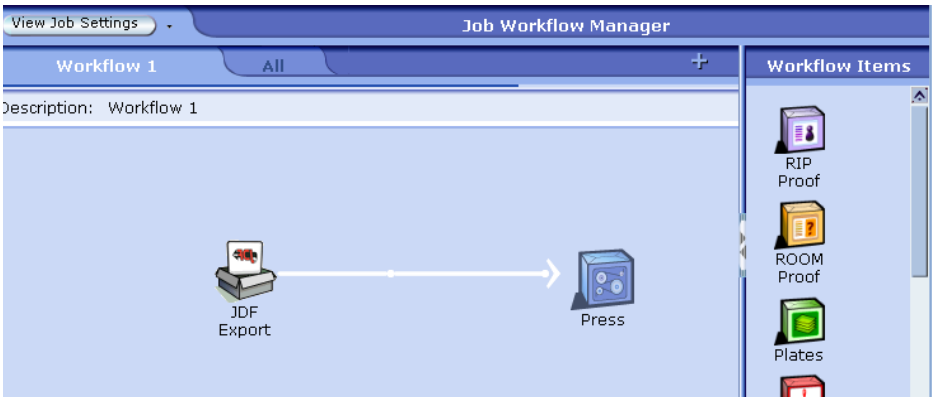
About Rulers tab

Name	Description
Horizontal	Tick to create a horizontal ruler.
Vertical	Tick to create a vertical ruler.
Position	Select the origin of the horizontal and vertical rulers from the nine points. The units and divisions to be drawn on the rulers will have this point as the origin.
Offset	Enter an offset from the position defined by the Position control above.
Relative to	Enable to make the Position and Offset settings relative to either the plate or the sheet.
Colour	Select the colour for the rulers from the drop-down list.
Width	Enter the required length of the main graduations in points (to two decimal places to a maximum of 99.99 points).
Units	Select either Centimetres or Inches from the drop-down list. The main graduations will be drawn across the main line at every unit away from the origin in both directions.
Divisions per Unit	Enter the value each unit to display.
Draw Numbers	Tick to draw numbers next to each main division line (0 will not be included). The scale will show positive numbers in both directions from the origin and the digits will be placed on the side of the main ruler line nearest to the middle of the paper.
Font Size	Enter the required font size.

3.11 – JDF Export

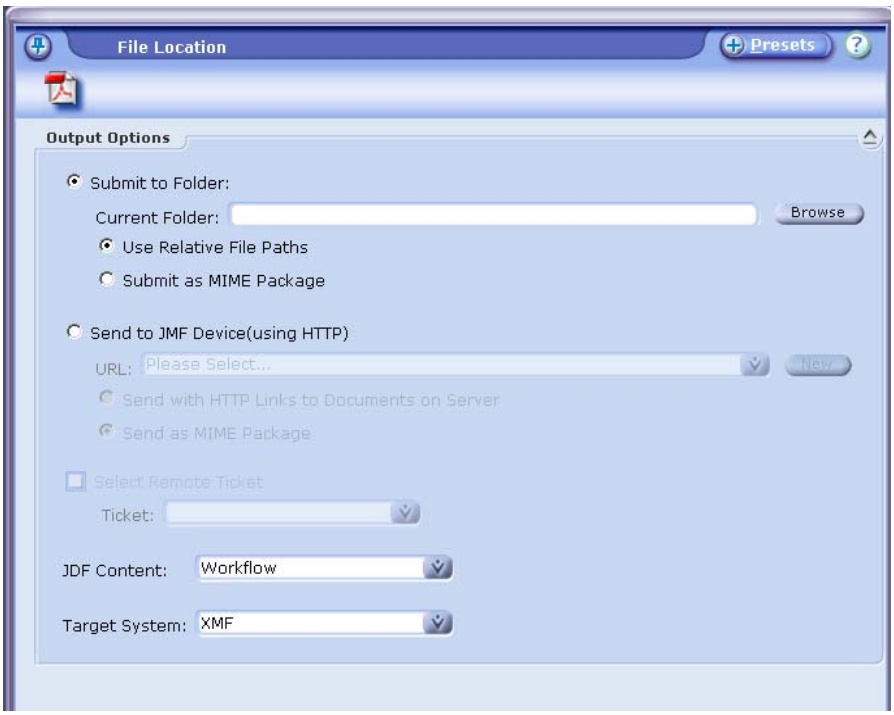
JDF Export is a workflow item that controls the output of pages in the workflow to external JDF files. It also includes the ability to take impositions from templates, or other workflow items and export the imposition as part of the JDF file.

Diagram: JDF Export



3.11.1 – File Location

Diagram: File Location panel



About File Location panel

Name	Description
Output Options	There are two methods of outputting files: • Submit to Folder - Outputs to a folder. - Browse - Click this button to open a browser to find the output folder. - Use Relative File Paths - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo Press. - Submit as MIME Package - Tick this box to create MIME encoded output. • Send to JMF Device (using HTTP) - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package. - New - When this button is clicked, a window for setting the JDF Export URL in the Admin window is displayed. This is where you can set remote URLs. - Send with HTTP Links to Documents on Server - Tick this box to export files to an Indigo press. - Send as MIME Package - Outputs to a remote URL as a MIME encoded package, with a template. - Select Remote Ticket - Can be used to send JDF to third party applications like Celebrant. - Ticket - Select from the drop-down list to define a job ticket at the remote location. • JDF Content - Select an option from the drop-down list: - Information - This sends only the JDF Job Information (job name, customer etc) with the PDF data. This is for export to systems that are not fully JDF compliant. - Workflow - Exports the Job Information and the imposition into the JDF along with the PDF information. This is primarily for compliant systems such as Celebrant. - Whole Job - Exports the entire job as a JDF along with the PDF and any supporting files. This is primarily for other XMF systems. • Target System - Select from the options of Generic, Celebrant or XMF.

3.11.2 – JDF Output Version New

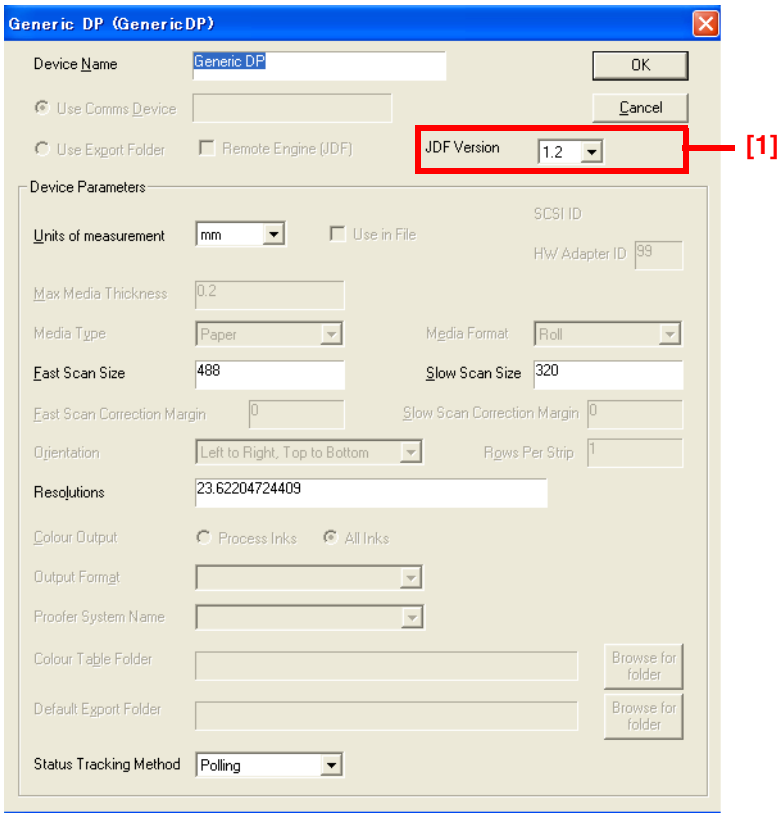
Function Summary

You can specify the JDF output version to use in remote proofing, plate devices and digital presses. Perform the version settings in the Config Tool device dialog.

Background

This version responded to demand for specifying different JDF versions for each output target device.

Screen Explanation (Example: Generic DP dialog)



[1]	JDF Version	Select the version from the pull-down list.

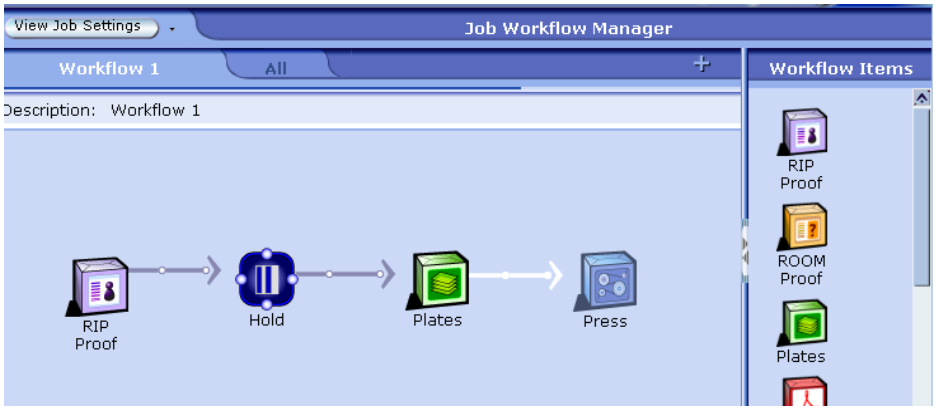
Restrictions

- The JDF version can be selected for plates and proof devices only when Remote Engine (JDF) is selected.
- The version cannot be selected for Windows printer devices or preview devices.
- When outputting JDF to XMF Remote, the version is fixed at 1.2.

3.12 – Hold

Hold is a Workflow Gate that can be placed to stop the workflow at a desired point. It is added automatically when you connect a RIP Proof item to a Plates item.

Diagram: Hold



3.12.1 – Hold

Diagram: Hold panel

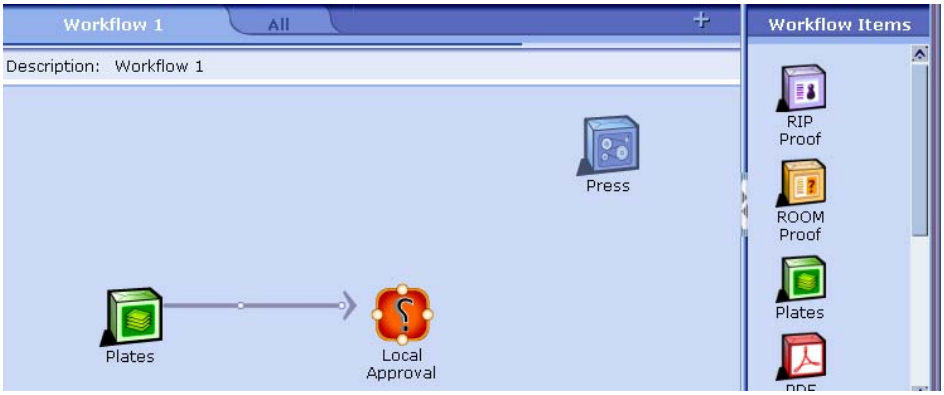
About Hold panel

Name	Description
Held Pages	This shows the status of pages associated with the Hold in a workflow. • Release all pages - Click this button to release all the pages in a workflow. • Release Pages - Highlight one or more pages in the list and click this button to release individual pages in a workflow.

3.13 – Local Approval

This is used when a job needs to be approved by users. If added to the workflow, it stops the workflow to wait for confirmation from designated XMF users; this must happen before the workflow can continue.

Diagram: Local Approval



3.13.1 – List of Approvers

The List of Approvers panel is used to manage the list of approvers.

Diagram: List of Approvers panel

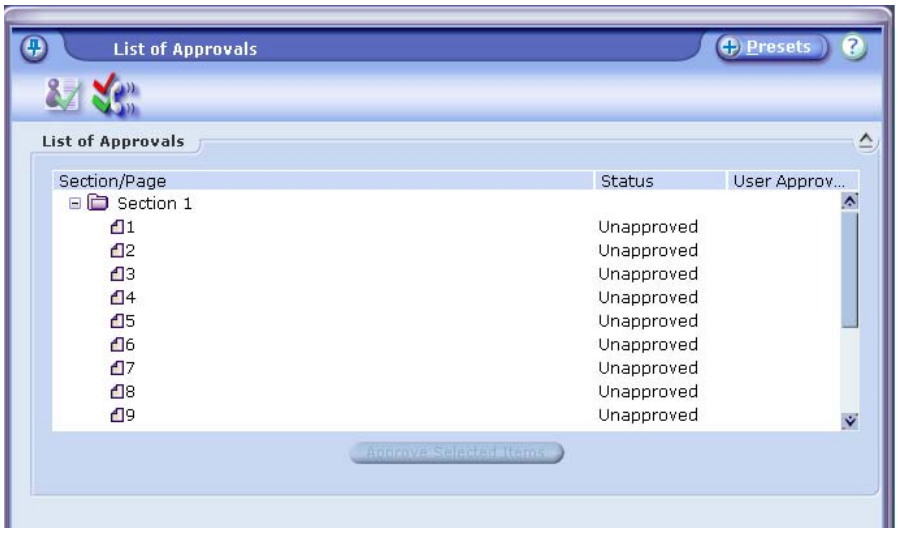
About List of Approvers panel

Name	Description
List of Approvers	• Add - Click to open the Approver Editor dialog box. This is where you can set the name and role of the approver. - Name - This is chosen from the list of XMF Users in the Admin window. - Role - The function of the approver for this workflow. a. Override Approver - If an Override Approver approves a page or section, there is no need for any more approvers. a. Group Approver - A minimum number of Group Approvers are required. The exact number is defined by Minimum Approvals Required by Group Role. b. Required Approver - Every Required Approver has to approve each page or section before approval is confirmed. • Edit - Click to open the Approver Editor dialog box. This is where you can edit the editor that has been set. • Remove - Click to remove the selected approver from the list. • Minimum Approvals Required by Group Role - Set this to the minimum number of Group Approvers required to approve before a workflow can proceed. If there are no Group Approvers, this field is disabled.

3.13.2 – List of Approvals

This panel shows the approval status of pages and sections within a workflow.

Diagram: List of Approvals panel



About List of Approvals panel

Name	Description
List of Approvals	The list shows the following: • Section/Page - Sections and pages in the job are displayed. • Status - Shows the current status as Unapproved, Approved, Part Approved, or Unknown. • User Approved - A tick is shown if the current user has approved the corresponding page or section. • Approve Selected Items - Select one or more unapproved pages or sections then click this button to approve the items. Enabled only if the user is an approver.

3.14 – Finishing New

Function Summary

This is the workflow item that contains the fold procedures and cut data in the JDF. By adding Finishing to the workflow, the output device can extract the fold procedures and cut data from the sent job.
Also, the Finishing settings can be saved as a preset, or included in a job template.

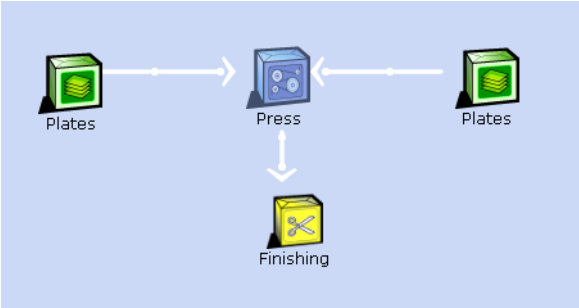
Background

Cut data and fold procedures are sometimes added to a job with XMF. However, in previous versions it was difficult for finishing devices to read this information, and the finishing device had to be set separately to the same settings as the XMF imposition settings. This function was added to eliminate this operation.

Screen Explanation

The Finishing workflow item can be connected to Press or Plates.
Diagram 1 shows one Finishing item connected to Press only.

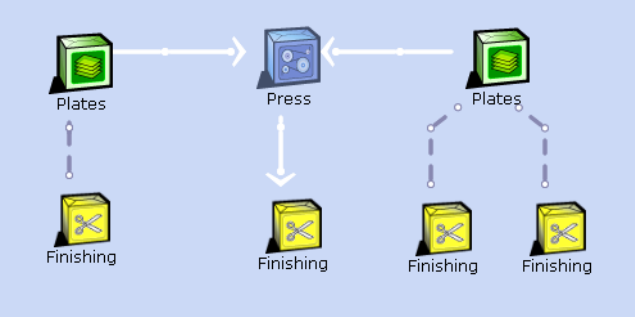
Diagram 1: Finishing



In this case, Finishing extracts the cut data and fold procedures from all sheets of the connected Press.

Diagram 2 shows separate Finishing items connected to Plates and Press (with multiple Finishing items for the Plates on the right).

Diagram 2: Finishing



In this case, the different Finishing items extract the cut data and fold procedures from the sheets of the corresponding connected workflow items.

Restrictions

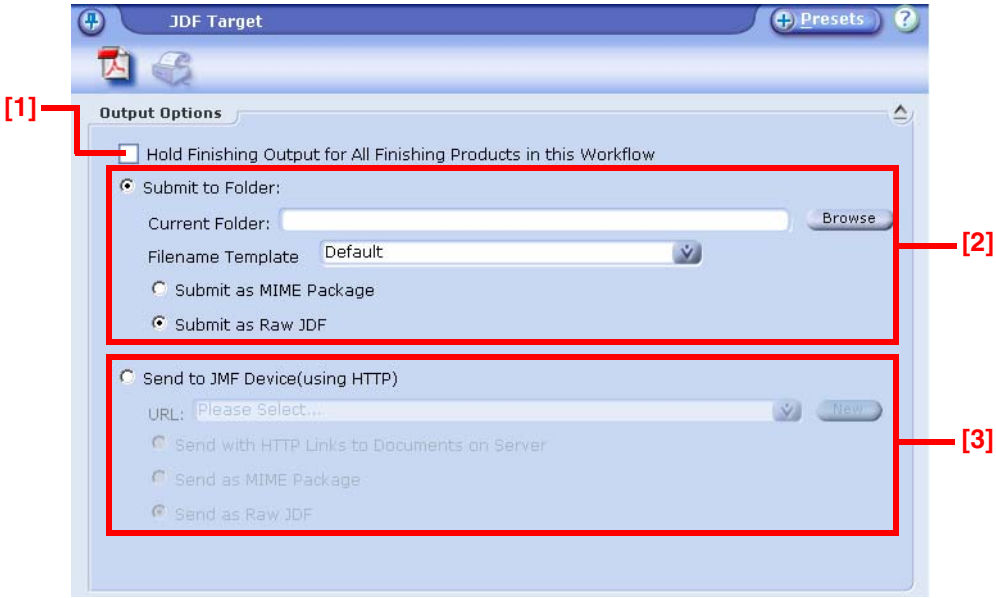
- When the Press workflow item is changed to Digital Press, all Finishing items are deleted.
- Once the Finishing task is processed, a retry of the Finishing task process is not performed even if the settings are changed to add a Finishing item.
- The cut data and fold procedures that the XMF outputs to the JDF are limited to general-purpose information. It cannot necessarily operate all output devices.

3.14.1 – JDF Target

Function Summary

Specifies settings for JDF output.

Screen Explanation



[1]	Hold Finishing Output for XXX (The XXX part changes depending on the workflow items connected to Finishing.)	Tick this box to pause (hold) the output for the finishing device that is set for the workflow item connected to Finishing. The holding can be cancelled from the **Job Queue** window or **Job Status** window.
[2]	Submit to Folder	Outputs the JDF file to a folder. - Current Folder - Click the **Browse** button to open a browser to find the output folder. - Filename Template - You can select a file name template. - Submit as MIME Package - Creates MIME encoded output. - Submit as Raw JDF - Creates the output in the raw JDF format.
[3]	Send to JMF Device (using HTTP)	Outputs to the JMF device using HTTP. - URL - Click **New** to open the JDF Export URLs panel of the Administration window. This is where you can set remote URLs. - Send with HTTP Links to Documents on Server - HTTP links to documents are included in the output. - Sends as MIME Package - Sends as a MIME encoded package. - Send as Raw JDF - Sends in the raw JDF format.

3.14.2 – Device Options

Function Summary

Specifies settings for JDF output devices.

Screen Explanation

[1]	Include 'Binding ICS' JDF	Includes Binding ICS in the output.
[2]	Include cutting JDF	Includes cut data in the output.
[3]	Generate a CutBlock for each page	Generates a CutBlock for each page. Available when **Include 'Binding ICS' JDF** is not selected.

3.15 – Remote RIP Approval New

Function Summary

This is a workflow item where users themselves perform settings related to job processing and communication from XMF to XMF Remote.

Background

In previous versions, XMF users could not control the job queue of XMF Remote. Eliminating this restriction allows production processes to be controlled by users who operate XMF. This allows production to progress with fewer processes, for example by performing approval work only on the customer side.

Screen Explanation

When synchronization with the registered XMF system is completed on the XMF Remote system, **Remote RIP Approval** is added to the workflow items.

Diagram: Remote RIP Approval workflow item

Operating procedure

The example below is a simple explanation of how to create and release a job with XMF, and the operation up to approval on the XMF side.
For the detailed operation areas, see the items in the parentheses.

① Create a new job and add Press, Plates and Remote RIP Approval to the workflow items.

② Add blank pages of the required number to Plates.

③ In the **Customer Info** panel of Job Description, set the **Customer** in the **Customers ID** field as the publication destination customer (3.5.14 - Job Information).

④ In the same **Customer Info** panel of Job Description, tick the **Permit XMF Remote file upload** box in **Remote Approval Details** (3.15.5.1 - Customer Info).

⑤ Select the Remote RIP Approval workflow item, open the **Approval** panel and untick the **Manual Release** box (3.15.4 - Approval).

⑥ Save the job.

⑦ In the **Job Queue** window, while the job created in step ① is selected, click the job publication button (3.15.5.5 - Job Queue). When the job is published, an icon is displayed in the Remote Approval column, and **Waiting for Pages** appears in the job **State** field.

With the operations above, the job is released on XMF Remote.
Then, when a page is uploaded on the XMF Remote side, the **Status** field in the **Job Queue** window of XMF changes to **Awaiting approval**.

⑧ Open the **Approval** panel of Remote RIP Approval and perform the approval or rejection operation in the right-click menu (3.15.4 - Approval).

⑨ When the **Approval Status** field in the **Approval** panel changes to **Approved with XMF**, save the job.

Restrictions

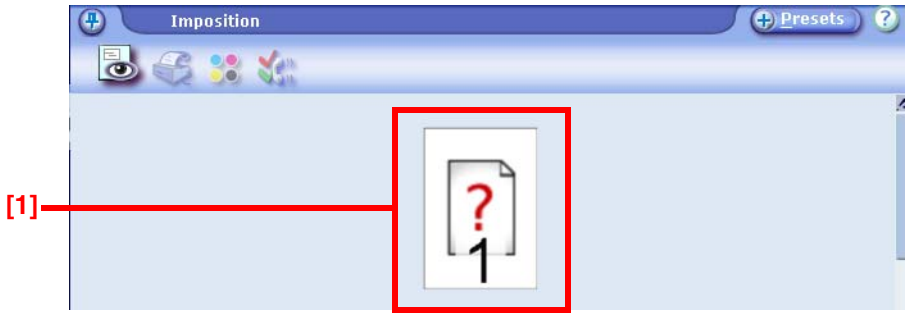
- Remote ROOM Proof is not supported.
- Once a job is released, Remote RIP Approval cannot be deleted from the workflow items.
- Once a job is released, the stream and press devices cannot be changed.
- Cannot be used in jobs or job templates that use TIFF Bypass.

3.15.1 – Imposition

Function Summary

Displays the thumbnails of the pages flowed to the workflow items.

Screen Explanation



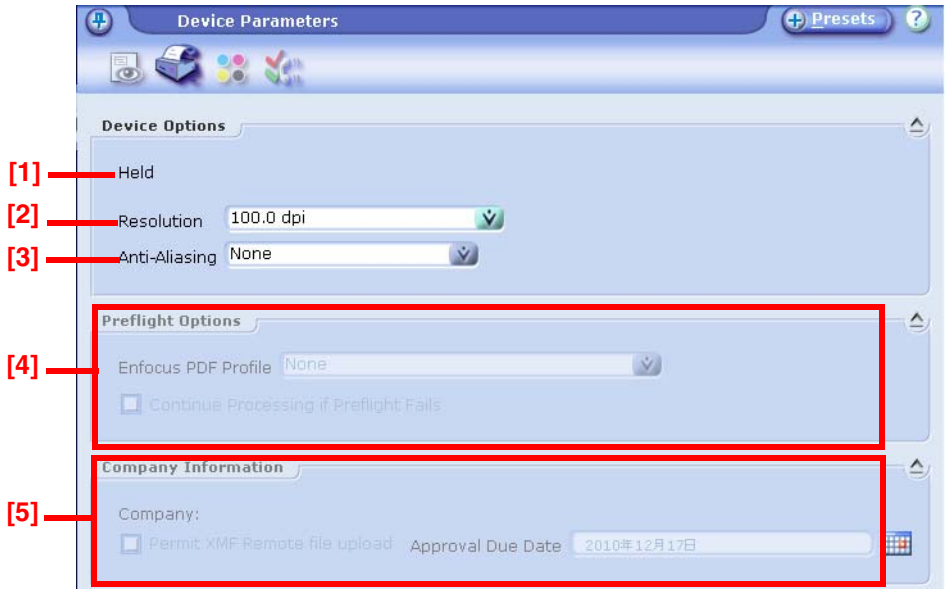
[1]	Thumbnail	Double-click the thumbnail to open the Imposition View. The Imposition View consists of a **Approval** panel and **Settings** panel, where approval operations and various settings can be performed.

3.15.2 – Device Settings

Function Summary

Specifies settings for devices.

Screen Explanation



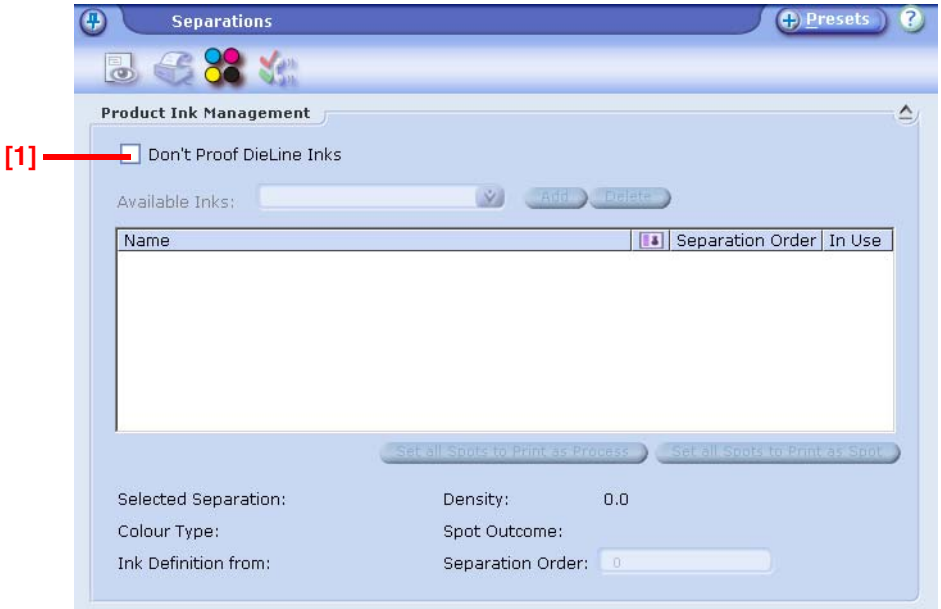
[1]	Publication status	Displays the publication status for the job. When a job is published, the publication destination XMF Remote system name that is specified with **JDF Export URLs** in the **Administration** window is displayed.
[2]	Resolution	Select an available resolution.
[3]	Anti-Aliasing	Select whether or not to perform the anti-aliasing process.
[4]	Preflight Options	Displays the information set in the **Preflight & Action Lists** panel, but editing is not available.
[5]	Company Information	Displays the information set in the **Customer Info** panel, but editing is not available.

3.15.3 – Separations

Function Summary

Specifies settings for inks.
Because Remote RIP Approval is connected to Plates in normal operations, ink-related information is extracted, but editing is not available.
If Remote RIP Approval is not connected to Plates or Digital Press, inks can be set with the normal method.

Screen Explanation



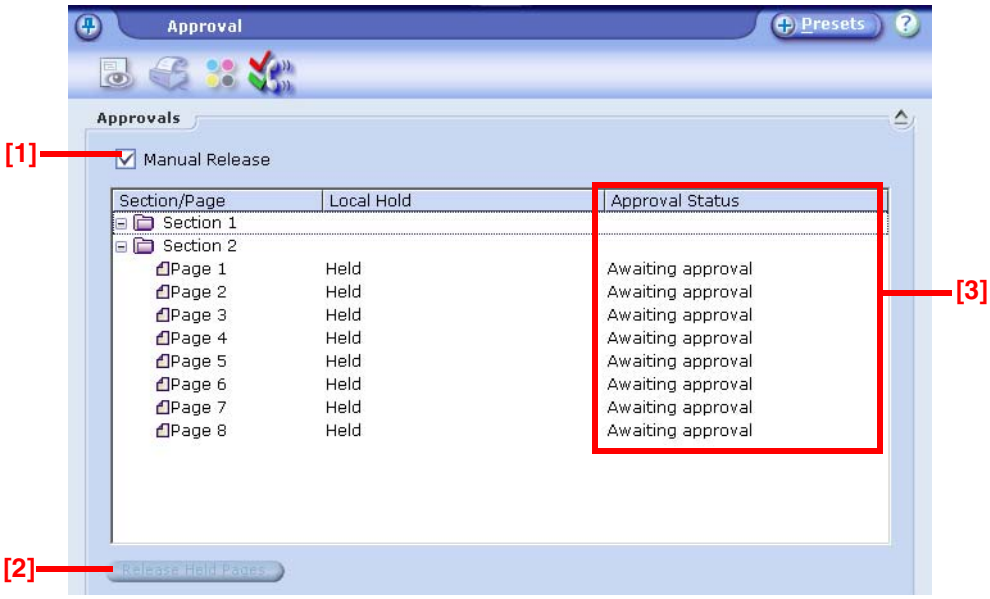
[1]	Don't Proof DieLine Inks	Select whether or not to render die line inks. Does not output when the box is ticked.

3.15.4 – Approval

Function Summary

Specifies settings for approval and rejection operations and publication.
Approve or reject jobs from the right-click menu while a section or page is selected.

Screen Explanation



[1]	Manual Release	When checked, the preview image is not released to XMF Remote until the job is published. Once a job is published, this function cannot be changed.
[2]	Release Held Pages	Cancel the hold status of the held pages that are selected, and publish to XMF Remote.
[3]	Approval Status	Displays the approval status for each page. When a publication command is sent from the XMF Remote server, the display changes as appropriate.

Restrictions

- Because publication, approval and rejection operations are sent immediately to the server, they cannot be redone even if the job is cancelled.

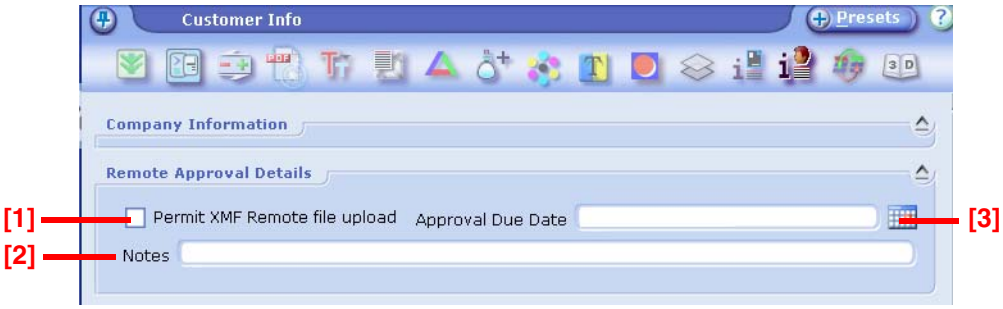
3.15.5 – Remote RIP Approval Job Settings

This section described the panels and functions that are added or changed when the Remote RIP Approval workflow item is added.

3.15.5.1- Customer Info

The **Remote Approval Details** panel is added to the **Customer Info** panel.

Screen Explanation

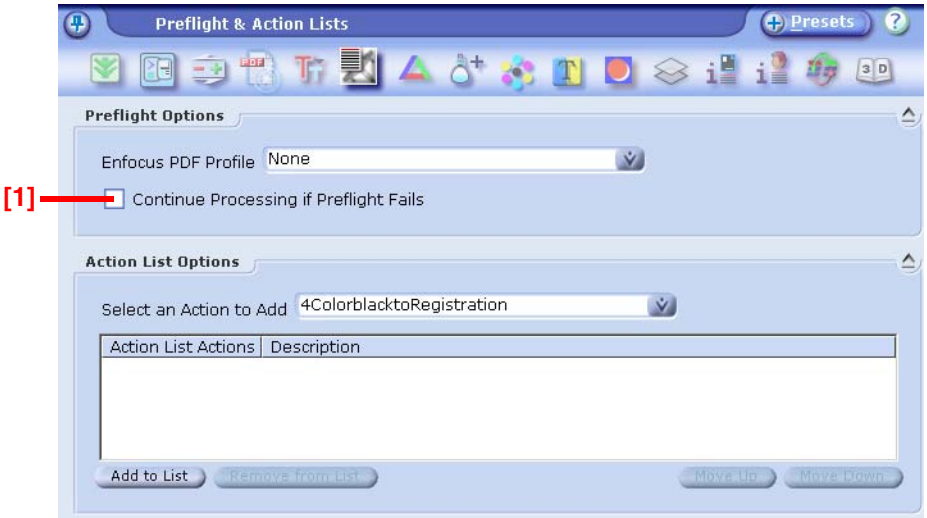


[1]	Permit XMF Remote file upload	Tick this box to allow customers to add documents via XMF Remote.
[2]	Approval Due Date	Set the due date for approval. When a job is created, the job due date is set.
[3]	Notes	You can enter your own description or other comment.

3.15.5.2- Preflight & Action Lists

The **Continue Processing if Preflight Fails** function is added to the **Preflight & Action Lists** panel.

Screen Explanation

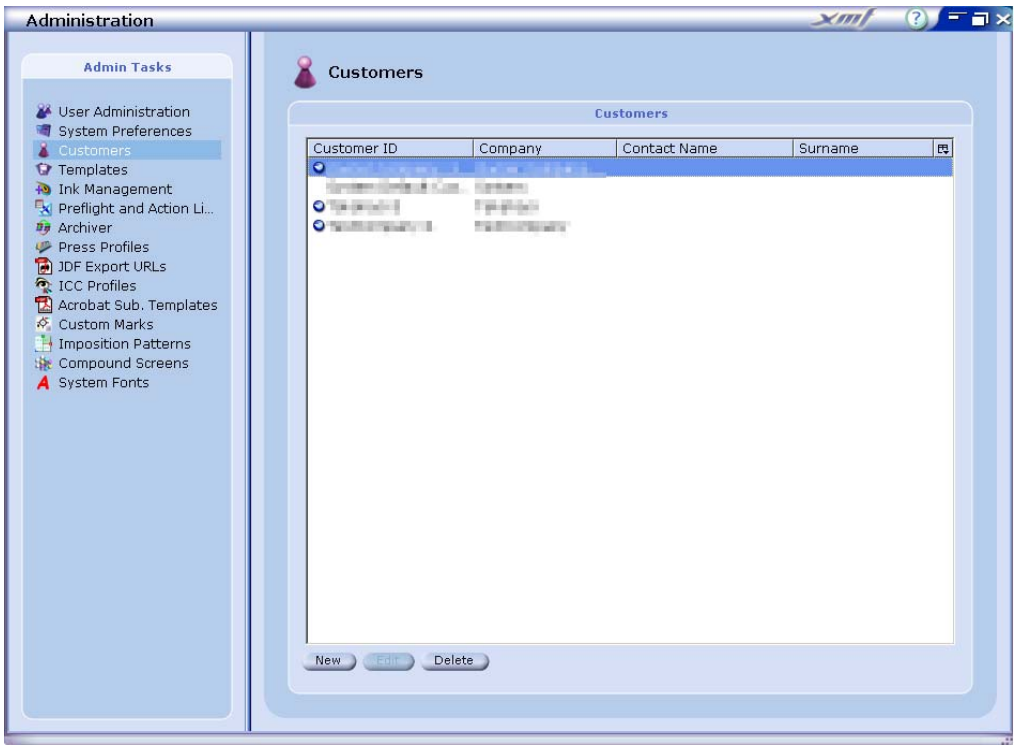


[1]	Continue Processing if Preflight Fails	Tick the box to continue the process even if the preflight fails. As a result, the preview image can be viewed in XMF Remote even if the preflight fails.

3.15.5.3- Customers

In the **Customers** panel of the **Administration** window, the customer information received from XMF Remote can be protected, but it cannot be edited.

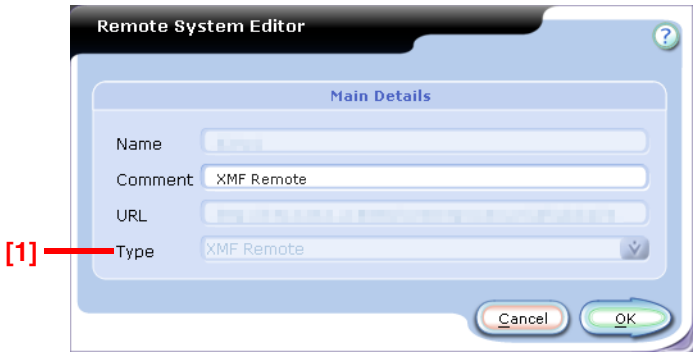
Screen Explanation



3.15.5.4- JDF Export URLs

In the **JDF Export URLs** panel of the **Administration** window, the **Type** function is added to the **Remote System Editor** dialog.

Screen Explanation



[1]	Type	Select the type of remote system.

Restrictions

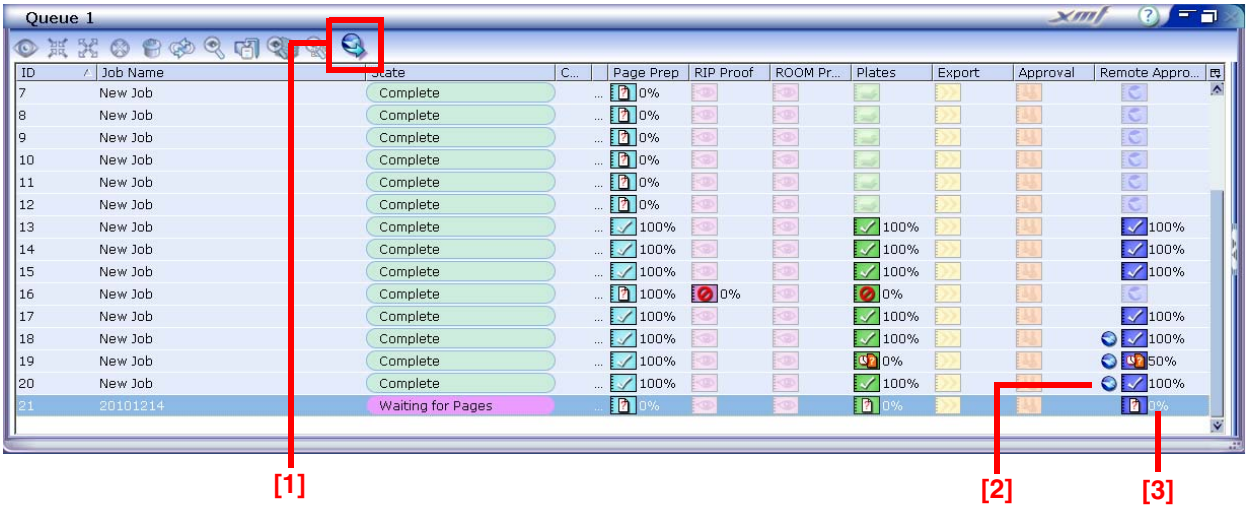
- **Name**, **URL** and **Type** in the **Remote System Editor** dialog are set automatically by the information sent from the XMF Remote system, but they cannot be edited.

3.15.5.5- Job Queue

The **Remote Approval** column is added to the **Job Queue** window.

A button ( ) for publishing jobs on XMF Remote is added, and the job publication status is also displayed in the **Remote Approval** column.

Screen Explanation

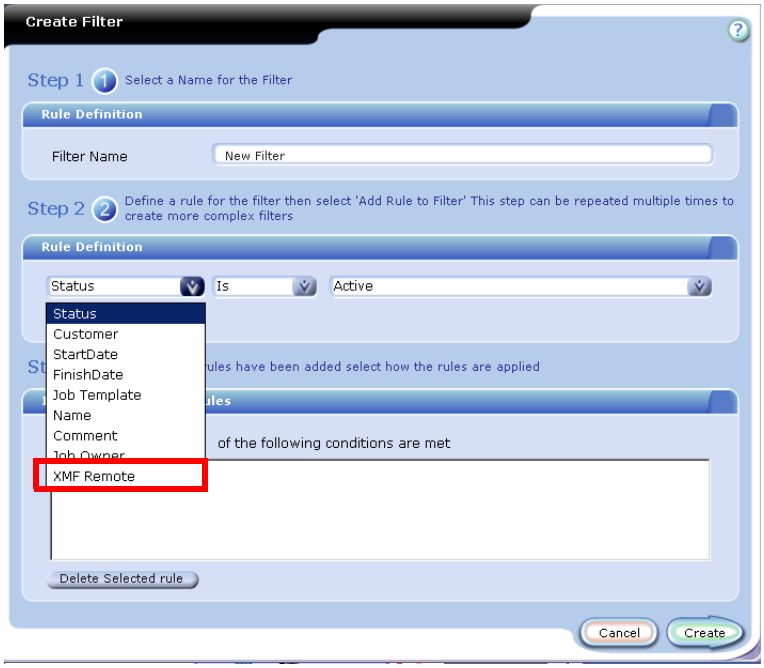


[1]	Publish Selected Jobs button	Click while a job is selected to publish the selected job.
[2]	Publish icon	The icon display indicates the publication status. : Shows that the job has been published. : Shows that the publication process for the job is in progress. No icon: Shows that the job has not been published.
[3]	Remote Approval	Displays the approval progress status as a percentage.

3.15.5.6- Job Filter

XMF Remote Status is added to the filter settings displayed on the **Job Queue** window.

Screen Explanation

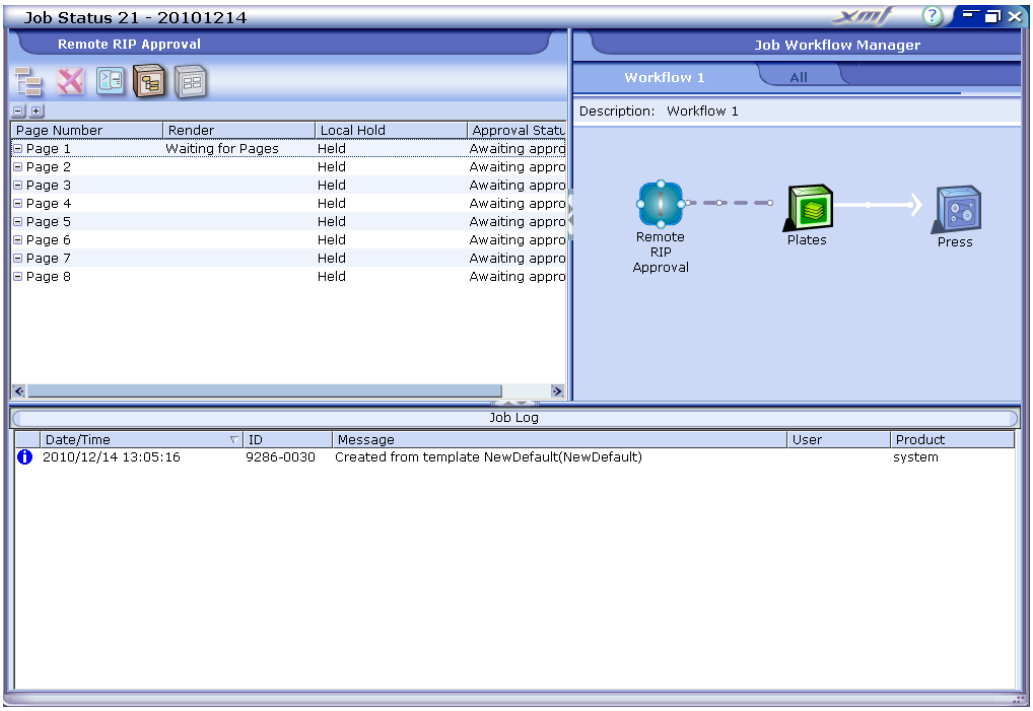


For details about creating filters, see 1.4.2 - Create Filter Dialog.

3.15.5.7- Job Status

The job status for Remote RIP Approval is displayed on the **Job Status** window.
The releasing of plates can be controlled from the right-click menu on the **Job Status** window, or the page can be double-clicked to check the page in the rendering mode of the imposition window.

Screen Explanation



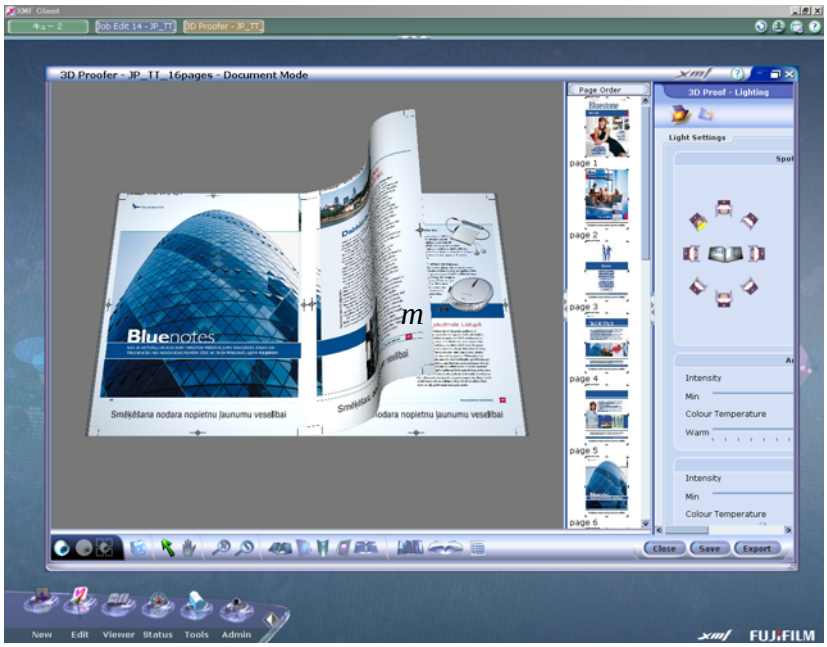
Restrictions

- Local Hold is not displayed unless **Hold before uploading** in the **Status for Remote Approval** is selected.
- You must have job editing capability to approve or reject pages.

4 – Viewer

The Viewer can display the pages of a job in three different modes (2D, 3D and Imposition).

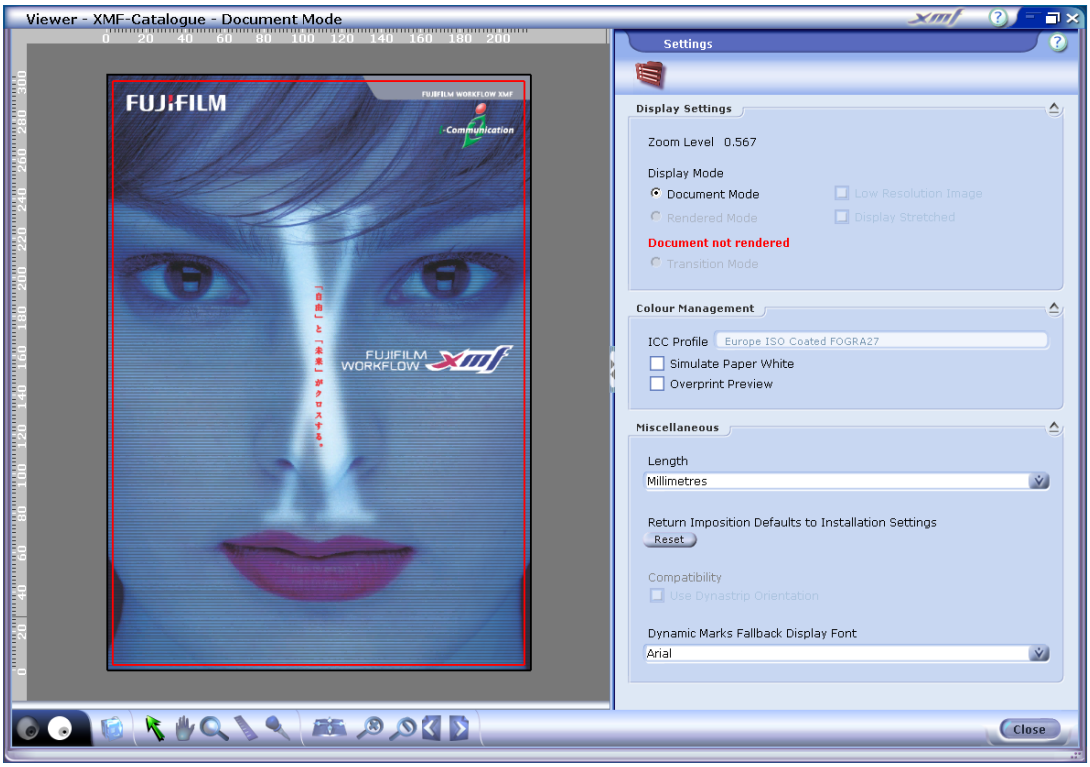
Diagram: Display after clicking the Viewer icon



4.1 – 2D Viewer Mode

The 2D Viewer window displays pages in two dimensions.

Diagram: 2D Viewer window



About 2D Viewer toolbar

The buttons in this toolbar determine how pages are displayed within the viewer.

Diagram: 2D Viewer toolbar

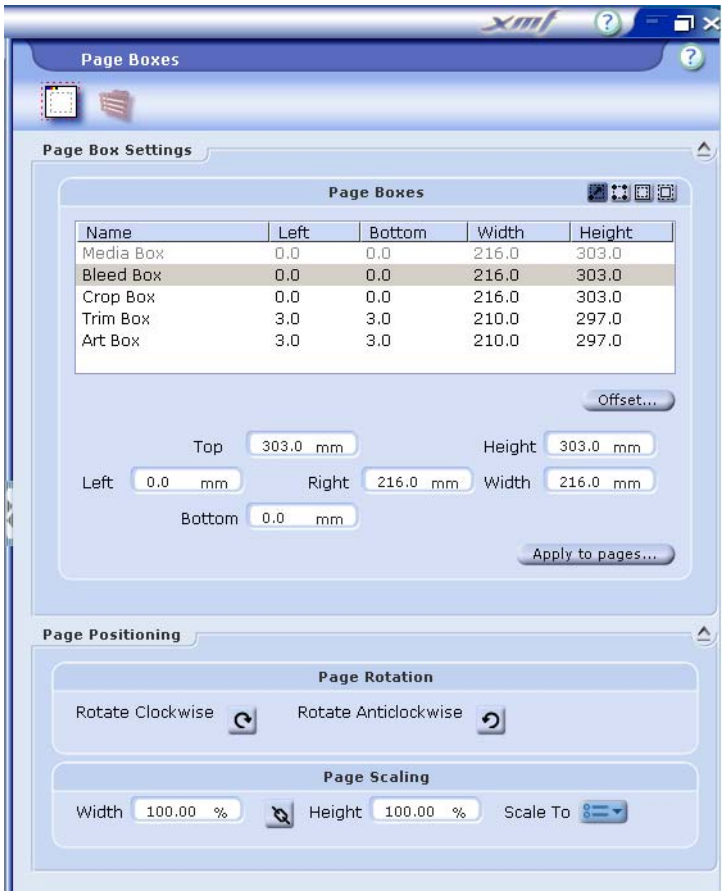
Name	Description
3D View	Click this button to display pages as they would appear in the final printed document in three dimensions.
2D View	Click this button to display a single page in two dimensions.
File Browser	Click this button to browse for documents required for the XMF job.
Pan (Pan Image)	Click this button then drag the document within the viewer, to move the image around the preview panel.
Zoom mode (Select Area for Zoom)	Click this button then drag to draw a rectangle over part of the image. When the drag is released, the image zooms in to the outlined area.
Measure (Ruler)	Click this button then drag to draw a line between two points on the image. The horizontal, vertical and diagonal distances between these two points are displayed.
Picker (Dropper)	Click this button to open the Colour window, to sample the colour in an image. The window closes when you select another tool.
Fit (Fit in Display Area)	Scales the image to the largest magnification that fits the entire image in the preview panel.
Zoom in	Increases the magnification of the image.

Name	Description
Zoom out	Decreases the magnification of the image.
Previous Page	Displays the previous page in sequence, if any.
Next Page	Displays the next page in sequence, if any.

4.1.1 – Page Boxes

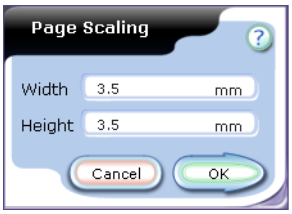
In the Job Edit window, double-click on a document in the Reading Order column. The 2D Viewer will be displayed with the Page Boxes panel on the right.

Diagram: Page Boxes panel



About Page Boxes panel

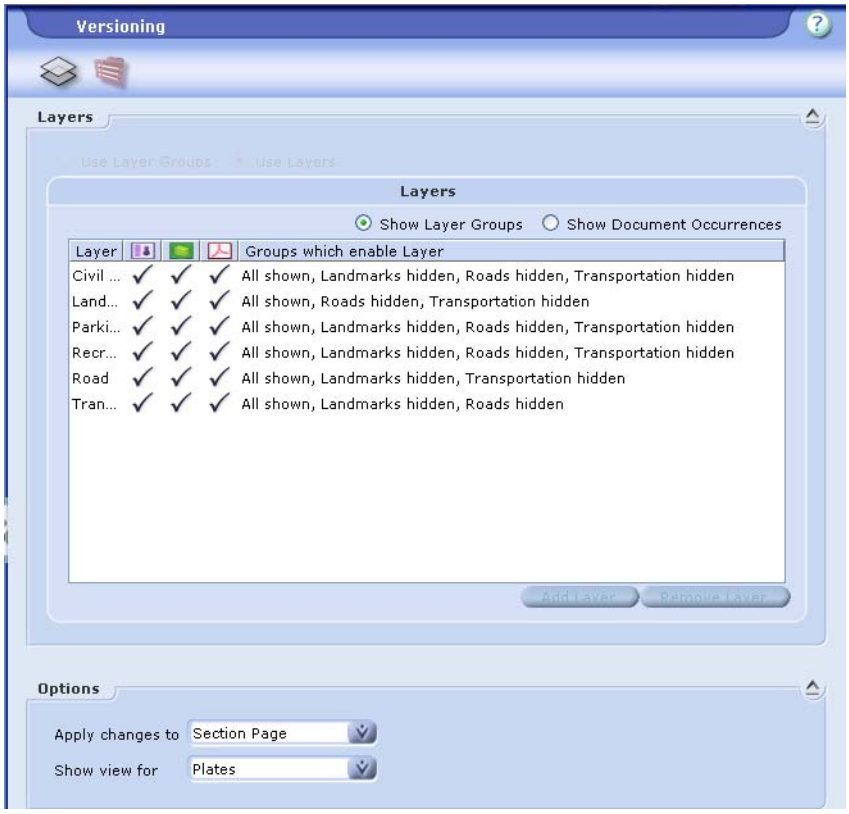
Name	Description
Page Box Settings	The page boxes can be adjusted by highlighting the name (e.g. Bleed box) and changing the values in the relevant fields. The settings can be adjusted using the Display Mode buttons: • As Position and Size • As Absolute Positions • As Margins relative to the Media Box • As Margins relative to the Trim Box
Page Positioning	Page Boxes can be rotated either clockwise or anticlockwise in increments of 90 degrees. This can be viewed in the main preview panel.

Name	Description
Scale To	Page scaling can be adjusted either to a specified size (width and height) or by a scale factor (see image). If Custom is selected from the list, the Page Scaling dialog will be displayed.  Use this dialog to enter the new document size. All page boxes are adjusted when pages are scaled to reflect the new size of the page but the distance from the bleed box to the trim box remains fixed so that, for example, a page with a 3 mm bleed still has a 3 mm bleed after scaling. The page scaling options can be selected from both the Reading Order view and from the Imposition Viewer.

4.1.2 – Versioning

In the Job Edit window, double-click on a page in the Job Structure. The 2D Viewer will be displayed with the Versioning panel on the right side.

Diagram: Versioning panel



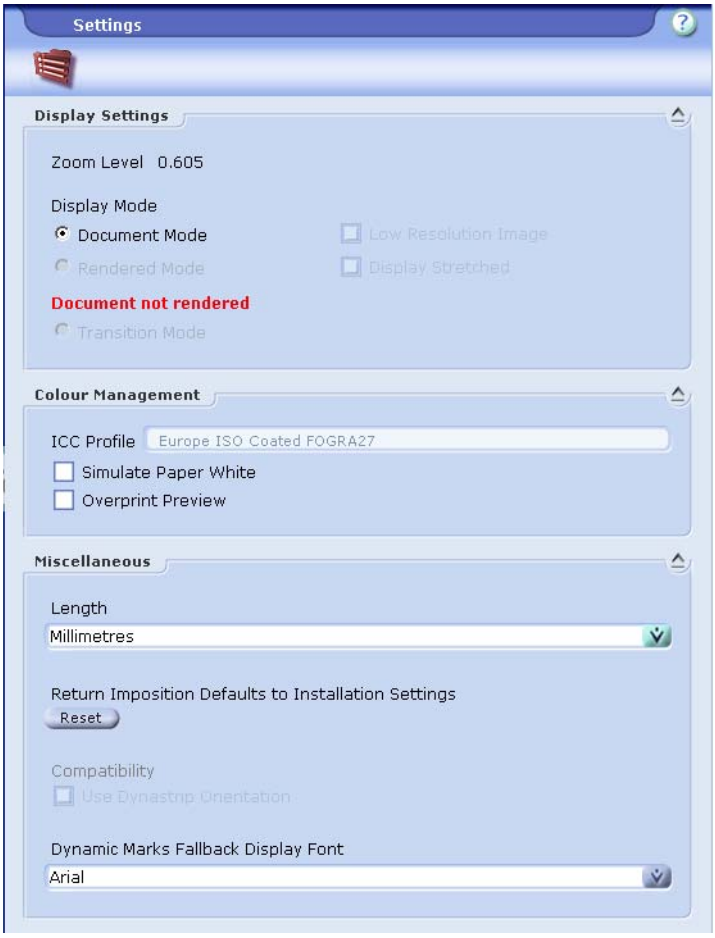
About Versioning panel

Name	Description
Layers	The first column shows the names of the layers (OCG). The next three columns show whether the layer is enabled for plate, RIP Proof and PDF Export output. The last column shows either the OCCDs that by default enable the specified OCG if the Show Layer Groups option button is selected, or the names of all the source documents that have an OCG if the Show Document Occurrences option button is selected. To either enable or disable a layer (OCG), click on the tick marks.
Options	• Apply changes to - Choose from the drop-down list: - Section Page - Applies the changes to the currently selected page only. - Section - Applies the changes to the section that includes the currently selected page. - Job - Applies the changes to the entire job. • Show view for - Choose from the drop-down list: - Proofing - Displays a 2D view of the proofing output. - Plates - Displays a 2D view of the Plates output. - PDF Export - Displays a 2D view of the PDF Export output.

4.1.3 – Settings

Settings within this panel affect the preview panel.

Diagram: Settings panel



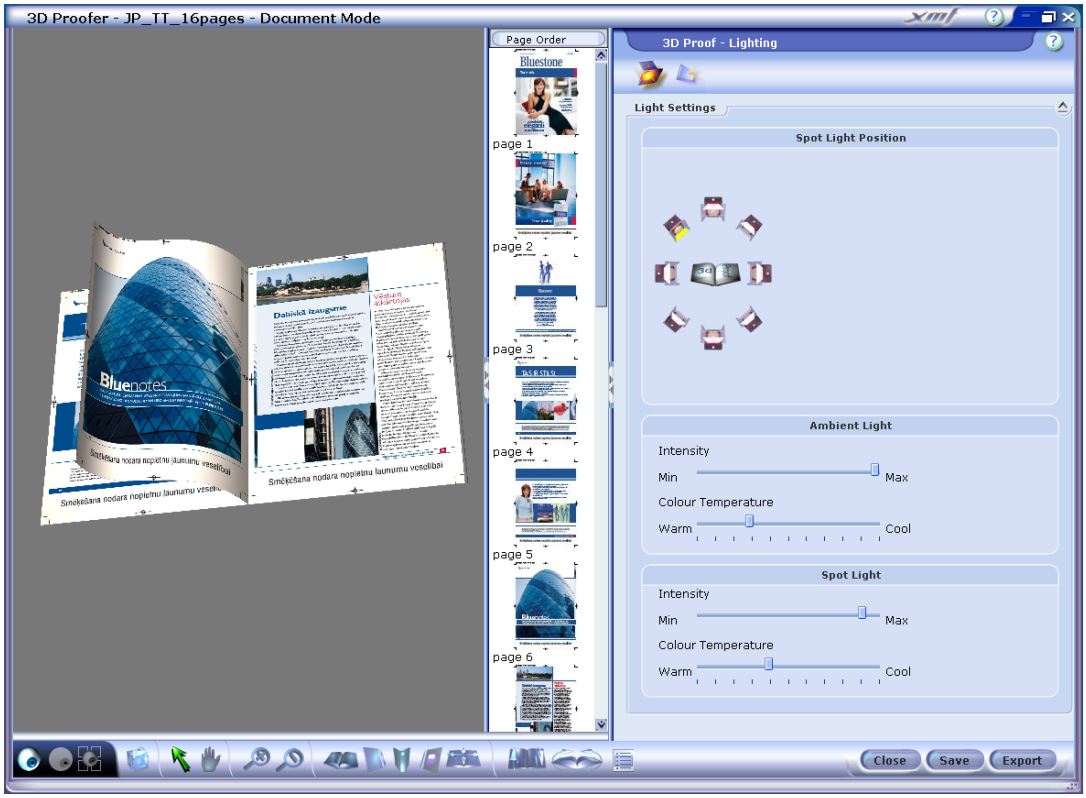
About Settings panel

Name	Description
Display Settings	This value reflects the zoom level (magnification) of the page in the preview panel.
Colour Management	• ICC Profile - This shows the current ICC Profile when an ICC profile is in use. • Simulate Paper White - Simulates the paper colour. • Overprint Preview - Reproduces the overprint effect.
Other information	Length - Millimetres, Inches or Points.

4.2 – 3D Proofer (3D Viewer)

3D Proofer window displays pages as they would appear in the final printed document in three dimensions.
This mode supports page turning, document orientation, paper thickness and varnish simulation. Lighting conditions can be adjusted to check the finish of a document. Zooming in and out is supported. A standalone JAR file can be generated to give to customers, so they can view a simulation of the final product.

Diagram: 3D Proofer window



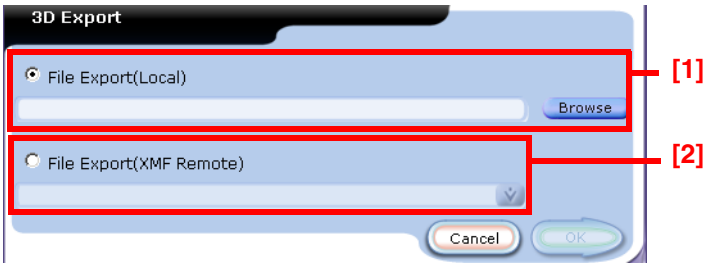
About 3D Proofer toolbar

The buttons in the toolbar control the display of pages in the preview panel.

Diagram: 3D Proofer toolbar

Name	Description
3D View	Click this button to display pages as they would appear in the final printed document in three dimensions.
2D View	Click this button to display a single page in two dimensions.
Imposition View	Click this button to display pages in Imposition Viewer.
File Browser	Click this button to browse for documents required for the XMF job.
Rotate	Click this button then drag the document up, down, left, right, or diagonally to rotate the document in three dimensions.
Pan (Pan Image)	Click this button then drag the document to move the image around, in the two dimensions of the preview panel, without changing its orientation in three dimensions.

Name	Description
Zoom in	Increases the magnification of the image.
Zoom out	Decreases the magnification of the image.
Opened Book View (Opened on Table View)	Displays the document as it would appear resting on a table in front of the observer. If there is a binding, the document is opened out.
Back Cover View	Displays the back cover of the document, as it would appear standing upright in front of the observer.
Edge of Binding View	Displays the edge of the binding, as it would appear standing upright in front of the observer.
Front Cover View	Displays the front cover of the document, as it would appear standing upright in front of the observer.
Fit (Fit in Display Area)	Scales the image to the largest magnification that fits the entire image in the display area.
Work and Tumble - Backwards	Rotates the image in a backward direction. The top of the image moves towards you.
Work and Tumble - Forwards	Rotates the image in a forward direction. The top of the image moves away from you.
Turn Left (Work and Turn - Left)	Rotates the image so the left side of the image moves towards you.
Turn Right (Work and Turn - Right)	Rotates the image so the right side of the image moves towards you.
3D Display Range Change	Click this button to set the range of images to display in the 3D Proofer. For details, see 4.2.1 - 3D Display Range Change.
Export	The 3D Proofer Export function generates a 3D proofing image of the current job as a self-contained application file. The exported file is saved as a JAR file, which can be distributed to enable 3D Proofer to also be operated in an environment in which the XMF system is not installed. This allows the 3D proofing image to be shared among workers and clients who do not have the XMF system. • File Export(Local) - Saves a 3D proofing image as a self-contained application file to a local folder. • File Export(XMF Remote) - Saves a 3D proofing image as a self-contained application file to the specified XMF Remote.

Name	Description
Export	**Screen Explanation** The 3D Export dialog contains the following controls.  [1]: File Export(Local) - Export the 3D proofing image file to a location specified from Browse. [2]: File Export(XMF Remote) - Export the 3D proofing image file to a preset XMF Remote URL. **Restrictions** • When XMF Remote is specified as the export destination, the URL of the export destination needs to be registered in advance in the **JDF Export URLs** panel of the **Administration** screen. **3D Proofer for Distribution** **Function Summary** The exported file can be distributed as data for proofreading with a 3D Proofer function. In the 3D Proofer for Distribution, not only can rotation and moving pages be performed with mouse operations, but operations with the Light Settings panel and Surface Parameters panel are also available. **Restrictions** • The 3D display range cannot be changed in the 3D Proofer for Distribution (for details, see 4.2.1 - 3D Display Range Change). • The **Export**, **Save**, and **Close** buttons are not available in the 3D Proofer for Distribution. • The following shows the recommended operating environment for the 3D Proofer for Distribution. Operating system: Mac OS 10.4/10.5/10.6, Windows XP/Vista/7/Server 2003/Server 2008 Java: JRE 1.5/1.6 • The 3D Proofer for Distribution may not be displayed properly depending on the specifications of the graphic accelerator installed in the PC.

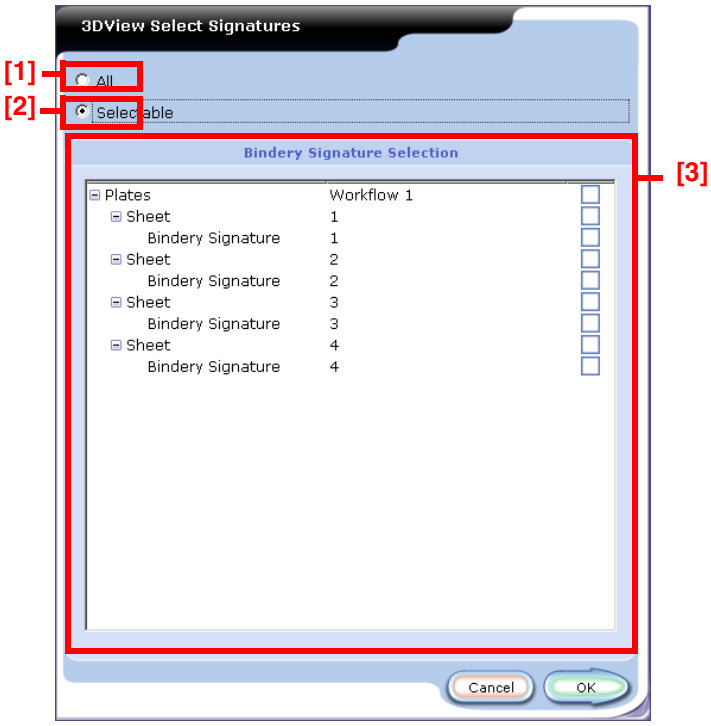
4.2.1 – 3D Display Range Change

Function Summary

This function allows the range of the images to display in the 3D Proofer to be specified by plate, sheet, and signature.

Screen Explanation

The **3DView Select Signatures** dialog contains the following controls.



[1]	All	Tick the box to make all signatures target for display in the 3D Proofer.
[2]	Selectable	Tick the box to enable operation in the **Bindery Signature Selection** panel.
[3]	Bindery Signature Selection	Tick the box for each of the Plates, Sheets, and Bindery Signatures to display in the 3D Proofer.

Operating procedure

The following shows the flow for changing the 3D display range.

① Click the 3D display range change button in the 3D Proofer to display the **3DView Select Signatures** dialog.

② Tick **Selectable**, then tick the boxes of the Plates, Sheets, and Signatures.

③ Click **OK** to close the dialog.

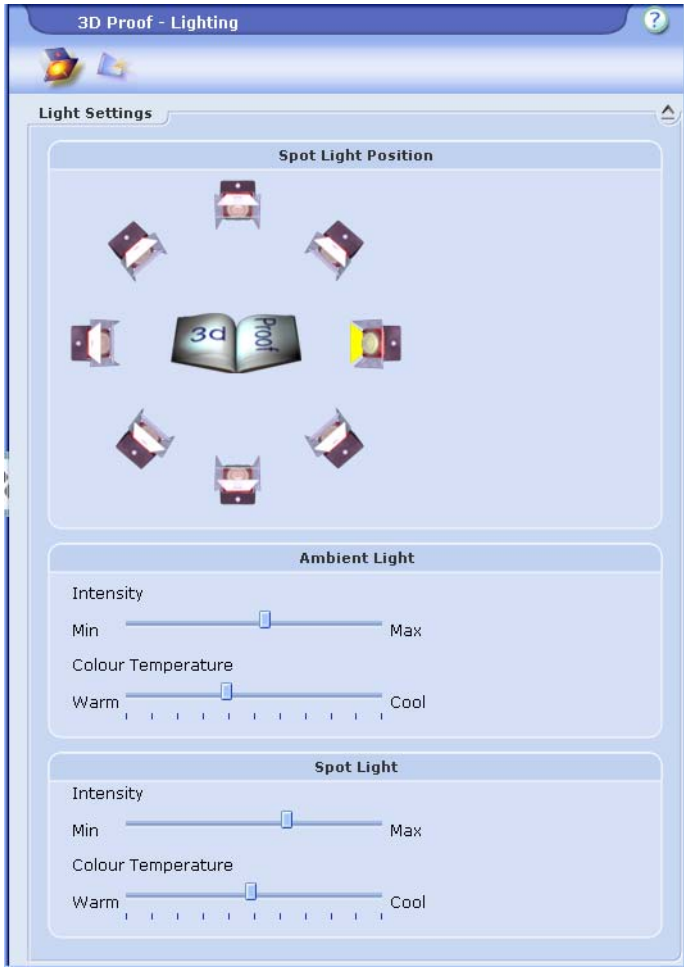
Restrictions

- If only one signature of pamphlet format is selected, the 3D proof is displayed in pamphlet format.
- If multiple signatures including pamphlet format and other formats are selected, all signatures will be 3D proofs displayed in book format.

4.2.2 – Lighting

This controls the simulated lighting conditions for 3D viewing.

Diagram: Lighting panel



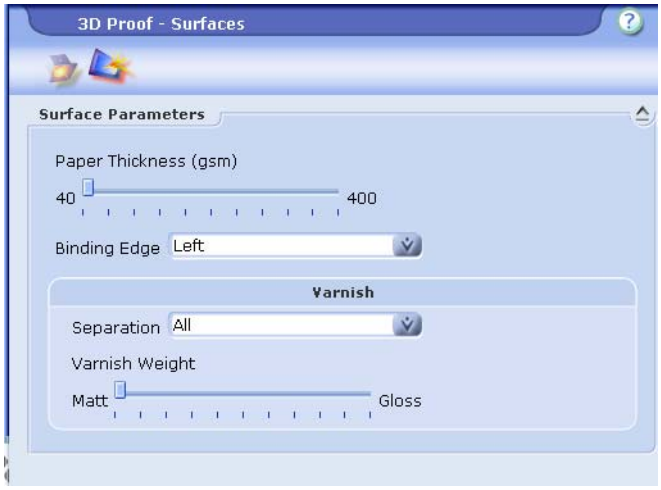
About Lighting panel

Name	Description
Spot Light Position	Controls the origin of the light in the 3D simulation. Click a spotlight image to set the origin of the light at that position.
Ambient Light	Controls the colour and intensity of the simulated background light. • Intensity - The intensity of the simulated ambient light. • Colour Temperature - The slider varies the balance between warm colours (reds and yellows) and cool colours (blues and greens).
Spot Light	Controls the colour and intensity of the simulated spot light. • Intensity - The intensity of the simulated spot light. • Colour Temperature - The slider varies the balance between warm colours (reds and yellows) and cool colours (blues and greens).

4.2.3 – Surfaces

This simulates paper thickness and varnish for the preview panel.

Diagram: Surfaces panel



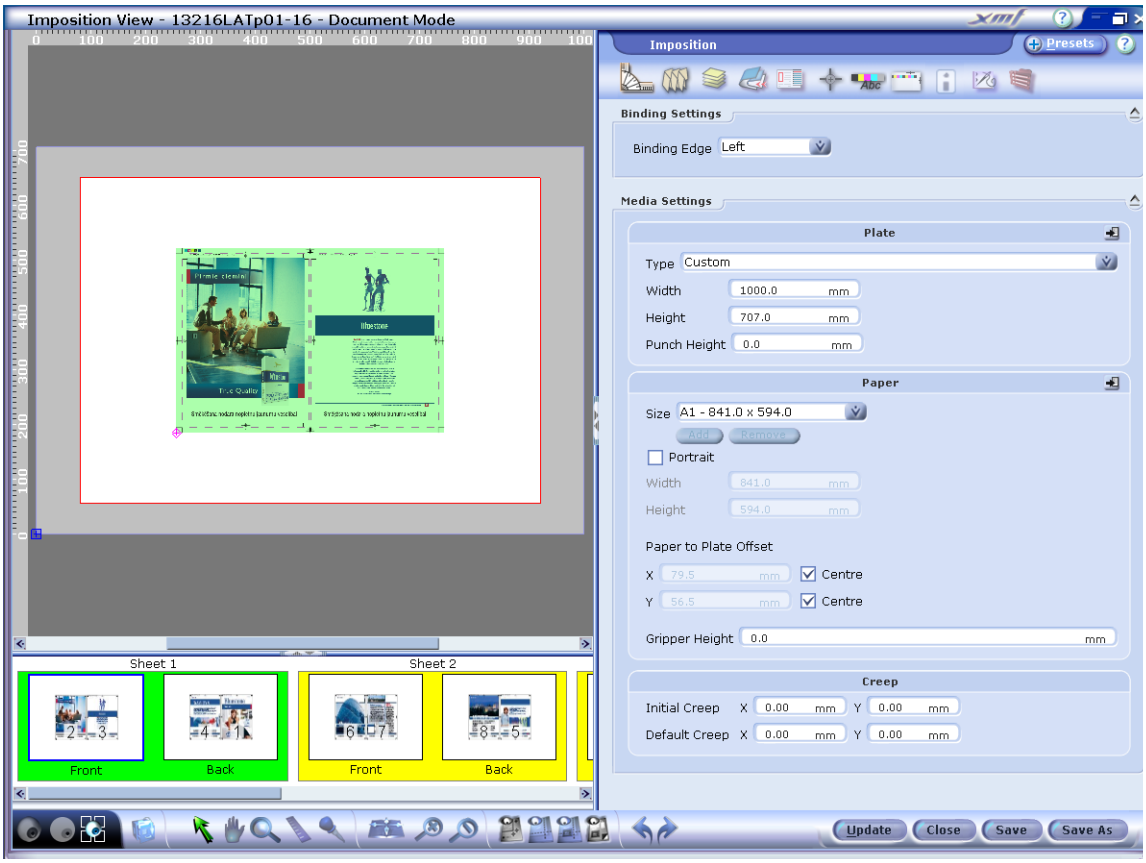
About Surfaces panel

Name	Description
Paper Thickness (gsm)	Move the slider to change the paper thickness used in the 3D simulation.
Binding Edge	Set this to Left or Right.
Varnish settings	• Varnish Weight - Move the slider to vary the surface sheen from Matt to Gloss (shiny).

4.3 – Imposition Viewer (Stripping)

The Imposition Viewer is an amalgamation of the imposition display area on the left and the imposition settings panels on the right. It displays rendered pages flowed within an imposition template. Marks and furniture, guide rules and page boxes can all be displayed or hidden.

Diagram: Imposition Viewer (Stripping)



About Imposition Viewer toolbar

The buttons in this toolbar can change how the pages are displayed within the viewer.
Toolbar is the same for Stripping and Layout impositions.
Shortcut keystrokes may differ depending on the OS used. The following shortcut keystrokes are applicable to the PC platform. Macintosh users should replace the Ctrl key with the Apple command key.

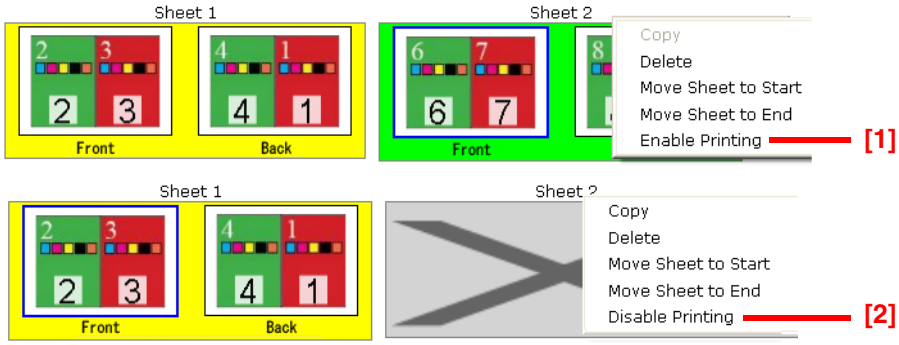
Diagram: Imposition Viewer toolbar

Name	Description
3D View	Click this button to confirm pages/book appearance in three dimensions.
2D View	Click this button to display the pages in two dimensions. Pages can be displayed in either Document Mode or Rendered Mode.
Imposition View	Click this button to display pages in an imposition layout.
File Browser	Click this button to browse for documents required for the XMF job.
Select (Selector tool) • Ctrl + D	Click this button then drag an area to select it.

Name	Description
Pan (Pan Image) • Ctrl + H (Same for Macintosh)	Click this button then drag the document to move the image around the preview panel.
Zoom mode (Select Area for Zoom) • Ctrl + F	Click this button then drag to draw a rectangle over part of the image to zoom in. Alternatively just click within the image to zoom in.
Measure (Ruler) • Ctrl + R	Click this button then drag to draw a line between two points on the image. The horizontal, vertical and diagonal distances between these two points are displayed.
Picker (Dropper) • Ctrl + I	Click this button to open the Colour window, to sample the colour in an image. The window closes when you select another tool.
Fit(Fit in Display Area) • Ctrl + 0 / Ctrl + 1	Scales the image to the largest magnification that fits the entire image in the preview panel. Resize to fit the display area/Resize to show at actual size (1 x)
Zoom in • Windows: Ctrl + Space + Mouse • Macintosh: 1. Space + Ctrl + Mouse 2. Ctrl + “+” or Ctrl + “;”	Each click of the mouse will centre the selected point in the viewer and increase magnification. (Press the keys in the order described on the left) Each click on “+” will increase magnification.
Zoom out • Windows: Ctrl + Alt + Space + Mouse • Macintosh: 3. Space + Ctrl + Alt + Mouse 4. Ctrl + “-” or Ctrl + “=”	Each click of the mouse will centre the selected point in the viewer and reduce magnification. (Press the keys in the order described on the left) Each click on “-” will decrease magnification.
Move • Space + Mouse	Moves the display area by dragging the Mouse while pressing the space key.
Marks (Display Marks) • Ctrl + M	Toggles between showing and hiding marks.
Guides (Display Guides) • Ctrl + G	Toggles between showing and hiding guides.
Overlay (Display Overlay) • Ctrl + O	Click this button to toggle between showing and hiding the size and position information for the currently selected object.
Pages (Display Placed Pages) • Ctrl + B	Toggles between showing and hiding placed pages.
Undo (Undo Last Action) • Ctrl + Z	Undoes the last action.
Redo (Redo Last Action) • Ctrl + Shift + Z	Cancels undo.
Update • Ctrl + U	Updates display.
Close • Esc	Click to cancel.
Save • Ctrl + S	Click to save.
Save As • Ctrl + Shift + S	Click to save under a new name.

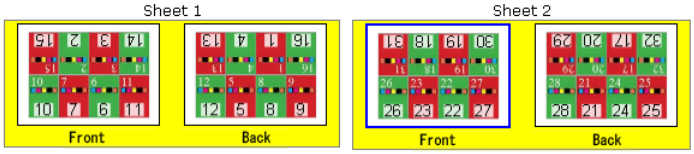
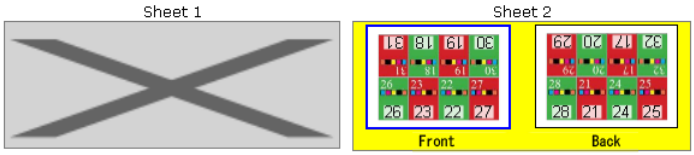
About Imposition Thumbnails and options menu

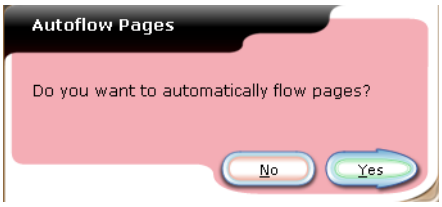
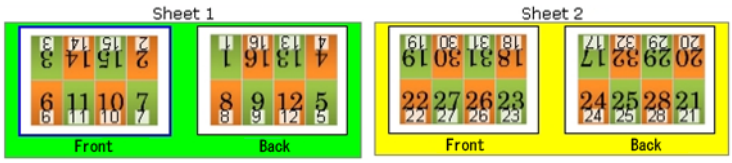
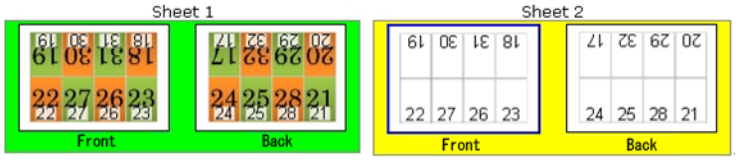
Diagram: Imposition Thumbnails and options menu



The imposition thumbnails view shows thumbnails of all the sheets that make up the imposition.
To display a sheet in the Imposition Viewer, double-click on the sheet thumbnail.
To move a sheet, click and drag the sheet's thumbnail to its new position.
Right-click on the selected sheet's thumbnail to display the options menu, which allows the user to copy/delete the sheet.

Options menu

Name	Description
Copy	Adds one or more new sheets after the selected sheet, using the same work style and signature settings.
Delete	Deletes the selected sheet(s).
Move Sheet to Start	Moves the selected sheet to the start of the imposition. If multiple sheets are selected then they can all be moved at once. If the selected sheets include the first sheet, the option will not be available.
Move Sheet to End	Moves the selected sheet to the end of the imposition. If multiple sheets are selected then they can all be moved at once. If the selected sheets include the last sheet, the option will not be available.
Disable Printing/Enable Printing New	**Function Summary** You can set whether or not to print the selected sheets. **Background** Because the specifications of the JDF itself are enormous and complex, various interpretations are possible. When systems are different, in some cases it is not possible to correctly interpret the JDF. In previous versions, sometimes it has not been possible to correctly load complex JDF information. As a countermeasure, this upgrade adds a function that sets printing to enable or disabled for individual sheets within a single imposition. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Disable Printing - Set to not print the selected sheets. X is displayed on the thumbnails of the sheets that are set to Disable Printing. At this time, the pages that are assigned to the selected sheets are removed from the job structure, but there is no change in the assignments of unselected sheets. Diagram: Before running Disable Printing for Sheet 1  Diagram: After running Disable Printing for Sheet 1  [2]: Enable Printing - Select when setting a sheet set to Disable Printing as the print target.

Name	Description
Disable Print/Enable Print	**<u>About Auto Page Flow</u>** When changing a sheet set to Disable Printing to Enable Printing, the number of imposition pages and the number of pages in the section are the same, and only one section can be assigned to the job, the following message appears and you can select whether to flow the page automatically. Diagram: Autoflow Pages  For example, in a job comprising 2 sheets with 16 pages, a single section with 32 pages is assigned, with Disable Printing set for sheet 1, and pages 17 to 32 assigned to sheet 2. At first, the thumbnail displays are as follows. If sheet 1 is changed to **Enable Printing** and you select **Yes** in the auto page flow confirmation, the pages are flowed while keeping the page order of sheet 2, as shown below.  If you select **No**, the displays are as follows. Pages 1 to 16 are not assigned, and pages 17 to 32 are flowed to sheet 1.  **Restrictions** • Depending on the JDF, it may not be possible to load the information correctly.

About Presets

This function saves the settings of **Plate Slugline** and **Management Information** as presets. Creating one or more **Plate Slugline** and **Management Information** enables XMF to automatically create new ones using the settings enabled last time.

Diagram: Slugline Presets

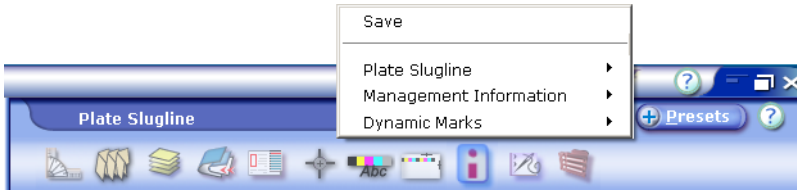
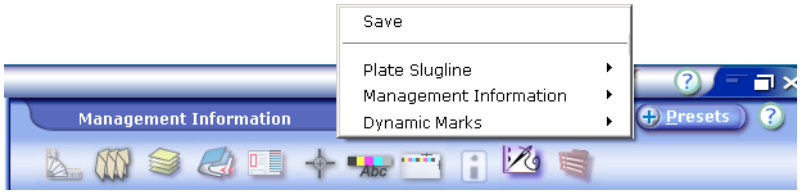


Diagram: Management Information Presets

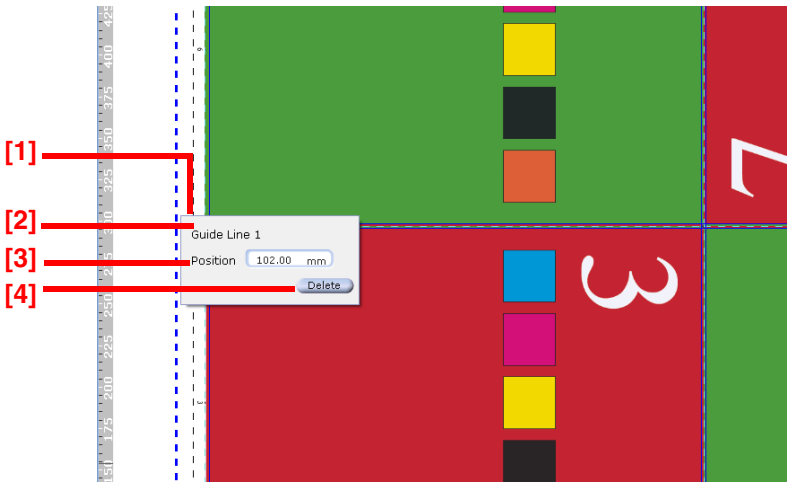


4.3.0.1 - Guide Line Function

Function Summary

This function draws guide lines in the Imposition Viewer.

Screen Explanation



[1]	Guide Line Panel	Click and drag from the top or left ruler and release the mouse button to display this panel.
[2]	Guide Line Number	Displays the number of the selected guide line. Sequential numbers are automatically added to guide lines in the order in which they are created.
[3]	Position	Adjust the position of the selected guide line by entering a value.
[4]	Delete button	Click this button to deleted the selected guide line.

Operating procedure

Add a guide line to the imposition then use the guide line snap function to manually place a signature.

① Open the **Administration** window, then select **Templates**.

② Select **Template** from the **Template Type** drop-down menu.

③ Open the **Signature** panel while the default signature is selected, click the **Copy** button of **Signature Settings** and place the signature in the desired position.

④ Drag the top ruler then drop it on the sheet. Enter 500mm in the **Position** text box of the displayed **Guide Line 1** panel.

⑤ Drag the left ruler then drop it on the sheet. Enter 50mm in the **Position** text box of the displayed **Guide Line 2** panel.

⑥ Drag the left ruler again then drop it on the sheet. Enter 50mm in the **Position** text box of the displayed **Guide Line 3** panel.

⑦ Drag the signature displayed by default until it snaps to Guide Line 1 and Guide Line 2.

⑧ Drag the copied signature until it snaps to Guide Line 1 and Guide Line 3.

This completes the procedure of this example.

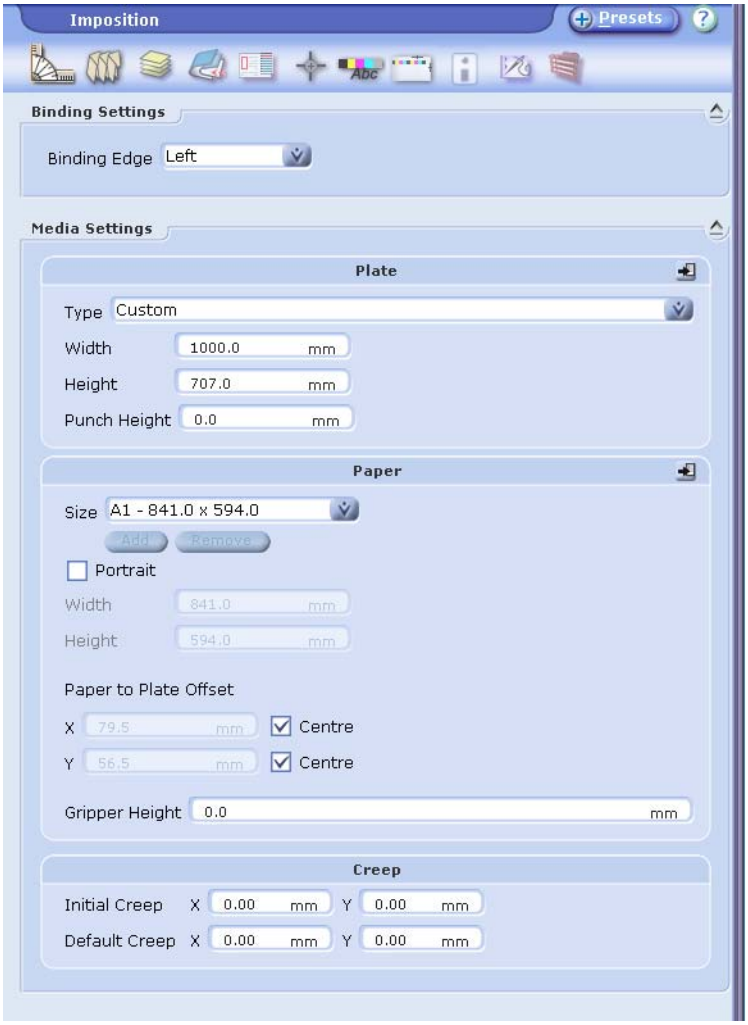
Restrictions

- Only up to 50 guide lines can be placed.

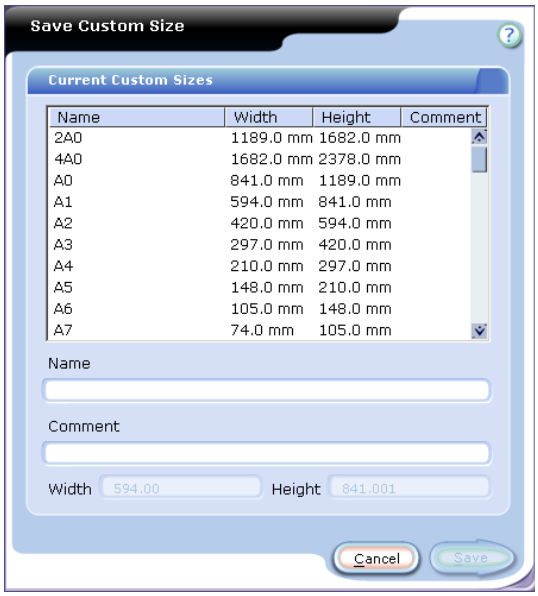
4.3.1 – Imposition

The imposition panel sets the binding style, the plate and paper size and allows their relative positions to be controlled.

Diagram: Imposition panel



About Imposition panel

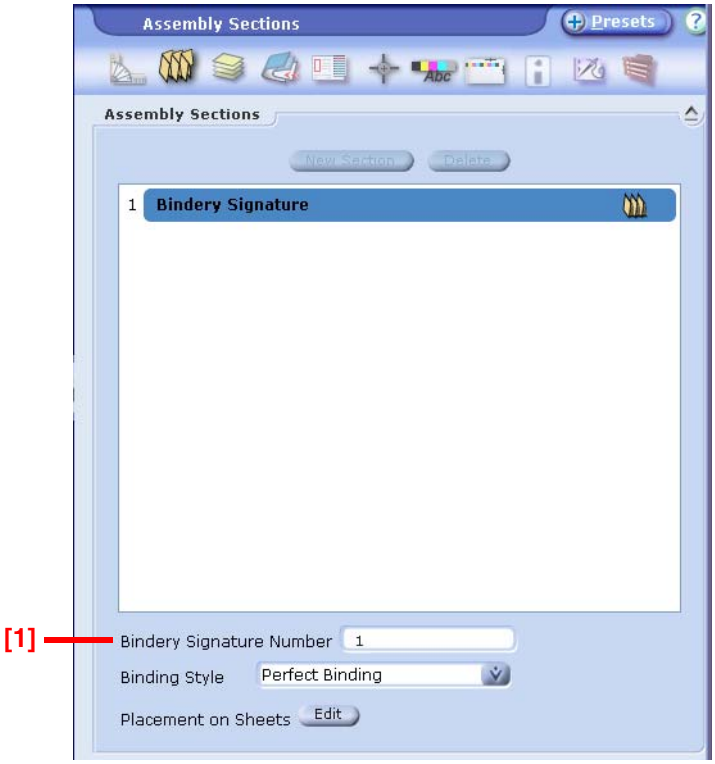
Name	Description
Binding Settings	• Binding Edge - Set as required.
Media Settings	Sets the plate and paper sizes and the paper position relative to the plate. • Plate - Plate size is set by selecting a size from the drop-down list, or if the desired size is not available, by selecting Custom and entering the Width and Height values. • Paper - Size - Paper size is set by selecting from the available paper sizes in the drop down list, or by selecting Custom and entering the Width and Height values. - Add - Click the Add button to display the Save Custom Size dialog.  - Remove - Click the Remove button to remove the selected size from the list. However, only the sizes added can be removed; preset sizes cannot be removed. - Portrait - Tick the box to display in Portrait orientation, otherwise the orientation is Landscape by default. - Paper to Plate Offset - The paper is positioned on the plate according to the X and Y offset values. - Centre - Tick the Centre box(es) to centre the paper on the plate. • Creep - The creep section is only used for stripping templates. - Initial Creep - Enter initial creep values. These values will be applied to the gutter of all sheets. - Default Creep - Enter default creep values. These values define the default settings within one sheet and it does not mean they are applied to all sheets at once.

4.3.2 – Assembly Sections

The Assembly Sections panel allows multiple sheets to be controlled by grouping them as assembly sections. By controlling the assembly sections, more complex impositions can be created. e.g. Multiplexor or Ajiro.

New In previous versions, the assembly sections were grouped by sheet, but in V3.1, the assembly sections are grouped by signature. This means that signatures with different sections and binding styles can be placed on the same sheet.
In addition, a skipped number can be set as the bindery signature number, allowing the more flexible imposition settings.

Diagram: Assembly Sections panel



About Assembly Sections panel

Name	Description
New Section	Creates new sections by splitting existing sections. A new section is created containing the selected sheet and the subsequent sheets in the section.
Delete	Reduces the number of sections by merging two sections.
Bindery Signature Number New	[1] - You can enter a number in the text box to specify the initial bindery signature number. The number specified here is used when generating sluglines, management information and dynamic marks.
Perfect Binding	Changes the binding method to perfect binding, with which the binding edge of collated signatures is ground down/notched by 1-3mm to retain enough adhesive, and once it is coated with adhesive, a cover is attached.
Saddle Stitch	Changes the binding method to saddle stitch which binds the folded pages and the cover together by stitching the centre with 2 or 3 wire staples.
Pagination Order	Edit - Displays the **Signatures** dialog. For details, see 4.3.2.1 - Bindery Signatures Dialog.

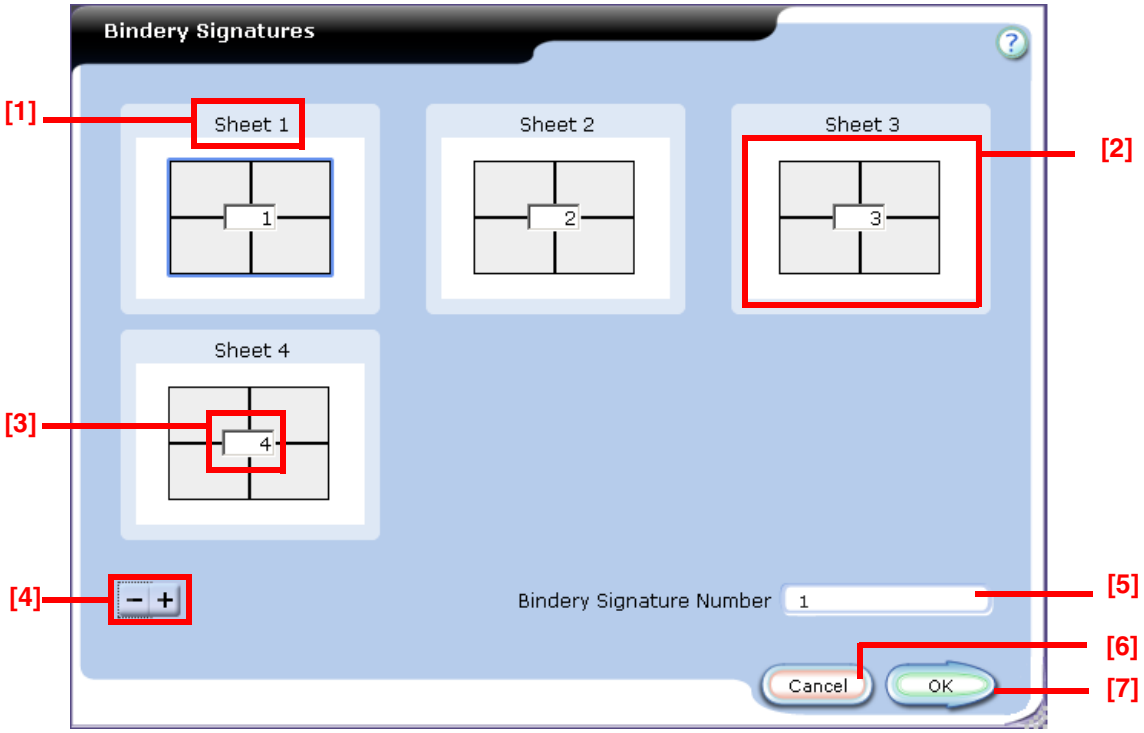
4.3.2.1- Bindery Signatures Dialog

Function Summary

This function allows the order of signatures in the assembly section to be easily changed in the **Bindery Signatures** dialog. Because all signatures are graphically represented in the **Signatures** dialog, you can view the order of sheets and signatures in a list.

Screen Explanation

Bindery Signatures Dialog



[1]	Sheet Label	Displays the sheet name and sheet number.
[2]	Surface	Displays the signature and all page slots of the front surface.
[3]	Signature Number	Edit this value to change the page order. If the entered number is the same as that of another page, both text boxes turn red. If the entered value exceeds the allowable range, the text box turns red. For a signature added with the **Clone** button, the same number as that of the signature which is the clone source is displayed.
[4]	-, + (Decrease, Increase)	Use these buttons to change the number of signatures displayed in the dialog. Click the minus button to increase the columns that can be viewed by one (up to four columns). Click the plus button to decrease the columns that can be viewed by one (up to one column). The width of the columns is made uniform in accordance with the width of the window.
[5]	Bindery Signature Number	Displays the applicable signature number. The order of signatures can also be changed in this field.
[6]	Cancel	Click this button to discard the changes and close the window.
[7]	OK	Changes the page order as specified. This button is disabled if there are two or more pages specified for the same number (pages other than those added with the **Clone** button) or a value that is not allowed has been entered.

Operating procedure

The following procedure describes editing the order of signatures in the assembly section of an imposition template including a single signature, multiple signatures, and cloned signatures in the **Bindery Signatures** dialog.

① Select **Templates** in **Administration** window then create a new imposition template.

② Open the **Signatures** panel of the Imposition Viewer, then click the **Copy** button. Enter "2" in the **Copy** text box, then click **OK**.

③ Double-click **Sheet2**.

④ Open the **Signatures** panel, then click the **New** button to create a new signature.

⑤ Place the new signature on **Sheet**.

⑥ Double-click **Sheet3**, select the signature then click the **Clone** button in the **Signatures** panel.

⑦ Place the created (cloned) signature on **Sheet3**.

⑧ Open the **Sheets** panel, then click the **Edit** button of the **Layout** panel.

⑨ The **Bindery Signatures** dialog appears. Adjust the size of the dialog with ⊞/⊟ on the bottom left of the dialog so that all signatures can be viewed.

⑩ Enter "1" for any one of the signatures on **Sheet3**. The same number is also displayed for another one of the signatures.

⑪ Two or more of the signatures have the same signature number so the signatures of **Sheet1** and **Sheet3** turn red.

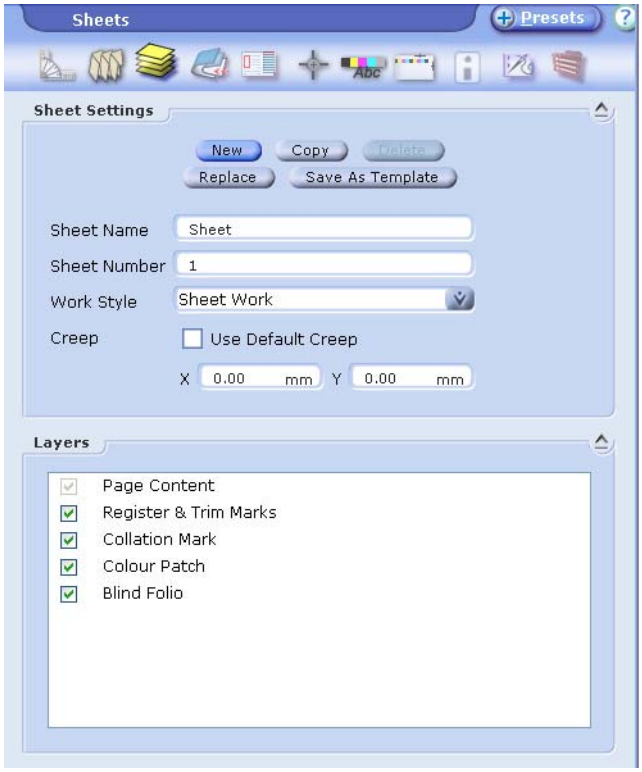
⑫ Select **Sheet1**, then enter "4" in the signature number text box. The colour of the signatures returns to grey.

⑬ Exchange the two signature numbers of **Sheet2**, then click **OK**.

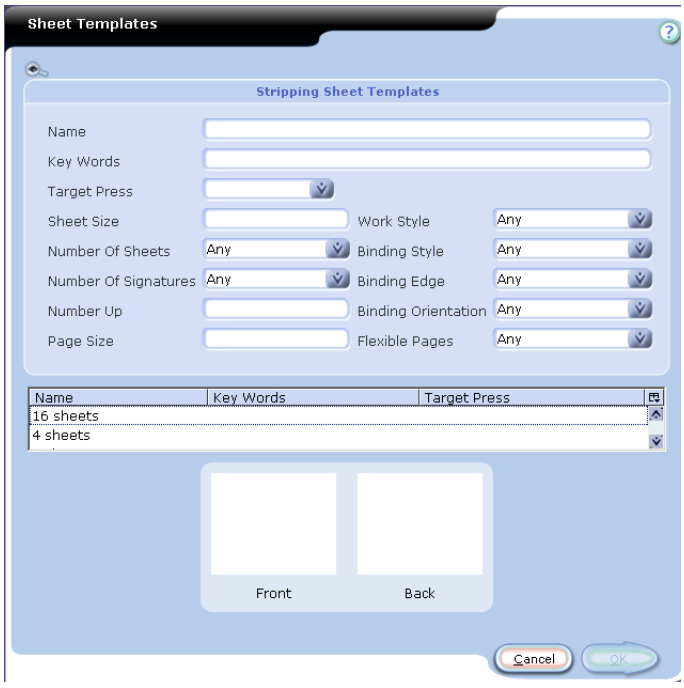
4.3.3 – Sheets

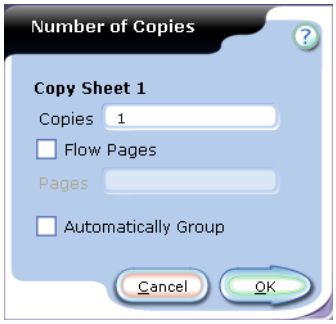
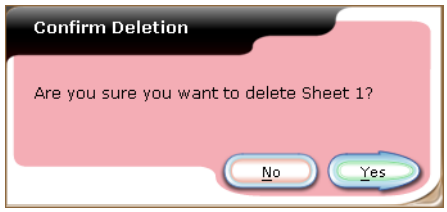
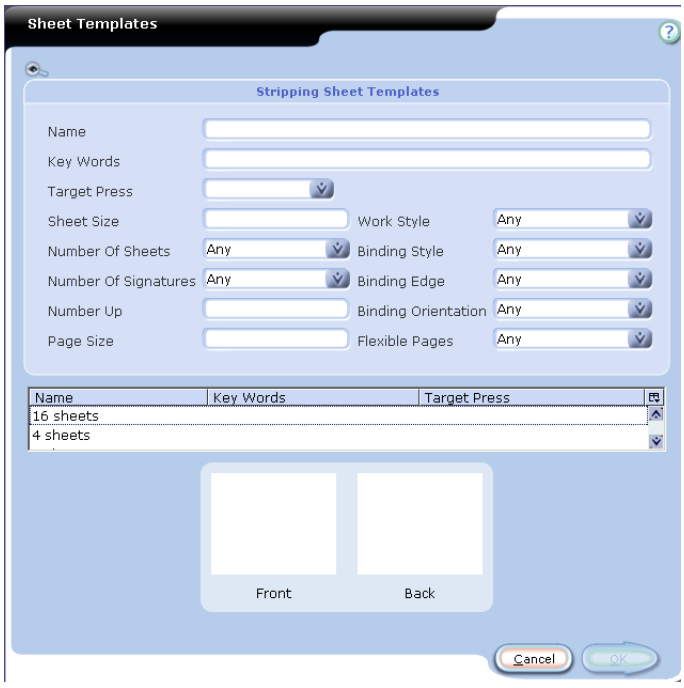
The Sheets panel defines sheets for a stripping template.

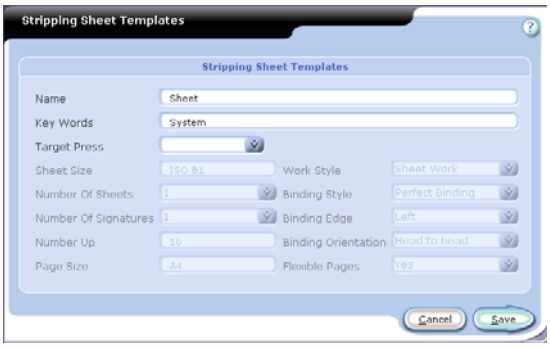
Diagram: Sheets panel (Stripping template)



About Sheets panel (Stripping template)

Name	Description
Sheet Settings	This stores sheet/template settings. • New - Loads a new sheet template. By typing in/selecting each item in the dialog, you can filter required templates. The dialog will show a list of templates that match the search terms that have been entered. A preview of the selected template will be displayed. When the required template has been selected, click the OK button. 

Name	Description
Sheet Settings	• Copy - Click Copy to add one or more new sheets after the selected sheet, using the same work style and signature settings. Enter the number of additional sheets in the Copies text box. If you wish to enter the number of pages to be flowed instead of the number of sheets, tick Flow Pages and enter the number of pages to be flowed in the Pages text box, then the number of sheets to be added will be calculated automatically. If pages are assigned to the workflow product, the number of pages not assigned to the imposition is shown. Click OK to create additional sheets.  - Automatically Group New - Tick this box to create a new group for sheets that have not be sorted into a group, and sort them into this group automatically. • Delete - When this button is selected, any page highlighted in the Imposition Viewer will be deemed for deletion. The Confirm Deletion dialog will appear; click Yes to delete. The delete function cannot be executed if there is only one sheet.  • Replace - The Replace button is used to load the selected template into the current sheet. Type in or select search terms that match the required template, then a list of templates that match the search terms that have been entered will be displayed. A preview of the selected template will be displayed. When the required template has been selected, click the OK button. 

Name	Description
Sheet Settings	• Save As Template - Click Save As Template to save the template.  - Name - A name must be entered before the template can be saved. If a name that already exists is entered, a message box will be displayed asking you to enter a unique name. - Key Words - Enter appropriate key words, separated by spaces. - Target Press - Select either a current press from the list or enter your own information that identifies a press. - Work Style - The work style from Sheet Settings. - Sheet Size - Displays the paper name or the width and height. - Binding Style - The binding style from Assembly Sections. - Number of Signatures - Displays the number of bindery signatures. - Binding Edge - Binding Edge from Binding Settings. - Number Up - Displays the total number of pages on the sheet. - Binding Orientation - Taken from the Signature Settings in the Signature panel. If there are multiple signatures with multiple values, the field will display Mixed. If the sheet has no bindery signatures, the field will display Undefined. - Page Size - Taken from the Pages information in the Signature panel. If there are multiple signatures with multiple values, the field will display Mixed. If the sheet has no bindery signatures, the field will display Undefined. - Flexible Pages - Taken from Content Adjustment in the Signature panel. The field will display Yes if ‘Adjust Imposition to fit pages’ is selected. If there are multiple signatures with multiple values, the field will display Mixed. If the sheet has no bindery signatures, the field will display Undefined. • Sheet Name - Can be a user-defined name. • Sheet Number - Can be a user-defined integer (1 - 10000). • Work Style - The work style for each sheet can be set independently. The choices are: - Perfecting - Paper is flipped vertically relative to the plate. - Flat Work - Allows the placement of multiple signatures on a sheet. - Sheet Work - Paper is flipped horizontally relative to the plate. - Work and Tumble - Both sides of the paper are assembled on the same plate; the sheet is flipped over from front to rear for the second run, so the gripper transfers to the opposite edge. - Work and Turn - Both sides of the paper are assembled on the same plate; the sheet is flipped over from left to right for the second run, so the gripper edge remains the same.

Name	Description
Sheet Settings	• Creep - Creep is used to adjust page positioning to prevent image data from being clipped by cutting (mainly for saddle stitching). - Use Default Creep - If the check box is ticked, the default creep values that are specified in the Imposition panel will be used for the currently selected sheet. If the check box is not ticked, the values entered in the X and Y text boxes will be used. - X and Y - Enter numeric values in the X and Y text boxes to specify the creep values for the currently selected sheet. These values will be used when the 'Use Default Creep' check box is not ticked.
Layers	Individual imposition layers can be switched on and off using the control below. The order of the layers in the list determines the order of rendering. To change the order, select a layer and drag it to its new position. Page Content, Register & Trim Marks, Collation Mark, Colour Patch and Blind Folio layers can be changed.

4.3.4 – Signature

The Signature panel specifies the imposition layout of pages and sheets.

Diagram: Signature panel (upper portion)

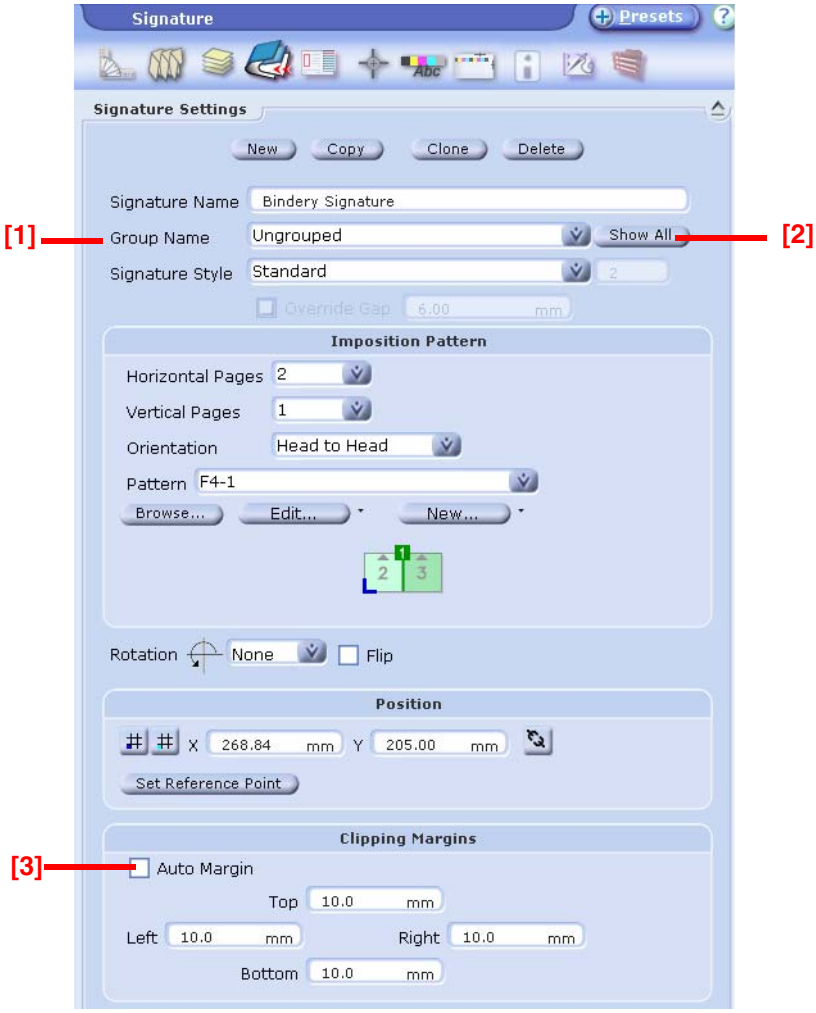
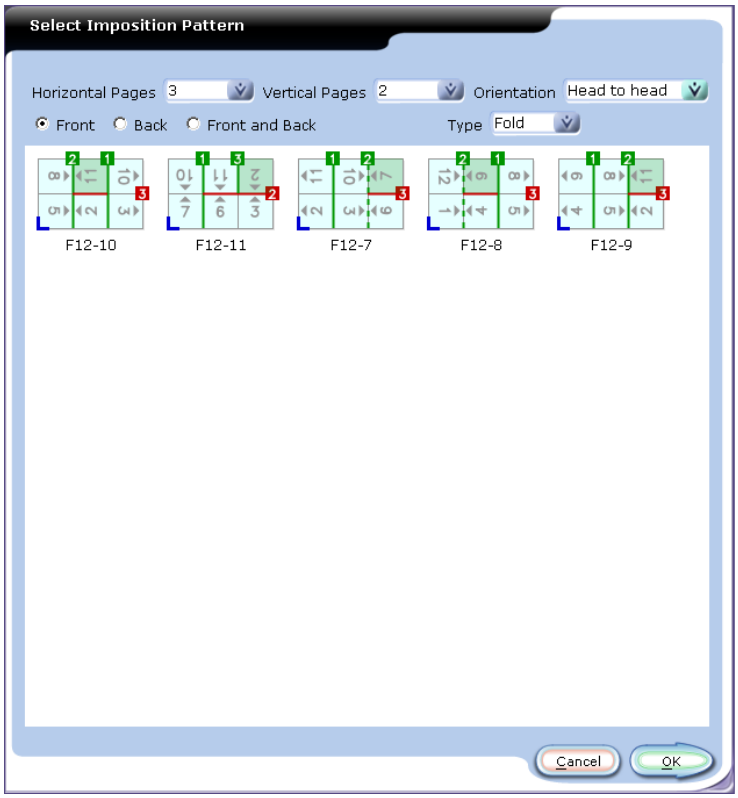


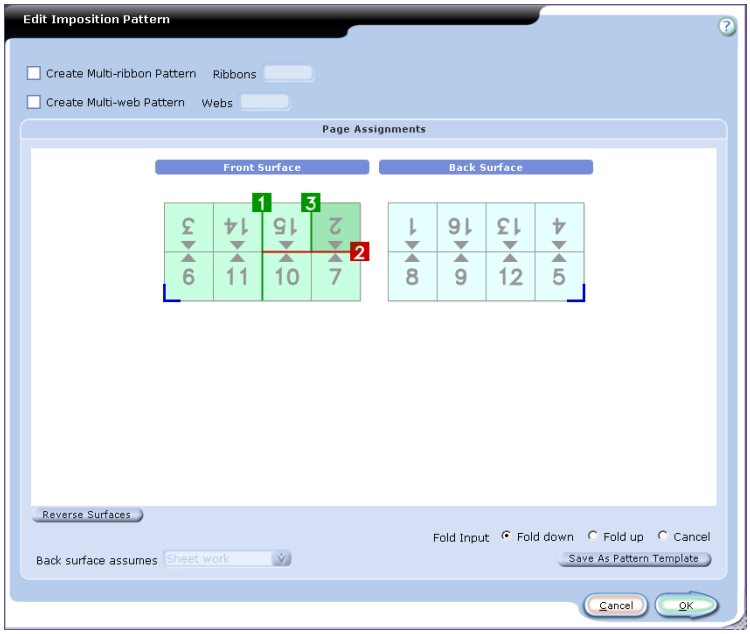
Diagram: Signature panel (lower portion)

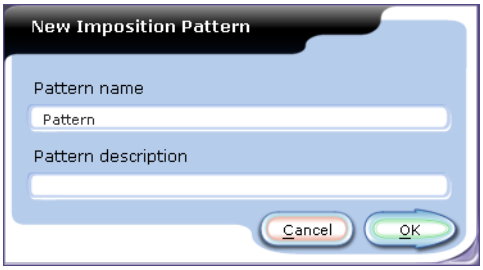
About Signature panel

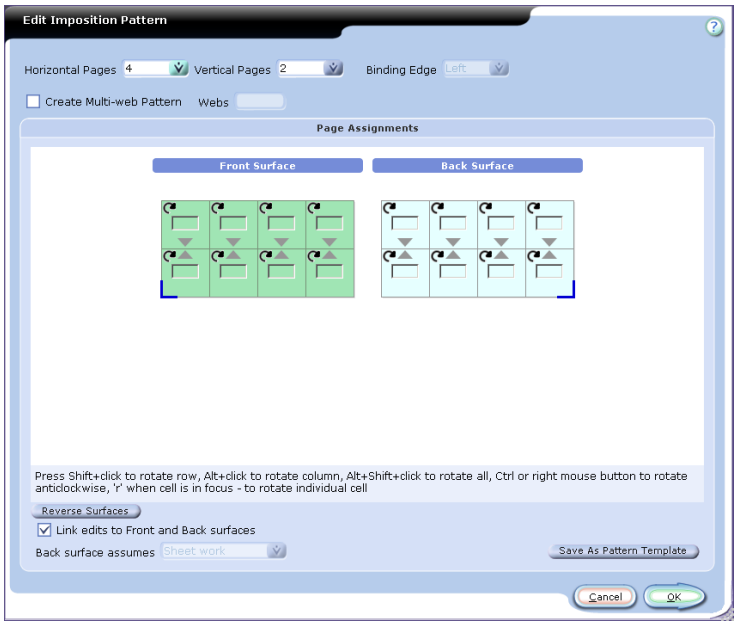
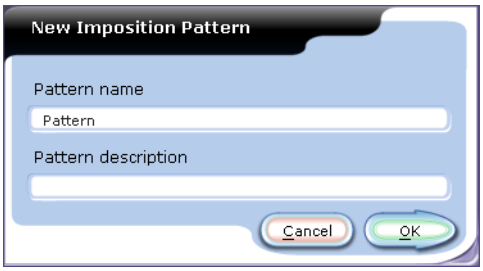
Name	Description
Signature Settings	• New - Click this to open the **Select Imposition Pattern** dialog, which allows you to select the imposition pattern for the new signature you want to create. • Copy - To copy an existing signature, highlight it, then click the Copy button. Click on the sheet to place the new signature. Refer to the X and Y rulers along the edge of the preview panel for precise positioning. Pages are automatically flowed into the copy signature. • Clone - To copy both the signature and the page content, select the signature then click the Clone button. Click on the sheet to place the clone of the signature and content. This is different from the Copy button as it copies the page content as well. • Delete - Select a signature and click the Delete button to remove a signature immediately.

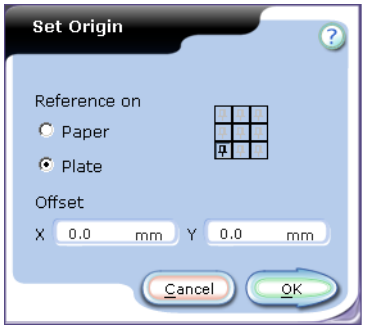
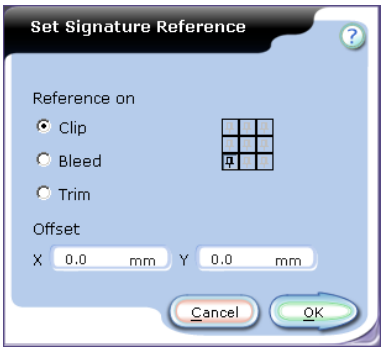
Name	Description
Signature Settings	• Group Name New **Function Summary** By sorting signatures together into a group, you can apply the same settings to all the signatures that belong to the same group. **Background** In previous versions, sheet settings had to be performed separately for each group. But because there are some cases where it would be more useful to edit the items of multiple sheets at the same time, a function for grouping signatures was added to enable the same settings to be updated at the same time. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Group Name - Displays the group name. Select the group settings from the following items. - Ungrouped - The default is not to belong to any group. Select this item if you do not want to group the sheet. - Add to New Group - Select to create a new group. - Existing group names - Displays the groups that have already been set. To group a sheet into an existing group, select a group from this list. [2]: Show All - Displays a list of all the signatures and registered groups in order of sheet. **Restrictions** • This function cannot be used with stripping sheet templates. If grouped sheets are saved as stripping sheet templates, the group setting is cancelled. • Two or more signatures cannot be assigned to a single group. • The signatures of copied sheets are not grouped automatically. • When a signature is selected that has been grouped by **Signature Settings**, **Dynamic Marks** or **Management Information**, an icon is displayed next to the panel title as shown below. In this case, the changes performed for the selected signature also affects the other signatures that belong to the same group. • When a Multi-web signature is assigned to a group, all the other Multi-web signatures are also sorted to the same group. • Signature Style- This is for imposition such as N-Up and Come and Go. For details, see 4.3.4.1 - N-Up and Come and Go.

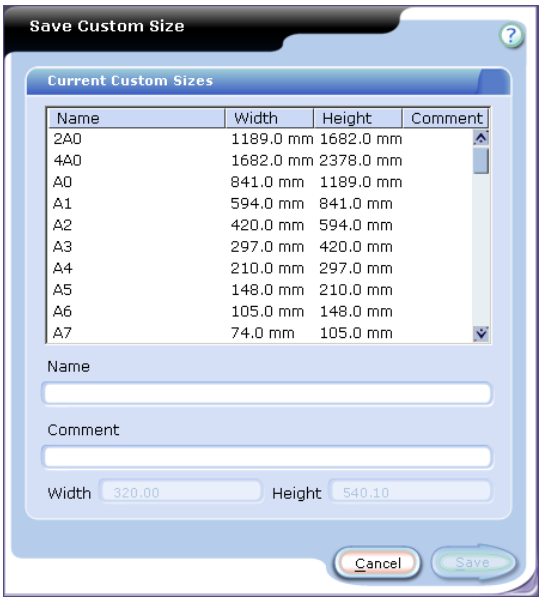
Name	Description
Imposition Pattern	This section allows the user to specify horizontal/vertical page numbers, orientation and a pattern. This controls the number of pages and the layout within the imposition signature. • Horizontal/Vertical Pages - Enter the number of pages across a sheet and the number of pages down a sheet. • Orientation - This setting specifies the direction of the pages. Select from Head to head or Foot to foot. • Pattern - This setting takes the horizontal and vertical page numbers and orientation and suggests patterns. • Browse - By clicking the Browse button, the Select Imposition Pattern dialog box will open where the user can view all available patterns (the defaults plus any user-created ones). To set the front and back pages, select the relevant page(s) then tick the Front, Back or Front and Back check box. 

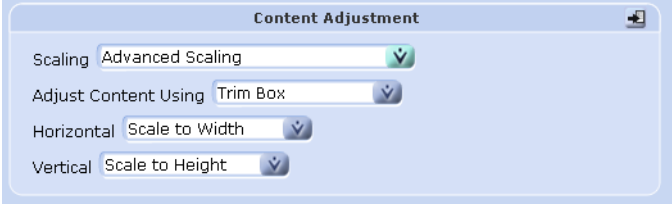
Name	Description
Imposition Pattern	• Edit/New - Selecting an existing pattern and clicking the Edit or New button will open the Edit Imposition Pattern dialog, where an existing imposition pattern can be customised. This dialog enables users to specify the number of horizontal and vertical pages, select which will be the front and back pages, specify the number of pages and the work style (Work and Tumble, Perfecting, etc.). Diagram: Editing/creating a Fold type Imposition Pattern  - Create Multi-ribbon Pattern - Tick this box to create an imposition pattern compatible with a ribbon-type processor. For details, see 4.3.4.2 - Ribbon Support. - Create Multi-web Pattern - Tick this box when to create an imposition pattern compatible with a web press with multi-web specifications. For details, see 4.3.4.3 - Multi-web Support. - Editing/creating a Fold type Imposition Pattern - When the Fold option is selected, an Imposition Pattern can be created by the fold information such as the folding direction and the folding order. Select Fold down or the Fold up and click the border of pages in the Page Assignments area; the folding line and the number indicating the folding order are displayed. The following is indicated by the type of line. • Fold down - Broken Line • Fold up - Solid line • Longitudinal direction - Green line • Crosswise direction - Red line

Name	Description
Imposition Pattern	• Cancel - When you select Cancel and click the folding line that has been input, you can delete the line. • Reverse Surfaces - Click this to flip the front and back of the imposition pattern being edited so that it is displayed in the state in which it has been turned 180 degrees. For details, see 7.13.1 - Edit Imposition Pattern. • Save As Pattern Template - The Save As Pattern Template button allows the user to save the pattern as a Pattern Template, which is saved with a name and description associated with it. 

Name	Description
Imposition Pattern	Diagram: Creating a Grid type Imposition Pattern  - Editing/creating a Grid type Imposition Pattern - This becomes applicable when the Grid option is selected. Clicking on a rotating arrow rotates the page. Each page has a text box to edit the page numbers, so users can decide the order of the pages. Tabbing takes the cursor through each of the pages. It's also possible to rotate a single page, a row of pages or a column of pages simultaneously. This is done as follows: • A single page: Click on a rotating arrow, or press R on the keyboard while a text box to edit the page number is highlighted. • A row of pages: Shift + click • A column of pages: Alt + click • All pages: Alt + Shift + click • Anticlockwise -The above shortcut keys + Ctrl key + left-click, or short-cut keys + right-click (except for the R key shortcut). • Reverse Surfaces - Click this to flip the front and back of the imposition pattern being edited so that it is displayed in the state in which it has been turned 180 degrees. For details, see 7.13.1 - Edit Imposition Pattern. • Save As Pattern Template - The Save As Pattern Template button allows the user to save the pattern as a Pattern Template, which is saved with a name and description associated with it.  • Rotation - Click on the drop-down menu and select a rotation value (None, 90, 180 or 270) to rotate the signature to fit on the paper. Remember to click the Update button. • Flip - Tick this box to position Page 1 of the imposition on the front of the sheet. By default Page 1 is on the back of the sheet.

Name	Description
Position	This allows the relative positions of the paper, plate and signature to be set. Enter X and Y values to specify the exact offset from the origin to the reference point on the signature. • The left icon (with a blue dot) - Specifies the paper/plate origin. Tick one of the radio buttons to set the reference point on either the paper or the plate. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the origin to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right).  • The right icon (with a pink dot) - Specifies the signature reference point. Tick one of the radio buttons to set the signature reference to the clip box, the bleed box or the trim box. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the reference point to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right). The offset X and Y values show the distance from the selected reference point. If required, the values can be changed to apply an offset.  • Set Reference Point - Specifies the signature reference point, shown as a small diamond, in magenta. To set the signature reference point, click the Set Reference Point button, then click on the signature. The reference point snaps to the nearest possible position. The initial setting position of the reference point of the signature is located at the bottom left corner of the trim box. • X and Y values - The X and Y values indicate the relative positions of the Paper/Plate origin and the signature reference points. Edit the values and click the Update button to move the signature to an exact location. • Link/Unlink Signature button - This button allows signatures to be linked to reference points on the paper, the plate or other bindery signatures. When signatures have been linked, they will maintain their relative position to the point that they are linked to when paper and plate sizes are changed or bindery signatures are moved or resized.

Name	Description
Clipping Margins	Auto Margin New **Function Summary** The margins are adjusted automatically to display all the information on dynamic marks defined in the JDF. **Background** This resolves the issue where information in the margins was not displayed. **Screen Explanation** [3]: Auto Margin - Tick this box to adjust the clipping value automatically so that all the margin information is displayed. Entering the clipping margins determines the distance between the outer trim boxes and the edge of the signature. Negative values can be entered. Edit the values and click the Update button to adjust the margins.
Pages	The size of the pages of the signature can be selected from the drop-down list of page sizes. When Custom is selected, users can enter the Width and Height directly (the Landscape check box will be greyed out). Click the Add button to display the Save Custom Size dialog box.  When a custom size is added using this dialog, the new page size will be added to the XMF system and included in the drop-down list. Enter a name and comment, then click the Save button. The new size will appear in the drop down page size list.

Name	Description
Content Adjustment	The pages can be scaled to fit the imposition. Users can select how PDF pages are adjusted based on the PDF media box settings. • No Page Scaling - The PDF pages are centred according to the trim box centre, which is aligned to the page slot centre. • Adjust Imposition to fit Pages - Adjusts the page size automatically, using the size of the first page submitted to a job. With this option, a few basic imposition templates can handle many impositions. • Scale Pages to fit Trim Width (Trim Height/Both) - Pages can be scaled automatically, to fit the imposition. • Advanced Scaling - This option provides advanced controls for positioning and scaling PDF pages within a page slot, as shown below. - Horizontal: Scale to Width/Align Spine/Align Centre/Align Face - Vertical: Scale to Height/Align Head/Align Middle/Align Foot 
Bleed	The amount of bleed applied can be set with reference to the trim boxes. Edit the values and click the Update button.
Gutters	The gutter represents the gap between adjacent pages. Edit the values and click the Update button. When the text box is clicked, the corresponding gutter is displayed highlighted on the Imposition Viewer and the value of the gutter width is reflected.
Step and Repeat	An existing signature/page can be repeated across the sheet using Step and Repeat. Enter the number of signatures/pages to be placed for across and down. Specify horizontal and vertical gaps. Set the page flow by selecting an option from the drop-down menu. It is also possible to apply Split Step and Repeat.
Overfold	Specifies overfold for Front and Back surfaces.

4.3.4.1 - N-Up and Come and Go

Function Summary

This function is compatible with large press configurations which require impositions such as N-Up and Come and Go. With N-Up, two copies are printed in the same orientation with the foot of one abutting the head of the other.
In the case of come and go, two copies are placed so that they are in the opposite orientation with foot to foot or head to head.

Screen Explanation

The following shows the parts of the **Signature Settings** panel that have changed.

<table>
<tr><td>[1]</td><td>Signature Style</td><td>Click this menu to display the Signature Style drop-down list. Select a new signature style then click Update to change the signature of the plate to the new settings.

- N-Up Different Signatures New

Function Summary
This is the new version of the N-Up signature style.
In this signature style, the added signature moves to the next page without repeating the original signature page. The other behaviour is the same as the N-up signature style.

Background
This style is for cases where instead of creating an N-number of the same signatures after folding or cutting, you want to create an N-number of different signatures. In previous versions, this operation could be performed manually from the Imposition Editor, but marks could not be placed correctly between signatures.
This version has added N-Up Different Signatures as a new signature style that supports the correct placement of marks.

Restrictions
• Saddle Stitch cannot be used in N-Up Different Signatures.
• Pagination settings are not supported by N-Up Different Signatures.</td></tr>
<tr><td>[2]</td><td>Number of Times to Repeat</td><td>This value specifies the number of times to repeat the section of N-Up. A value in the range of 2 to 8 can be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Signature Style</th><th>Availability</th></tr>
<tr><td>N-Up</td><td>○</td></tr>
<tr><td>N-Up Different Signatures</td><td>○</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Head to Head</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Foot to Foot</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Head to Head Same Sheet</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Foot to Foot Same Sheet</td><td>×</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>[3]</td><td>Override Gap</td><td>Tick this box to override the default gap value of 6mm. With N-Up, you can specify a value for all gaps or specify values for individual gaps. With Come & go, you can specify a value for all gaps.</td></tr>
<tr><td>[4]</td><td>Gap Specification Method</td><td>Click this button to toggle between all gaps and individual gaps. Clicking this button once changes the gap specification method, and clicking it a second time restores the original method.
<table>
<tr><th>Signature Style</th><th>All gaps</th><th>Individual gaps</th></tr>
<tr><td>N-Up</td><td>○</td><td>○</td></tr>
<tr><td>N-Up Different Signatures</td><td>○</td><td>○</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Head to Head</td><td>○</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Foot to Foot</td><td>○</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Head to Head Same Sheet</td><td>○</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Come & Go Foot to Foot Same Sheet</td><td>○</td><td>×</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Operating procedure

The following example explains how to create an 80 page book using a Come and Go pattern with an A6 page, 8 imposition. There are five signatures (80/16 = 5), so there are two sheets of "Come and Go", and one sheet of "Come and Go Same Sheet". Head to head is used in this example.

① Create a new stripping imposition.
Administration window > **Templates** > **Imposition Templates** > **Stripping Templates** > **New** button

② Select the **Signatures** panel.

③ Select **Come and Go Head to Head** in the **Signature Style** pull-down menu.

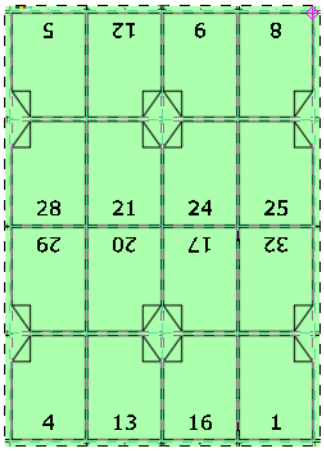
④ Set **Horizontal Pages** to 4 and **Vertical Pages** to 2, then set **Pattern** to **F16-6**.

⑤ Tick **Flip**, then place page 1 on the front of **Sheet 1**.

⑥ In **Content Adjustment**, change **Page Scaling** from **Adjust Imposition to fit Pages** to **No Scale**.
This is necessary to set the page size to A6.

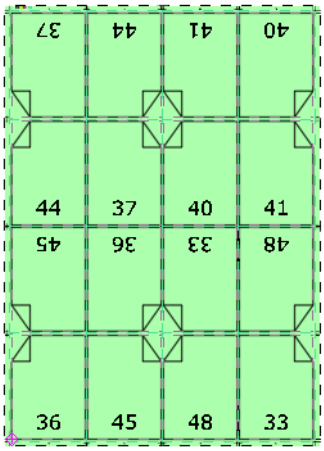
⑦ Set **Size** of **Page Size** to **A6 - 105.0 x 148.0**, then click **Update**.

⑧ The front of **Sheet 1** should be as shown below.



⑨ Create two copies of **Sheet 1** in the **Sheets** panel. Two copies of the sheet are added to the imposition.

⑩ The total number of pages has become 32 x 3 = 96 (six signatures). This is more pages than is required for this job. To reduce the number of pages to 80, the number of signatures must be changed from 6 to 5.
To do this, select **Sheet 3** and change **Signature Style** to **Come and Go Head to Head Same Sheet**, then click **Update**.
When **Sheet 3** is selected, the template should be as shown in the diagram below. Each of the pages of **Sheet 3** is duplicated.



The total number of pages is now 2 x 32 (Sheet 1 and Sheet 2) + 1 x 16 (Sheet 3) = 80.
Since each page in **Sheet 3** is duplicated, **Sheet 1** and **Sheet 2** need to be printed twice as many times as **Sheet 3**.

⑪ Save the imposition template, then close the **Imposition Viewer** window.

Note

- How to use the Head to Head and Foot to Foot functions differs with the Come and Go and imposition patterns. The page number order varies depending on the composition content so pay attention to both settings.

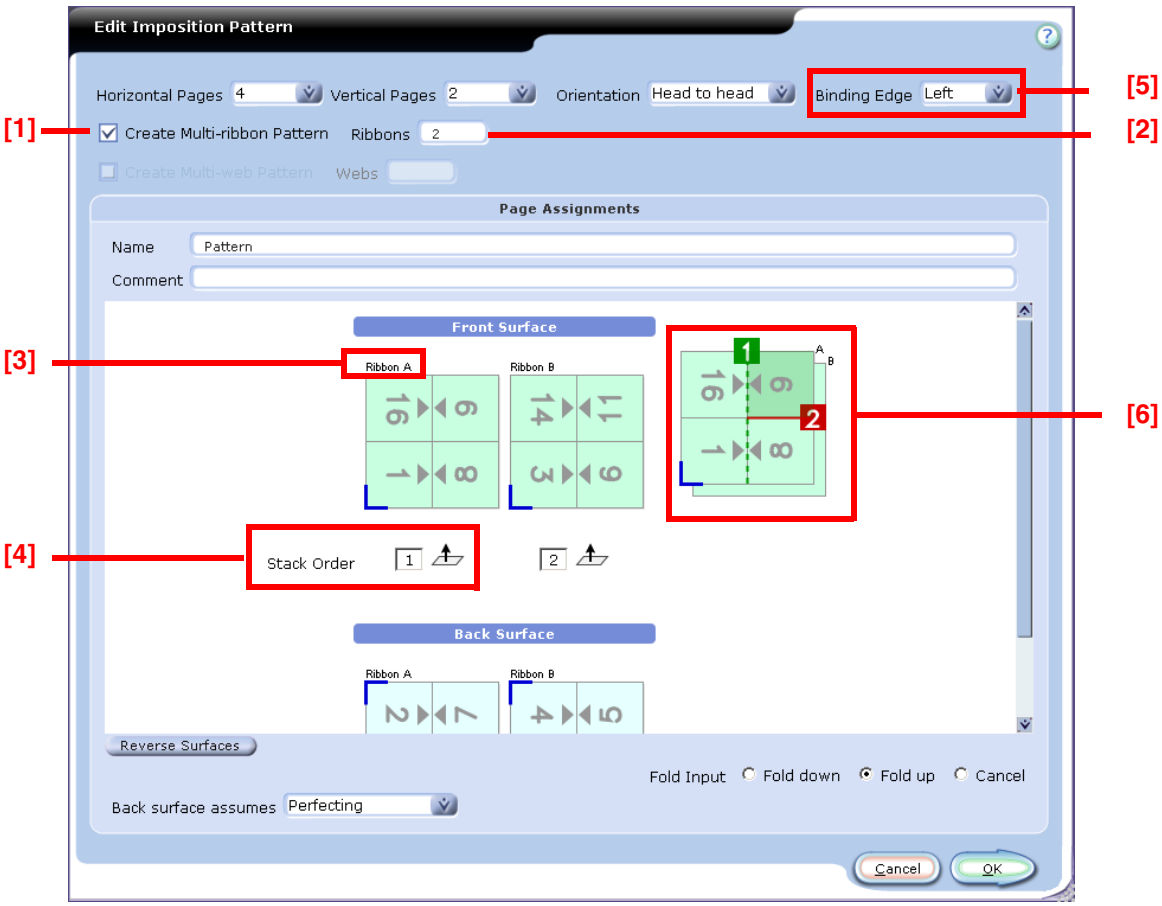
4.3.4.2 - Ribbon Support

Function Summary

This imposition function is compatible with a ribbon-type processor connected to a web press.

Screen Explanation

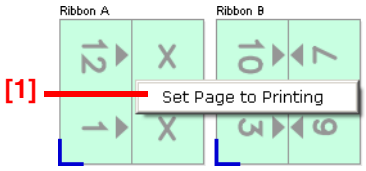
Open the **Imposition Patterns** window from the **Administration** window, select **Fold** for **Type** and click the **New** button to open the **Edit Imposition Pattern** screen.
The **Edit Imposition Pattern** screen contains the following controls.

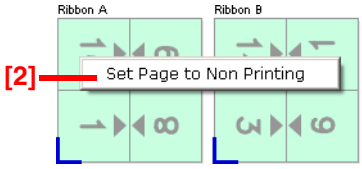


[1]	Create Multi-ribbon Pattern Check Box	Click this icon to change the Page Assignments panel to the Edit Ribbon Settings screen.	
[2]	Ribbons	Enter the number of ribbons to split. The value that can be entered depends on the number of pages in the horizontal direction as shown below.	
		Number of pages in horizontal direction	Value that can be entered
		1 - 12	2 - 8
		13, 14	2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8
		15	2, 3, 4, 5, 8
		16	2, 4, 8
		17	None
[3]	Ribbon Label	Displays the label of each ribbon. Consecutive letters are assigned starting from A. They serve as marks for confirming the stack order in [6].	
[4]	Stack Order	Specify the order for stacking with values. Consecutive values from 1 to the number of split ribbons can be entered.	

[5]	Binding Edge	Click this icon to toggle between the front and back of the ribbon.	
[6]	Stack Preview	Allows you to preview the stacked state. The sheet order and sheet orientation can be specified.	
		Stack Order	Can be confirmed from the label on the top right.
		Side	The side can be confirmed from the depth of the colour. The side with the darker colour is the front and the side with the lighter colour is the back.

Select any page in the **Edit Imposition Pattern** window then right-click to display the option menu in accordance with the page state.

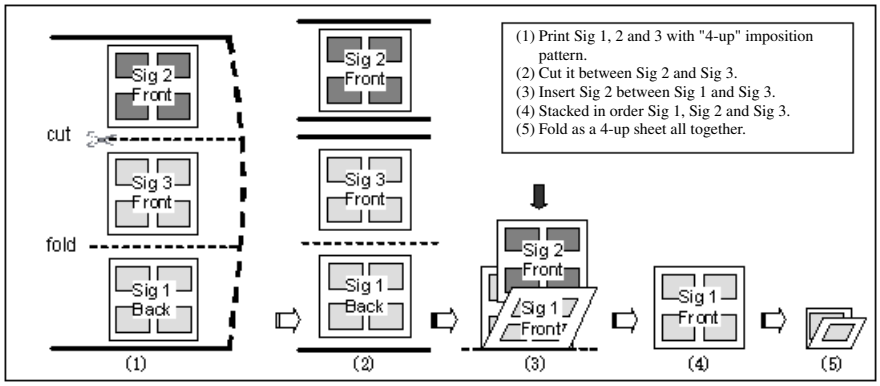




[1]	Set Page to Printing	Selecting this option deletes the selected page and all pages in the same column. This option is only available when the selected page is enabled (not indicated by X). When this option is selected, the total number of pages in the imposition pattern is reduced by the number of deleted pages and the page numbers are reassigned consecutively.
[2]	Set Page to Non Printing	Selecting this option enables the selected page and all pages in the same column which are designated for deletion. This option is only available when the selected page is disabled (indicated by X). When this option is selected, the total number of pages in the imposition pattern is increased by the number of enabled pages and the page numbers are reassigned consecutively.
[1][2]	Common	The settings configured for the pages on the front are also reflected in the same way for the pages on the back. This option is only available for pages belonging to the columns on both edges in the ribbon. This option can be set individually for each ribbon. This option is only available when Multi-Ribbon and Multi-web are set.

Operating procedure

This following explains the imposition setting procedure for when performing post-processing using the following process for the printed paper.



① Open the **Imposition Patterns** window from the **Administration** window.

② Select **Head to head** for **Orientation** and **Fold** for **Type**, then click **New** to create a new imposition pattern.

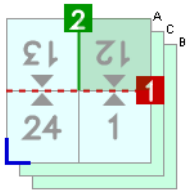
③ Enter [6] for **Horizontal Pages** and [2] for **Vertical Pages**.

④ Enable the **Create Multi-ribbon Pattern** check box, then enter [3] for **Ribbons**.

⑤ Click the icon of Ribbon A to switch the indication to and toggle the front and back.

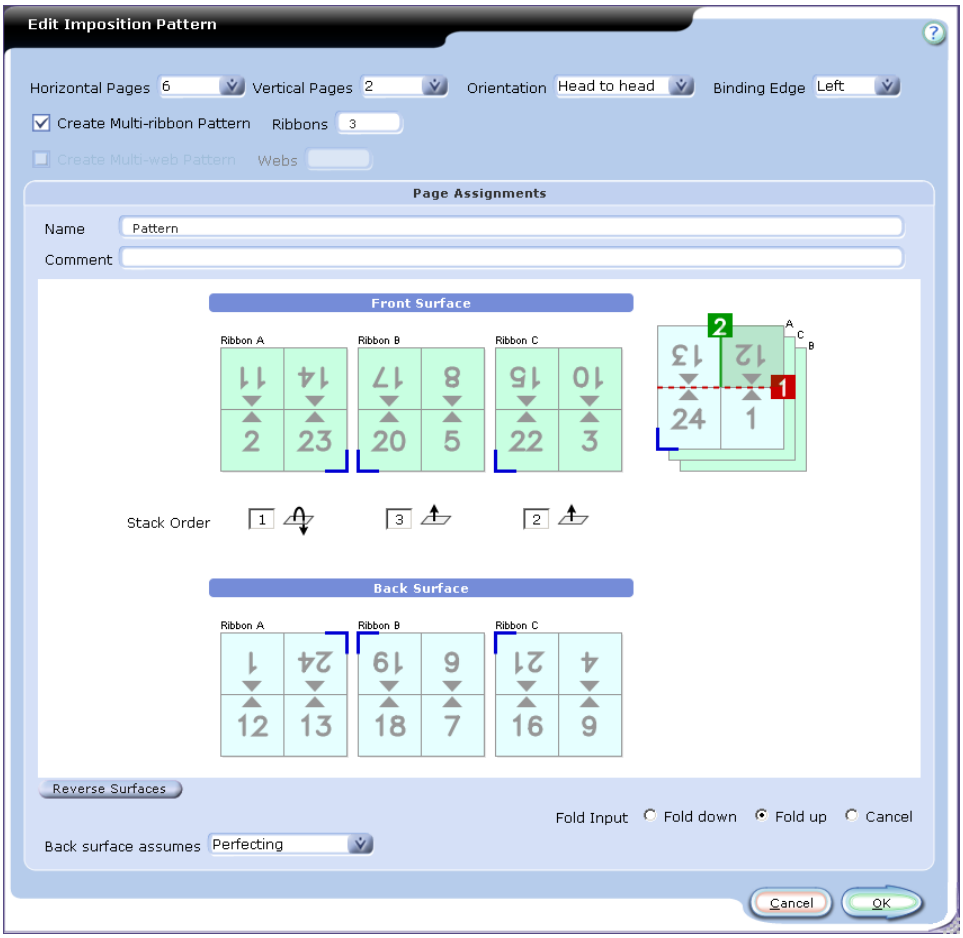
⑥ Change **Stack Order** of Ribbon B from [2] to [3].

⑦ In the stack order preview, set the fold method as shown below.



First Fold line: Fold down in horizontal direction
Second Fold line: Fold up in vertical direction

⑧ Confirm that the state is as shown below, then enter the desired imposition pattern name in the **Name** field and click **OK**.



This completes imposition pattern creation.

⑨ The subsequent procedure is the same as for normal impositions. Create an imposition template with the imposition pattern created in step ⑧ applied, and use it in a job template or job.

Restrictions

- This function is not available when **Grid** is selected for **Type** in the **Imposition Patterns** window. Be sure to select **Fold**.

4.3.4.3 - Multi-web Support

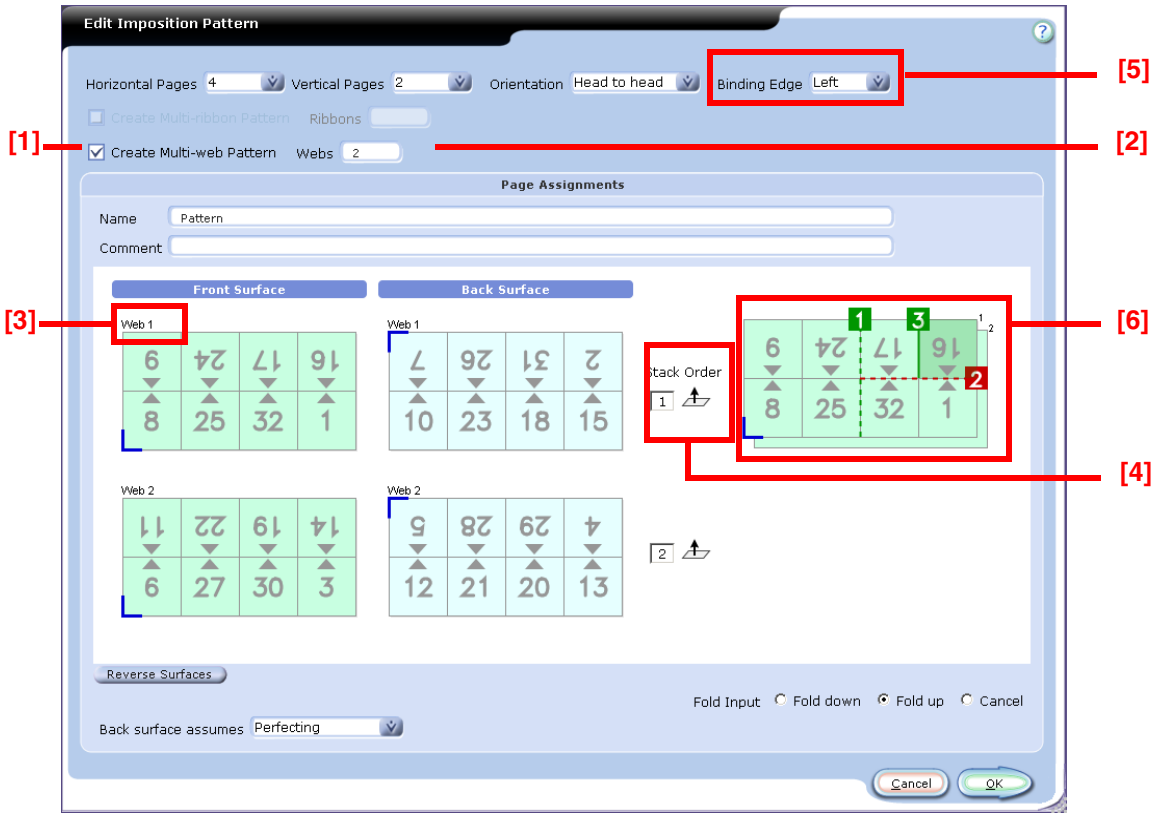
Function Summary

This imposition function is compatible with a web press with multi-web specifications.

Screen Explanation

1. When **Fold** is selected for **Type**.

Select **Fold** for **Type** in the **Imposition Patterns** window, then click the **New** button to open the **Edit Imposition Pattern** screen.
The **Edit Imposition Pattern** screen contains the following controls.

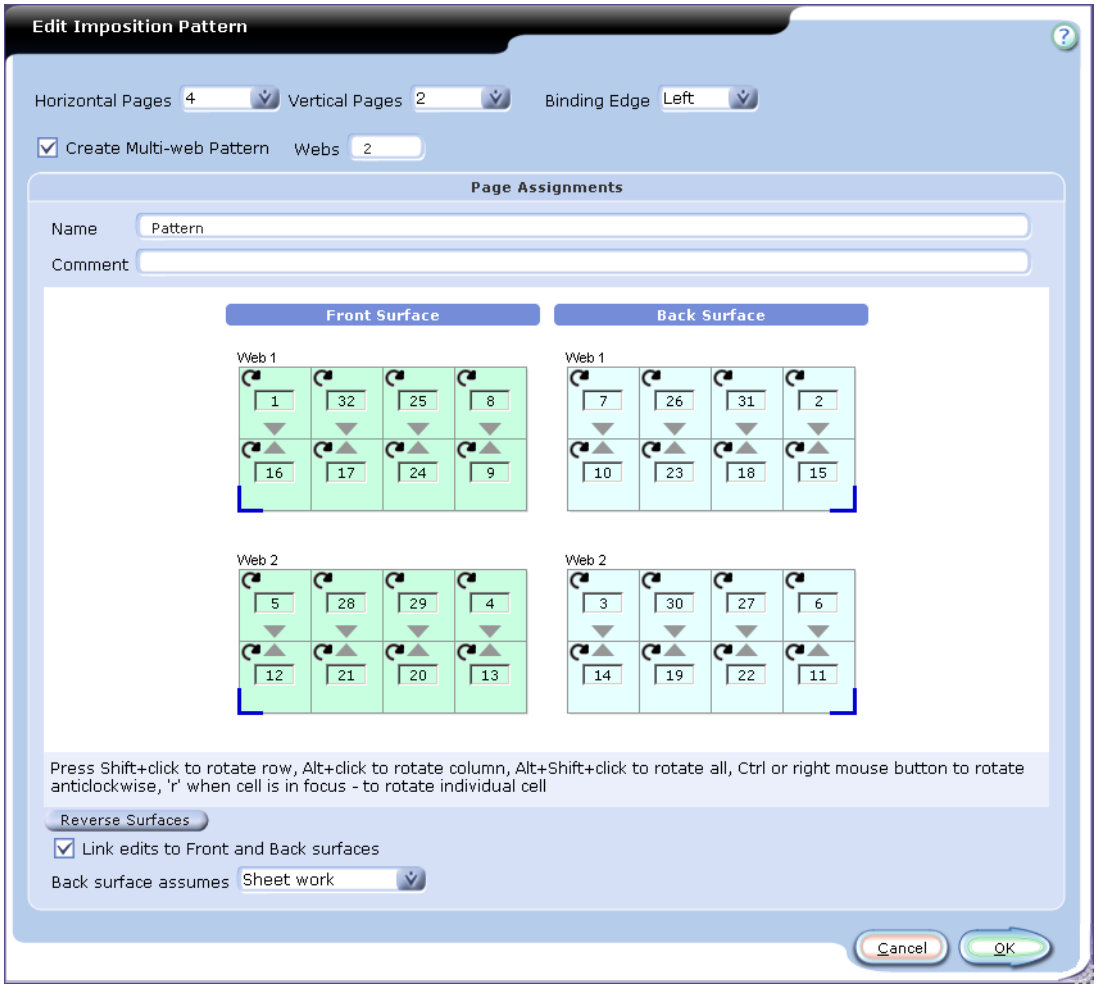


[1]	Create Multi-web Pattern Check Box	Enable this item to switch from the Page Assignments screen to the Multi-web settings screen.
[2]	Webs	This item is for setting the number of webs to use. The number of webs in the Page Assignments screen increases or decreases in accordance with the value entered. The valid values are "2", "3", and "4".
[3]	Web Label	Displays the label of each web. Numbers are assigned starting from "1". They serve as marks for confirming the stack order.
[4]	Stack Order	Specify the order for stacking with values. Values from 1 to the number of webs to be stacked can be entered.
[5]	Bindery Edge	Click this icon to change it and toggle between the front and back of the web.
[6]	Stack Preview	Allows you to preview the stacked state. The fold line and fold direction can be specified. The location in which the preview is displayed varies depending on the pattern size and dialog box size, and is either under the **Front Surface** and **Back Surface** display or on the right side of the **Stack Order** value input box. The web stack order can be confirmed from the labels on the top right. The side can be confirmed from the depth of the colour. The side with the darker colour is the front and the side with the lighter colour is the back.

2. When **Grid** is selected for **Type**.

Select **Grid** for **Type** in the **Imposition Patterns** window, then click the **New** button to open the **Edit Imposition Pattern** screen.

The **Edit Imposition Pattern** screen contains the following controls.



The following shows the items that are different and the items that are common compared to when **Fold** is enabled.

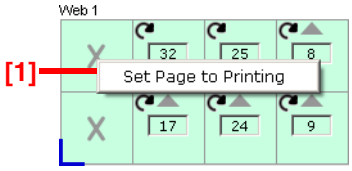
(1) Different items

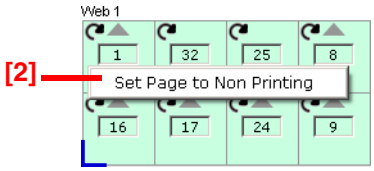
- There is no **Stack Order**.
- There is no **Orientation**.
- There is no stack order preview.
- The page numbers and page orientation are determined manually.

(2) Common items

- **Create Multi-web Pattern** button
- **Name** and **Comment** fields
- **Set Page to Non Printing** (Refer to the following.)

Select any page in the **Edit Imposition Pattern** window then right-click to display the option menu in accordance with the page state.

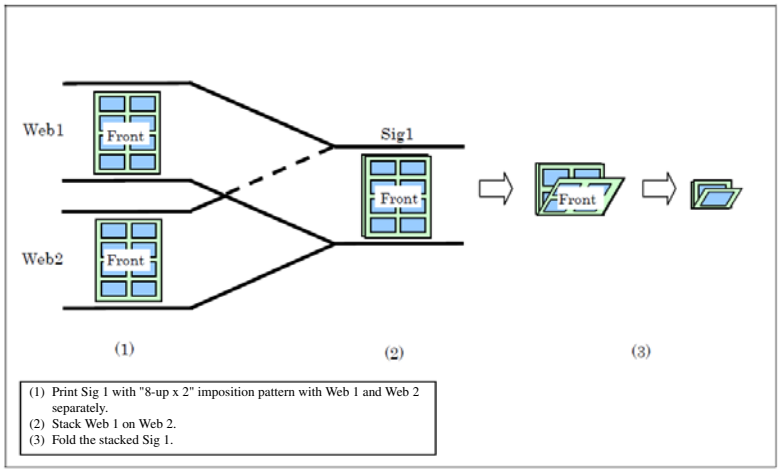




[1]	Set Page to Printing	Selecting this option deletes the selected page and all pages in the same column. This option is only available when the selected page is enabled (not indicated by X). When this option is selected, the total number of pages in the imposition pattern is reduced by the number of deleted pages and the page numbers are reassigned consecutively. All pages of the web cannot be disabled (indicated by X).
[2]	Set Page to Non Printing	Selecting this option deletes the selected page and all pages in the same column. This option is only available when the selected page is disabled (indicated by X). When this option is selected, the total number of pages in the imposition pattern is increased by the number of enabled pages and the page numbers are reassigned consecutively.
[1][2]	Common	The settings configured for the page on the front are also reflected in the same way for the page on the back. This option is only available for any one of the webs. This option is available any of the pages belonging to columns in the web. This option is only available when Multi-Ribbon and Multi-web are set.

Operating procedure

This following explains the imposition setting procedure using the following printing as an example.



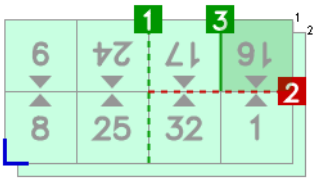
① Open the **Imposition Patterns** window from the **Administration** screen.

② Select **Fold** for **Type** and **Head to head** for **Orientation**, then click **New** to create a new imposition pattern.

③ Enter [4] for **Horizontal Pages** and [2] for **Vertical Pages**.

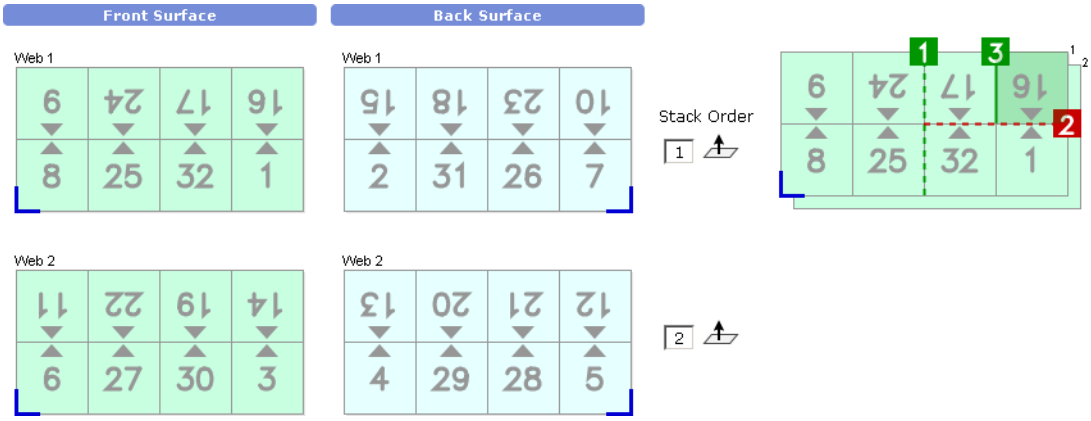
④ Enable **Create Multi-web Pattern**, then enter [2] for **Webs**.

⑤ In the stack order preview, set the fold method as shown below.



First Fold line: Fold down in vertical direction of centre line
Second Fold line: Fold down in horizontal direction
Third Fold line: Fold up in vertical direction

⑥ Confirm that the state is as shown below, then enter the desired imposition pattern name in the **Name** field and click **OK**.



This completes imposition pattern creation.

⑦ Next, apply the created imposition pattern to the imposition template.
Open the **Templates** panel from the **Administration** window just as you would when creating a normal imposition template.

⑧ Select **Imposition Templates** > **Stripping Templates** and click **New** to open the **Imposition View** screen.

⑨ Select **Signatures** > **Signature Settings** > **Imposition Pattern** then enter [4] for **Horizontal Pages** and [2] for **Vertical Pages** and select the created imposition pattern from **Pattern**.

⑩ **Sheet 2** is added automatically, and **Web 1** is assigned to **Sheet 1** and **Web 2** is assigned to **Sheet 2**.

⑪ Use the same procedure as before to set each of the settings for the imposition.

⑫ Click **Save As** in the **Imposition View** screen, entered the desired name for **Name** and click **Save**.
This completes the imposition template settings.

⑬ The subsequent procedure is the same as for normal impositions. Use the created imposition template in a job template or job.

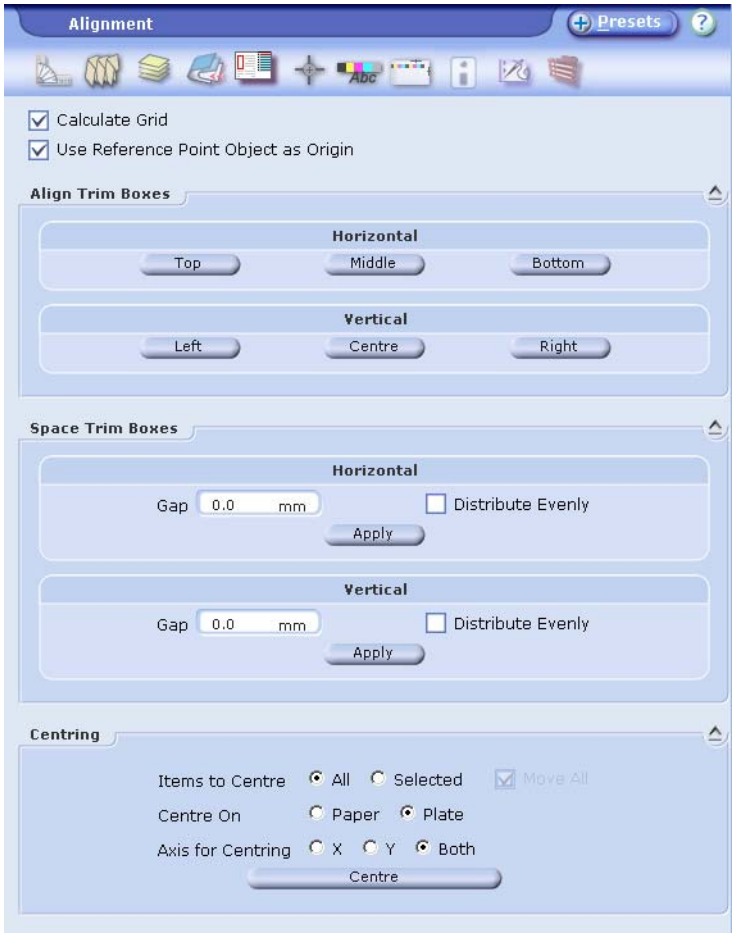
Restrictions

- When creating an imposition template, you can only place a new Multi-Signature on a sheet on which the web set to **Web 1** has been placed.
- When creating an imposition template, you can only place a new Multi-Signature for which the value of **Webs** is the same as that of a Multi-Signature that is already placed on the sheet.
- When creating an imposition template, and changing a pattern of a Multi-Signature that is already placed on the sheet to a different Multi-Signature, you can only change it to a Multi-Signature for which the value of **Webs** is the same.

4.3.5 – Alignment

The Alignment panel allows adjustment of the alignment and spacing of your document.

Diagram: Alignment panel



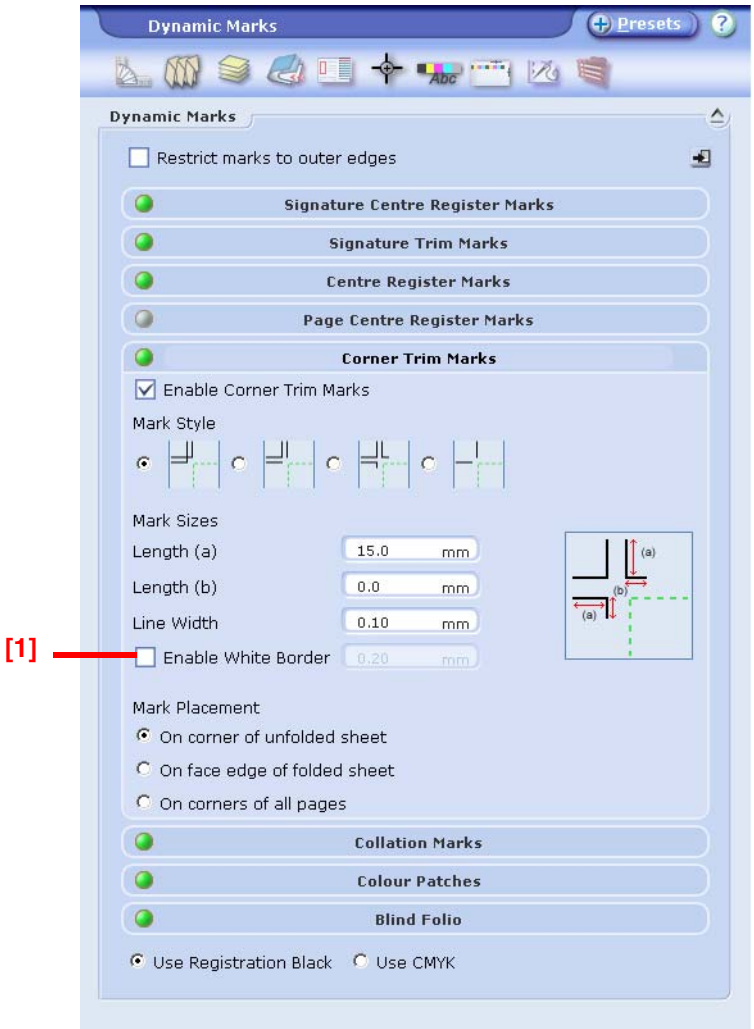
About Alignment panel

Name	Description
Calculate Grid	Tick this box to calculate grid.
Use Reference Point Object As Origin	If the Reference Point was set in the Signature panel, then this function allows the use of the Reference Point as an origin.
Align Trim Boxes	This function aligns multiple pages, so ensure you have more than two pages selected before using this. Pages can be aligned along the horizontal or vertical axis. • Horizontal - Pages can be aligned using the top, middle or bottom of the pages. • Vertical - Pages can be aligned using the left, centre or right side of the pages.
Space Trim Boxes	This enables the pages to be spaced using the trim boxes as a guide. The spacing setup can be based on the Horizontal or Vertical. Selecting Distribute Evenly ensures the spacing between pages to be even.
Centring	This enables centring of selected items on either the paper or the plate in either the X axis, the Y axis or both.

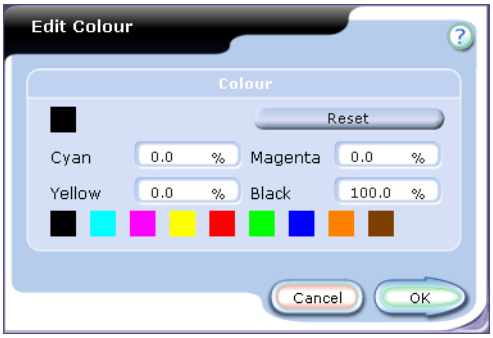
4.3.6 – Dynamic Marks

The Dynamic Marks panel enables users to define lines/shapes of various marks such as register marks, collation marks, colour patches and blind folios, to help with positioning and colour correction.

Diagram: Dynamic Marks panel



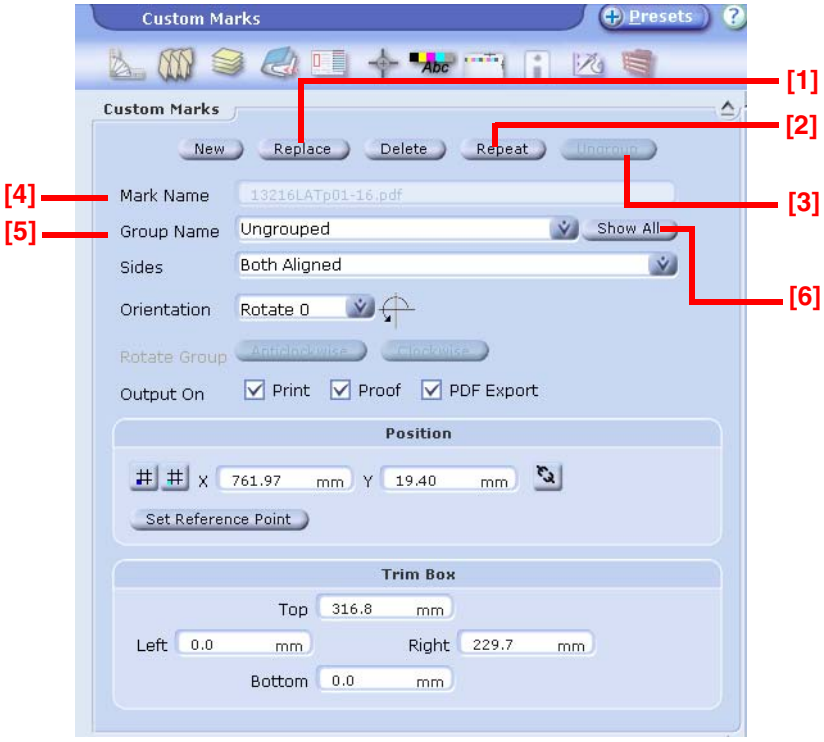
About Dynamic Marks panel

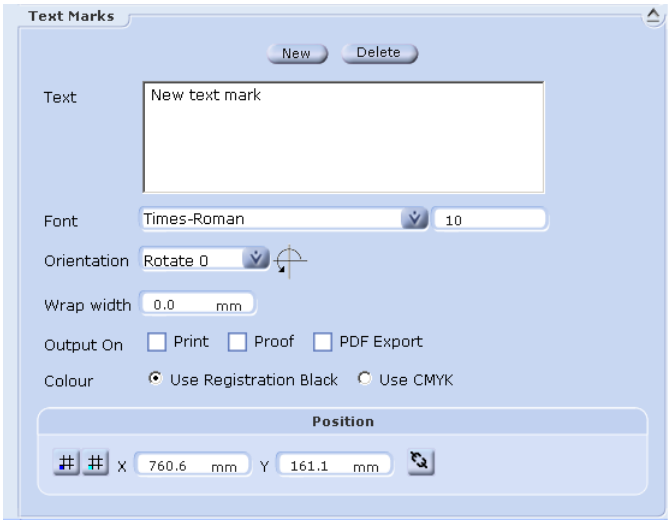
Name	Description
Dynamic Marks	The panel specifies shapes and colours of various register marks, collation marks, colour patches and blind folios, etc. • Restrict marks to outer edges - Tick this check box to restrict custom marks to the outer edges of the image. • Marks type - The list includes below. In the list, the circle next to the mark type is green if it is enabled, otherwise grey if disabled. Click the circle to enable or disable the mark. Click on the title of the mark to expand the mark panel and close the existing panel. Each type of mark has a specific settings panel, including a tick box to enable or disable the mark. Each type of mark contains a Save Marks Defaults button. Click the Update button to see the effect of any changes. - Signature Centre Register Marks - Signature Trim Marks - Centre Register Marks - Page Centre Register Marks - Corner Trim Marks - Collation Marks - Colour Patches - Blind Folio • Use Registration Black - Select to set the colour of the marks to the registration colour. • Use CMYK - Select to set the colour of the marks to the selected CMYK colour. • Edit Colour - When Use CMYK is selected, a square box of the colour currently set appears on the right, together with its CMYK values. Double click on the box to bring up the Edit Colour dialog. A preview is on the top left of the diagram shown below. Either click the required coloured box or enter CMYK values to set the colour for the slugline.  • Enable White Border **Function Summary** This function encloses the dynamic marks in a white border. When dynamic marks are placed on the bleed or custom marks of a page, the mingling of colours may result in you being unable to see the dynamic marks. This function prevents such a phenomenon from occurring. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Enable White Border - Tick this item to enclose all signature centre dynamic marks in a white border. Specify the width of the border in the text box on the right. **Restrictions** • This function has been added to the following panels. - Signature Centre Register Marks, Signature Trim Marks, Centre Register Marks, Page Centre Register Marks, Corner Trim Marks, Colour Patch, and Blind Folio • This function is disabled if custom marks are placed above the dynamic marks.

4.3.7 – Custom Marks

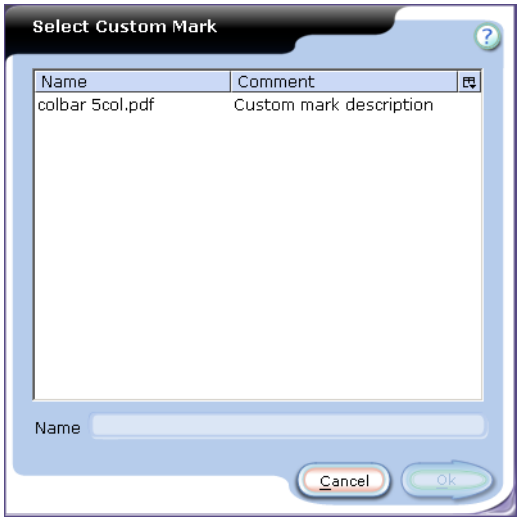
The Custom Marks panel allows users to customise register/text marks.

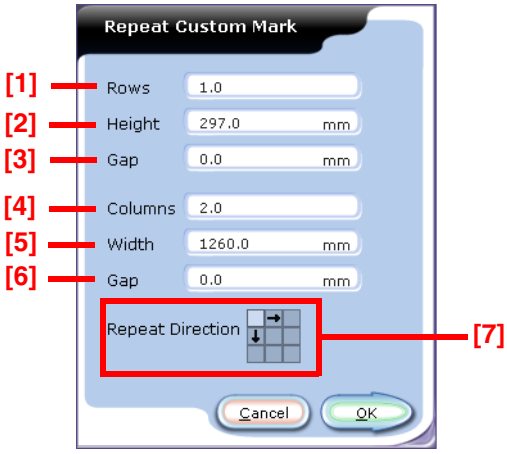
Diagram: Custom Marks panel

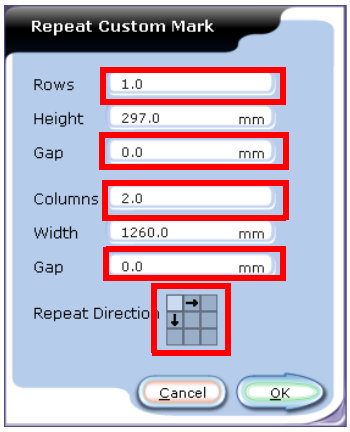
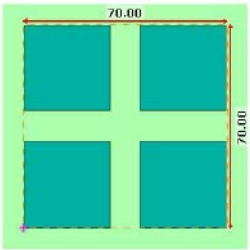
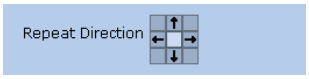
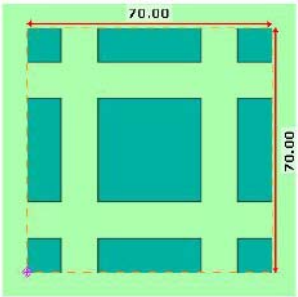




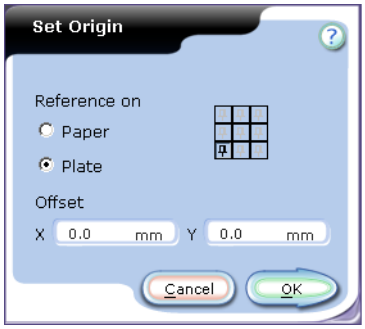
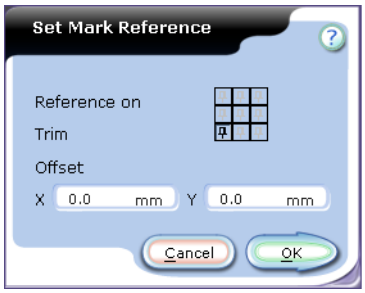
About Custom Marks

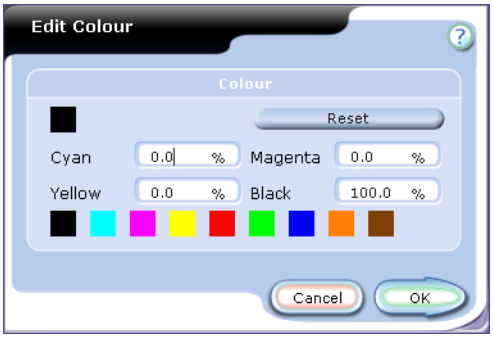
Name	Description
Custom Marks	This allows specifying the output surface/alignment/rotation etc. To activate this section, custom marks need to be imported into the system using the Custom Mark Management panel in the Administration window. • New - Click the New button and choose a custom mark from the list as shown below. Click the OK button and move the pointer onto the imposition - a grey rectangle around the pointer represents the new mark to be placed. Click to display the mark.  • [1]: Replace - This function allows a custom mark that is already placed on a sheet to be replaced with any custom mark. **Operating procedure** This example explains the procedure for replacing a custom mark that has been placed with a different custom mark. ① Open the **Administration** window, click **Custom Marks** then click the **Import** button. Select the custom mark PDF from the file dialog. ② The **New Custom Mark** dialog appears. Edit **Custom mark name** and **Custom mark description** if necessary, then click **OK**. ③ Import a different custom mark with the procedure of ① and ②. ④ Open the **Custom Marks** panel in the Imposition Viewer, then click the **New** button. ⑤ Select the custom mark registered in ②, then click **OK**. ⑥ Move the cursor in the Imposition Viewer to display the custom mark below the cursor. Click on the sheet to place the custom mark. ⑦ Click the **Replace** button while the placed custom mark is selected. ⑧ When the **Select Custom Mark** dialog opens, select the custom mark imported in ③. ⑨ Click **OK** to replace the custom mark with the selected custom mark. This completes the procedure of this example.

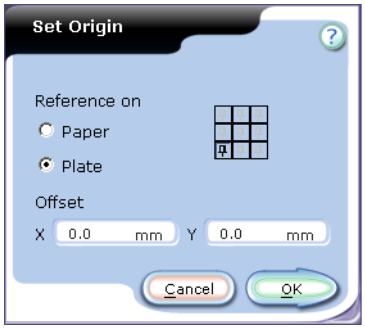
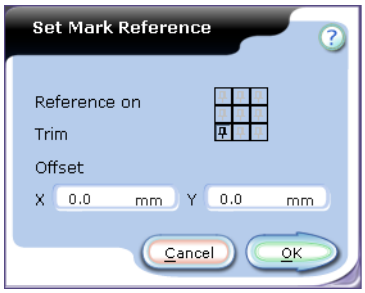
Name	Description
Custom Marks	• Delete - Use to delete the custom mark. • [2]: Repeat - Custom marks can be repeatedly added vertically and horizontally by specifying rows and columns. Click this button to display the Repeat Custom Mark dialog. This button is only available when one mark or one group is selected. **Screen Explanation** **Repeat Custom Mark** dialog  [1]: Rows - The number of marks to repeat vertically. This value is updated automatically when **Height** or **Gap** (vertical) is edited. A non-integer can be entered. The maximum allowable value is 10000. [2]: Height: The total distance from top to bottom of the repeated marks. Editing this value affects the value for the rows. The maximum allowable value is 3527.8. [3]: Gap (vertical) - The distance between two marks. Editing this value affects the value for the rows. The maximum allowable value is 3527.8. [4]: Columns - The number of marks to repeat horizontally. This value is updated automatically when **Width** or **Gap** (horizontal) is edited. A non-integer can be entered. The maximum allowable value is 10000. [5]: Width: The total distance from left to right of the repeated marks. Editing this value affects the value for the columns. The maximum allowable value is 3527.8. [6]: Gap (horizontal) - The distance between two marks. Editing this value affects the value for the columns. The maximum allowable value is 3527.8. [7]: Repeat Direction - Selecting a reference point enables the repeat direction to be specified.

Name	Description
Custom Marks	**Operating procedure** This example explains the procedure for repeating custom marks horizontally and vertically. ① Open the **Administration** window, click **Custom Marks** then click the **Import** button. Select the custom mark PDF from the file dialog. ② The **New Custom Mark** dialog appears. Edit **Custom mark name** and **Custom mark description** if necessary then click **OK**. ③ Open the **Custom Marks** panel in the Imposition Viewer, then click the **New** button. ④ Select the custom mark registered in ②, then click **OK**. ⑤ Move the cursor in the Imposition Viewer to display the custom mark below the cursor. Click on the sheet to place the custom mark. ⑥ Click the **Repeat** button while the custom mark is selected to display the **Repeat Custom Mark** dialog. ⑦ Enter the values in the fields indicated in the image below, then click the **OK** button.  The repeated custom marks are displayed as shown in the image below.  ⑧ Click the **Repeat** button in the **Custom Marks** panel again, and set the **Repeat Direction** setting to the centre while referring to the image below.  ⑨ The repeated custom marks are displayed as shown in the image below.  This completes the procedure of this example.

Name	Description
Custom Marks	• [3]: Ungrouped - Click this to set the selected custom mark as an individual custom mark. This button is only available when the selected custom mark has already been repeated. • [4]: Mark Name - The name of a custom mark is displayed in the **Custom Marks** panel. The name is only displayed and cannot be edited. • Sides - The custom mark can be on the front, back, both aligned or both sides (relative) of the sheet. If both aligned, then the relative alignment of the marks can be controlled. • Orientation - Click on the drop-down menu then select a rotation value. Remember to click the Update button. • Rotate Group - Rotate the group anticlockwise or clockwise. • Output On - Allows users to select which product the custom marks are output on. Enable the appropriate check box(es). • Group Name New **Function Summary** By sorting custom marks together into a group, you can apply the same settings to all the custom marks that belong to the same group. **Background** In previous versions, custom mark settings had to be performed separately for each group. But because there are some cases where it would be more useful to edit the items of multiple sheets at the same time, a function for grouping custom marks was added to enable the same settings to be updated at the same time. **Screen Explanation** [5]: Group Name - Displays the group name. Select the group settings from the following items. - Ungrouped - The default is not to belong to any group. Select this item if you do not want to group the sheet. - Add to New Group - Select to create a new group. - Existing group names - Displays the groups that have already been set. To group a sheet into an existing group, select a group from this list. [6]: Show All - Displays a list of all the custom marks and registered groups in order of sheet. **Restrictions** • This function cannot be used with stripping sheet templates. If grouped sheets are saved as stripping sheet templates, the group setting is cancelled. • More than one custom mark cannot be assigned to the a single group. • Click Update to update the Imposition View with the custom mark settings.

Name	Description
Custom Marks	• Position - The left icon (with a blue dot) - Click to display the Set Origin dialog box. Specify the paper/plate origin. Tick one of the radio buttons to set the reference point on either the paper or the plate. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the origin to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right).  - The right icon (with a light blue dot) - Click to display the Set Mark Reference dialog. Specify the mark reference point. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the reference point to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right). The offset X and Y values show the distance from the selected reference point. If required the values can be changed to apply an offset.  - Link/Unlink Custom Mark button - The link button allows custom marks to be linked to reference points on the paper, the plate or bindery signature positions. When marks have been linked, they will maintain their relative position to the point that they are linked to when paper and plate sizes are changed or bindery signatures are moved or resized. To create a link, set the required reference points on the custom mark and the object that you want to link it to then click the link button.When linked, the icon's chain appears intact; when unlinked, the chain appears broken. • Trim Box - Edit the mark trim box values. The dimensions are measured relative to the bottom left corner of the mark.

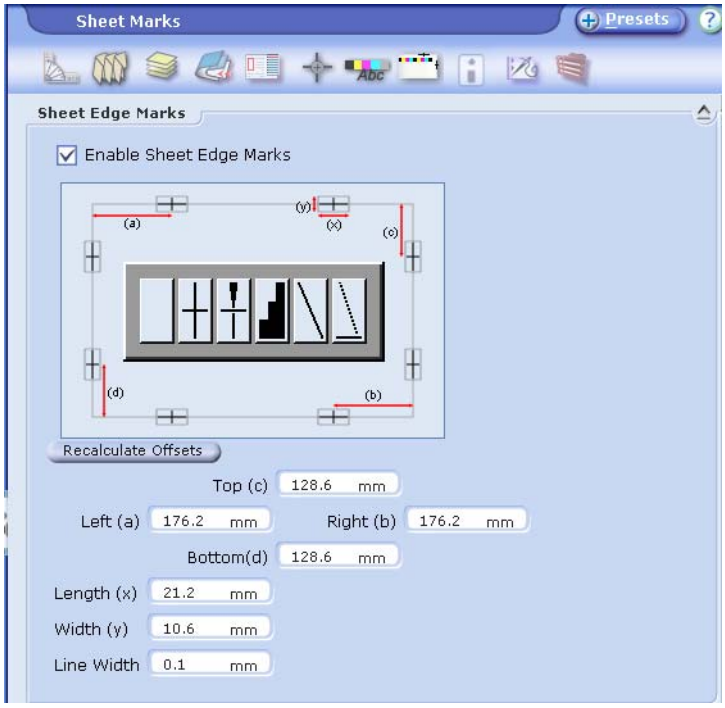
Name	Description
Text Marks	The Text Marks panel allows users to place text at any points on the currently selected sheet/side. To create a new text mark, click the New button then click on the sheet to position the text mark. • New - Use to create a new text mark. Click the button, select the sheet then specify the position in the viewer to place the mark. • Delete - Click to delete the text mark. • Text - Enter text in the text box. When the New button is clicked, the text box will display the default “New Text Mark”. Type in the text as required. A maximum of 250 characters can be entered. To manually wrap the text, press the Return key and type in a new line. If the “Wrap Width” is defined and the width of characters in one line is greater than the “Wrap Width”, new lines will be automatically extended when the text mark is being generated. • Font - Select the required font from the drop-down list, and enter the font size. • Orientation - Select the required orientation from the drop-down list. • Wrap width - Specifies the maximum width for the text mark. The text mark is wrapped to the next line if it exceeds the width specified - the value 0 means the text mark will not be wrapped automatically. • Output On - Allows users to select which product the text mark is output on. Enable the appropriate check box(es). • Colour - User Registration Black - Select to set the colour of the text marks to the registration colour. - Use CMYK - Select to set the colour of the text marks to the selected CMYK colour. When Use CMYK is selected, a square box of the colour currently set appears on the right, together with its CMYK values. Double click on the box to bring up the Edit Colour dialog. Either click the required coloured box or enter CMYK values to set the colour for the management information. A preview is shown on the top left. 

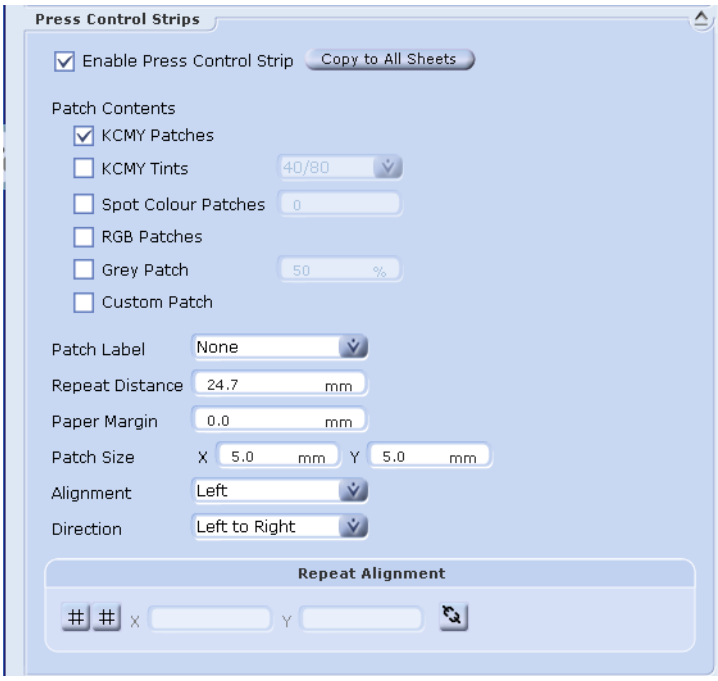
Name	Description
Text Marks	• Position - The left icon (with a blue dot) - Click to display the Set Origin dialog box. Specify the paper/plate origin. Tick one of the radio buttons to set the reference point on either the paper or the plate. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the origin to one of nine locations. The nine rectangles correspond to the nine points on the selected sheet/surface (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right).  - The right icon (with a light blue dot) - Click to display the Set Mark Reference dialog. Specify the mark reference point. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the reference point to one of nine locations. The nine rectangles correspond to the nine points on the selected sheet/surface (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right). The offset X and Y values show the distance from the selected reference point. If required the values can be changed to apply an offset.  • Link/Unlink Text Mark button - The link button allows text marks to be linked to reference points on the sheet, the plate or the bindery signature. When marks have been linked, they will maintain their relative positions to the point that they are linked to when paper and plate sizes are changed or bindery signatures are moved or resized. To create a link, set the required reference points on the text mark and the object that you want to link it to then click the link button.When linked, the icon's chain appears intact; when unlinked, the chain appears broken.

4.3.8 – Sheet Marks

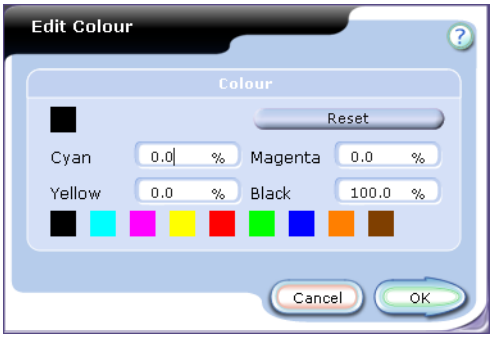
The Sheet Marks panel enables users to set up Sheet Edge Marks etc.

Diagram: Sheet Marks panel





About Sheet Marks panel

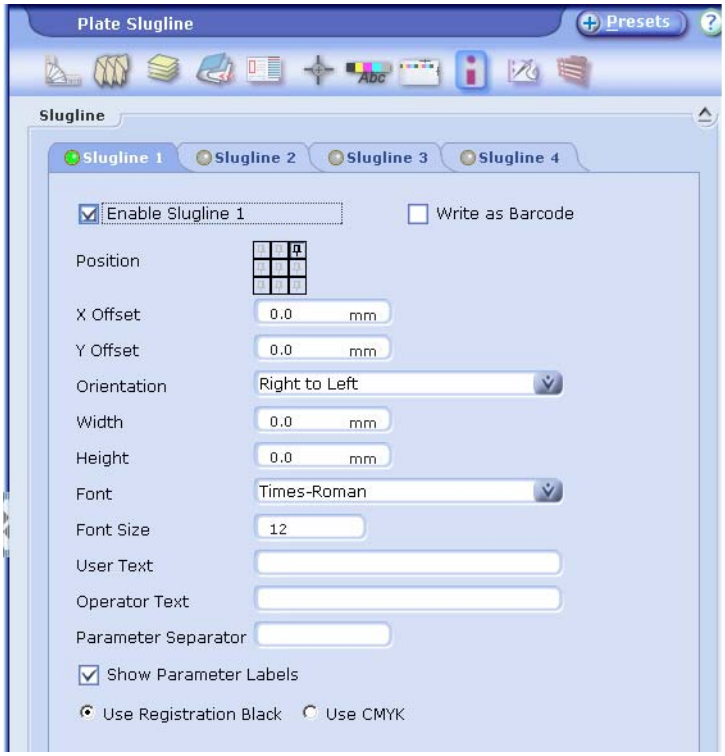
Name	Description
Sheet Edge Marks	• Enable Sheet Edge Marks - By ticking this check box, you can activate this section of the panel. Sheet Edge Marks are used across the edge of sheets. Double-click or drag an icon to set marks. • Recalculate Offsets - This function is useful if after applying Sheet Edge Marks, the user then alters a measurement, such as the size of the paper; clicking Recalculate Offsets will update the sheet edge marks to reflect the new dimensions.
Press Control Strips	The Press Control Strips panel allows the user to set up colour patches etc. • Enable Press Control Strip - Tick this check box to activate this section of the panel. If there is any sheet that does not require the press control strip, select the sheet and remove the tick. • Copy to All Sheet - Click to copy the current control strip onto all sheets. • Patch Contents - KCMY Patches - Draws KCMY patches in the mark. - KCMY Tints - Draws KCMY tint patches in the mark. Select either 40/80% or 25/50/75% from the adjacent drop-down list. - Spot Colour Patches - Draws a spot colour patches in the mark. Use the adjacent text box to enter the number of spot colour patches required in the mark. The patches will contain the spot colours that are in use in the workflow, which will be added in the Separation Order set in the Inks panel. If there are more spot colours in the workflow than in the mark, the remaining spot colours will not be drawn. If there are more spot colours specified in the mark than there are in the workflow, the remaining patches will be blank. - RGB Patches - Draws RGB patches in the mark. - Grey Patch - Draws a grey patch in the mark. Type in the percentage black value in the adjacent text box. - Custom Patch - Draws user-specified colour patches. When Custom Patch is ticked, another Custom Patch control will be added; a maximum of five custom patches can be added. When the control is unticked the additional patch control will be removed. To specify the CMYK values of a custom patch, double-click the coloured box adjacent to to the custom patch to display the Edit Colour dialog box. 

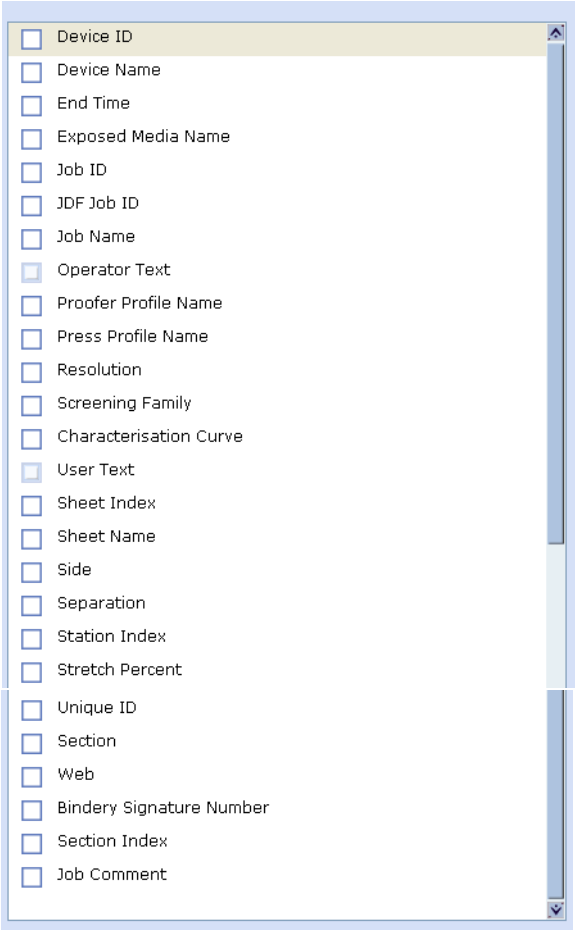
Name	Description
Press Control Strips	• Patch Label - Places colour labels at the specified position. Select the position of the patch label from the drop-down list. Patches will be labelled as below. If the patch label position is selected, options will be displayed for the user to specify the font name and size; select a font from the drop-down list and enter the size in the text box. - CMYK Patches and CMYK Tints - C, M, Y, K - RGB Patches - MY, CY, CM - Spot Colour Patches - S1, S2, etc. - Grey Patch - K20, K50, etc. - Custom Patch - C1, C2, etc. • Repeat Distance - Specifies the patch repeat distance. • Paper Margin - Specifies the margin from the paper edge. • Patch Size - Specifies the patch size. Enter the horizontal dimension in X and the vertical dimension in Y. • Alignment - Select the patch alignment from the drop-down list. • Direction - Select the direction of the patches from the drop-down list. The patches that have been selected will be drawn in sequence according to the Alignment and Direction settings, and then repeated. If there are more patches specified than will fit in to the repeat distance, these will be overwritten. The patches will be repeated across the whole width of the sheet, leaving a gap at each end as specified by the paper margin. • Repeat Alignment - The press control strip mark can be positioned in a similar way to the register mark and the text mark using reference points. The position can be locked relative to the edges of the paper so it is repositioned correctly if the paper size is changed. The first patch will be placed at the specified reference point.

4.3.9 – Plate Slugline

The Plate Slugline panel controls the content and position of plate output information. A slugline is a line of informational text or a barcode that describes the job settings etc. It contains a number of attributes, such as the file name, colour correction curves, ICC Profiles, the date printed and any other important settings. It is used for identifying/ archiving a job and making proofs.

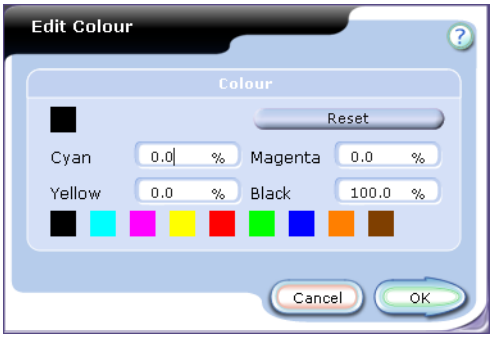
Diagram: Plate Slugline panel

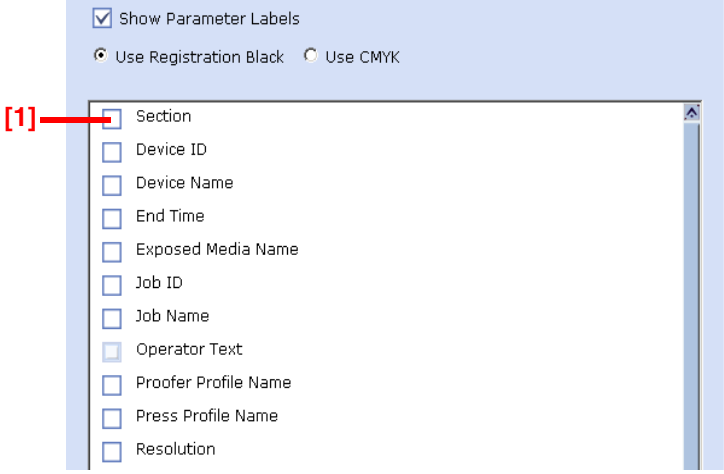
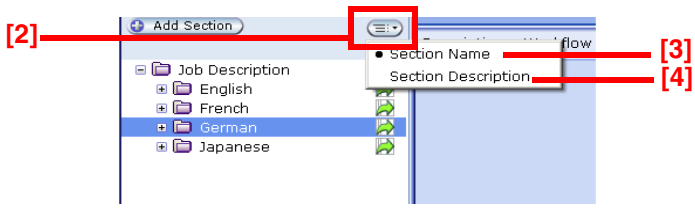
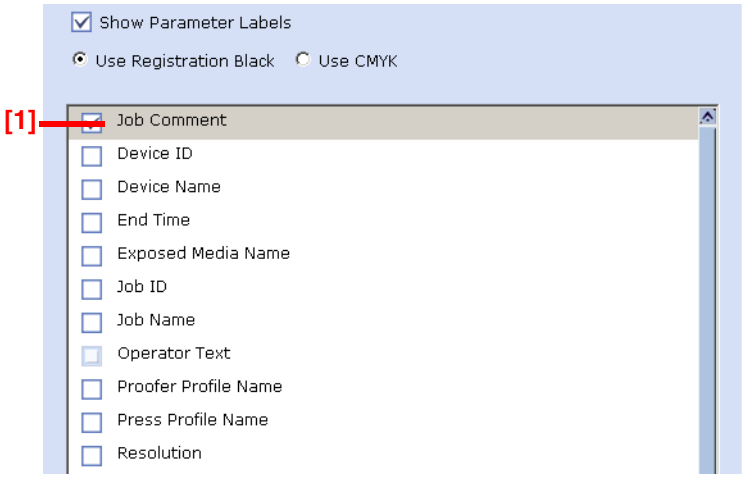


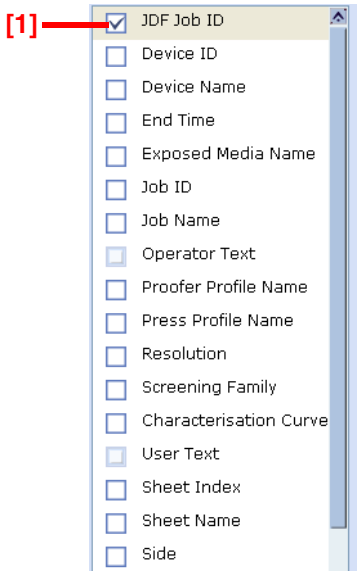


About Plate Slugline panel

Name	Description
Slugline	Up to four sluglines can be set up. • Enable Slugline - Tick the box to enable the slugline and its settings. • Write as Barcode - Enable the check box to encode the slugline content as a barcode and not text. The only supported format of barcode is the 2D QR code. • Position - Select the reference point by clicking one of the nine points of the icon on the right. • Offsets - The X and Y offset values are relative to the reference position. • Orientation - Select the direction of the text. • Width - Specifies the maximum width for the text slugline. The slugline is wrapped to the next line if it exceeds the width specified - the value 0 means the full width of the plate. If Write as Barcode is enabled, the width defines both the width and height of the barcode. If the width is set to 0, the barcode will automatically be resized so it is large enough to contain all the required information and still be of a suitable quality for scanning (each module in the image is 0.4 mm). A warning will be displayed if a non-zero value is entered and it will cause the barcode to be too small to be of a suitable quality for scanning. • Height (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Specifies the max height for the slugline. If the slugline text is greater than the specified height, the text will be cropped - the value 0 means no limit on the height. • Font (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - The slugline font can be chosen from those in the drop-down list. Fonts cannot be added to this menu. • Font Size (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Sets the font size. • User Text - Free text. • Operator Text - Free text. • Parameter Separator - Enter the character(s) to be used as the separator. The default character is a space.

Name	Description
Slugline	• Show Parameter Labels - To include the parameter labels in the slugline, tick this check box. • All Separations (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on all separations. • Single Separation (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on one separation only. Select the separation that is to include the barcode from the drop-down list. • Use Registration Black (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the slugline to the registration colour. • Use CMYK (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the slugline to the selected CMYK colour. • Edit Colour (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - When Use CMYK is selected, a square box of the colour currently set appears on the right, together with its CMYK values. Double click on the box to bring up the Edit Colour dialog. A preview is displayed on the top left. Either click the required coloured box or enter CMYK values to set the colour for the slugline.  • Parameter list (Device ID, Device Name, End Time, Exposed Media Name, Job ID, etc.) - Tick appropriate boxes in the list to place the corresponding items on the slugline. The Operator Text field is enabled if it contains any text, otherwise it is disabled (greyed out). Similarly for the User Text field. These components are printed in the order in which they are listed. To change the order, select a component and drag it to its new position then click the Update button. • Section - The section name or the section description information is displayed on the slugline to enable different versions on the plate to be identified.

Name	Description
Slugline	**Screen Explanation**  [1]: Section Name - Tick the **Section Name** check box to display the section information text on the plate. The information displayed depends on the setting of the **Show Section Label** icon indicated by [2] in the diagram below.  [3]: Section Name: Displays the section name on the plate. [4]: Section Description: Displays the section description on the plate. • Job Comment - A job comment can be added to **Plate Slugline**. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this check box to write a job comment to the plate slugline. The check box is at the bottom of the list by default but moves to the top of the list when it is ticked.

Name	Description
Slugline	• JDF Job ID New **Function Summary** A JDF Job ID can now be added to the **Plate Slugline**. For details about the JDF Job ID, see 2.1 - Add Job Dialog. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this checkbox to export JDF Job IDs to the plate slugline.

4.3.10 – Management Information

The Management Information panel contains management information which is picked up from the system database. The mark can be positioned on the sheet either as text or as a barcode.

Diagram: Management Information panel

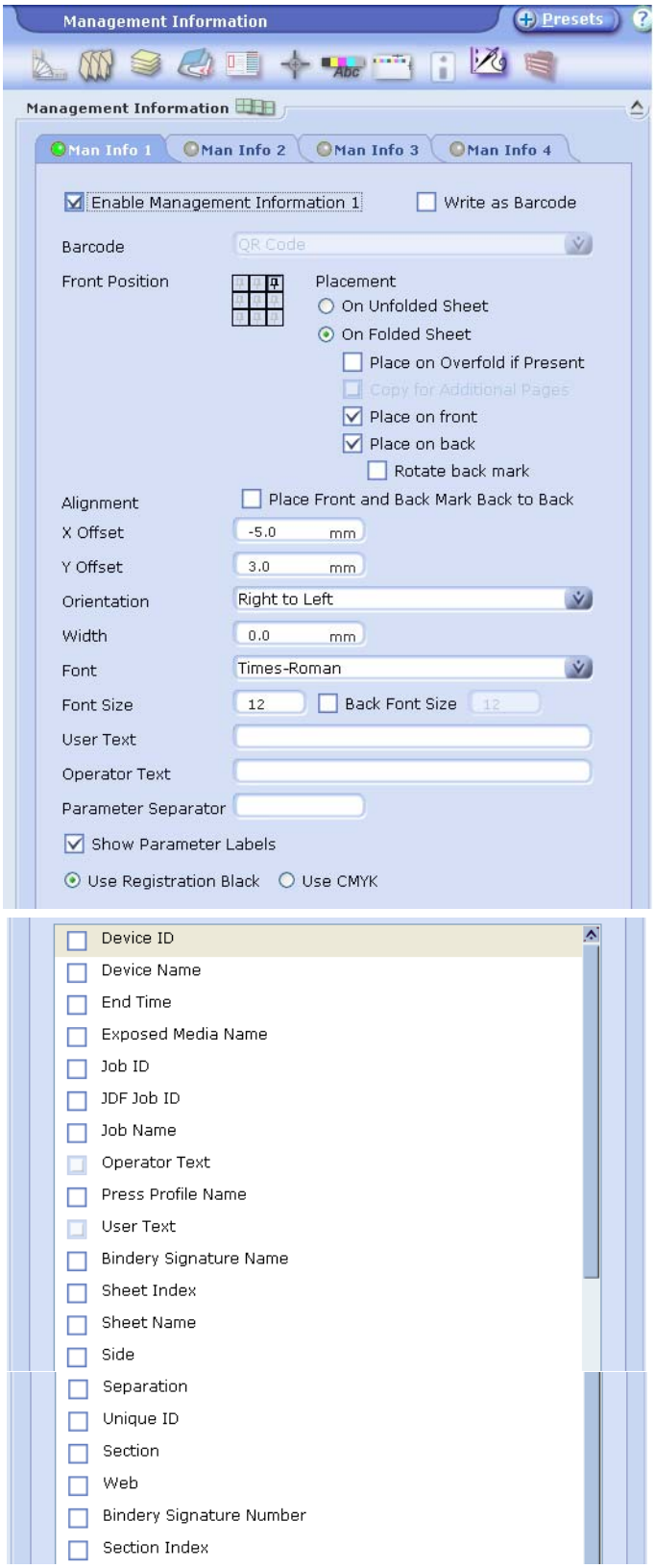
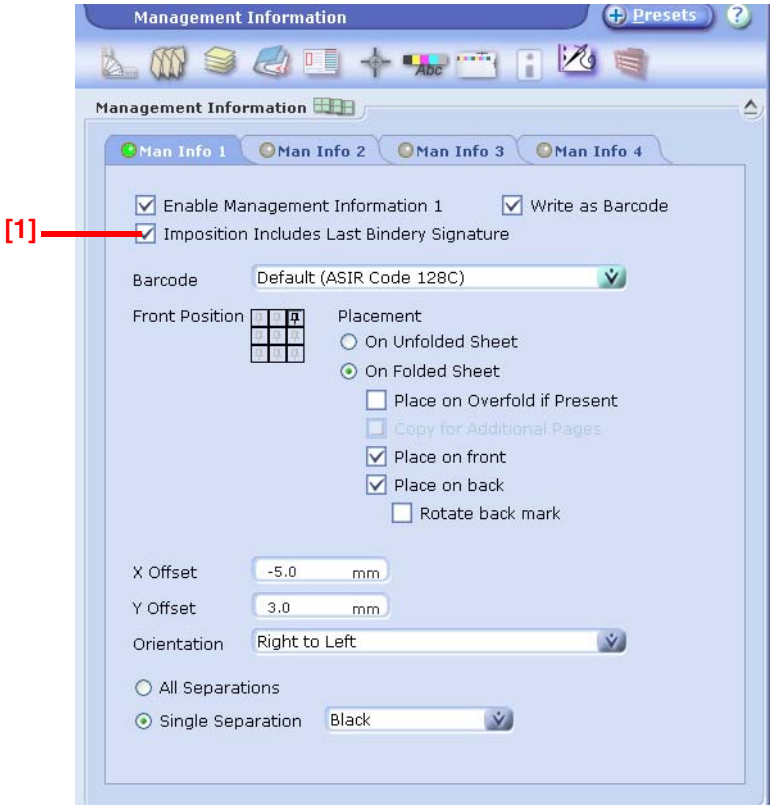


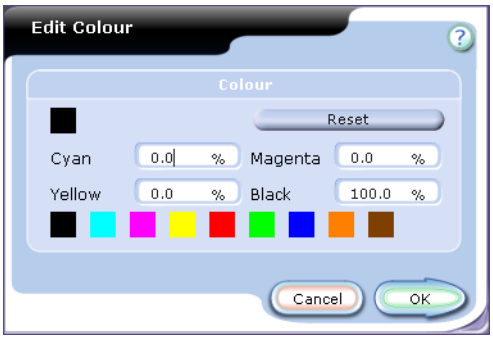
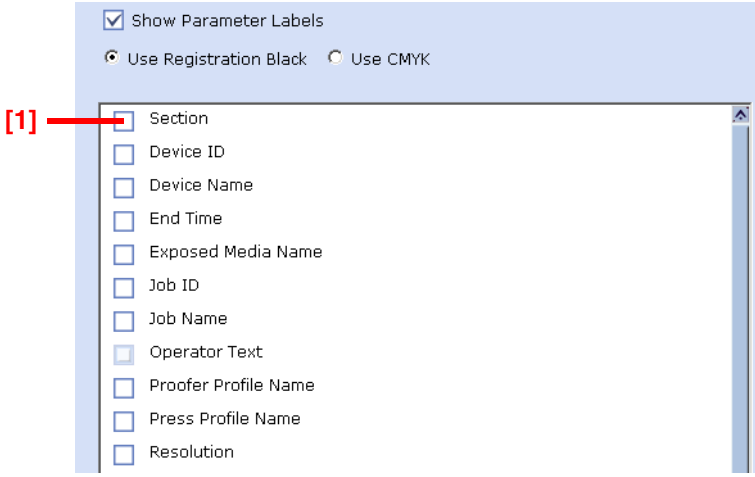
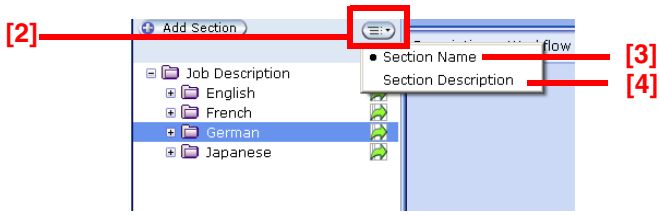
Diagram: Management Information panel (when Write as Barcode is selected)

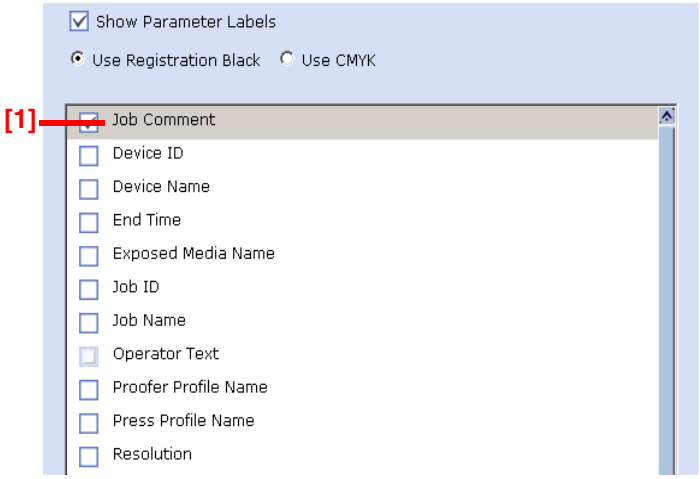
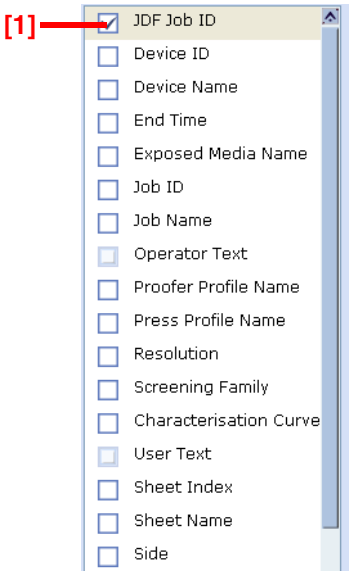


About Management Information panel

Name	Description
Management Information	• Enable Management Information - Tick the box to enable the management information and its settings. • Write as Barcode - Enable the check box to encode the management information content as a barcode and not text. The only supported format of barcode is the 2D QR code. • [1]: Imposition Includes Last Bindery Signature New (Displayed when a barcode in the ASIR Code 128C or ASIR Interleaved 2/5 format is selected) - To write a barcode in the correct ASIR format, you must check that the imposition includes the last bindery signature of the corresponding job. This check box is for performing this check. The check box is selected by default. **Restrictions** • This function is only displayed when the **Write as Barcode** box is ticked and a barcode in the **ASIR Code 128C** or **ASIR Interleaved 2/5** format is selected. • Front Position - Select the location to place the management information by clicking one of the nine points of the icon on the right. - On Unfolded Sheet - Select to position the management information mark on the front and back of the sheet. - On Folded Sheet - Select to position the management information mark on the front and back of the folded sheet. - Place on Overfold if Present - Only enabled if On Folded Sheet is selected. Select to place the management information mark relative to the folded sheet, except for on the edges where an overfold is present. On these edges the management information will be placed on the inside of the overfold.

Name	Description
Management Information	• Alignment - Place Front and Back Mark Back to Back - When ticked, the management information marks are placed at the same edge on the front and back surfaces. • Offsets - The X and Y offset values are relative to the reference point specified by the Position control above. • Orientation - Select the direction of the text. • Width - Specifies the maximum width for the text management information. The management information is wrapped to the next line if it exceeds the width specified - the value 0 means the full width of the plate. If Write as Barcode is enabled, the width defines both the width and height of the barcode. If the width is set to 0, the barcode will automatically be resized so it is large enough to contain all the required information and still be of a suitable quality for scanning (each module in the image is 0.4 mm). A warning will be displayed if a non-zero value is entered and it will cause the barcode to be too small to be of a suitable quality for scanning. • Font (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - The font can be chosen from those in the drop-down list. Fonts cannot be added to this list. • Font Size (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Sets the font size. - Back Font Size - To enter a different font size for the back management information, enable the check box and enter the font size. If the check box is cleared, the font will be the same size on the front and the back. • User Text - Free text. • Operator Text - Free text. • Parameter Separator - Enter the character(s) to be used as the separator. The default character is a space. • Show Parameter Labels (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - To include the parameter labels in the management information, tick this check box. • All Separations (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on all separations. • Single Separation (when Write as Barcode is enabled) - Select to include the barcode on one separation only. Select the separation that is to include the barcode from the drop-down list. • Use Registration Black (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the management information to the registration colour. • Use CMYK (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - Select to set the colour of the management information to the selected CMYK colour.

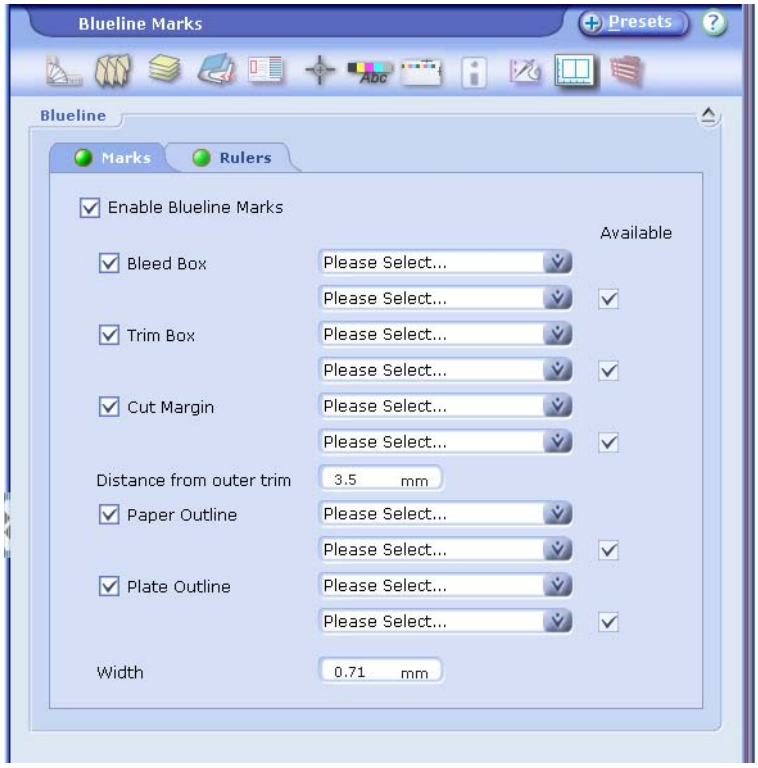
Name	Description
Management Information	• Edit Colour (when Write as Barcode is disabled) - When Use CMYK is selected, a square box of the colour currently set appears on the right, together with its CMYK values. Double click on the box to bring up the Edit Colour dialog. Either click the required coloured box or enter CMYK values to set the colour for the management information. A preview is shown on the top left.  • Parameter list (Device ID, Device Name, End Time, Exposed Media Name, Job ID, etc.) - Tick appropriate boxes in the list to place the corresponding items on the management information. The Operator Text field is enabled if it contains any text, otherwise it is disabled (greyed out). Similarly for the User Text field. These components are printed in the order in which they are listed. To change the order, select a component and drag it to its new position then click the Update button. • Section - The section name or the section description information is displayed on the slugline to enable different versions on the plate to be identified. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick the Section check box to display the section information text on the plate. The information displayed depends on the setting of the **Show Section Label** icon indicated by [2] in the diagram below.  [3]: Displays the section name on the plate/proof. [4]: Displays the section description information on the plate/proof.

Name	Description
Management Information	• Job Comment - A job comment can be added to **Management Information**. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this check box to write a job comment to the management information. The check box is at the bottom of the list by default but moves to the top of the list when it is ticked. • JDF Job ID New **Function Summary** A JDF Job ID can now be added to the **Management Information**. For details about the JDF Job ID, see 2.1 - Add Job Dialog. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: Tick this checkbox to export JDF Job IDs to the management information.

4.3.11 – Blueline Marks

The Blueline Marks panel is used to define outlines and rulers.

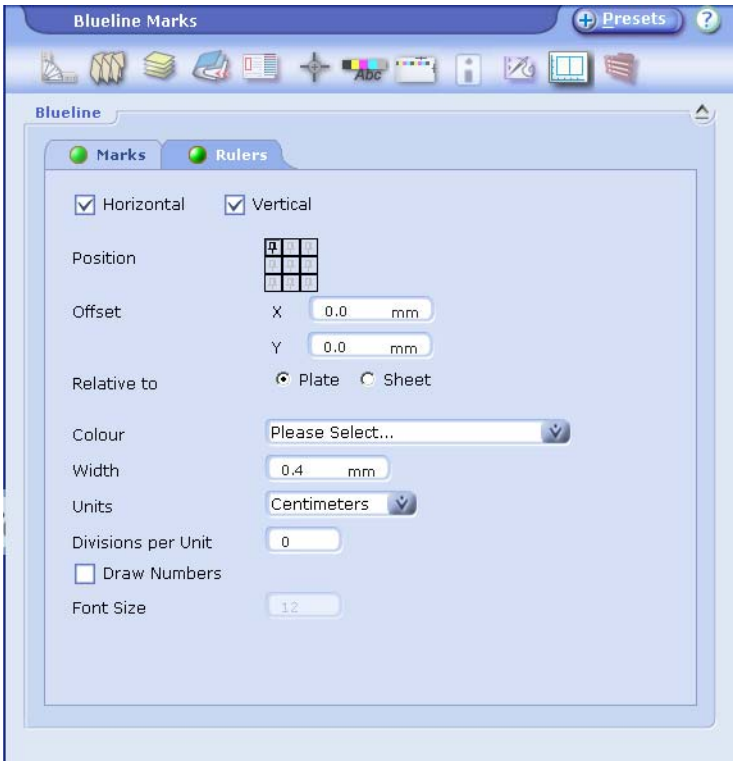
Diagram: Marks tab



About Marks tab

Name	Description
Enable Blueline Marks	Tick this to set up the following settings.
Bleed Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Bleed Box outline from the drop-down list.
Trim Box	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Trim Box outline from the drop-down list.
Cut Margin	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Cut Margin outline from the drop-down list.
Distance from outer trim	Enter a value to define the distance from the outer trim.
Paper Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Paper outline from the drop-down list.
Plate Outline	Tick this to select the type and colour of the Plate outline from the drop-down list.
Available	These check boxes indicate whether it is possible to draw the corresponding mark. Select Solid, Dashed or White Dash from the drop-down list for the corresponding mark.
Width	Enter the line width.

Diagram: Rulers tab



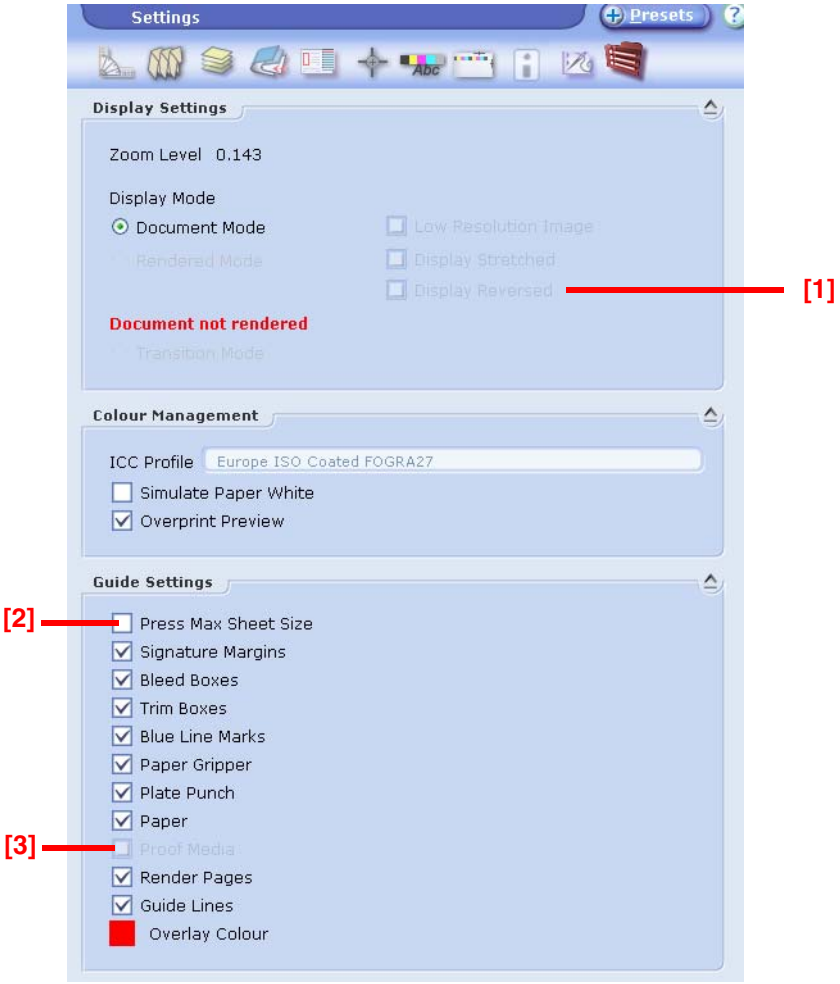
About Rulers tab

Name	Description
Horizontal	Tick to create a horizontal ruler.
Vertical	Tick to create a vertical ruler.
Position	Select the origin of the horizontal and vertical rulers from the nine points. The units and divisions to be drawn on the rulers will have this point as the origin.
Offset	Enter an offset from the position defined by the Position control above.
Relative to	Enable to make the Position and Offset settings relative to either the plate or the sheet.
Colour	Select the colour for the rulers from the drop-down list.
Width	Enter the required length of the main graduations in points to two decimal places to a maximum of 99.99 points.
Units	Select either Centimetres or Inches from the drop-down list. The main graduations will be drawn across the main line at every unit away from the origin in both directions.
Divisions per Unit	Enter the value each unit to display.
Draw Numbers	Tick to draw numbers next to each main division line (0 will not be included). The scale will show positive numbers in both directions from the origin and the digits will be placed on the side of the main ruler line nearest to the middle of the paper.
Font Size	Enter the required font size.

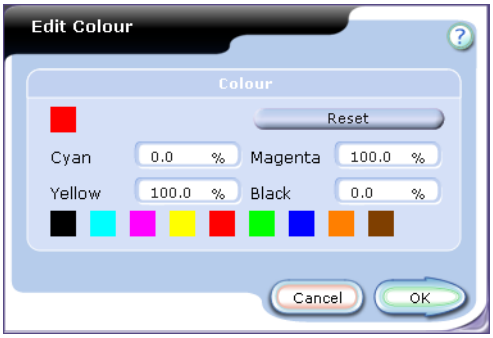
4.3.12 – Settings

The Settings panel specifies units, display settings, colour management, guide settings, etc.

Diagram: Settings panel



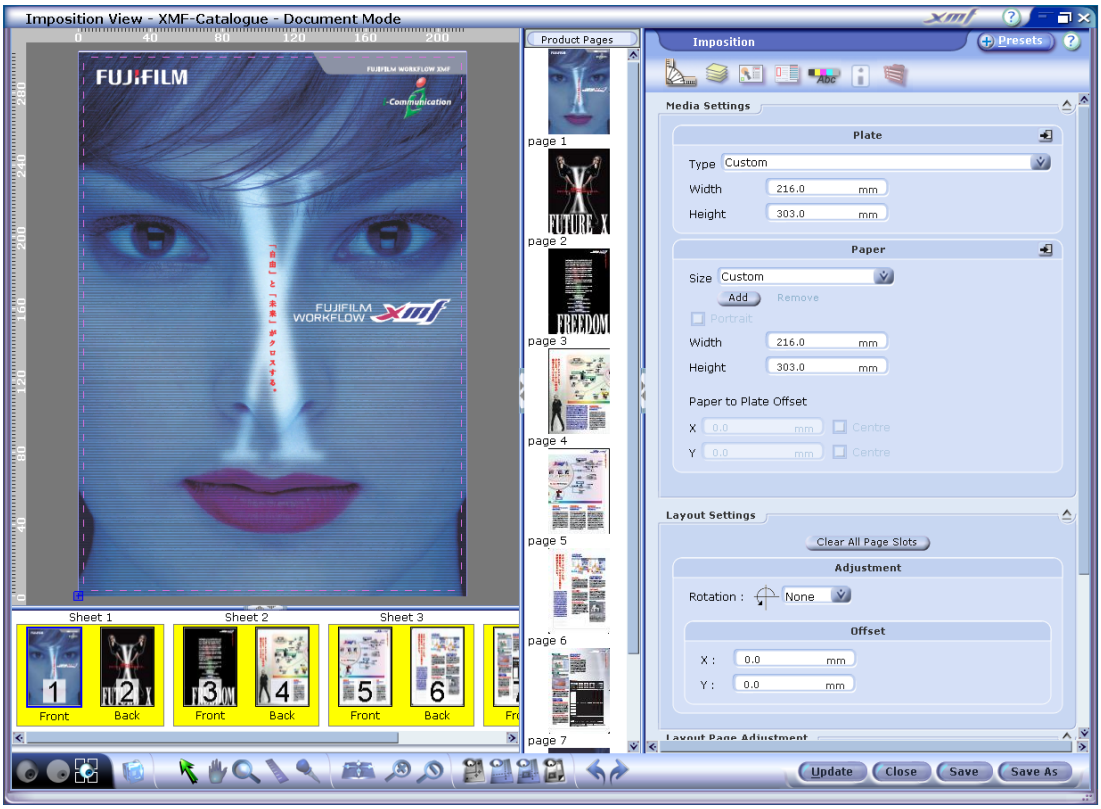
About Settings panel

Name	Description
Display Settings	Displays the current magnification and mode of the image in the main window. • Zoom Level - Shows the current zoom level. • Display Mode - Signifies whether the document has been rendered, stretched or in Transition Mode. Select from Document Mode, Rendered Mode and Transition Mode. • Low Resolution Image - Tick to display a low resolution version of the image. Clear the check box to display the image with the original resolution. • Display Stretched - Tick to view the image with the stretch settings applied. Clear the check box to view the image with no stretch settings applied. • [1]: Display Reversed - Tick this check box to display images reversed in Rendered Mode. **Screen Explanation** Tick this check box to reverse images in the Imposition Viewer.
Colour Management	• ICC Profile - Displays the press ICC profile as set up in the Press Workflow Item. • Simulate Paper White - Tick to simulate the paper colour. • Overprint Preview - Tick this box to check the overprint effect.
Guide Settings	This panel allows the user to specify which guides are visible in the viewer panel. • [2]: Press Max Sheet Size New - Displays the maximum sheet size using blue guidelines. For details about the maximum sheet size, see 7.8.1 - Press Device Profile Dialog. **Restrictions** • These guidelines are not displayed when editing an imposition layout or stripping template, or in jobs or job templates in which the press is not determined. • [3]: Proof Media New - Displays the size of the proofing media with purple guidelines. To display these guidelines, **Clip to Proof Media** in the **Device Options** of the **Device Parameters** panel must be selected. For details, see 3.8.2 - Device Parameters and 3.9.2 - Device Parameters. • Overlay Colour - Sets the colour of the overlay labels. The colour can be changed by double clicking on the coloured rectangle. This brings up the Edit Colour dialog box. Select the colour of the overlay information by clicking the required coloured rectangle. 
Miscellaneous	• Length - Choose the units of measure used in the Imposition Viewer. • Dynamic Marks Fallback Display Font - Select a substitute display font from the drop-down list.

4.4 – Imposition Viewer (Layout)

This section describes sheet settings for a layout template.

Diagram: Imposition Viewer (Layout)



About Imposition Viewer toolbar

The buttons in this toolbar can change how the pages are displayed within the viewer.
Toolbar is the same for Stripping and Layout impositions.
For details, see “About Imposition Viewer toolbar” in 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping).

Diagram: Imposition Viewer toolbar

4.4.0.1 - Guide Line Function

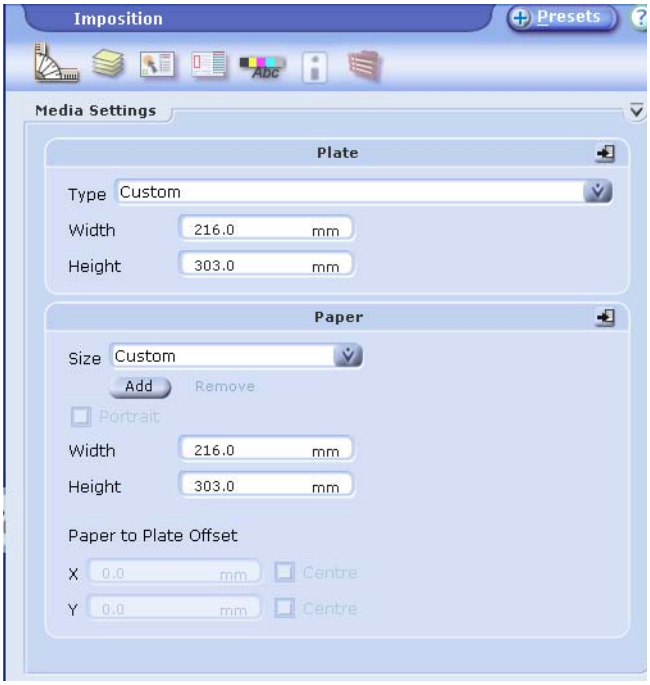
Function Summary

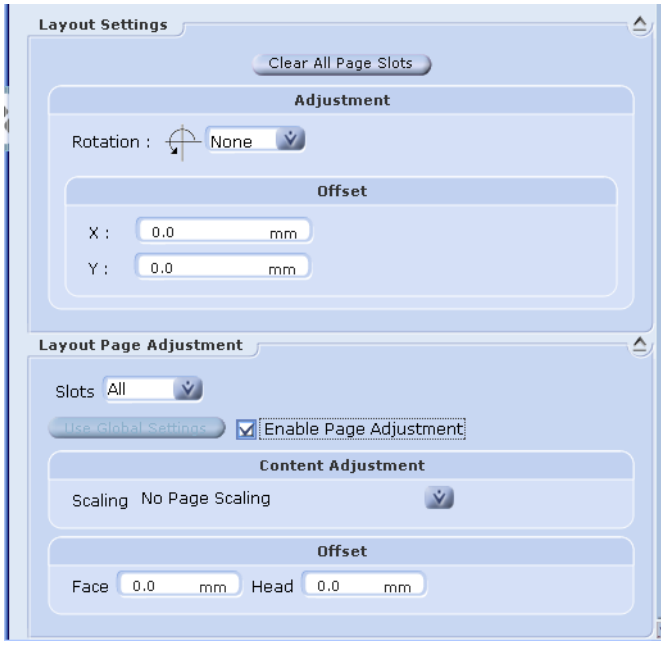
This function draws guide lines in the Imposition Viewer.
For details, see 4.3.0.1 - Guide Line Function.

4.4.1 – Imposition

The imposition panel sets the binding style, the plate and paper size and allows their relative positions to be controlled.

Diagram: Imposition panel





About Imposition panel

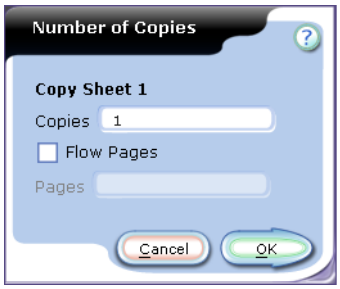
Name	Description
Media Settings	Sets the plate and paper sizes and the paper position relative to the plate. • Plate - Plate size is set by selecting a size from the drop-down list, or if the desired size is not available, by selecting Custom and entering the Width and Height values. • Paper - Size - Paper size is set by selecting from the available paper sizes in the drop down list, or by selecting Custom and entering the Width and Height values. - Add - Click the Add button to display the Save Custom Size dialog. - Remove - Click the Remove button to remove the selected size from the list. However, only the sizes added can be removed; preset sizes cannot be removed. - Portrait - Tick the box to display in Portrait orientation, otherwise the orientation is Landscape by default. - Paper to Plate Offset - The paper is positioned on the plate according to the X and Y offset values. - Centre - Tick the Centre box(es) to centre the paper on the plate.
Layout Settings	This section allows for the clearing of all page slots and the rotation and layout of the offset.
Layout Page Adjustment	• Slots - All, Odd, Even • Use Global Settings - Activated only if Slots is set to Odd or Even. • Enable Page Adjustment - Activates the rest of the entry boxes. • Content Adjustment - Scaling - No Page Scaling, Adjust Slot to fit Pages, Scale Pages to fit Trim Width, Scale Pages to fit Trim Height, Scale Pages to fit Both, Advanced Scaling. • Offset - Set the offset for both Face and Head.

4.4.2 – Surfaces

This section describes sheet settings for a layout template. The inclusion of Surfaces is to enhance the functionality of layout templates and to increase the degree of allowable modifications. It allows for a layout template to have sheets added, with the layout controlled by the addition of specific styles.

Diagram: Surfaces panel (Layout template)

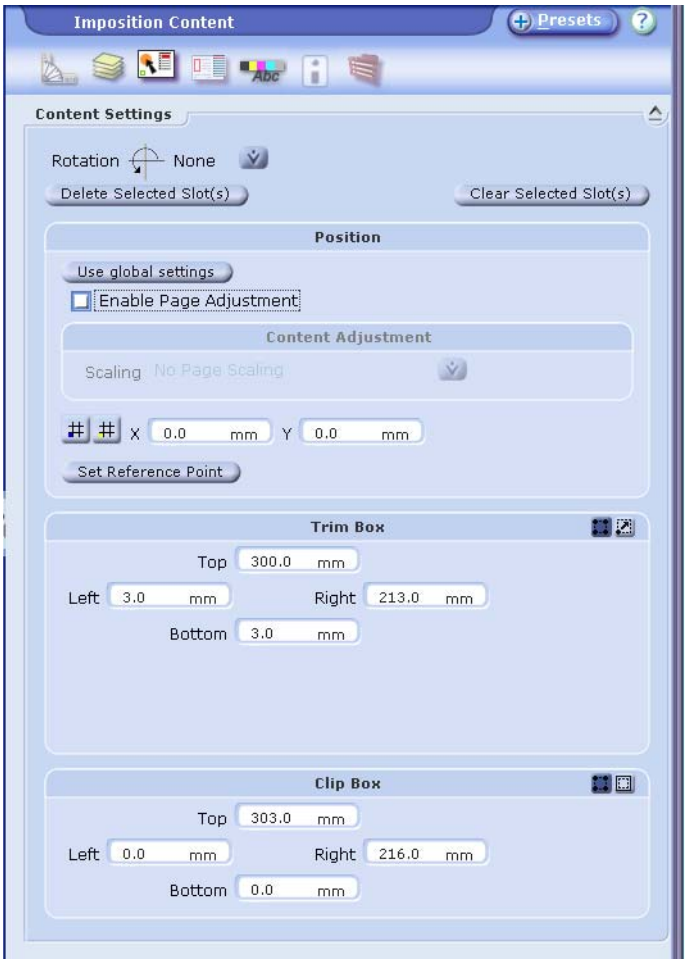
About Surfaces panel (Layout template)

Name	Description
Surface	• New - Click to add a new sheet. Once the new sheet is displayed, double click it to edit. Diagram: Imposition Content panel • Copy - Click Copy to add one or more new sheets after the selected sheet, using the same work style and signature settings. Enter the number of additional sheets in the Copies text box. If you wish to enter the number of pages to be flowed instead of the number of sheets, tick Flow Pages and enter the number of pages to be flowed in the Pages text box, then the number of sheets to be added will be calculated automatically. If pages are assigned to the workflow product, the number of pages not assigned to the imposition is shown. Click OK to create additional sheets.  • Delete - Click to delete an existing surface. • Sheet Name - Shows the name of the current sheet. • Sheet Number - Shows the number of the current sheet. • Work Style - Applies a work style. - None - Perfecting - Paper is flipped vertically relative to the plate. - Sheet Work - Paper is flipped horizontally relative to the plate. - Work and Tumble/Work and Turn - When these styles are selected, a dotted line appears across or down the surface, and an identical page will be added to the reverse side symmetrical to the dotted line. The difference is that the Work and Tumble means that the sheet is folded horizontally, and the Work and Turn has the sheet folded vertically.

4.4.3 – Imposition Content

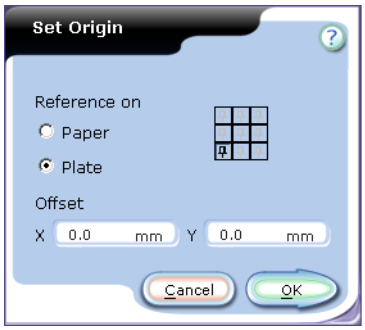
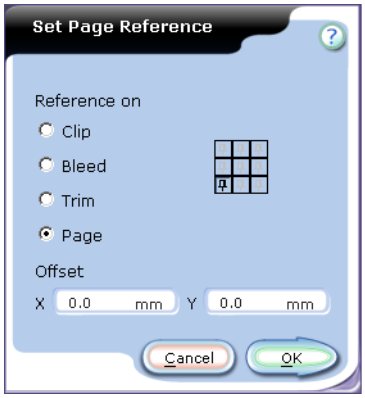
This controls the page position, any content adjustment, and the settings of the Trim Box and Clip Box. To activate this panel, click on a page in the Imposition Viewer.

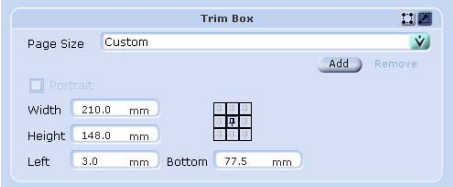
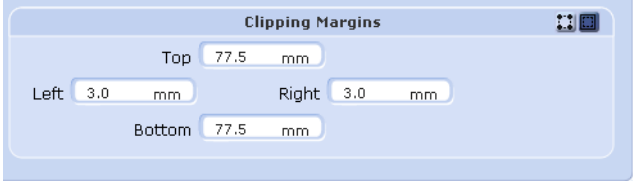
Diagram: Imposition Content panel



About Imposition Content panel

Name	Description
Content Settings	Once the default values are defined, the settings will be displayed when the user creates a new imposition, thus many values do not need to be entered repeatedly. • Rotation - Rotation - None, 90, 180 or 270. - Delete Selected Slot(s) - This removes any pages already selected. - Clear Selected Slot(s) - Removes the contents of any pages selected. • Position - If this section is greyed out, click the page to activate it. - Enable Page Adjustment - Some options are greyed out until this box is ticked.

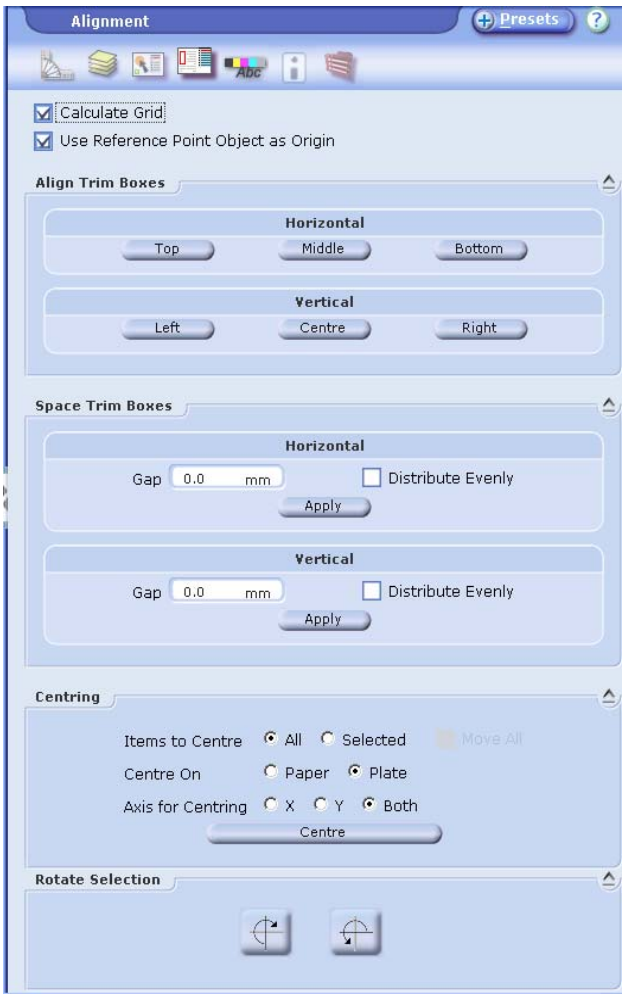
Name	Description
Content Settings	• Content Adjustment - This section allows for the pages to be scaled to fit the imposition by several methods. - Scaling • No Page Scaling - The page trim box centre is aligned to the page slot centre. • Adjust Slot to fit Pages - Adjusts the page slot size using the size of the selected page. • Scale Pages to fit Trim Width - Page width is scaled automatically to fit the imposition. • Scale Pages to fit Trim Height - Page height is scaled automatically to fit the imposition. • Scale Pages to fit Both - The whole page is scaled automatically to fit the imposition. • Advanced Scaling - Content can be adjusted with specific choices for Horizontal and Vertical scaling. - The left icon (with a blue dot) - Tick one of the radio buttons to set the reference point on either the paper or the plate. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the origin to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right).  - The right icon (with a yellow dot) - Tick one of the radio buttons to set the reference to the clip box, the trim box or the page box. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the reference point to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right). The offset X and Y values show the distance from the selected reference point. If required the values can be changed to apply an offset. 

Name	Description
Content Settings	• Trim Box - This box allows for the sizing/resizing of the Trim box. Enter measurements directly into the entry boxes or use the anchor at the top right to position them relative to the page.  • Clip Box - This box allows the sizing/resizing of the Clip box. Enter measurements directly into the entry boxes or use the anchor at the top right to position them relative to the page. If the anchor box is selected, then the section turns into Clipping Margins. 

4.4.4 – Alignment

The Alignment panel allows adjustment of the alignment and spacing of your document.

Diagram: Alignment panel



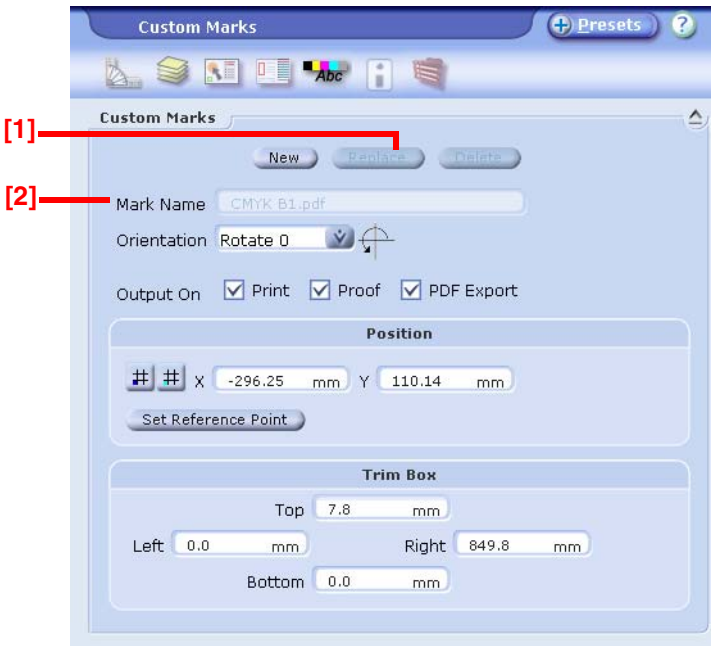
About Alignment panel

Name	Description
Calculate Grid	Tick this box to calculate grid.
Use Reference Point Object As Origin	If the reference point was set in the Imposition Content panel etc., then this function allows the use of the reference point as an origin for alignment.
Align Trim Boxes	This function aligns multiple pages, so ensure you have more than two pages selected before using this. Pages can be aligned along the horizontal or vertical axis. • Horizontal - Pages can be aligned using the top, middle or bottom of the pages. • Vertical - Pages can be aligned using the left, centre or right side of the pages.
Space Trim Boxes	This enables the pages to be spaced using the trim boxes as a guide. The spacing setup can be based on the Horizontal or Vertical. Selecting Distribute Evenly ensures the spacing between pages to be even.
Centring	This enables centring of selected items on either the paper or the plate in either the X axis, the Y axis or both.
Rotate Selection	This function will enable the user to rotate multiple pages/custom marks that have been selected. The rotation will be performed about the centre point of the selected objects. • Rotate Right - Rotate the selected objects by 90 degrees in a clockwise direction. • Rotate Left - Rotates the selected objects by 90 degrees in a anticlockwise direction.

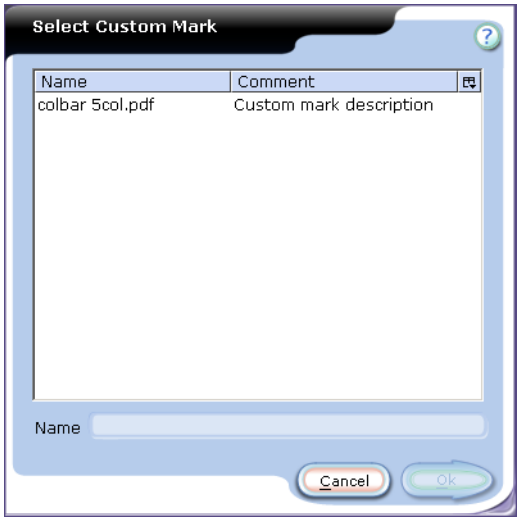
4.4.5 – Custom Marks

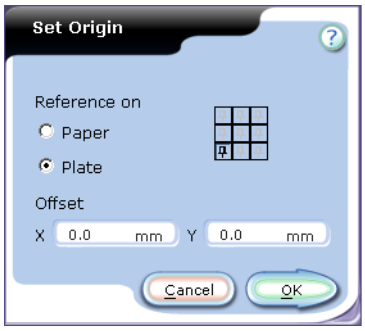
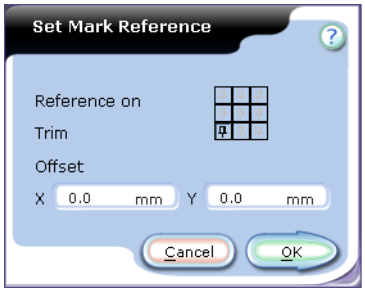
The Custom Marks panel allows users to customise register/text marks.

Diagram: Custom Marks panel



About Custom Marks

Name	Description
Custom Marks	This allows specifying the output surface/alignment/rotation etc. To activate this section, custom marks need to be imported into the system using the Custom Mark Management panel in the Administration window. • New - Click the New button and choose a custom mark from the list as shown below. Click the OK button and move the pointer onto the imposition - a grey rectangle around the pointer represents the new mark to be placed. Click to display the mark.  • [1]: Replace - This function allows a custom mark that is already placed on a sheet to be replaced with any custom mark. **Operating procedure** This example explains the procedure for replacing a custom mark that has been placed with a different custom mark. ① Open the **Administration** window, click **Custom Marks** then click the **Import** button. Select the custom mark PDF from the file dialog. ② The **New Custom Mark** dialog appears. Edit **Custom mark name** and **Custom mark description** if necessary then click **OK**. ③ Import a different custom mark with the procedure of ① and ②. ④ Open the **Custom Marks** panel in the Imposition Viewer, then click the **New** button. ⑤ Select the custom mark registered in ②, then click **OK**. ⑥ Move the cursor in the Imposition Viewer to display the custom mark below the cursor. Click on the sheet to place the custom mark. ⑦ Click the **Replace** button while the placed custom mark is selected. ⑧ When the **Select Custom Mark** dialog opens, select the custom mark imported in ③. ⑨ Click **OK** to replace the custom mark with the selected custom mark. This completes the procedure of this example. • Delete - Use to delete the custom mark.

Name	Description
Custom Marks	• [2]: Mark Name - The name of a custom mark is displayed in the **Custom Marks** panel. The name is only displayed and cannot be edited. • Orientation - Click on the drop down menu and select a rotation value. Remember to click the Update button. • Output On - Allows users to select which product the custom marks are output on. Enable the appropriate check box(es). • Position - The left icon (with a blue dot) - Click to display the Set Origin dialog box. Specify the paper/plate origin. Tick one of the radio buttons to set the reference point on either the paper or the plate. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the origin to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right).  - The right icon (with a light blue dot) - Click to display the Set Mark Reference dialog. Specify the mark reference point. The nine rectangles enable the user to position the reference point to one of nine locations on the selected object (top left, top middle, top right, centre left, centre middle, centre right, bottom left, bottom middle, bottom right). The offset X and Y values show the distance from the selected reference point. If required, the values can be changed to apply an offset.  • Trim Box - Edit the mark trim box values. The dimensions are measured relative to the bottom left corner of the mark.

4.4.6 – Plate Slugline

See 4.3.9 - Plate Slugline.

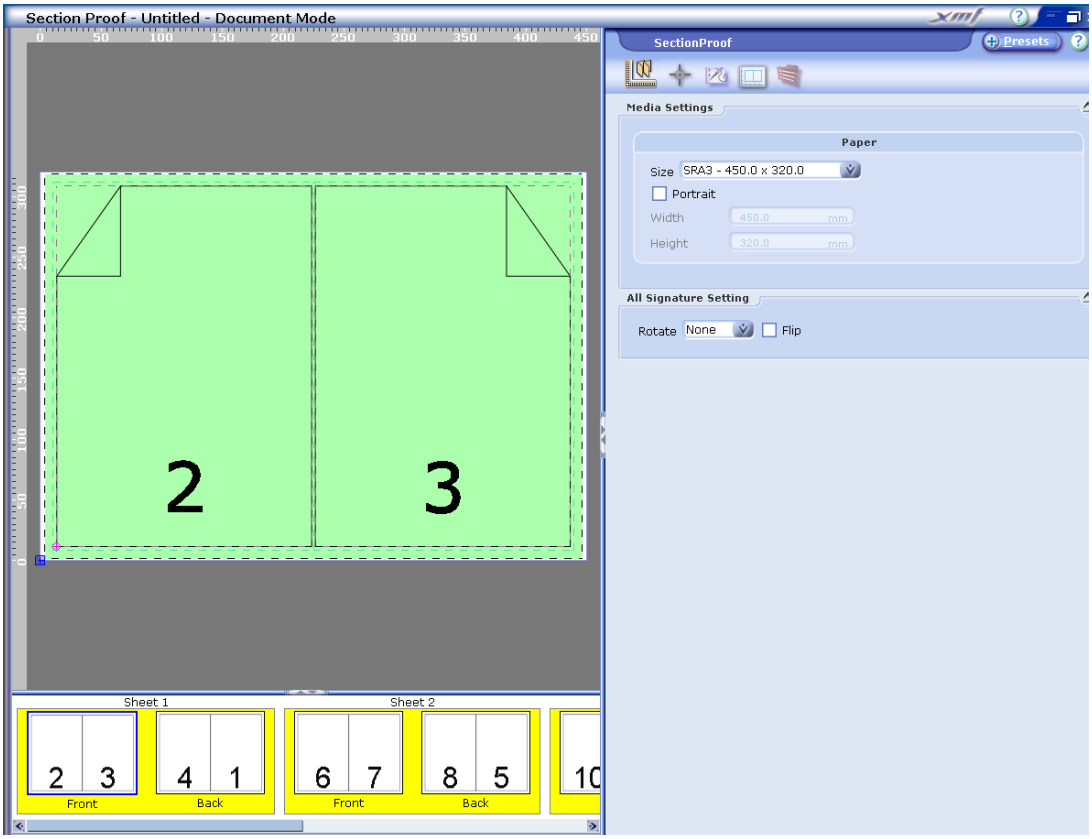
4.4.7 – Settings

See 4.3.12 - Settings.

4.5 – Section Proof Viewer

The Section Proof viewer is used to confirm the result of section proof splitting when the imposition is split into section proofs using Section Proof in the Imposition setting of the RIP Proof or PDF Export. The layout of the viewer is similar to the Imposition Viewer, but the setting panel is simplified.

Diagram: Section Proof viewer



About Section Proof viewer toolbar

The buttons in this toolbar can change how the pages are displayed within the Section Proof viewer.
These are used in the same way as the Imposition Viewer toolbar buttons.
For details, see “About Imposition Viewer toolbar” in 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping).

Diagram: Section Proof viewer toolbar

4.5.1 – Section Proof

The Section Proof panel sets paper size etc.

Diagram: Section Proof panel

About Section Proof panel

Name	Description
Media Settings	Paper • Size - Select the paper size. • Portrait - Tick the box to display in Portrait orientation. • Width/Height - Enter the values when selecting Custom from the Size list.
All Signature Setting	• Rotate - All signatures are rotated to the angle that is selected from the drop-down list. • Flip - When this box is ticked, the front and the back are flipped.

About Dynamic Marks panel - This panel is the same as for the Imposition Viewer. For details, see 4.3.6 - Dynamic Marks.

Management Information panel - This panel is the same as for the Imposition Viewer. For details, see 4.3.10 - Management Information.

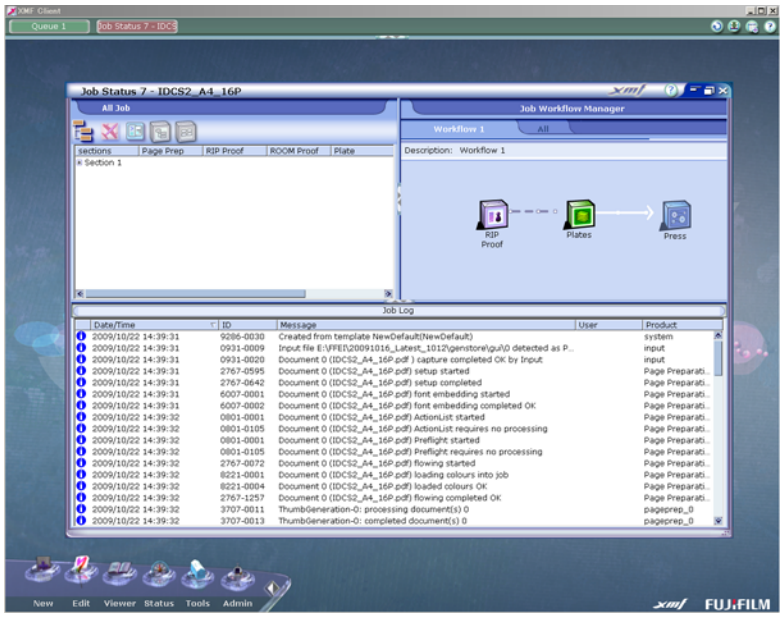
Blueline Marks panel - This panel is the same as for the Imposition Viewer. For details, see 4.3.11 - Blueline Marks.

Settings panel - This panel is the same as for the Imposition Viewer. For details, see 4.3.12 - Settings.

5 – Status

The Status window displays information on the contents of the job, the workflow description and the log viewer which describes the status of the job. To view the Status window, right-click the Status button on the Main Client Window task-bar, and select either Open System and Device status or Open Status for job selected in the Queue.

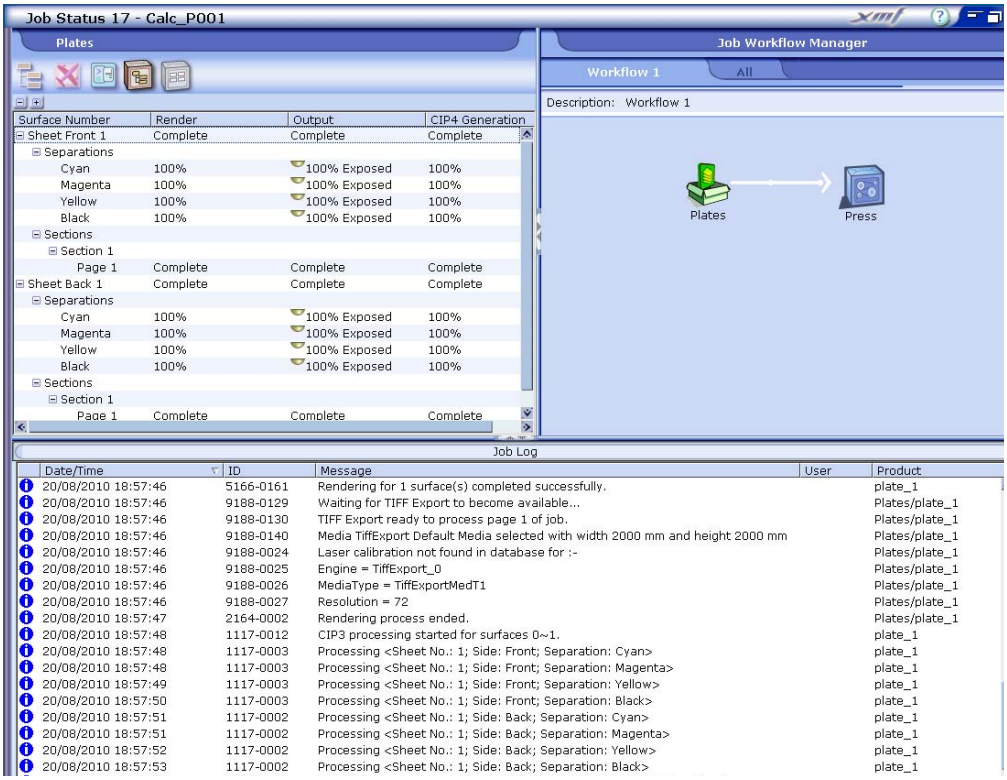
Diagram: Status window



5.1 – Job Status

The Job Status window displays information on the status of a job, and of the workflows within a job. To display Job Status window, highlight a job in the Queue window. Then right-click the Status button on the Main Function Tray on the Main Client Window and select “Open Status for job [name of the selected job]”.

Diagram: Job Status window

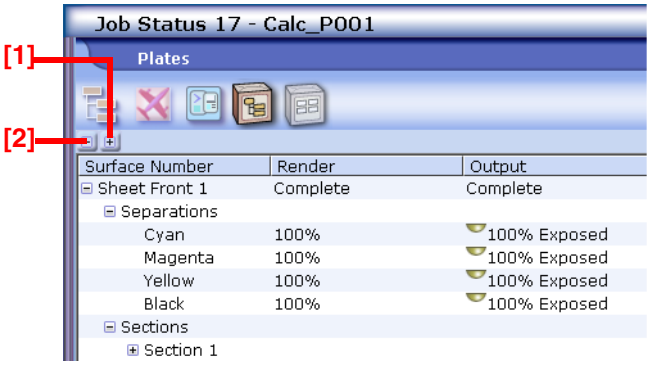


5.1.0.1 – (+/-) button

Function Summary

Use to expand or close the trees on each panel.
Enables the status to be checked quickly in the display condition that is preferred by the user.
The settings of this function are applied from the next time that the window is opened.

Screen Explanation

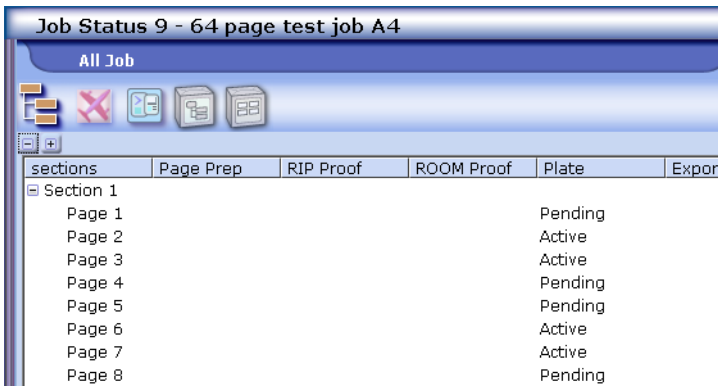


[1]	Expand to Next Level	Click this button to expand all the elements.	
[2]	Collapse to Top Level	Click this button to collapse all the elements to the top tree level.	
[1][2]	Shared	Views	Availability ([1], [2])
		All Job	Yes
		Preflight	No
		Page Prep	No
		Plates	Yes
		Rip Proofing	Yes
		ROOM Proofing	Yes
		PDF Export	Yes
		JDF Export	Yes

5.1.1 – All Job

The All Job panel displays status of all the pages for each product such as proof and plates.

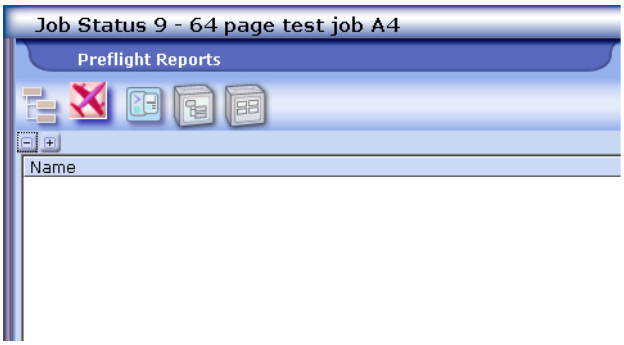
Diagram: All Job panel



5.1.2 – Preflight Reports

The Preflight Reports panel shows the preflight reports that have been generated for the current job. Right-click and select an option to display.

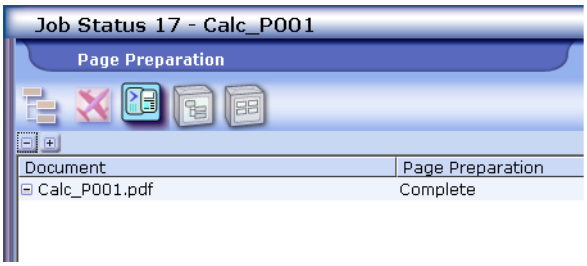
Diagram: Preflight Reports panel



5.1.3 – Page Preparation

The Page Preparation panel displays the list of document page preparation status.

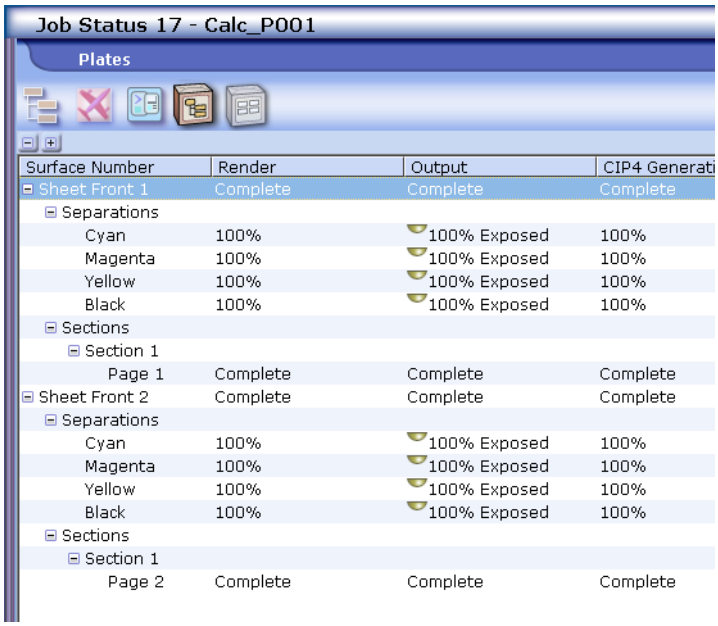
Diagram: Page Preparation panel



5.1.4 – Job Status

If you click a Workflow Item (e.g. Plates) in the Workflow Manager of the Job Status window, the status of the selected Workflow Item is displayed.

Diagram: Job Status panel (Plates)

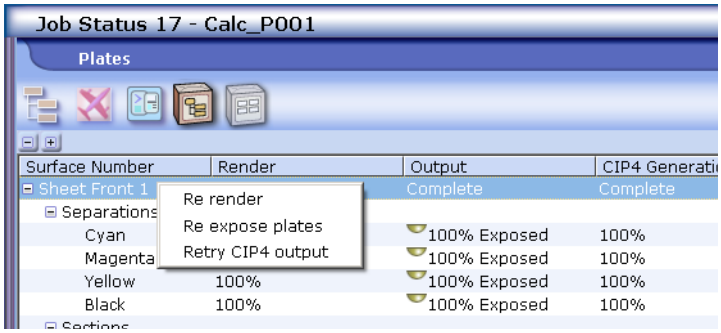


How the display changes with the Workflow Item

Workflow Item	Display
RIP Proof	• Surface Number - Shows the separations and sections of each surface. • Surface State (render, output, etc.) - The state of processing of this surface.
Plates	• Surface Number - Shows the separations and sections of each surface. • Surface State (render, output, etc.) - The state of processing of this surface.
Other Workflow Items	• Product Page - Refers to a page in the document. • Product State - The state of processing of this page.

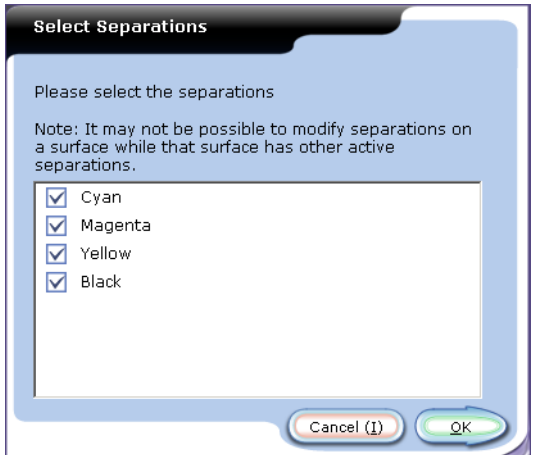
Right-click on an item in the list to display a list of management tasks. Right-click on the selected surface to select from the following options: Re render, Re expose, Release surface, Hold surface, Retry CIP4 output. The list will be different for each Workflow Item that is selected.

Diagram: Plates Workflow Item's surface is selected and right-clicked.



When an option is selected, the Select Separations Dialog box will be displayed. Active or pending separations are shown in bold. This indicates that the operation may fail because of these active separations. Separations that cannot be released or held are greyed out. If Release is selected for a single separation, the separation will have its check box checked, and any separations on the same surface that have previously been released will also have their check boxes checked. Unchecking one of these check boxes will cause them to be held if they are pending.

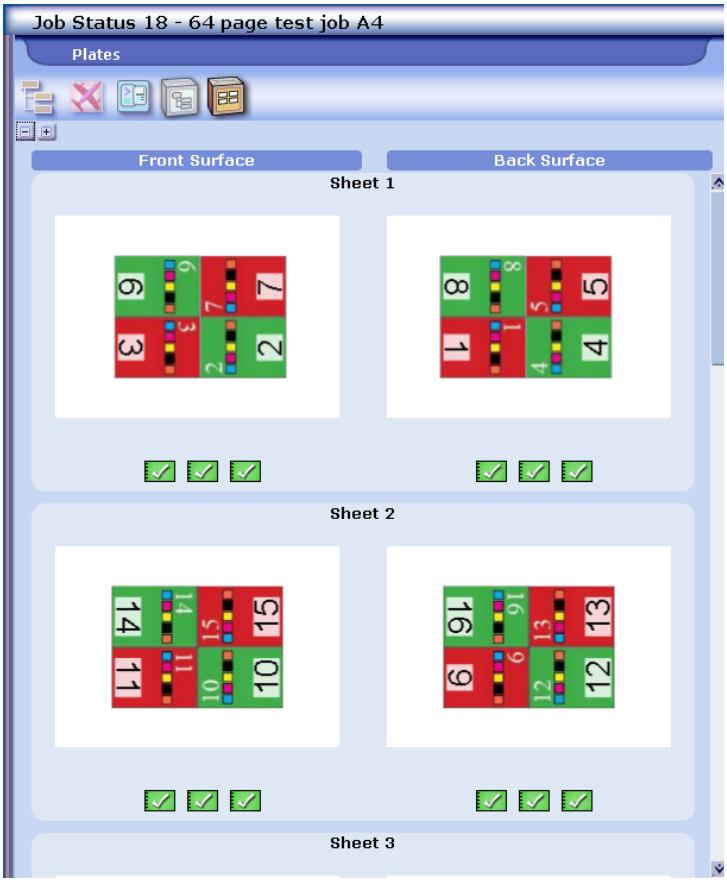
Diagram: Select Separations dialog



5.1.5 – Imposition Preview

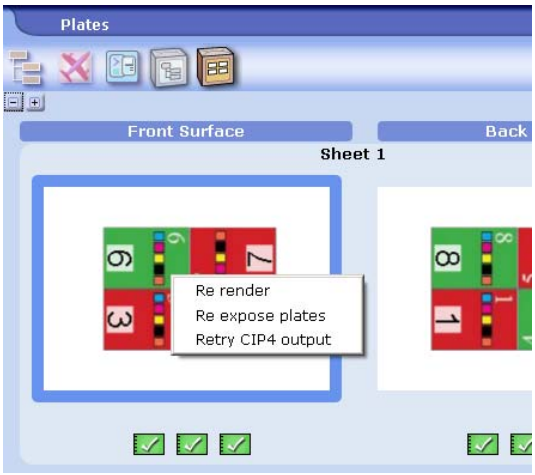
The Imposition Preview enables the user to see the difference between blank pages and unmapped pages. Below each surface there is an indication of the task status. It will also allow the user to select which surfaces to output. It is possible to select both surfaces of a sheet, all front surfaces or all back surfaces, etc. Using Ctrl, Shift modifiers with left mouse button allows selecting only the surfaces required. Clicking the sheet name in the Imposition Preview outputs both surfaces. Clicking on the ‘Front’ or ‘Back’ column title will output all of the front or back surfaces.

Diagram: Imposition Preview window



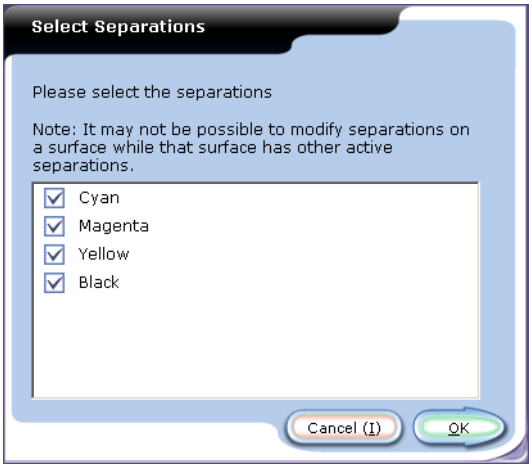
The user will be able to right click on the surface and the following options will be available: **Hold Surface**, **Release Surface**, **Re expose plates**, **Re render**, **Retry CIP4** output, **Output Unfinished Surface**, **Reset Unfinished Surface**.

Diagram: A surface is right-clicked



When **Hold Surface**, **Release Surface**, **Re expose plates**, **Re render** or **Retry CIP4 output** is selected from the seven options above, the Select Separations dialog appears in addition to the Job Status display.
The 'Output Unfinished Surface' option will only be available when all the pages are not present (unmapped).
The 'Reset Unfinished Surface' option will only be available when 'Output Unfinished Surface' has been selected. This will remove the source page resources and the output file resources.
After "Output Unfinished Surface" has been selected, the "Reset" option should be almost instantly available and as such can be used without waiting for the rendering to finish.

Diagram: Select Separations dialog



5.1.6 – Job Workflow Manager

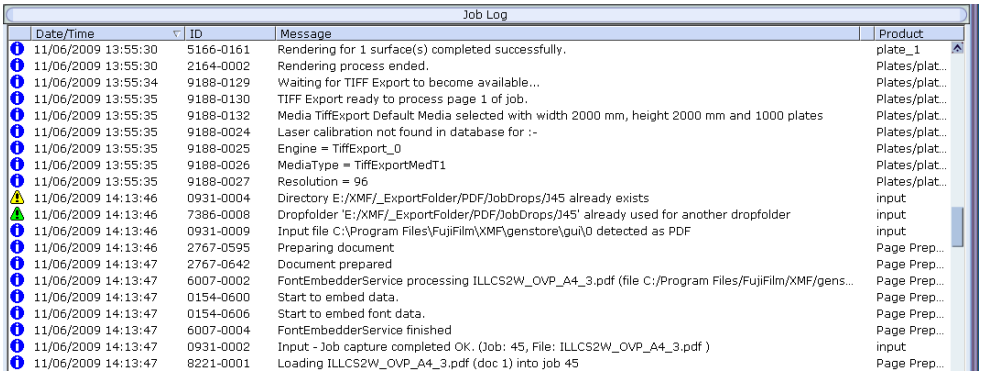
All the workflow elements in the job are displayed here. To display status information for a Workflow Item, click the Workflow Item icon and the information is displayed in the top left panel.

Diagram: Job Workflow Manager

5.1.7 – Job Log

System messages relating to the job are displayed in the Job Log panel.

Diagram: Job Log panel



About Job Log panel

Name	Description
	Information message
	Non-fatal error
	Warning message
	Fatal error (also used to mark the end of the message log)
Date/Time	The date and time at which the log entry was created is displayed.
ID	A reference number for reporting purposes is displayed.
Message	The text of the message.
Product	Displays the relevant module.

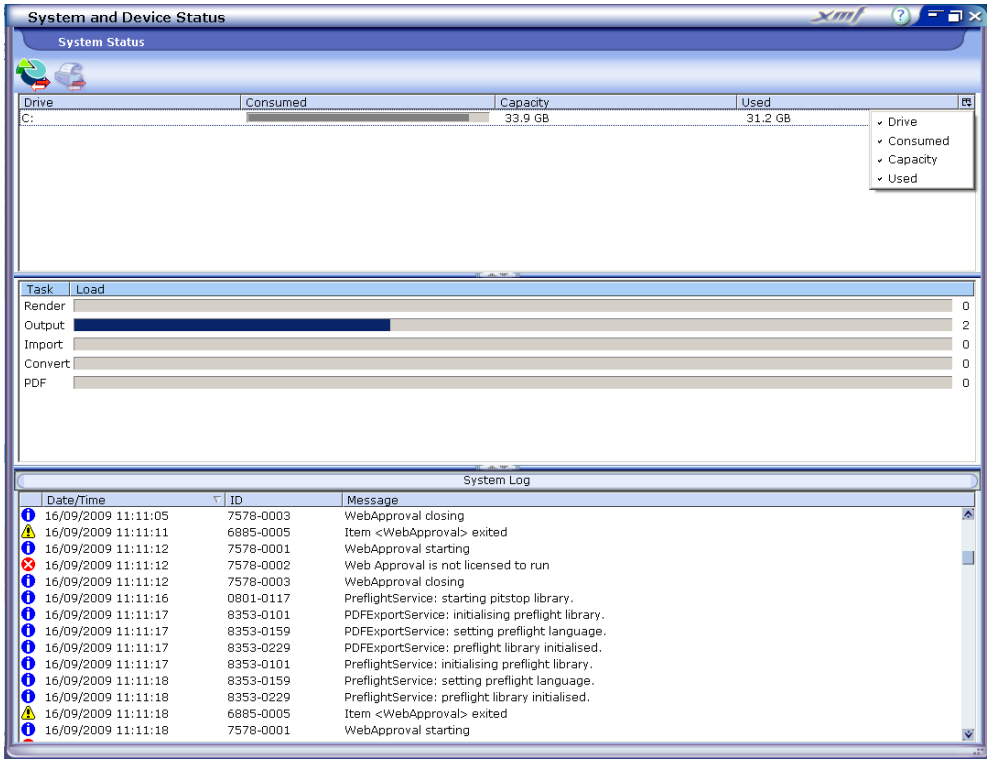
5.2 – System and Device Status

To view the System Status window and the Device Status window, right-click on the Status icon on the Main Function Tray on the Main Client Desktop and select Open System and Device status.

5.2.1 – System Status

The System Status window is used to view the status of tasks being processed within the system.

Diagram: System Status window



About System Status window

Name	Description
Drive	Displays all drives in the system with information on the amount of data stored and the capacity of each drive.
Tasks	Displays information on activity relating to the Render, Output, Import, Convert and PDF Output processes.
System Log	Displays information on the status of the XMF Server.

5.2.2 – Device Status

The Device Status window is used to view the status of cassettes, tasks and device log. It shows the progress of the selected device, e.g. rendering and downloading, etc. The coloured device icons on the top left of the panel indicate whether it is possible to render and/or download.

Diagram: Coloured icons

About the icons

Colour	Description
Red	The device is inactive, and will not render or process jobs (except for the Basic Remote Plate and Proof Devices which are dummy devices).
Orange	The device is processing but will not output.
Green	The device is online and active.

Diagram: Device Status window with the Cassettes tab selected.

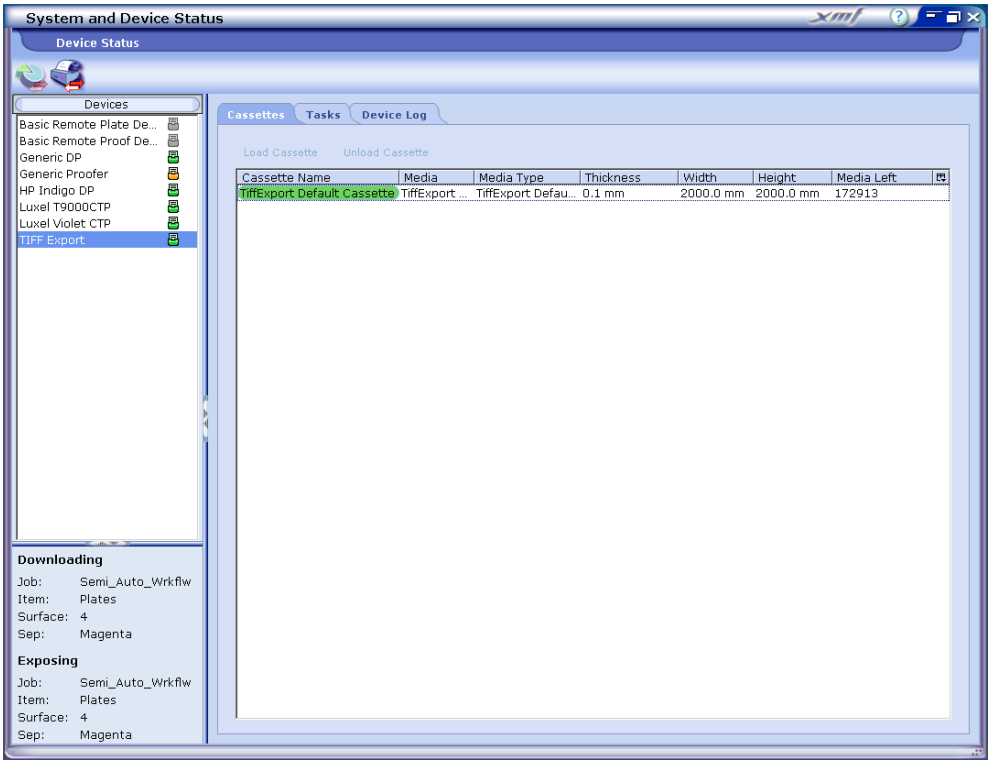


Diagram: Device Status window with the Tasks tab selected.

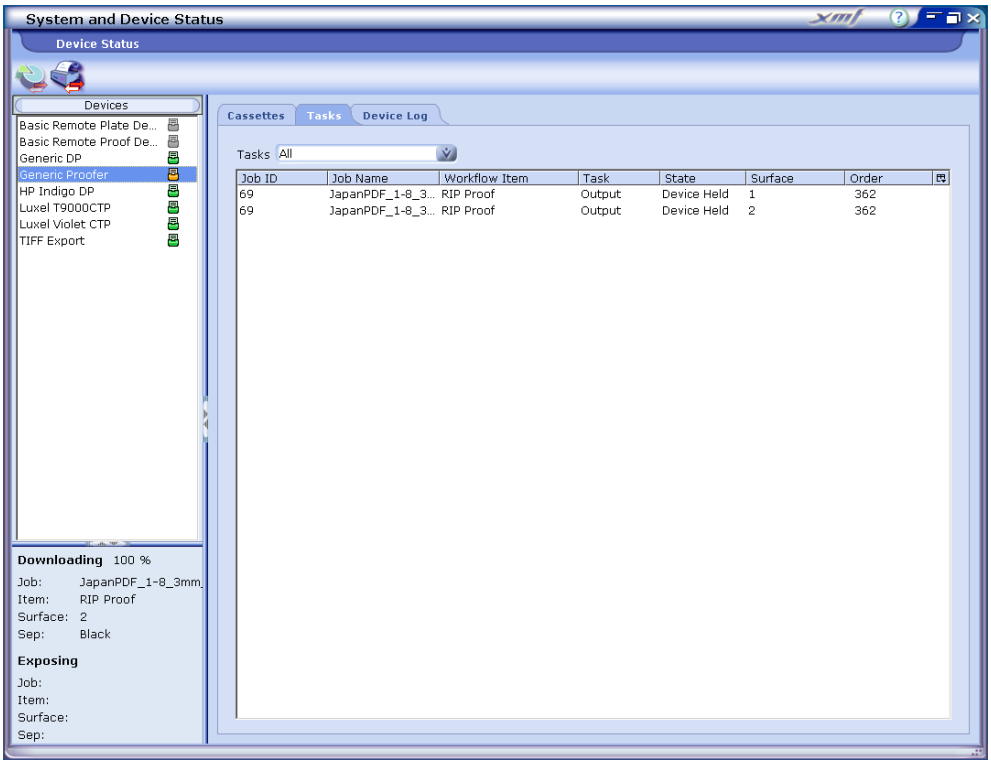
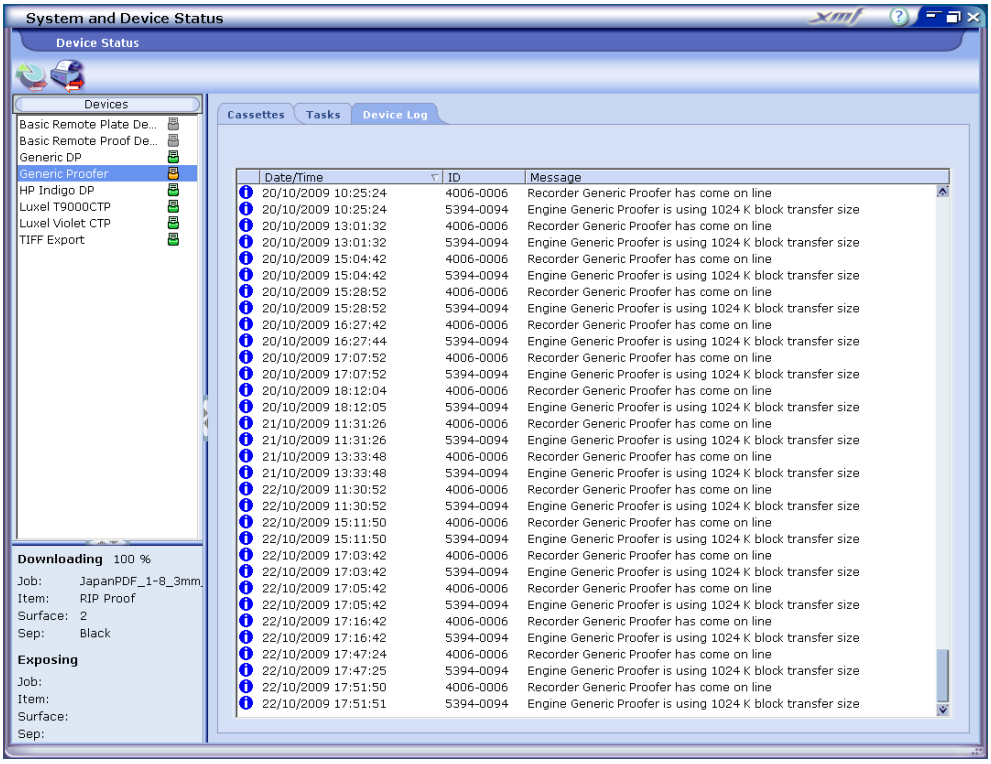


Diagram: Device Status window with the Device Log tab selected.



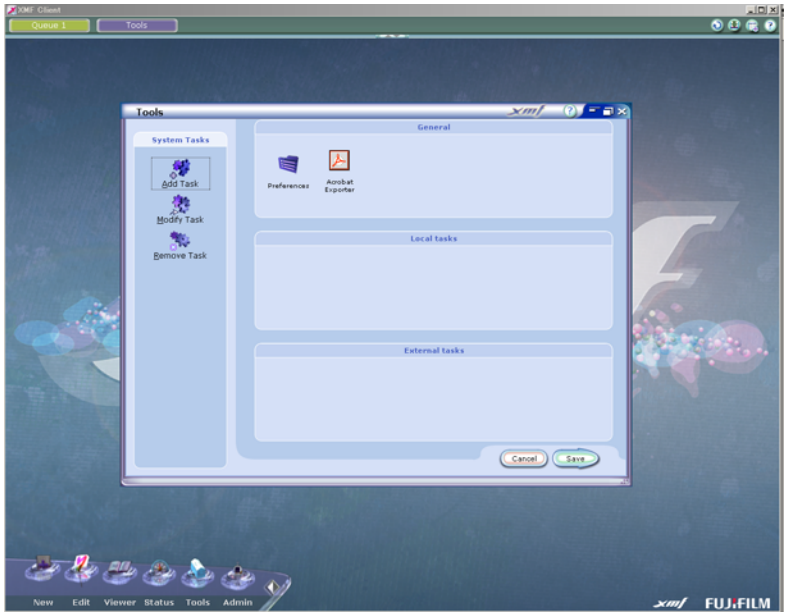
About Device Status window

Tab	Description
Cassettes	Displays the cassette information for the selected device. The Load Cassette and Unload Cassette buttons are only available for applicable device types and allow loading and unloading of cassettes.
Tasks	Displays the information for the selected device. The Tasks drop down list enables only specific tasks to be viewed. For example, to see the plates that will be sent to a device, in the order in which they will be sent, select Output from the Tasks drop down list then sort the list by order.
Device Log	Displays a list of messages from the selected device. The list can contain three types of message: • - Information message • - Warning message • - Fatal error

6 – Tools

The Tools window is used to specify Preferences such as units and languages. It is also used to link the XMF Client to other software utilities. To display this window, click on the Tools icon on the Main Function Tray on the Main Client Desktop.

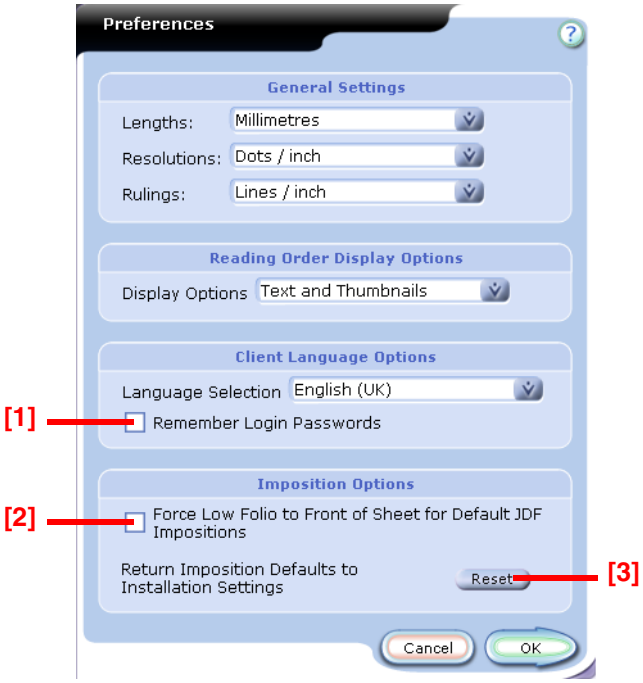
Diagram: Tools window



6.1 – Preferences Dialog

The Preferences dialog contains XMF system settings and options, including the preferred language.

Diagram: Preferences dialog



About Preferences dialog

Name	Description
General Settings	• Lengths - Select the unit for length measurements: Millimetres, Inches, Points • Resolutions - Select the unit for resolutions: Lines/millimetre, Dots/inch, Dots/point • Rulings - Select either Lines/inch or Lines/centimetre.
Reading Order Display Options	• Display Options - Select a display option for the Reading Order items: Text and Thumbnails, or Text Only.
Web Approval	This function is not available in Japan.
Client Language Options	Edits the GUI language for the XMF Client. Once changed, the XMF Client needs to be restarted (the XMF Client can be restarted while processing a job). • Language Selection - Select from Spanish, French, German, Japanese, English (UK), and English (US). • Remember Login Passwords New **Function Summary** This function saves the password of the user who logs in. When this function is enabled and the entered user name and server name are the same as those of the previous login, the password is entered automatically. **Background** In previous versions, the password had to be entered at every login, but in this version, a function for remembering the password has been added to make login easier. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Remember Login Passworda - When this box is ticked, the password of the user who logged into the server is remembered. **Restrictions** • When this function is disabled, XMF deletes all the saved passwords. • The password is not saved when connecting to a server using an IP address.

Name	Description
Imposition Options	• [2]: Force Low Folio to Front of Sheet for Default JDF Impositions - When placing a bindery signature that was set with a JDF imposition pattern on a sheet, this function automatically places the surface containing Page 1 on the front of the sheet. **Screen Explanation** [2]: Check box is ticked - When placing a bindery signature that was set with a JDF imposition pattern on a sheet, the sheet containing Page 1 is placed on the front of the sheet. The JDF imposition patterns are the imposition patterns that are registered as defaults with the names F[N]-[N]. The JDF imposition patterns are displayed in the **Imposition Patterns** window with Page 1 set on the front. - Check box is cleared - When a bindery signature is placed on a sheet, it is placed in the orientation set with the imposition pattern, without performing front or back side adjustment. The JDF imposition patterns are displayed in the **Imposition Patterns** window in the page placement specified by JDF. **Restrictions** • The **Force Low Folio to Front of Sheet for Default JDF Impositions** function is enabled only for the JDF imposition patterns that are installed by default. It will not affect patterns created from defaults and saved with different names, or new patterns created by the user. • This function only affects bindery signatures placed on a sheet after the **Force Low Folio to Front of Sheet for Default JDF Impositions** setting was changed. It follows that there is no effect on the front/back or rotation orientation of bindery signatures that have already been placed. However, note that the pattern name only is handled as Custom depending on the conditions. • [3]: Return Imposition Defaults to Installation Settings - The imposition setting defaults can be restored with the **Reset** button. **Screen Explanation** [3]: Reset - Click to display the **Confirm Change** dialog. **Note** • This function only affects Imposition Views that are newly created after the function is run.

6.2 – Add New Task Dialog

The Add New Task dialog creates a shortcut to launch another software application such as Adobe Acrobat.

Diagram: Add New Task dialog

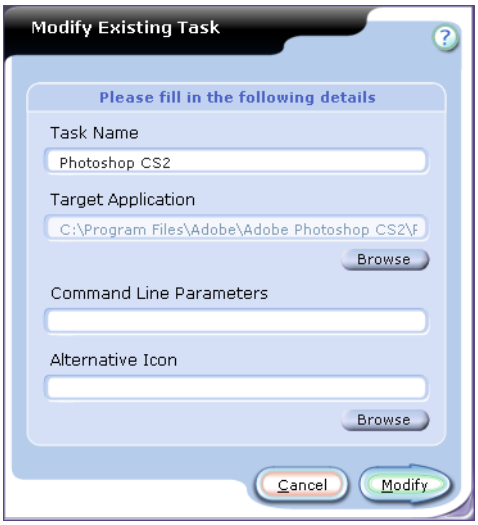
About Add New Task dialog

Name	Description
Task Name	Enter the task (shortcut) name.
Target Application	Specify the application. Click the Browse button and select the executable application file.
Command Line Parameters	Enter the parameters to be passed to the application when it is started.
Alternative Icon	To use a different icon, select a file to be used as the icon. Click the Browse button and select the file, otherwise the default icon for that application is used.
Add Task	Click the Add Task button to add the new task (shortcut) to the External tasks panel in the Tools window.

6.3 – Modify Existing Task Dialog

The Modify Existing Task dialog allows the user to edit the settings for an existing task.

Diagram: Modify Existing Task dialog



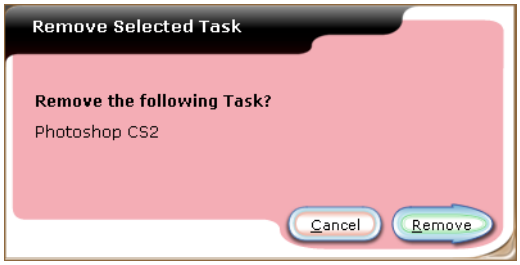
About Modify Existing Task dialog

Name	Description
Task Name	Enter the task (shortcut) name.
Target Application	Specify the application. Click the Browse button and select the executable application file.
Command Line Parameters	Enter the parameters to be passed to the application when it is started.
Alternative Icon	To use a different icon, select a file to be used as the icon. Click the Browse button and select the file, otherwise the default icon for that application is used.
Modify	Click to confirm the changes in the existing task (shortcut) settings.

6.4 – Remove Selected Task Dialog

The Remove Selected Task dialog removes an existing task (It removes a task (shortcut) only and does not delete the application itself). Select the task to be deleted in the Tools window then click on the Remove Task icon. When the name of the task to be removed is displayed in the Remove Selected Task dialog, click the Remove button to confirm deletion, otherwise click Cancel.

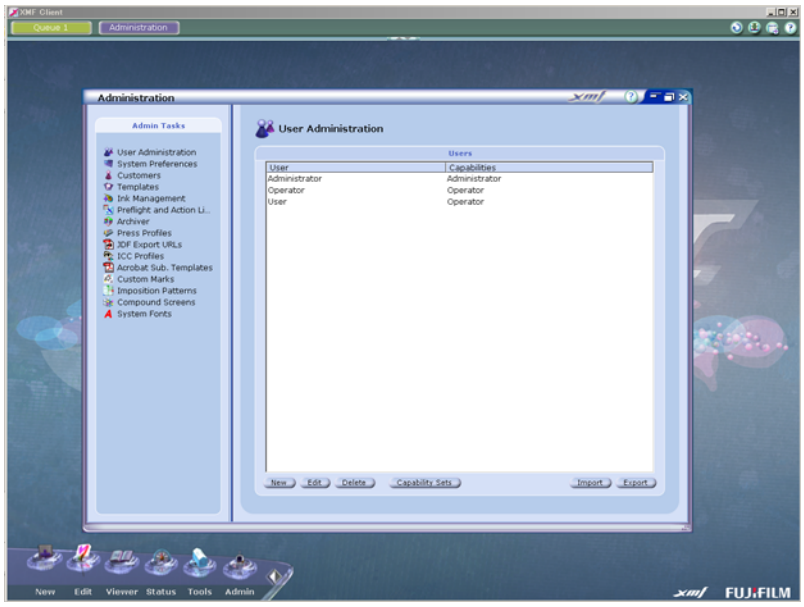
Diagram: Remove Selected Task dialog



7 – Administration

The Admin window updates settings in the XMF database.

Diagram: Administration window



About Administration window

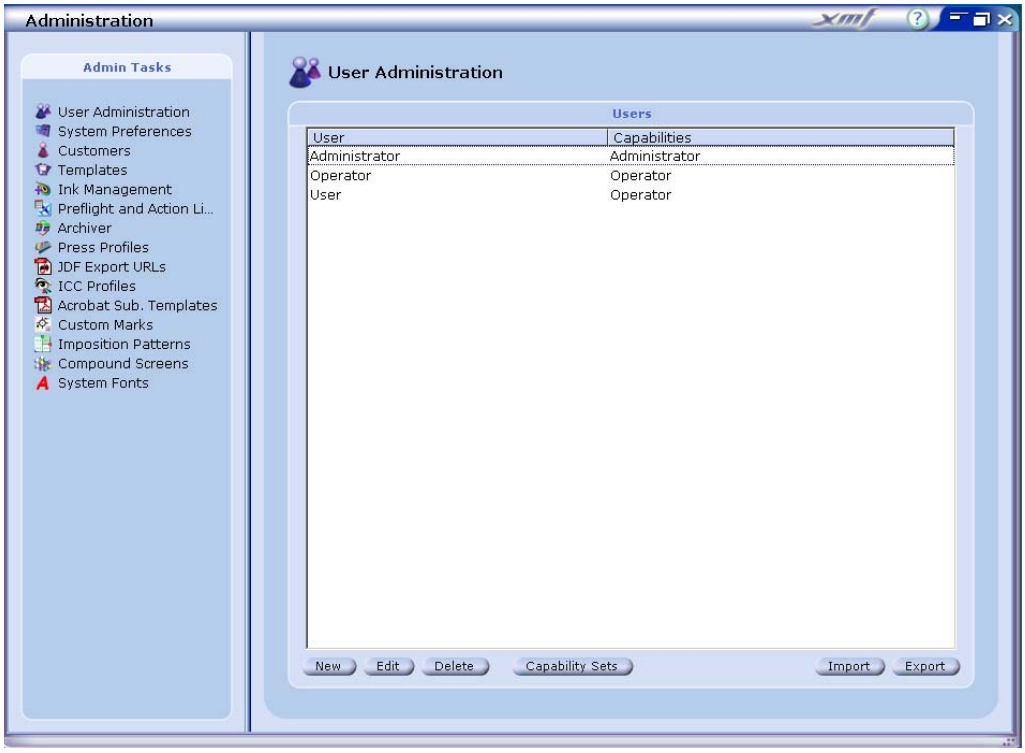
Name	Description
User Administration	A list of users and their capabilities (access rights). See 7.1 - User Administration.
System Preferences	General XMF settings. See 7.2 - System Preferences.
Customers	Manages customer information. See 7.3 - Customers.
Templates	Manages templates used by the software. See 7.4 - Templates.
Ink Management	Manages inks. See 7.5 - Ink Management.
Preflight and Action Lists	A Preflight profile checks an input file before it is processed. An Action List automatically makes changes to a PDF file. See 7.6 - Preflight and Action List Management.
Archiver	Provides the ability to archive jobs, and all their associated files, to a separate folder on the XMF Server. Archiving can be scheduled or jobs can be archived manually. See 7.7 - Archiver.
Press Device Profiles	A Press Profile is a complete description of a Press. See 7.8 - Press Device Profiles.
JDF Export URLs	Defines the locations to which JDF data can be exported. See 7.9 - JDF Export URLs.
ICC Profile management	Imports and exports the profiles used for ICC Colour Management. See 7.10 - ICC Profile Management.
Acrobat Submission Templates	In the Tools window there is an option called Acrobat Exporter. This sends XMF job templates to remote Acrobat systems for them to complete and send back as a job. See 7.11 - Acrobat Submission Templates.

Name	Description
Custom Mark Management	The Custom Marks window is used to import and manage custom marks within the XMF system. See 7.12 - Custom Mark Management.
Imposition Patterns	Allows users to create imposition patterns. See 7.13 - Imposition Patterns.
Compound Screens	Allows users to set up an additional screen set for printing spot colours. See 7.14 - Compound Screens.
System Fonts	Allows users to check that fonts have been correctly installed. See 7.15 - System Fonts.

7.1 – User Administration

This is used to set up details of users who are allowed access to the XMF system, and their capabilities (access rights).

Diagram: User Administration panel



About User Administration panel

Name	Description
User list	Displays user names and their capabilities. • New - Select an existing user template, such as User, then click this button to display the New User dialog. • Edit - Select an existing user and click this button to display the Edit User dialog for the selected user. • Delete - Select an existing user and click this button to open the Confirm Delete dialog for the selected user. • Capability Sets - Select a user from the user list and click this button to display the Capability Set Administration dialog. • Import/Export - Click to import/export user information to/from other systems in CSV format.

7.1.1 – New User Dialog

Highlight an existing user template in the user list of User Administration, such as User, and click the New button to open the New User dialog box.

Diagram: New User dialog

About New User dialog

Name	Description
Main Entries	• User Name - Enter the personal name of the user. • Password - Enter a password for the user. • Password Confirm - Re-type the password as confirmation. • Email Address - Enter the email address of the user.
Personal Information	Enter a name and address of the user entered at the "Main Entries" in each field.
Capabilities	• Capability Set - From the drop-down list, choose the Capability which is newly added or edited in the Capability Set Administration dialog (see 7.1.4 - Capability Set Administration dialog). • New Capability Set - A shortcut to the New Capability Set dialog.
OK	Click to add the new user.
Cancel	Click to cancel adding the new user.

7.1.2 – Edit User Dialog

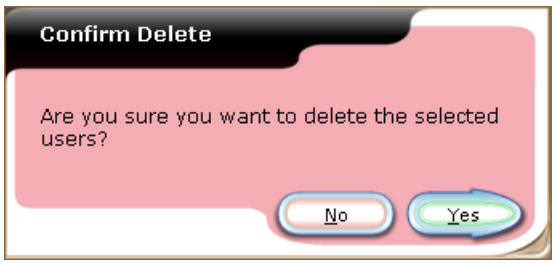
Highlight an existing user in the user list of User Administration and click the Edit button to open the Edit User dialog. Change the fields, as for a new user.

Diagram: Edit User dialog

7.1.3 – Confirm Delete Dialog

Highlight an existing user in the user list of User Administration and click the Delete button, which will open the Confirm Delete dialog. Click Yes to delete the user.

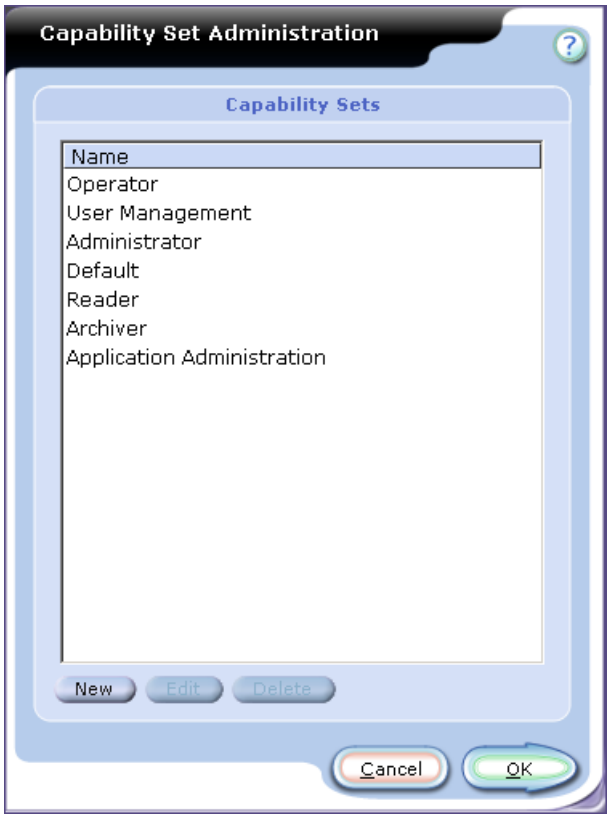
Diagram: Confirm Delete dialog



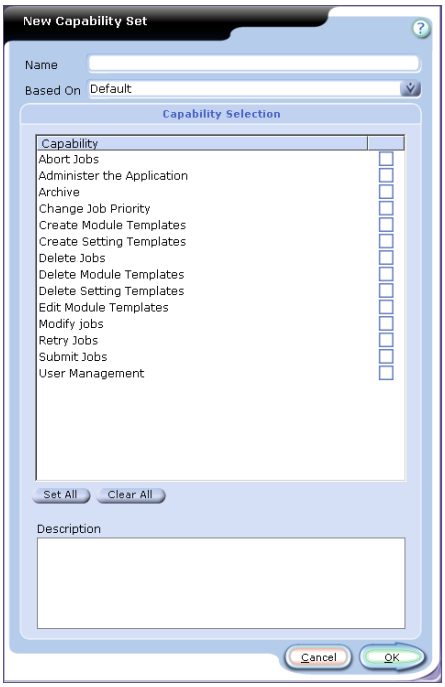
7.1.4 – Capability Set Administration Dialog

Clicking the Capability Sets button in the User Administration panel opens the Capability Set Administration dialog.

Diagram: Capability Set Administration dialog



About Capability Set Administration dialog

Name	Description
Capability Sets	• Name - Shows the registered capability set names. • New - Click the New button to open the New Capability Set dialog. You can base your new capability set on one selected from the Based On drop-down list, or tick the boxes for capabilities as required. When a capability is highlighted, its description is shown in the lower panel.  • Edit - Highlight an existing capability set (not one of the standard sets) and click the Edit button to open the Edit Capability Set dialog. Define the capability set as for a new capability set. • Delete - Highlight an existing capability set (not one of the standard sets) and click the Delete button, which opens a warning dialog, asking for confirmation.
OK	Click to save the edits.
Cancel	Click to cancel the edits.

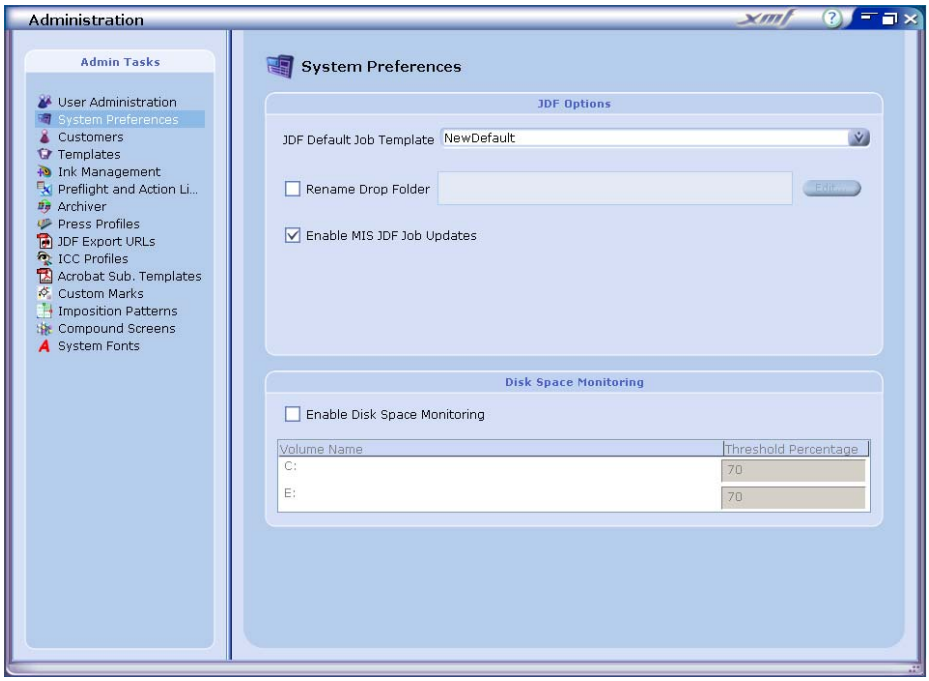
7.1.5 – Import/Export

Users can be imported and exported to and from other systems in CSV format, which can be created and edited in programs like MS Excel.

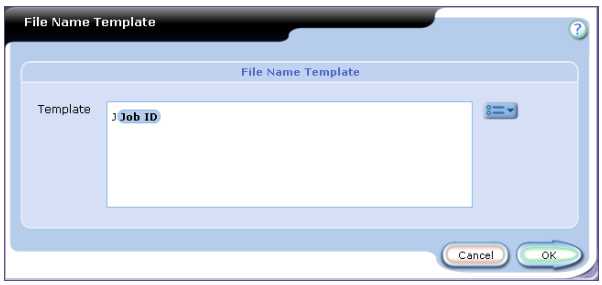
7.2 – System Preferences

It displays the settings that the Administrator can modify.

Diagram: System Preferences panel



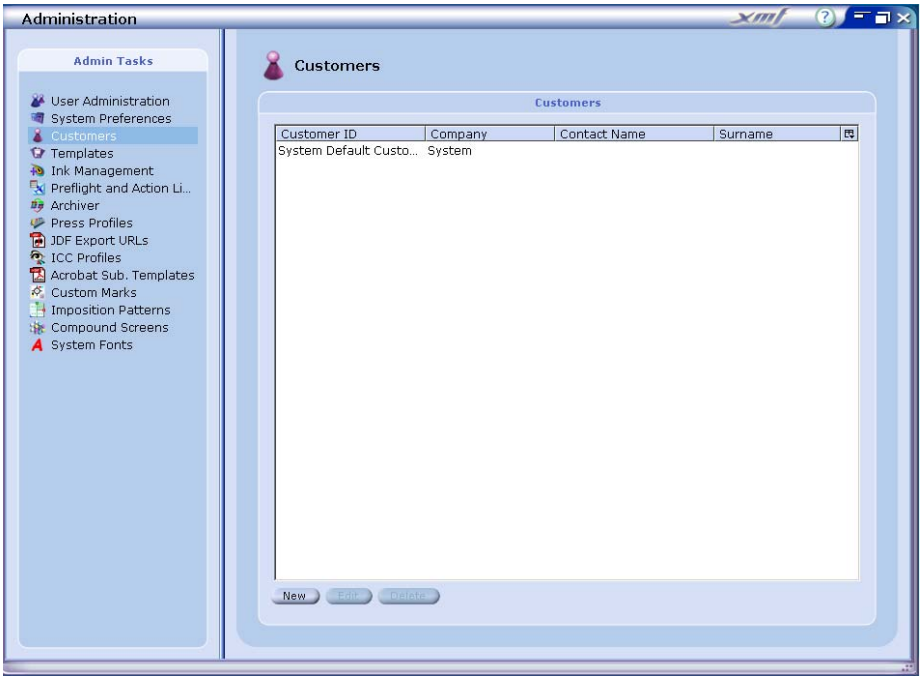
About System Preferences panel

Name	Description
JDF Options	• JDF Default Job Template - Sets the default job template for JDF jobs where no template is specified. • Rename Drop Folder - Enable the check box to rename the input drop folder for JDF jobs. • Edit - Click to display the File Name Template edit dialog box. Template name is created by typing text and inserting variables with the options button. Click the OK button to save the template.  • Enable JDF Job Updates - When checked, jobs with the same Job ID as an existing job will be treated as an update to the existing job. When unchecked, all JDFs will be treated as new jobs.
Disk Space Monitoring	• Disk Space Monitoring - When checked, monitors how much memory is being used by XMF and displays a warning when the disk space becomes low. • Volume Name - Shows the disk volume name. • Threshold Percentage - Sets the threshold of the available disk space at which a warning will be issued.

7.3 – Customers

It maintains contact details of your customers, so that the information can be used with an XMF job.

Diagram: Customer panel



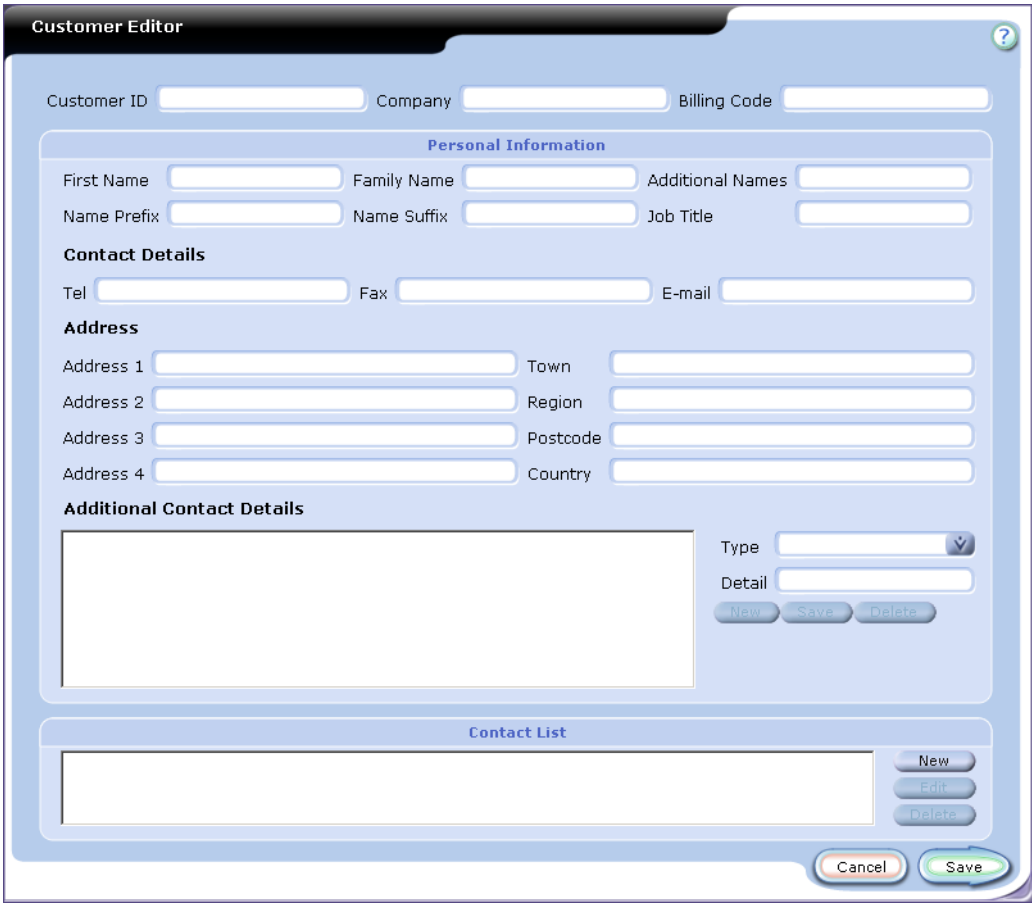
About Customer panel

Name	Description
Customers	Shows the customer information list. • New - Click to open the Customer Editor window. • Edit - Click to open the Customer Editor window, where you can edit the selected existing customer. • Delete - Click to open the Confirm Delete dialog with which you can delete the selected existing customer.

7.3.1 – Customer Editor

Click the New or the Edit button to open this window, where you can add a new customer or edit the information of an existing customer.

Diagram: Customer Editor



About Customer Editor

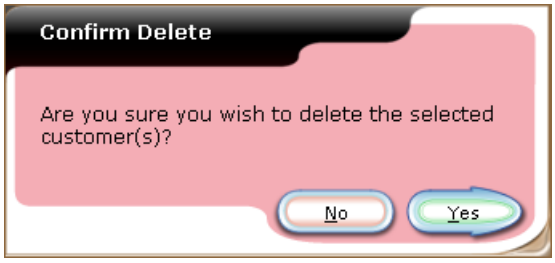
Name	Description
Customer ID	Enter/edit the customer ID (compulsory).
Company	Enter/edit the company name (compulsory).
Billing Code	Enter/edit the billing code.
Personal Information	Enter/edit each field. In the Additional Contact Details panel, you can add more contact methods for the primary contact like this: • Select a Type from the drop down list, for example Phone. • Enter the appropriate information, for example a phone number. The Detail box may change, according to the type. • Click the New button underneath - the new information is added to the Additional Contact Details panel on the left. • To edit an entry in the Additional Contact Details panel, highlight it and change the information in the Detail box, then click the Save button. • To delete an entry in the Additional Contact Details panel, highlight it then click the Delete button. • Repeat as required.

Name	Description
Contact List	Displays the list of contacts. • New - Click to open the Contact Editor window, where you can enter the details of the new contact. • Edit - Click to open the Contact Editor window, where you can edit the details of the contact selected in the Contact List. • Delete - Click to delete the details of the contact selected in the Contact List.
Save	Click to save the new entries/changes to the customer record.
Cancel	Click to cancel the new entries/changes.

7.3.2 – Confirm Delete Dialog

The Confirm Delete dialog appears when you highlight an existing customer in the Customers list and click the Delete button. Click Yes to delete the customer.

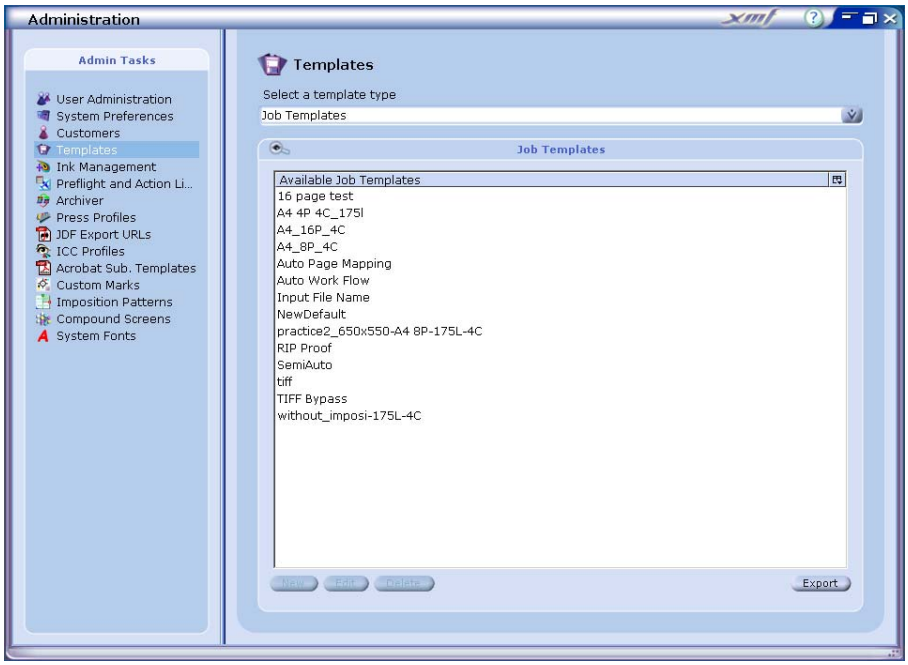
Diagram: Confirm Delete dialog



7.4 – Templates

This manages the templates used in the XMF system.

Diagram: Templates panel



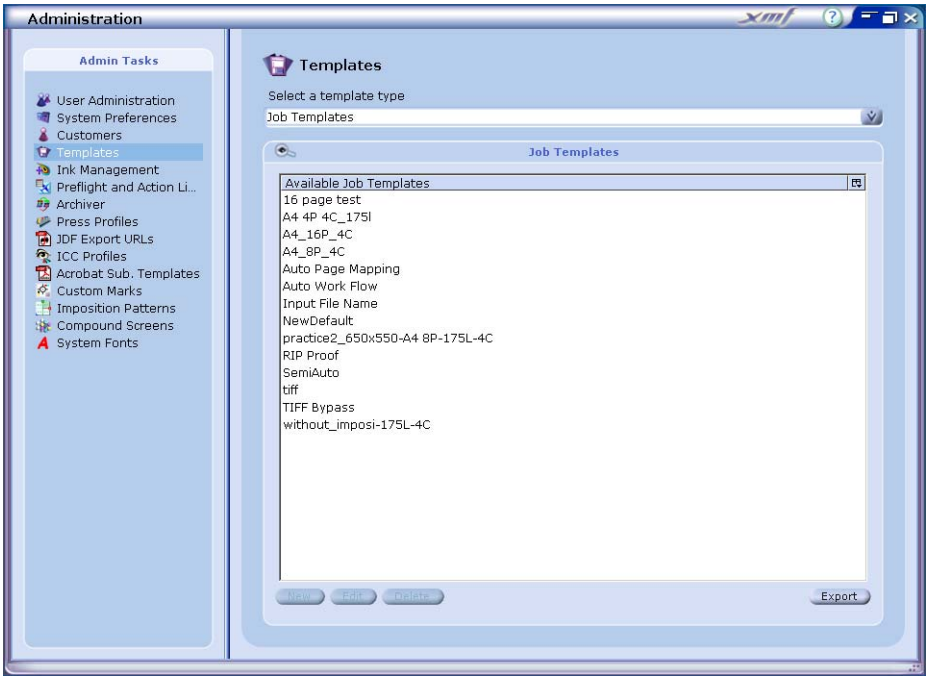
About Templates panel

Name	Description
Select a template type	Select a template type from the drop-down list. There are six main types of Template: • Job Template - Like a traditional job ticket, holds some or all of the settings for a common job such as a 32-page brochure, and can be applied to any set of input documents. • Workflow Item Template - Holds some or all of the parameter settings for an item in a workflow, like a plate or proof. • Workflow Parameter Template - Each of the parameter sections in a Workflow Item can be edited and saved individually. • Imposition Template - An imposition created in a workflow can be saved as a template for use in other jobs. • File Name Template - A template of set of rules for naming incoming or outgoing files. • Stripping Sheet Template - A template related to placement positions, such as bindery signatures and colour bars, that are set in the sheet created with the pagination settings.

7.4.1 – Job Templates

This panel manages Job Templates. To open, select Job Templates from the drop-down list of Select a template type.

Diagram: Job Templates



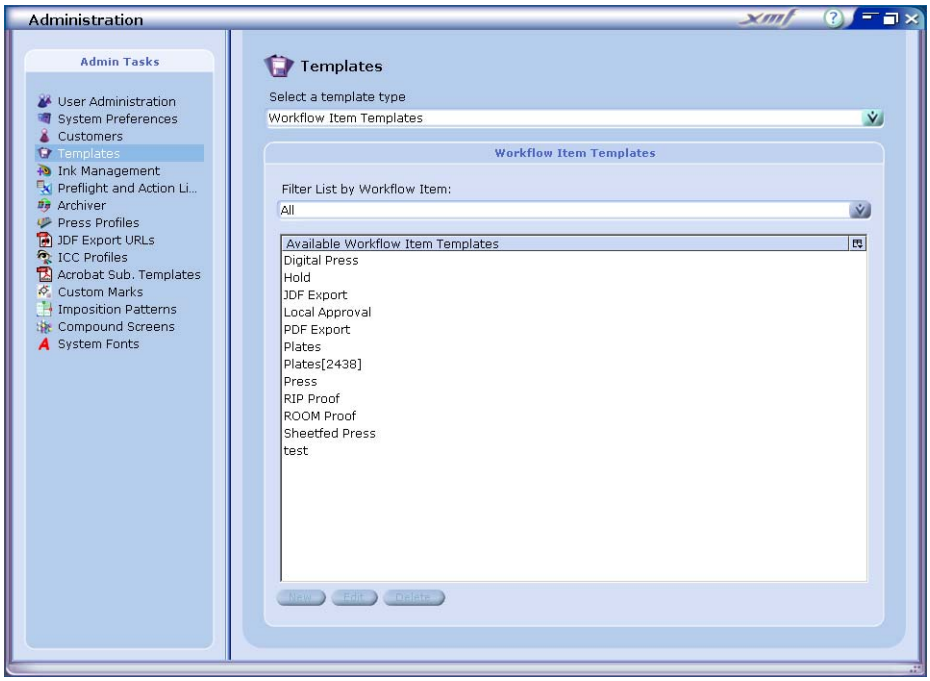
About Job Templates

Name	Description
Job Templates	Displays the list of available Job Templates. Click the Search button on the top left to search for a Job Template by Template Name or Customer. • New - Creates a new Job Template by copying the settings of the template selected from Available Job Templates. • Edit - Click to edit the template selected from Available Job Templates. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from Available Job Templates. • Export - Click to export the list of job template names in CSV format.

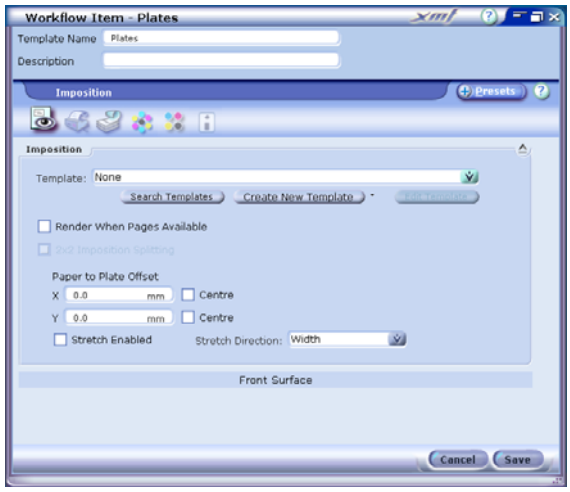
7.4.2 – Workflow Item Templates

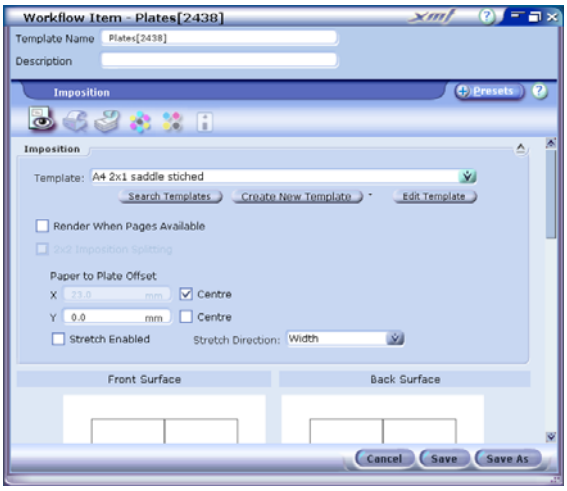
This panel manages Workflow Item Templates. To open, select Workflow Item Templates from the drop-down list of Select a template type.

Diagram: Workflow Item Templates



About Workflow Item Templates

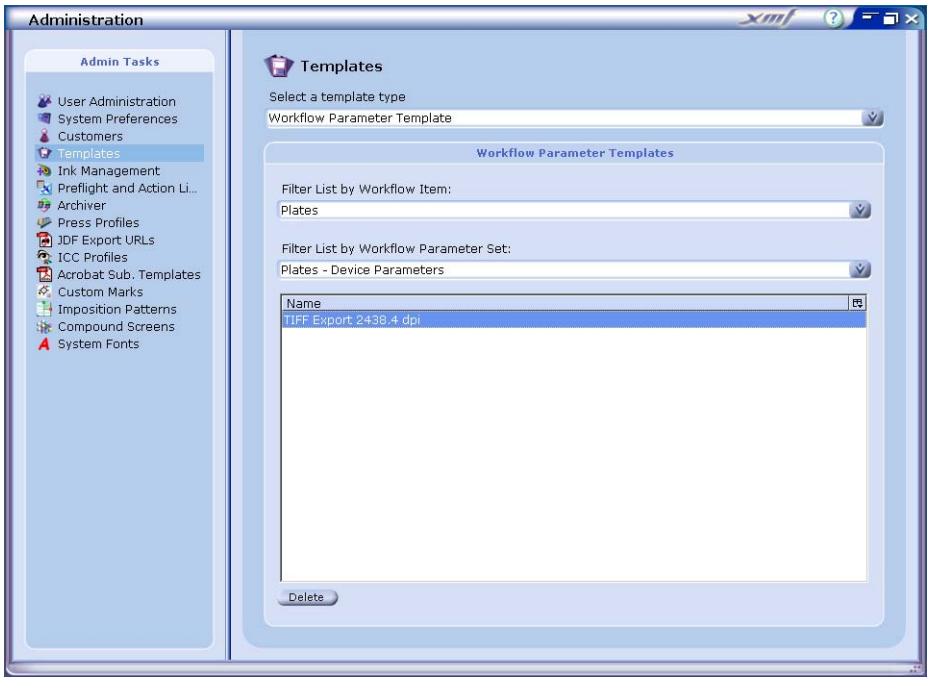
Name	Description
Workflow Item Templates	Displays the list of available Workflow Item Templates. • Filter List by Workflow Item - Filters the list display to limit to the Workflow Item type selected from the drop-down list. • New - Select a template from Available Workflow Item Templates and click New, to open the editor window (below) where you can save a new template. 

Name	Description
Workflow Item Templates	• Edit - Select a template from Available Workflow Item Templates and click Edit to open the editor window where you can edit and save the template. Not all Workflow Item Templates can be edited.  • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from Available Workflow Item Templates. Not all Workflow Item Templates can be deleted.

7.4.3 – Workflow Parameter Templates

This panel manages Workflow Parameter Templates. To open, select Workflow Parameter Template from the drop-down list of Select a template type.

Diagram: Workflow Parameter Templates



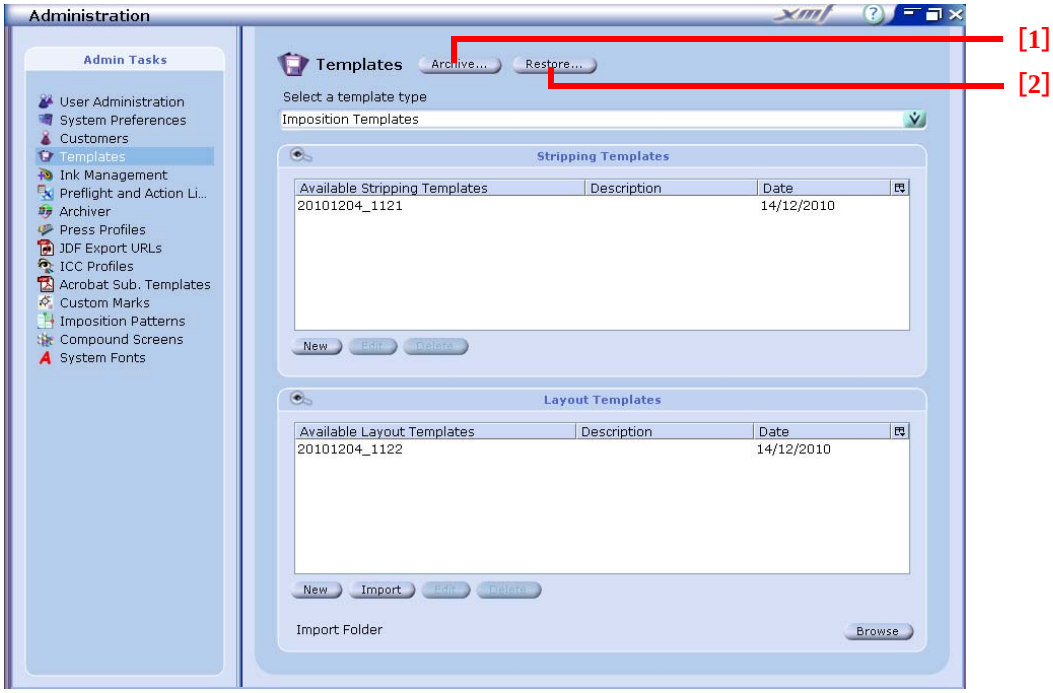
About Workflow Parameter Templates

Name	Description
Workflow Parameter Templates	There are many Workflow Parameter Templates. The Filter List options (see below) reduce the length of the list. • Filter List by Workflow Item - Filters the list display to limit to the Workflow Item type selected from the drop-down list. • Filter List by Workflow Parameter Set - Filters the list display to limit to the Workflow Parameter Set type selected from the drop-down list. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from the list of Workflow Parameter Templates.

7.4.4 – Imposition Templates

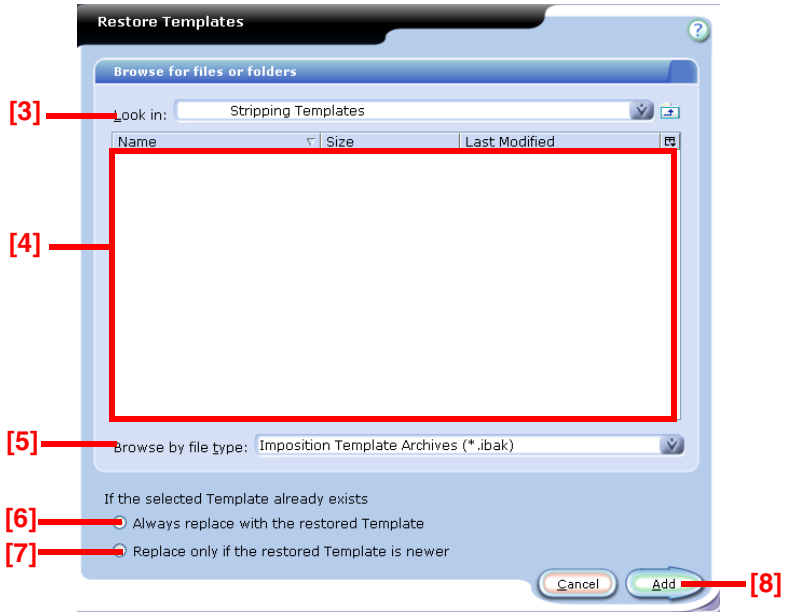
This panel manages Imposition Templates. To open, select Imposition Templates from the drop-down list of Select a template type.

Diagram: Imposition Templates



About Imposition Templates

Name	Description
Archive New	**Function Summary** This function archives imposition templates. **Background** In previous versions, there was no defined method for using shared templates across multiple XMF servers. In V3.1, templates can be archived and restored, allowing synchronized templates to be used between multiple servers. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Archive - Click to display the **Archive** dialog. In the **Archive** dialog, select an archive target option and click **OK** to archive the template. **Note** • To select individual templates for archiving, the target template must be selected in the list before clicking the **Archive** button.

Name	Description
Restore New	**Function Summary** This function restores archived imposition templates. **Screen Explanation** [2]: Restore - Click to display the **Restore Templates** dialog.  [3]: Look in - Specify the save location of the archived template. [4]: List - Displays the templates in the location specified in [3] in a list. [5]: Browse by file type - The displayed templates can be filtered by specifying the file format. [6]: Always replace with the restored Template - When this box is ticked and the same template already exists, the existing template is always overwritten by the restored template. [7]: Replace only if the restored Template is newer - When this box is ticked and the same template already exists, the existing template is overwritten by the restored template only when the update date of the restored template is more recent than that of the existing template. [8]: Add - Restores all the templates in the open folder. To restore only individual files or folders, click while the files or folders are selected in the list. **Precautions and Restrictions** • Templates are managed with Universal Unique IDs. When the template name is the same but the Universal Unique ID is different, a number is added to the end of the restored template name (example: Template_01). • If you try to synchronize templates with the same name that were created on different XMF systems, because each has a different Universal Unique ID, a template with a number added to the end of its name is added to both XMF systems. To avoid confusion during synchronization, we do not recommend setting the same name for templates created on different systems. • If you copy a template from one system to another, edit the templates on both systems, and then try to synchronize them, restoration is performed with the version that was updated most recently. Take care because no confirmation message appears before the older version is overwritten.
Stripping Templates	These are templates created within the XMF system that can be fully edited. Clicking the Search button on the top left allows searching for a Stripping Template by Name/Description or Customer. • New - Click to open the Imposition Viewer where you can create a new Stripping Template. • Edit - Click to edit the template selected from Available Stripping Templates. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from Available Stripping Templates.

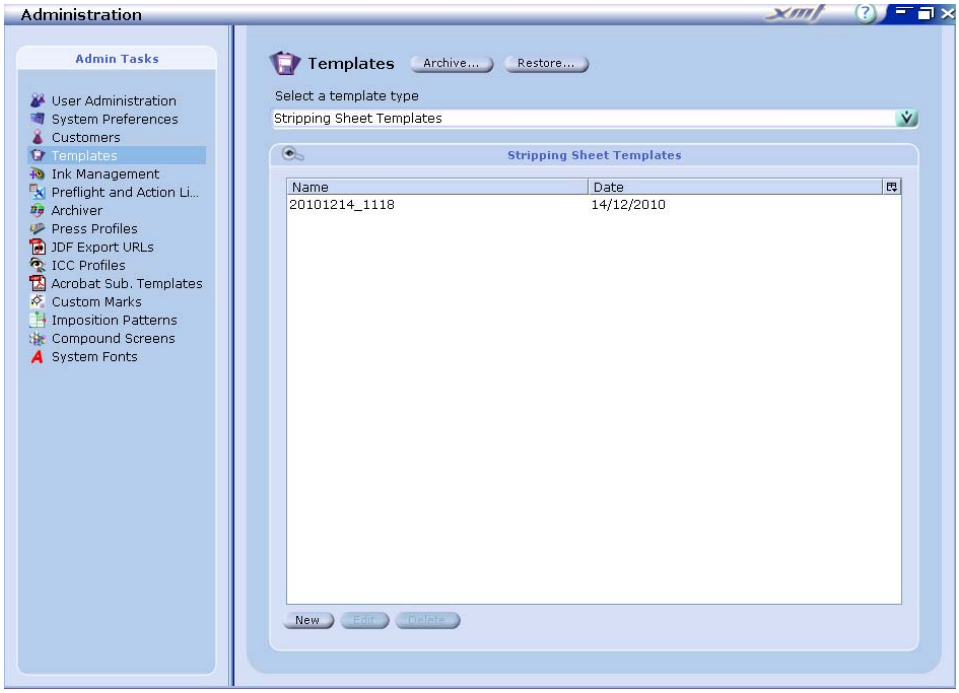
Name	Description
Layout Templates	These are templates with fixed media and page sizes, allowing minimal editing. • New - Click to open the Imposition Viewer where you can edit a new Layout Template. • Import - Click to import JDF Layout Templates from JDF compliant Imposition packages, such as DoTop or Facilis. • Edit - Click to edit the template selected from Available Layout Templates. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from Available Layout Templates. • Browse - Used to import JDF files generated by Metrix.

7.4.5 – Stripping Sheet Templates

Function Summary

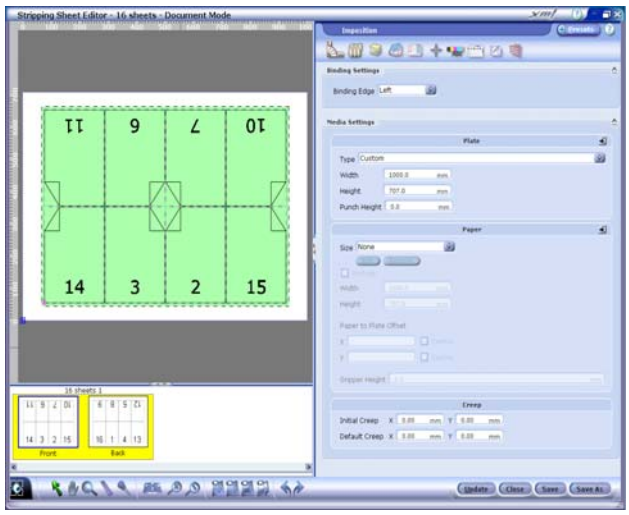
Placement positions such as bindery signatures or colour bars that are set for one sheet can be saved as a template, or an existing template can be edited.

Diagram: Stripping Sheet Templates



About Stripping Sheet Templates

Name	Description
Archive New	**Function Summary** This function saves the stripping template. Except for some of the options that can be selected during archiving, this is the same as the archiver function for imposition templates. For details, see 7.4.4 - Imposition Templates.
Restore New	The restore function is the same as the restore function for imposition templates. For details, see 7.4.4 - Imposition Templates.

Name	Description
Stripping Sheet Templates	A template related to placement positions, such as bindery signatures and colour bars, that are set in the sheet created with the pagination settings. The template created here can be applied to a sheet created with the pagination settings, or used inside the Imposition View. • New - Click to open the Stripping Sheet Editor and create a Stripping Sheet Template. **Diagram: Stripping Sheet Editor**  • Edit - Click to edit the template selected in Stripping Sheet Template. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected in Stripping Sheet Template.

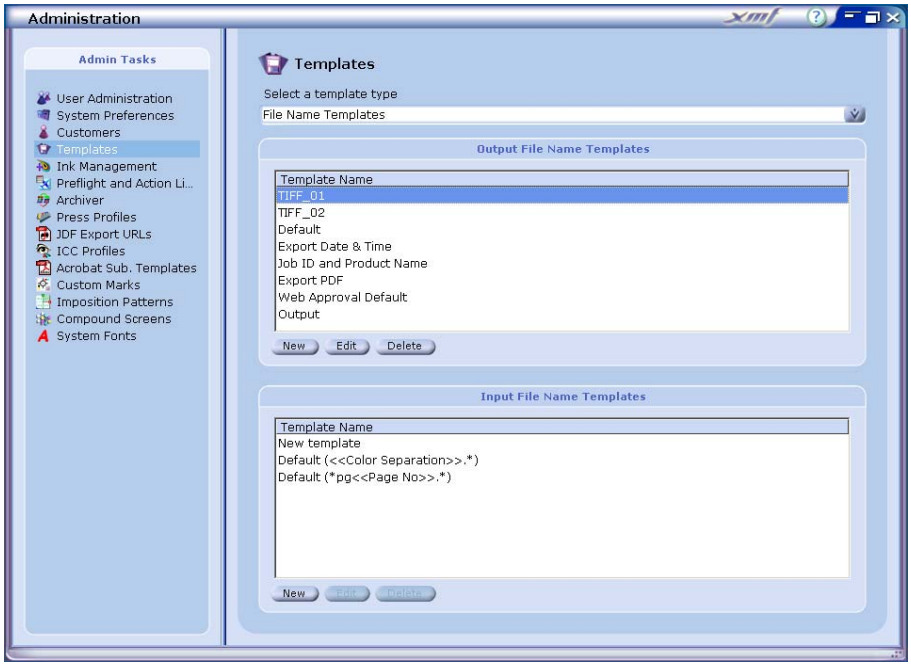
Restrictions

- The items that can be operated in the Stripping Sheet Editor are only the Imposition View operation items that are required for the front and back surface design. For details, see 4.3 - Imposition Viewer (Stripping).
- Only one assembly section can be set in the stripping sheet template. For this reason, the same binding style is applied to all the signatures included in the stripping sheet template.

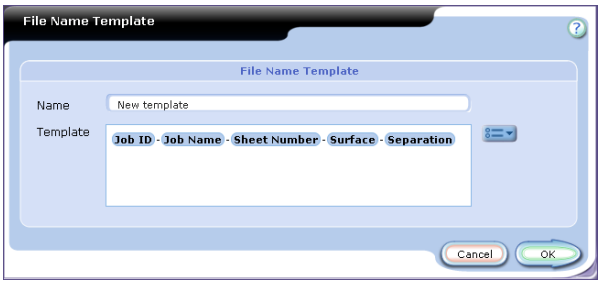
7.4.6 – File Name Templates

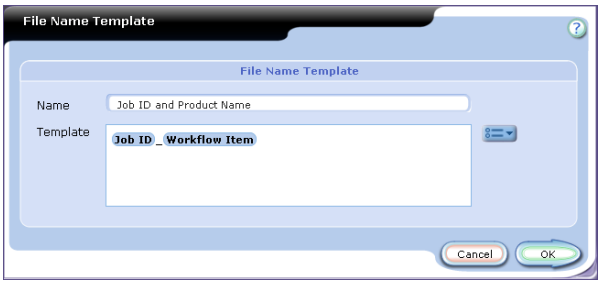
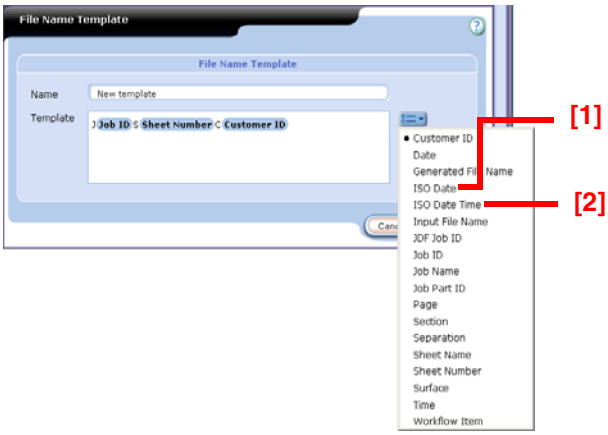
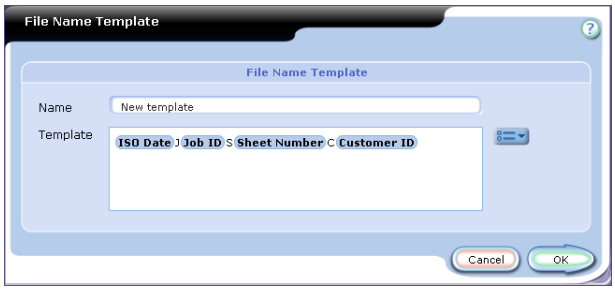
The XMF system can detect input filenames, and generate output filenames, according to file name templates. To open this panel, select File Name Templates from the drop-down list of Select a template type.

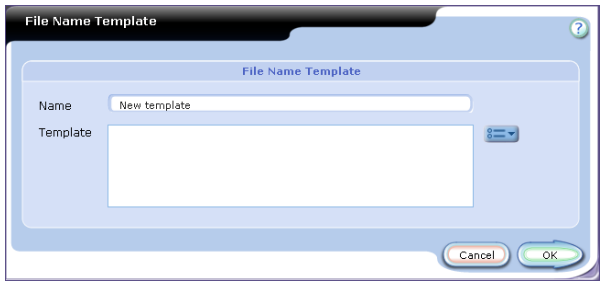
Diagram: File Name Templates



About File Name Templates

Name	Description
Output File Name Templates	These templates are used to generate file names exported by the system, and used mainly in the PDF and JDF Workflow Items, and in the Press CIP4 settings. • New - Click to create a new Output File Name Template. 

Name	Description
Output File Name Templates	• Edit - Click to edit the template selected from Output File Name Templates.  • Writing the ISO Date and ISO Time - The international standard ISO date and ISO time can be set with the Output File Name Template. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: ISO Date - Add this item to the template to add the current date to the output file name in the numeric format of YYYY-MM-DD (Based on the local time at the location of the server). Click **ISO Date** to add to the file name template. [2]: ISO Date Time - Add this item to the template to add the current date and time to the output file name in the numeric format of YYYYMMDDThhmmss (Based on the local time at the location of the server). Click **ISO Date Time** to add to the file name template. **Operating Procedure** Use the following procedure to create an Output File Name Template containing **ISO Date**, **Job ID**, **Sheet Number** and **Separation**. ① Open the **Administration** window and select **Template**. ② Select **File Name Template** from the drop-down menu. ③ In **Output File Name Template**, select **Default** and click the **New** button. ④ Click the drop-down menu and select **ISO Date**. ⑤ The template being created is as follows.  ⑥ Enter any template name and save to complete the procedure. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from Output File Name Templates.

Name	Description
Input File Name Templates	These templates are used to identify incoming files automatically in drop folders. • New - Click to create a new Input File Name Template.  • Edit - Click to edit the template selected from Input File Name Templates. • Delete - Click to delete the template selected from Input File Name Templates.

7.4.7 – Barcode Templates

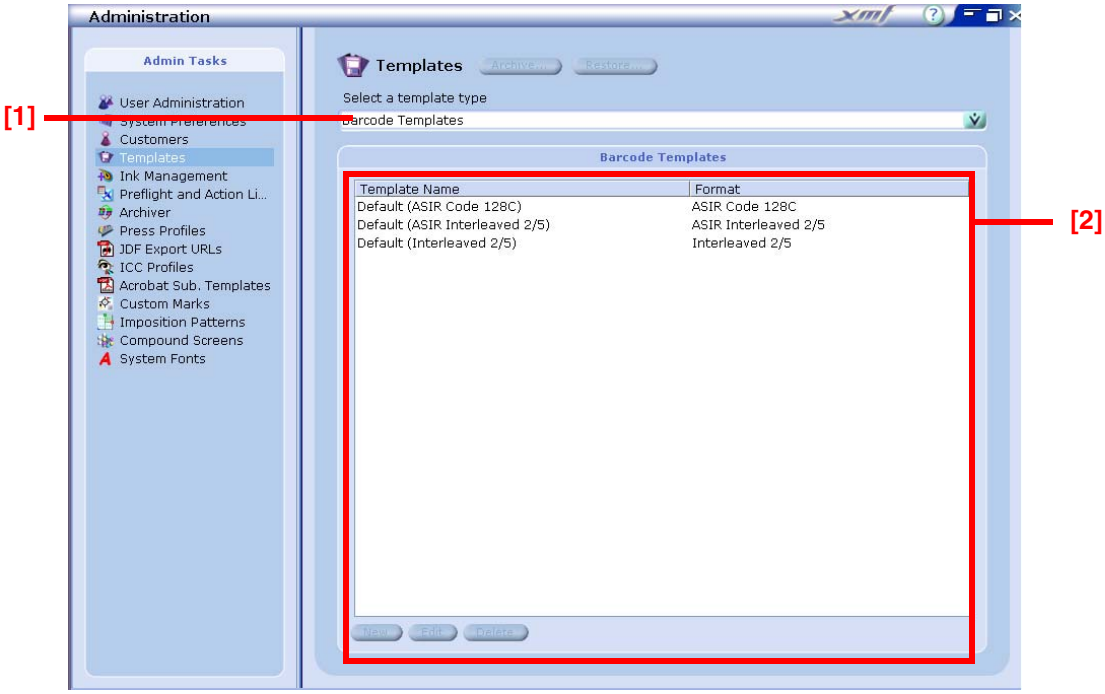
Function Summary

This function generates linear barcodes (ITF codes) as sluglines and management information.

New In addition to the ITF codes of the previous versions, V3.1 also supports the ASIR Code 128C and ASIR Interleaved 2/5 formats. The barcode formats are also displayed in the template list.

Screen Explanation

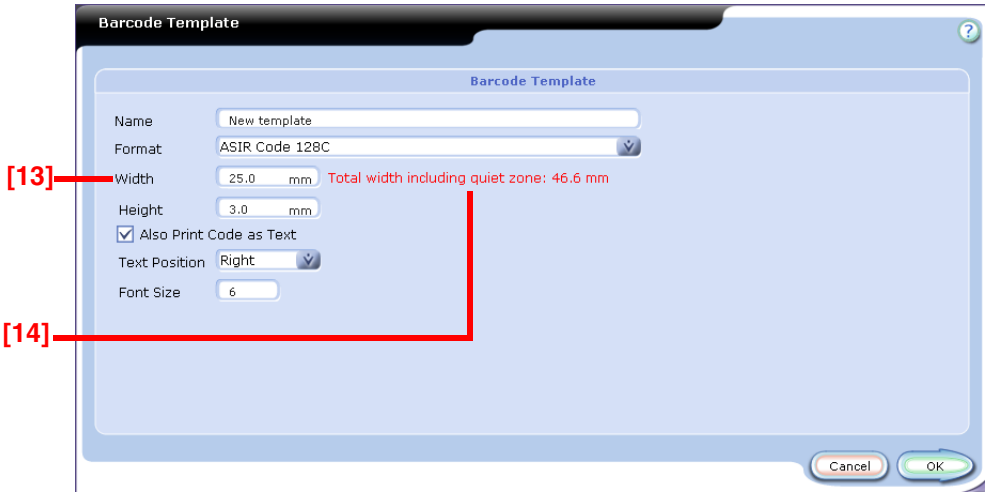
The following areas of the **Templates** window can be operated.



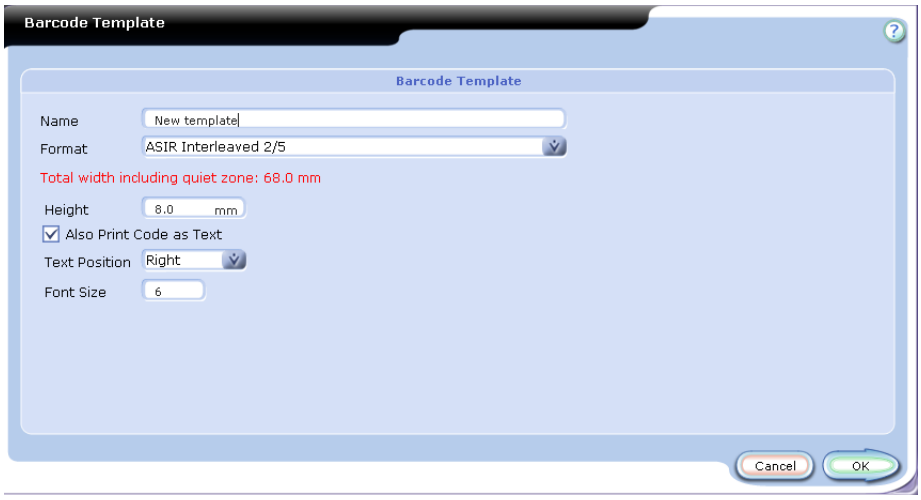
[1]	Template Drop-down List	Select **Barcode Templates** from the list. When selected, all the barcode templates are displayed in the **Barcode Template** list [2].	
[2]	Barcode Templates	Barcode templates can be created or edited from this panel. The creation and editing methods are the same as for the other templates.	
		Double-clicking a template	The **Barcode Template** dialog is displayed. Note that **Default** cannot be edited. Even if this item is double-clicked, the editing window does not open.
		New	Copies the selected template to create a new template. Click this button to display the **Barcode Template** dialog.
		Edit	Edits the selected template. Click this button to display the **Barcode Template** dialog.
		Delete	Click this button to delete the selected barcode template.

The following areas of the **Edit Barcode** dialog can be operated.
When the barcode format is **Interleave 2/5**

When the barcode format is **ASIR Code 128C**



When the barcode format is **ASIR Interleave 2/5**

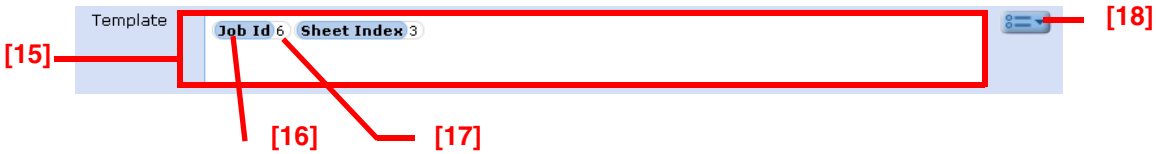


[3]	Name	The user can specify the barcode template name. A maximum of 48 characters can be entered, including spaces.
[4]	Format	Specifies the barcode format.

[5]	Digits	Specify the number of digits in the number to be encoded as a barcode. When [6] is enabled, include the checksum digit. The following can be selected.		
		6	Encodes a number with 6 digits.	
		8	Encodes a number with 8 digits.	
		10	Encodes a number with 10 digits.	
		12	Encodes a number with 12 digits.	
		14	Encodes a number with 14 digits.	
[6]	Include Check Digit	Tick this check box to include the checksum in the barcode. It is the final digit of the barcode.		
[7]	Template	See the template field description.		
[8]	Total Number of Identified Digits	A guideline for the user. The total number of identified digits must match the number of digits specified in [5]. If they do not match, the text turns red to indicate an inconsistency. The number of digits is calculated as follows. x = a + b x = Total number of digits a = 0 or 1 (1: Checksum [6] is enabled, 0: Checksum [6] is disabled) b = Total number of digits identified in the "Template" item For example, in the figure above, the checksum [6] is enabled, 6 follows "Job ID" and 3 follows "Sheet Index." Therefore; a = 1 b = 6 + 3 = 9 x = 1 + 9 = 10.		
[9]	Height	Specifies the barcode height. Does not include the text above and below the barcode. 		
		Minimum	Maximum	Default
		2 mm	50 mm	8 mm
[10]	Also Print Code as Text	When this check box is checked, text information that is readable by humans is printed together with the barcode. When a space is entered between items, and the checksum [6] is enabled, a format with "C" at the end is used. Whether **Text Position** and **Font Size** are enabled or disabled is determined by the on/off of this item.		
		Also Print Code as Text [10]	Text Position [11]	Font Size [12]
		On	On	On
		Off	Off	Off
[11]	Text Position	Specifies the position of the text for the barcode. This can only be specified when **Also Print Code as Text** [10] is ticked. The four options are:		
		Option	Display Format	
		Top		
		Bottom		
		Right (Default)		
		Left		
[12]	Font Size	Specifies the font size of the text in [11]. This can only be specified when **Also Print Code as Text** [10] is ticked.		
		Minimum	Maximum	Default
		1	500	6
[13]	Width	Specifies the barcode width.		

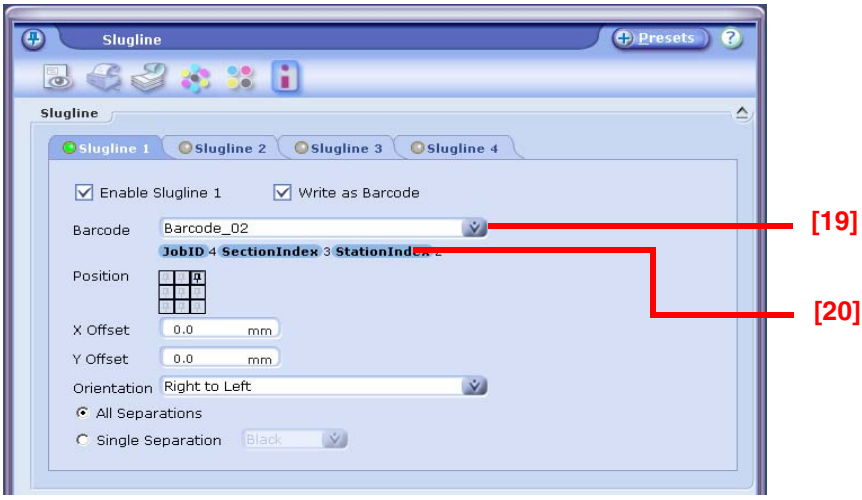
[14]	Total width including quiet zone	Displays the entire width of the barcode, including the quiet zone and character string (if a character string is included).

The following areas of the template field can be operated.



[15]	Item Input Field	• More or less the same as input field in the **File Name Template**. Items can be added from the Item List [18] or deleted using the Delete key. • The difference from the **File Name Template** is that a number follows each item. This number expresses the number of digits to extract from the identified job field. • Only integers from 0 to 9 can be entered. • When an item is added, the number that follows the item and expresses the number of digits is also added at the same time. The default value is set. • When an item is deleted, the number that follows the item and expresses the number of digits is also deleted. • Up to 14 items can be added.	
[16]	Item	The name of the item selected in the Item List [18] and entered in the Item Input Field [15].	
[17]	Number of Item Digits	The user can specify with this value the number of digits to extract from the preceding item. For example, Job ID 6 is shown in the figure above, which means that 6 digits are extracted from the **Job ID** for inclusion in the barcode. The total in [15] is value b in Table 2 [8].	
[18]	Item List	Job ID	The job ID or job number that is displayed in the queue. The default value is 3 digits.
		Job Name End	Extracts the first series of numbers when the job name is read from right to left. If the job name is "ABC-12345-XYZ-56789" and this item is set to 3 digits, the value is "789." The default value is 3 digits.
		Job Name Start	Extracts the first series of numbers when the job name is read from left to right. If the job name is "ABC-12345-XYZ-56789" and this item is set to 3 digits, the value is "345." The default value is 3 digits.
		Section Index	The value for the section order displayed in **Job Structure** of the Job Edit window. When the section name is the default name, **Section 1** = Section Index 1, **Section 2** = Section Index 2. When the section name is customized, the first item in the section order is Section Index 1, and the second is Section Index 2. The default value is 1 digit.
		Output Order	The output order is the separation output order when printing surfaces (as set in the Current Plate Slugline Settings window). The default value is 1 digit.
		Bindery Signature Number	The bindery signature number that is displayed in the **Signature** panel of the Edit Imposition window. The default value is 1 digit.
		Sheet Index	The sheet number that is displayed in the lower area of the Edit Imposition window. The default value is 1 digit.

The following areas of the **Slugline** window can be operated.



[19]	Barcode Drop-down Selector	The QR code and barcode template list. The default barcode when **Write as Barcode** is selected is the QR code.
[20]	Can only be used when both "Enable Slugline" and "Write as Barcode" are ticked.	Displays the items selected in the template and the number of valid digits for each item. Editing cannot be performed here. To edit the contents of this item, the template must be opened by selecting **Administration** > **Templates** > **Barcode Templates**.

Operating Procedure

The following procedure is an example of creating a barcode template and using it inside a job template as a slugline.

① Open the **Administration** window, select **Templates**, and then select **Barcode Templates**.

② Select **Default** and click the **New** button.

③ In the **Digits** drop-down menu, select **14**.

④ Add the **Job Name End** item to **Templates**.

⑤ The total number of digits does not match, so change the number of digits in **Output Order** to "3."

⑥ Enter "My Barcode" in **Name**, and click **OK** to complete the template.

⑦ Create a new job template. In **Administration** > **Templates** > **Job Templates**, select **New Default** and click **New**.

⑧ Add **Plates** to the workflow.

⑨ Select **Plates** and click the **Slugline** icon.

⑩ Tick the **Enable Slugline 1** check box, and then tick the **Write as Barcode** check box.
In the **Barcode** drop-down menu, select "My Barcode."

⑪ Set the other job items and save the template.

⑫ Add **Plates** to the workflow.

This completes the procedure for this example.

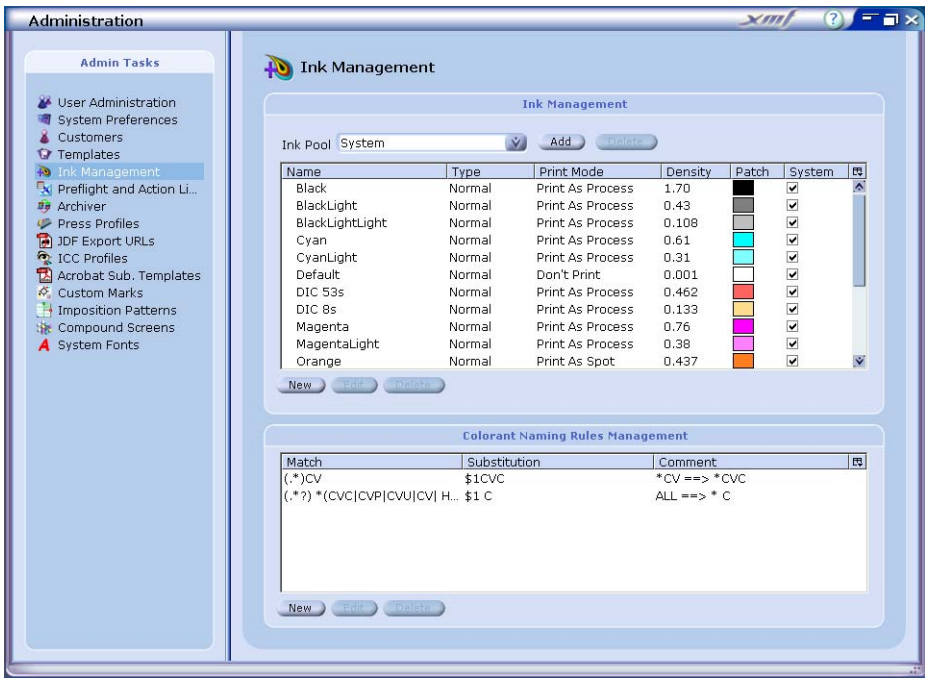
Restrictions

- All barcodes are printed on a white background.
- Because the white background is the same size as the barcode itself, the user must ensure there is sufficient blank margin for the quiet zone that is required by the barcode reader.
- **Barcode Drop-down Selector** can only be used when both **Enable Slugline** and **Write as Barcode** are ticked.

7.5 – Ink Management

This maintains details of all inks used at the system level.

Diagram: Ink Management panel



About Ink management panel

Name	Description
Ink Management	Displays the details of inks of the selected ink pool. • Ink Pool - Select an Ink Pool from the drop-down list. - Add - Click to open the Add New Ink Group dialog where you can add a new Ink Pool. - Delete - Click to delete the selected Ink Pool. • New - Click to add a new ink to the Ink Pool. • Edit - Click to edit the details of the ink selected. • Delete - Click to delete the ink selected.
Colorant Naming Rules Management	Displays Colorant Naming Rules. • New - Click to add a new Colorant Naming Rule. • Edit - Click to edit the Colorant Naming Rule selected. • Delete - Click to delete the Colorant Naming Rule selected.

7.5.1 – Add New Ink Group Dialog

In the Ink Management panel, next to the Ink Pool drop down list, click the Add button to open the Add New Ink Group dialog box.

Diagram: Add New Ink Group dialog

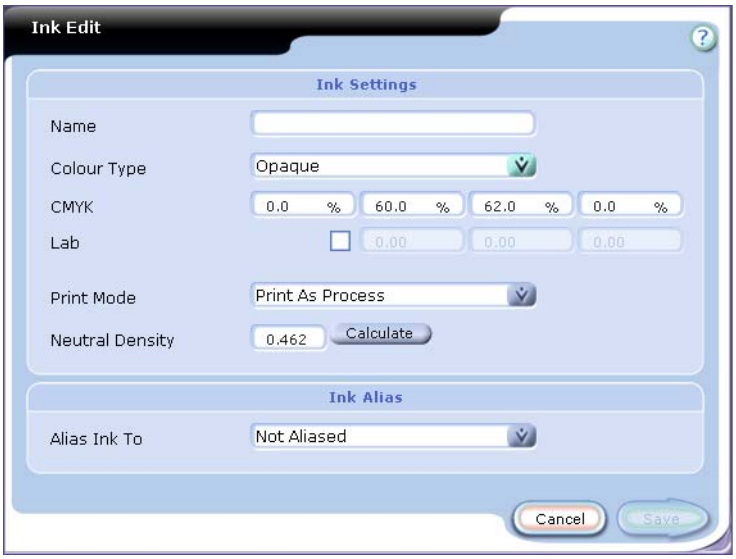
About New Ink Group dialog

Name	Description
Name	Enter the name of the new Ink Pool.
Description	Enter the description of the new Ink Pool.
OK	Click to add the new Ink Pool created to the Ink Pool drop-down list.
Cancel	Click to cancel adding the new Ink Pool.

7.5.2 – Ink Edit Dialog

In the Ink Management panel, select an Ink Pool from the drop down list, then click the New or Edit button to display the dialog.

Diagram: Ink Edit dialog



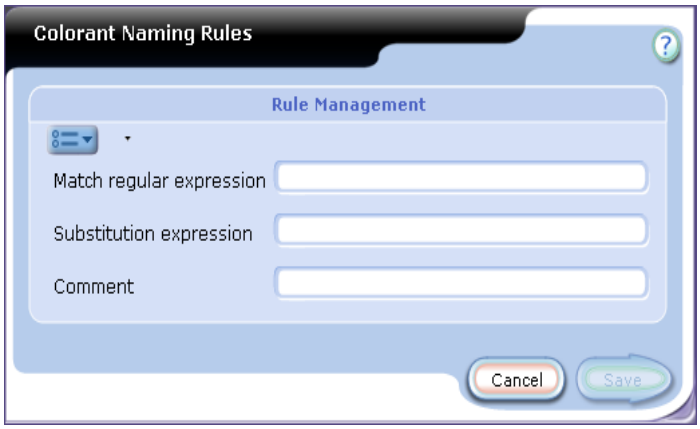
About Ink Edit dialog

Name	Description
Ink Settings	• Name - Enter a name to identify the ink. • Colour Type - Select from the following: - Opaque - For heavy, opaque inks to prevent trapping of underlying colours, but allow for trapping along ink edges, like metallic inks. - Opaque Ignore - For heavy, opaque inks to prevent trapping of underlying colours, and to prevent trapping along ink edges. - Die Line - For die line inks, to ensure that underlying items trap. - Transparent - For varnishes, to ensure that underlying items trap. - Normal - For traditional process inks and most spot inks. • CMYK - If CMYK values are to be used when converting to process, enter the CMYK values for the colour. • Lab - If the check box is selected, the Lab colours will be used in preference to the CMYK colour. If it is cleared the CMYK colour will be used. If Lab values are to be used when converting to process, enter the Lab values for the colour. • Print Mode - When printing this document, choose from the following: - Print As Process - Merge it into the normal CMYK separations. - Don't Print - Do not print this ink at all. (This option may be used for inks that cannot be proofed, like varnish) - Print As Spot - Print this ink as a separate separation. • Neutral Density - The most accurate method of determining an ink's neutral density value is by using a commercial densitometer.
Ink Alias	• Alias Ink To - If a document contains two similar spot colours when only one is required, you can create an alias to a different spot or process colour.
Save	Click to save the edited ink information.
Cancel	Click to cancel editing of the ink.

7.5.3 – Colorant Naming Rules Dialog

To display, click on the New or Edit button in the Colorant Naming Rules Management panel.

Diagram: Colorant Naming Rules dialog



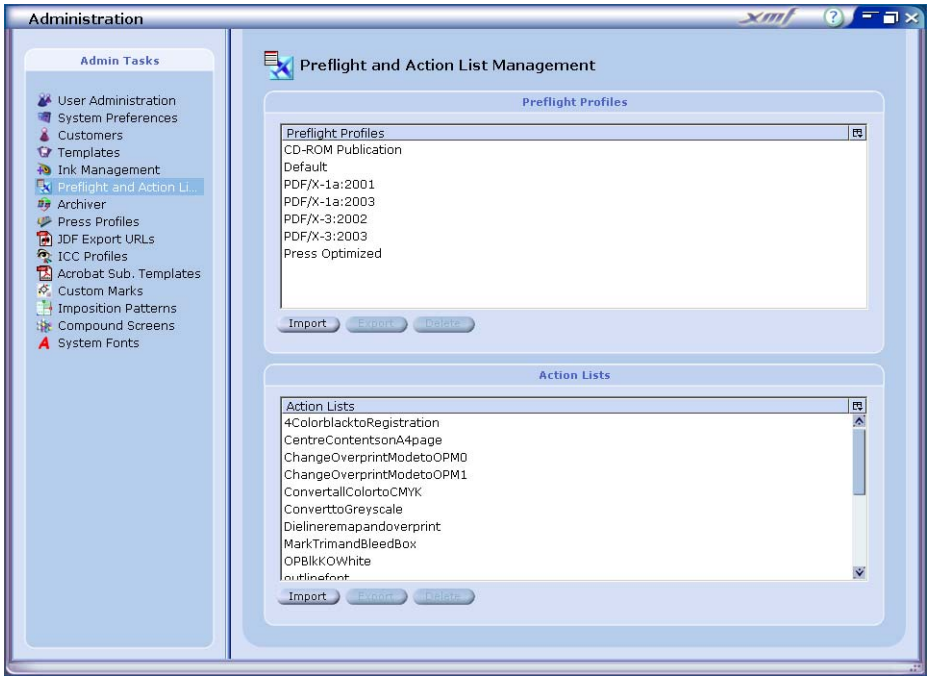
About Colorant Naming Rules dialog

Name	Description
Rule Management	Enter the following information: • Match regular expression - Fixed characters and wild card characters (in the form of a Perl POSIX regular expression). • Substitution expression • Comment
Save	Click to save the information entered.
Cancel	Click to cancel the entries.

7.6 – Preflight and Action List Management

It imports and organises Enfocus Preflight Profiles and Action Lists so they are available to XMF.

Diagram: Preflight and Action List Management panel



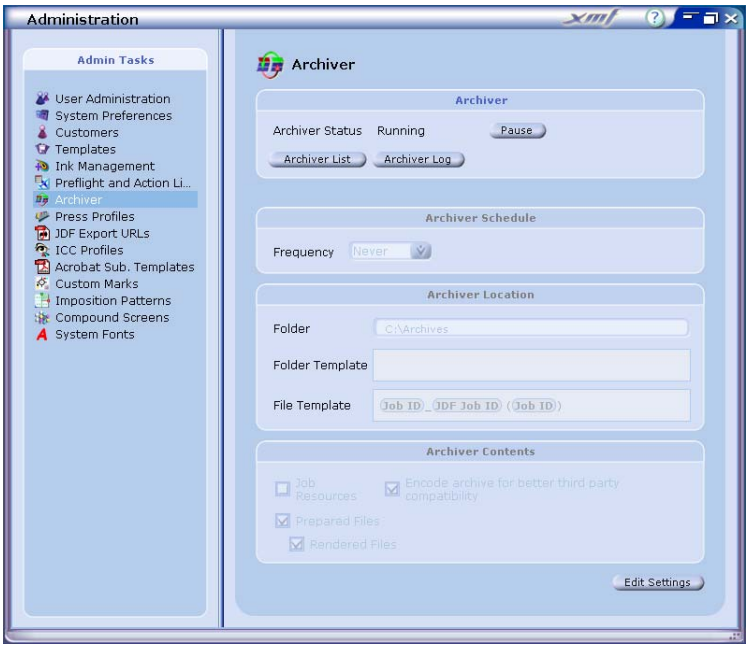
About Preflight and Action List Management panel

Name	Description
Preflight Profiles	Displays Preflight Profiles. • Import - Click to import Preflight Profiles. • Export - Click to export the selected Preflight Profile. • Delete - Click to delete the selected Preflight Profile.
Action Lists	Displays Action Lists. • Import - Click to import Action Lists. • Export - Click to export the selected Action List. • Delete - Click to delete the selected Action List.

7.7 – Archiver

The user can archive jobs and all their associated files to a folder on the XMF Server.

Diagram: Archiver panel



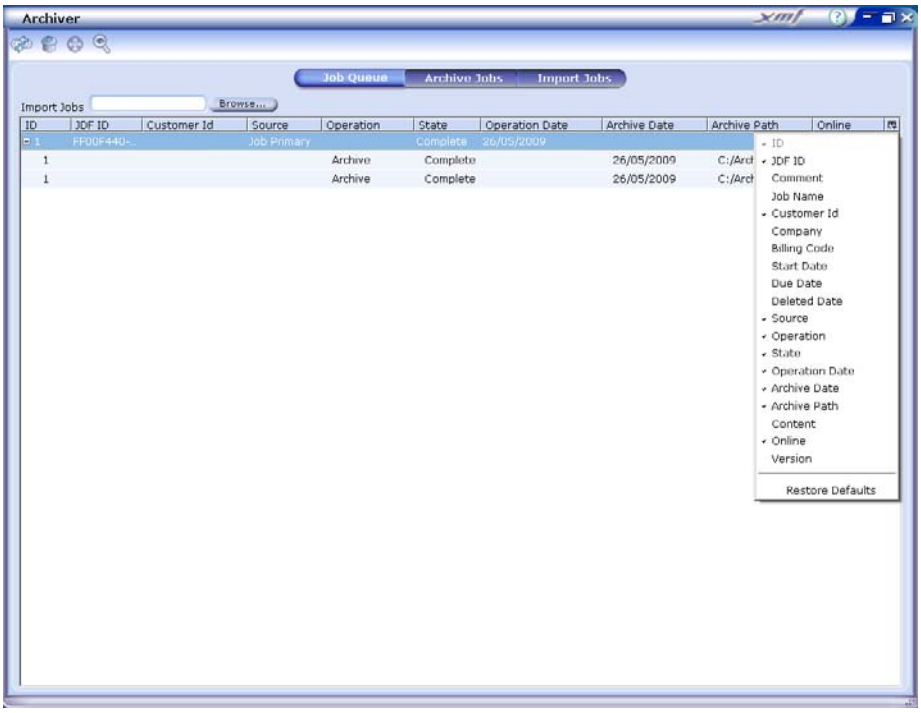
About Archiver panel

Name	Description
Archiver	Enables the user to control the archiving and deletion of jobs. • Archiver Status - Shows the status of the archiver service. • Pause - Click to pause archiving. While paused, the Pause button changes to the Run button; click to resume the operation. • Archiver List - Click to open the Archiver window. See 7.7.1 - Archiver Window. • Archiver Log - Click to open the Archiver Log window. See 7.7.2 - Archiver Log Window.
Archiver Schedule	Displays the current Archiver Schedule. To change the settings, click the Edit Settings button at the bottom right.
Archiver Location	Displays the current Archiver Location. To change the settings, click the Edit Settings button at the bottom right.
Archiver Contents	Displays the current Archiver data types. To change the settings, click the Edit Settings button at the bottom right.
Edit Settings	Click to open the Archiver Settings dialog, where you can edit Archiver Schedule, Archiver Location and Archiver Contents settings.

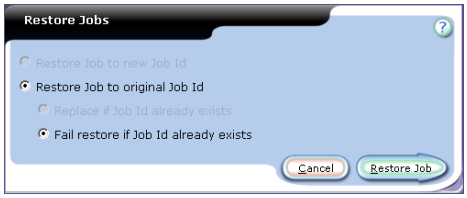
7.7.1 – Archiver Window

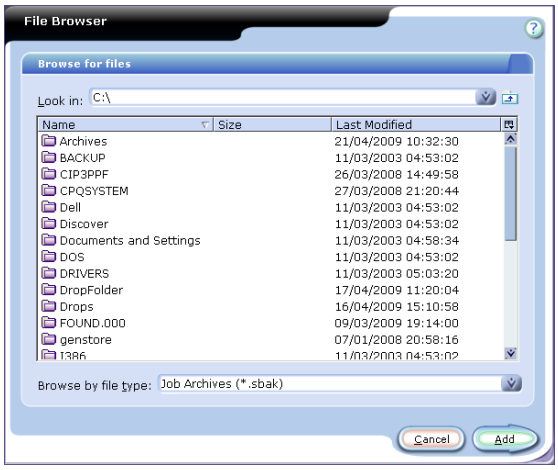
To open this window, click the Archiver List button in the Archiver panel.

Diagram: Archiver window



About Archiver window

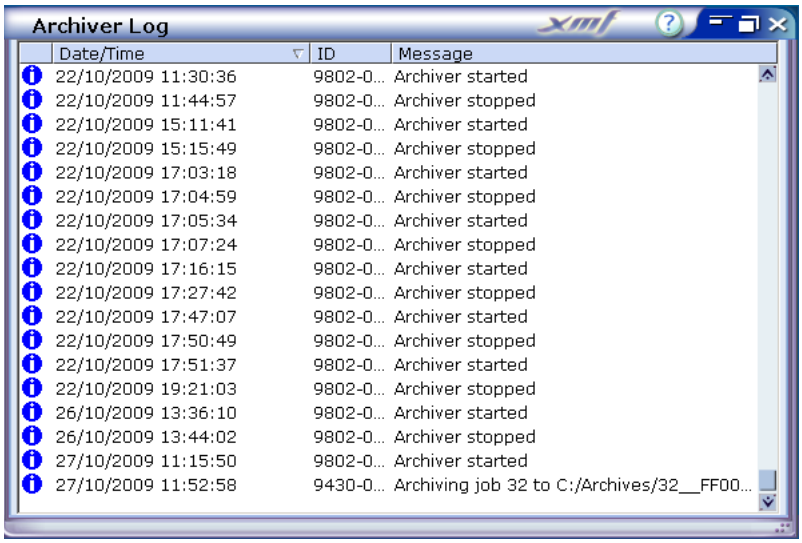
Icon/Name	Description
Press to restore job	Click to open the Restore Jobs dialog below where you can restore a job.  • Restore Job to new Job Id - Enable to restore the job with a new job ID. • Restore Job to original Job Id - Enable to restore the job with its original Job ID. - Replace if Job Id already exists (Only shown if Restore Job to original Job Id is enabled) - If a job with the same ID exists and the check box is enabled, the job will be overwritten. - Fail restore if Job Id already exists (Only shown if Restore Job to original Job Id is enabled) - If a job with the same ID exists and the check box is enabled, the restore will fail. • Restore Job - Restores the job. • Cancel - Cancels the restore.

Icon/Name	Description
Press to activate search options	Enables job search using the following search terms: • Search - Enter a search term. This search term will be searched for in all fields in the list except for the date fields. • Date From - Enter a date to narrow the search to jobs with any activity on or after the entered date. • Date To - Enter a date to narrow the search to jobs with any activity before or on the entered date.
Job Queue	Click to show/hide the jobs in the job queue.
Archive Jobs	Click to show/hide the archived jobs.
Import Jobs	Click to show/hide the imported jobs. Imports jobs that have been moved into off-line storage. - Browse - Click to open the File Browser dialog. Select the required file or directory that contains the required files and click Add. 
Archiver List	Shows details of the jobs that are archived. Click the icon in the top right corner to select from the list of types of details to be displayed. • ID - Job ID • JDF ID - JDF ID of the job • Comment - Other information associated with the job • Job Name - Name of the job • Customer Id - Registered Customer ID • Company - Name of the company • Billing Code - Invoice no. • Start Date - Start date of the job • Due Date - The date the job is due • Deleted Date - Date that the job was deleted from the job queue • Source - Online or offline archival status • Operation - Last archiver operation for the job • State - State of the job when it was archived • Operation Date - Date of last archiver operation • Archive Date - The date that the job was archived • Archive Path - The path to the archived file • Content - The types of files that were archived with the job. Source, Resources, or Intermediate files • Online - Shows if the archive file is available • Version - The version of the database that was being used when the job was archived

7.7.2 – Archiver Log Window

To display, click the Archiver Log button in the Archiver panel.

Diagram: Archiver Log window



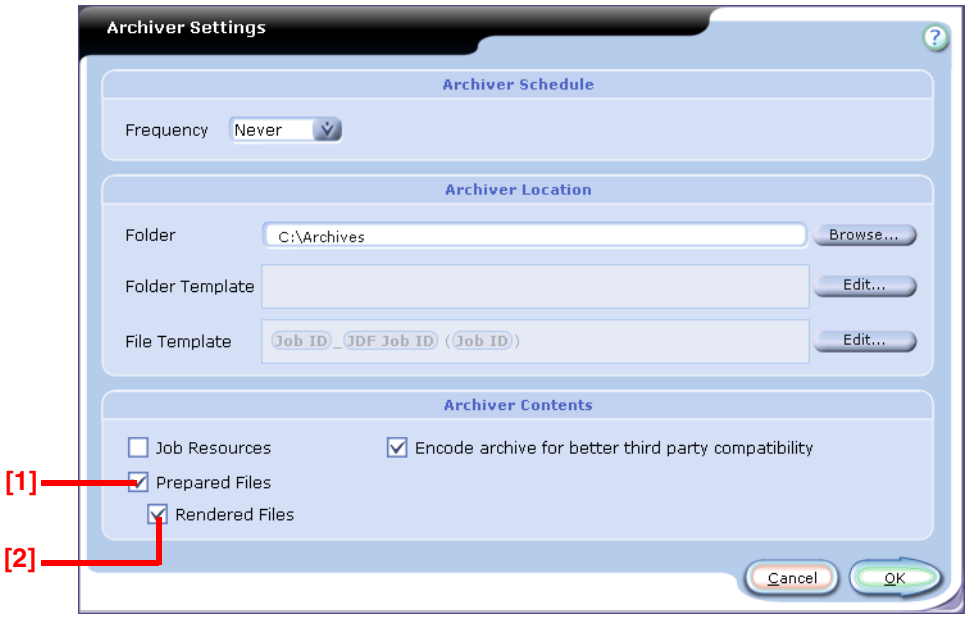
About Archiver Log window

Name	Description
Archiver Log list	Shows a record of all the archive activity.

7.7.3 – Archiver Settings Dialog

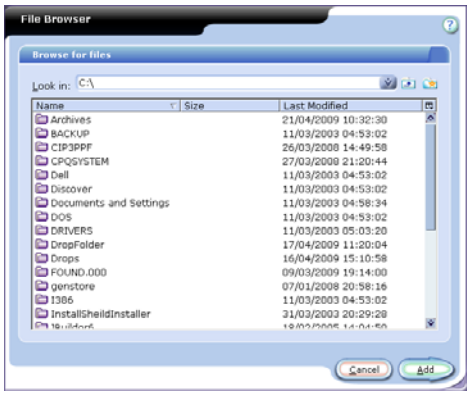
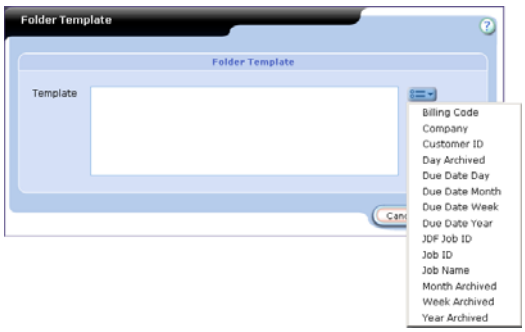
Displays Archiver Schedule, Archiver Location and Archiver Contents.

Diagram: Archiver Settings dialog



About Archiver Settings dialog

Name	Description
Archiver Schedule	• Frequency - Select the frequency of archiving from the drop-down list: - Never - All the archiving must be done manually. - Daily - Enter the time that you want the archive to start on each day. - Weekly - Select the day and the time that you want the archive to start each week. - Monthly - Select the day and its occurrence within the month and the time that you want the archive to start each month.

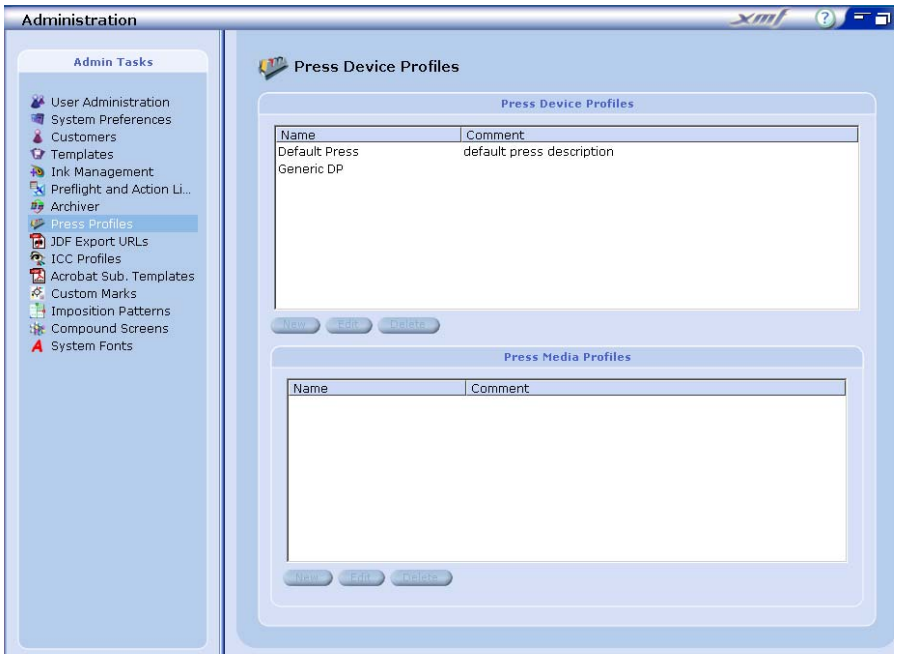
Name	Description
Archiver Location	• Folder - Displays the path to the location where the archive data are stored. To change the location, click the Edit button and select a location in the browser window displayed.  • Folder Template - Using the folder name template enables reorganisation of folders.  • File Template - Generates file names based on the text entered and the variables inserted using the drop-down list.

Name	Description
Archiver Contents	• Job Resources - Enable the check box to include job resources (e.g. ICC profiles) in the archive. • Prepared Files • Rendered Files - Enable the selection either of archiving that includes both the prepared files and the rendered files, or archiving that includes only the prepared files. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Prepared Files -The "prepared files" are all the files that were generated with Page Preparation. Tick this item to include all the prepared files in the archive. [2]: Rendered Files- The "rendered files" are the files that were generated with Plates, Rip Proof, ROOM Proof and PDF Export. Tick this item to include the rendered files in the archive. **Operating Procedure** The procedure for setting "Prepared Files" for the archive is shown below. ① Open the **Administration** window and select **Archiver**. ② In the bottom right of the **Archiver** window, click the **Edit** button. ③ The **Archiver Settings** dialog opens. Tick the **Prepared Files** check box. If the **Prepared Files** and **Rendered Files** check boxes are already ticked, clear the **Rendered Files** check box. ④ Click **OK** to complete the procedure. • Encode archive for better third party compatibility - Enable the check box to archive the data as Base64 encoded data.
OK	Click to save the Archiver Settings.
Cancel	Click to cancel the Archiver Settings.

7.8 – Press Device Profiles

This manages press profiles.

Diagram: Press Device Profiles panel



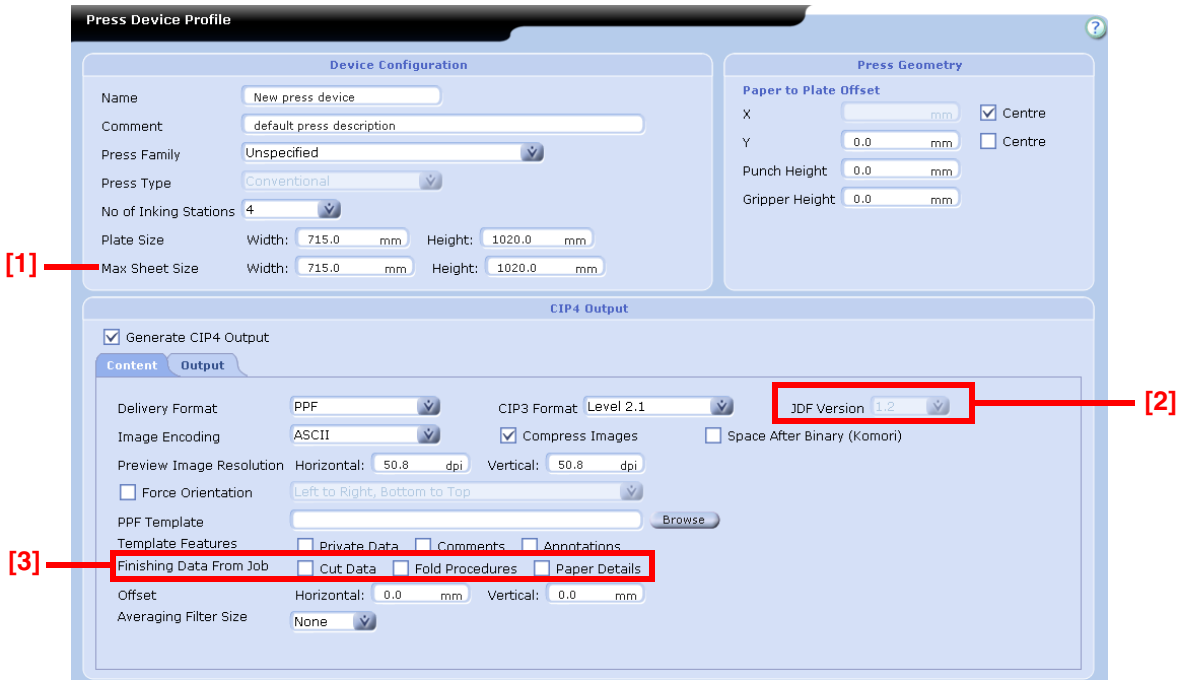
About Press Device Profiles panel

Name	Description
Press Device Profiles	The Presses that can used with the currently operating XMF are displayed in a list. • New - Click to open the Press Device Profile dialog where you can add a new press profile. • Edit - Click to open the Press Device Profile dialog where you can edit the selected press profile. • Delete - Click to delete the selected press profile.
Press Media Profiles	Displays details of all media available on the Press Device, including essential colour and characterisation information for the workflow. • New - Click to add a new media profile. • Edit - Click to edit the selected media profile. • Delete - Click to delete the selected media profile.

7.8.1 – Press Device Profile Dialog

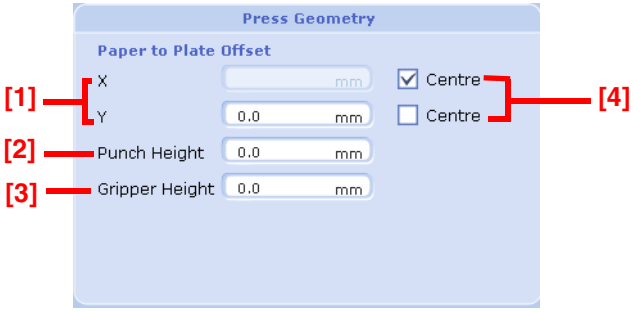
This manages press profiles.

Diagram: Press Device Profile dialog



About Press Device Profile dialog

Name	Description
Device Configuration	This holds the actual parameters of the Press. The Device Configuration settings allow the system to determine specific processing characteristics for your Press. • Name - Enter the name of the Press as it is known in the system. • Comment - Allows the users to provide additional data relevant to the Press. • Press Family - Different Press vendors may require separately customised JMF message formats. The Press Family identifier is used by the system to customise JMF messaging for the selected Press. Select the correct Press Family identifier to match your Press from the drop-down list. • Press Type - The Press Type identifies the category of Press and is used by the system to determine specific processing characteristics, for example to know whether or not plates need to be produced (settings cannot be edited). • No of Inking Stations - The number of inking stations on a Press is used by the system to determine processing characteristics. Select the correct number of inking stations to match your Press from the drop-down list. • Max Format Size - Specify the largest format size that can be printed on the Press. • Max Sheet Size New **Function Summary** You can specify the maximum sheet size to use in Press. **Background** In previous XMF versions, the maximum size for Press could be specified in the Press Device Profile, but this value was used to determine whether the plate size of the press was suitable for Press. In this version upgrade, an item has been added to specify the maximum paper size allowed in Press. **Screen Explanation** [1]: Max Sheet Size - Specifies the maximum size of paper used in Press. **Restrictions** • **Max Sheet Size** is displayed only when Press Max Sheet Size is enabled in the Imposition Editor. • Set so that the maximum size value is not exceeded.

Name	Description
Press Geometry New	**Function Summary** You can set **Offset**, **Punch Height** and **Gripper Height**. **Background** To enable the acquisition of stable output results, the offset, punch height and gripper height for the connected Plates or RIP Proof product can be prioritized for setting. **Screen Explanation**  [1]: X, Y - Enter the offset values in the X direction and Y direction. [2]: Centre - Tick this box to set the centre of the plate automatically. [3]: Punch Height - Enter the punch height. [4]: Gripper Height - Enter the gripper height. **Restrictions** • This function is only enabled when the **Press Device Profile Controls Press Geometry** on the **Device Parameters** panel is ticked. For details, see 3.6.1 - Device Parameters. • If the settings of a press device profile that is already using an existing job are changed, it does not affect the settings of the existing job. • Because the Press settings are prioritized before the imposition template that defines the offset, in some cases the position of the paper on the plate may not be placed correctly.
CIP4 Output/Content	This holds the settings for the format and information to be sent to the press, to control various settings on the press such as inking. The CIP4 output allows ink duct density information to be generated for a Press. • Generate CIP4 Output - Enable to output PPF files, which is ink duct density information for a Press. • Delivery Format - Choose the file format of the output data from the drop-down list. The options are: - PPF - This creates only PPF files and can be used where the Press does not have a JDF interface. - JDF - This creates the PPF files and a JDF file which references the PPF files. The JDF file can be used if the Press has a JDF interface. - JMF - This creates the PPF files, the JDF file and then packages into a JMF message to be sent to the Press if the Press can accept JMF message instructions.

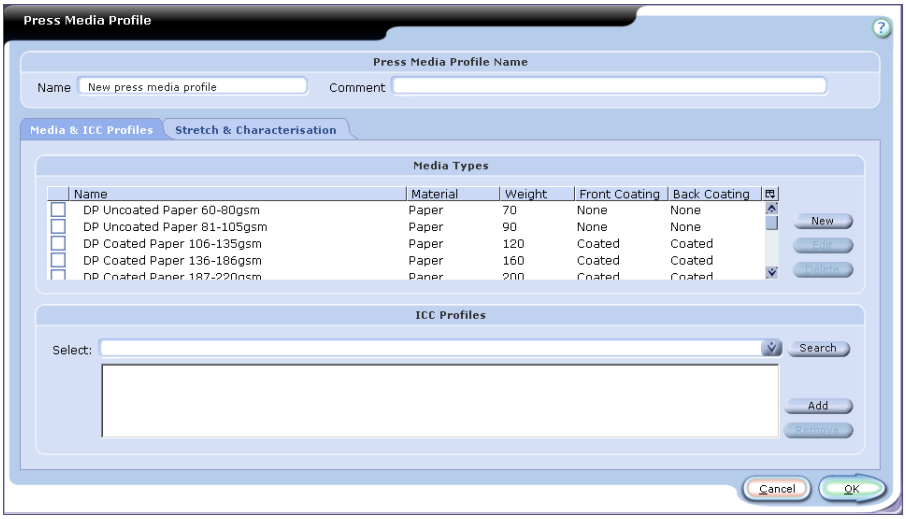
Name	Description
CIP4 Output/Content	• CIP3 Format - This defines the CIP3 specification version level for the data. Your press may not be able to accept a particular version of the specification, so this option lets you choose the version to suit your press. Please note that version 2.1 does not support multiple sheets in one CIP4-PPF file. • JDF Version New **Function Summary** You can specify the JDF output version to use in CIP4. **Background** This version responded to demand for specifying different JDF versions for each output target device. **Screen Explanation** [2]: JDF Version - Select the version from the pull-down list. **Restrictions** • This function is disabled when the PPF format is set for the output file. • When outputting JDF to XMF Remote, the version is fixed at 1.2. • Image Encoding - The image data can be compressed to save space. Select an encoding type from the drop-down list. The options are: - Binary - Used for raw binary data without any special encoding applied. Where binary data are used, some Press types like Komori require white space to be added at the end of the data. Check your Press operation information to see if this is required. - ASCII - ASCII 85 with run-length coding is a good compromise between file size and readability. - Hex • Preview Image Resolution - The Preview Image Resolution creates preview images that are used to calculate the Press ink consumption, and should be generated with an appropriate resolution for your Press. It is strongly recommended that the preview image resolution must be no less than 2 pixels/mm (or 50.8 dpi). • Force Orientation - Defines the orientation in which the image needs to be read by the press control application. • PPF Template - The PPF template option allows the user to create more comprehensive CIP4 data by importing information from an existing CIP3 or CIP4-PPF file produced from another application (e.g. an Imposition package) and using that data to complement the CIP4 data created by the system. Enter the path of the file, or click the Browse button to locate the file. If you do not want to use a template, then leave the text box empty. • Template Features - Tick the check boxes to define which information should be included in the final output. • Finishing Data From Job New **Function Summary** Outputs information for the last job data to a PPF file. **Background** New output items were added to improve the utility of the PPF files. **Screen Explanation** [3]: Finishing Data From Job - Tick the boxes of the information that you want to include in the final output. - Cut Data - Extracts cut data from the place and output it to a PPF file. - Fold Procedures - Extracts information about the sheet order and outputs it to a PPF file. - Paper Details - Outputs the CIP3AdmPaperGrammage and CIP3AdmPaperThickness to a PPF file, together with settings based on the media type information set for the output paper.

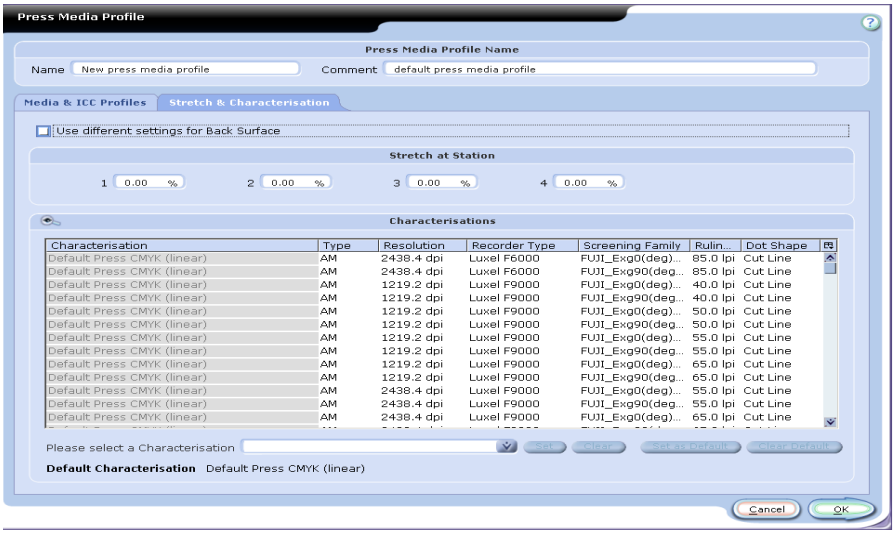
Name	Description
CIP4 Output/Content	**Restrictions** • The cut data and fold procedures are output when the imposition is in the stripping format, but they are not output for the layout format. • When the paper thickness and weight are set to 0 (zero), these values are not output. • Offset - Enter the offset values. • Averaging Filter Size - The optional averaging filter can be used when generating the CIP4 preview image data.
CIP4 Output/Output	• Job Code Format - An optional part of the specification and can be used to provide additional data that some Press vendors are able to read and display. Select the appropriate identifiers you would like to be displayed from the option list. Select from output file name templates. • Job Name Format - Select a job name format from the output file name templates. • PPF Output File Path - Specify the folder where the PPF files are generated. • PPF Output File Name Template - Select a PPF output file name template from the output file name templates. • Directory Creation - Specifies multiple sheet information in a single PPF file. When selected, it places directory reference data at the front of the PPF file which allows the PPF file to be processed more efficiently by the Press. • Control File Output - PPF data can be split into different sections and created as separate PPF files depending on the Press requirement. Select from the following drop-down list options: - One per surface - Creates a PPF file containing all the ink colour information for each surface of every sheet. So two sheets both with front and back surface data for CMYK inks produce four separate PPF files. - One per plate - Creates a PPF file containing only one ink colour for each surface of every sheet. So two sheets with both front and back surface data for CMYK inks produce 16 separate PPF files. - One per sheet - Creates a PPF file containing all the ink colour information for both front and back surface for every sheet. So two sheets with both front and back surface data for CMYK inks produce two separate PPF files. • JDF Output File Path - This is required when the JDF output delivery format is selected, and is used to specify the folder where the JDF file is generated. Either type in the path to the folder in the text box, or use the browse button to locate the folder. • JMF Notify URL - This is required when the JMF output delivery format is selected and is used to specify the Press HTTP address where the JMF message will be sent. Type in the HTTP address for the Press directly into the text box . • Additional Viewable Previews - Select the display format of the output PPF files.
OK	Click to save the Press Device Profile settings.
Cancel	Click to cancel the Press Device Profile settings.

7.8.2 – Press Media Profile Dialog

A Press Media Profile needs to be created for each media used on this press, so that the correct characterisation of a Proofer simulation can be selected.

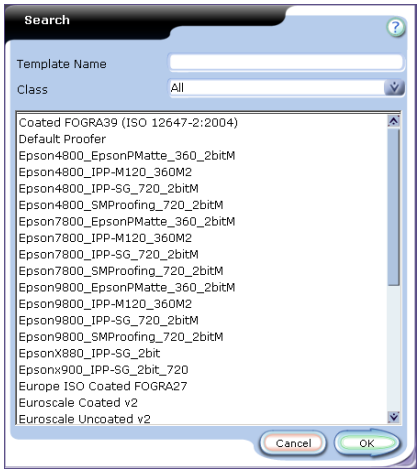
Diagram: Press Media Profile dialog





About Press Media Profile dialog

Name	Description
Press Media Profile Name	• Name - Enter an identifying name for the media to which this profile refers. • Comment - Enter any other information you would like to store to help you identify the profile.

Name	Description
Media & ICC Profiles	• Media Types - Select the Media type to which this Media Profile is associated. If your Press media is not displayed here, you need to create it in the Calibration Manager. - New - Click to open the Media Type Editor where you can create a new media type. See 7.8.3 - Media Type Editor. - Edit - Click to edit the selected media type. - Delete - Click to delete the selected media type. • ICC Profiles - Select a profile from the list and click one of the following buttons: - Search - Click to display a list of profiles that are on the system and known by XMF. Click the required profile and then click the OK button.  - Add - Click to add profiles to the list of available profiles. - Remove - Click to remove the selected profile from the system.
Stretch & Characterisation	• Use different settings for Back Surface - This function performs the "Stretch & Characterisation" setting for the back surface. For details, see 7.8.2.1 - Characterisation for 'Back' Surface. • Stretch at Station - Sets the paper stretch correction factor for each inking station. The setting range is -0.300% to 0.300%. **Note** • When a value outside the allowed range is entered, the **Stretch at Station** value is displayed in red. If another text box or the **OK** button is clicked in this condition, the **Stretch at Station** value is changed automatically to the nearest allowed value. • Characterisations- This is essential to get accurate colour output for your Press and can be created using the Calibration Manager. A list of screens is displayed to allow you to select the correct characterisations for each screen type.
OK	Click to save the Press Media Profile settings.
Cancel	Click to cancel the Press Media Profile settings.

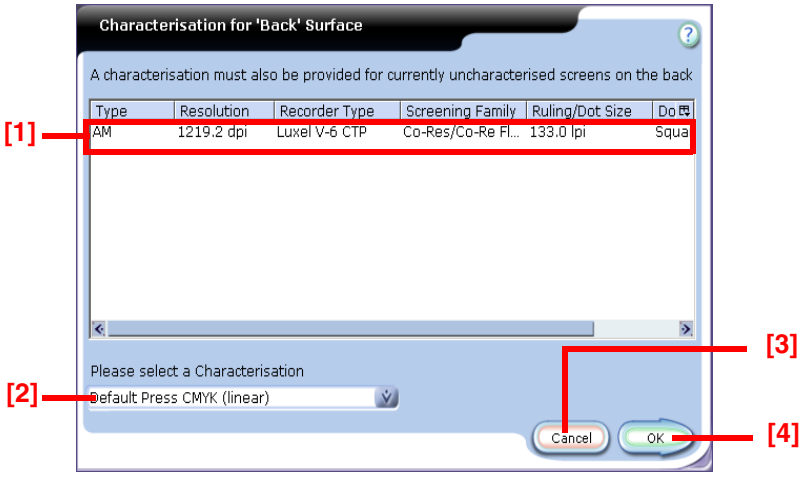
7.8.2.1- Characterisation for 'Back' Surface

Function Summary

This function performs the stretch and characterisation setting for the back surface.
Different settings can be applied to the front surface and back surface.

Screen Explanation

When the characterisation is set, the following dialog is displayed.



[1]	Affected Screens	The screens on the opposite surface that require adjustment are displayed in a list.
[2]	Characterisation Drop-down Menu	In this menu, the characterisation to apply can be selected from the registered characterisations.
[3]	Cancel	Click this button to close the dialog without changing the Front and Back setting.
[4]	OK	Click this button to change the Front and Back setting and close the dialog.

Operating Procedure

In the procedure below, a new "Press Media Profile" is created and the "Stretch & Characterisation" for the front and back are set individually.

① Open the **Administration** window and select **Press Profiles**.

② In **Press Device Profiles**, select **Default Press**.

③ In **Press Media Profiles**, select **Default**, and click the **New** button to create a press media profile.

④ In the **Press Media Profiles** dialog, select **Stretch & Characterisation**.

⑤ Tick the **Use different settings for Back Surface** check box.
The current tab name changes to **Stretch & Characterisation Front**, and **Stretch & Characterisation Front** is added to the right side of the tab.

⑥ In the **Please select a Characterisation** menu, select **Default Press CMYK (linear)** and click the **Set as Default** button.

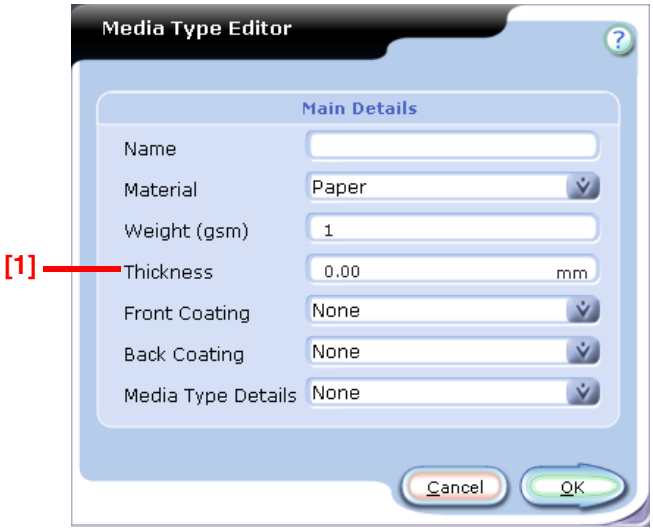
⑦ In the **Default Characterisation for 'Back' Surface** dialog, select a characterisation other than **Default Press CMYK (linear)** and click **OK**.
If no other characterisations exist, create a new characterisation in advance with the **Calibration Manager**.

⑧ Click the **OK** button. Different characterisations are applied to the front surface and back surface.

7.8.3 – Media Type Editor

Clicking on the New button in the Media & ICC Profiles panel of the Press Media Profile dialog will open this dialog, where you can create a new media type.

Diagram: Media Type Editor



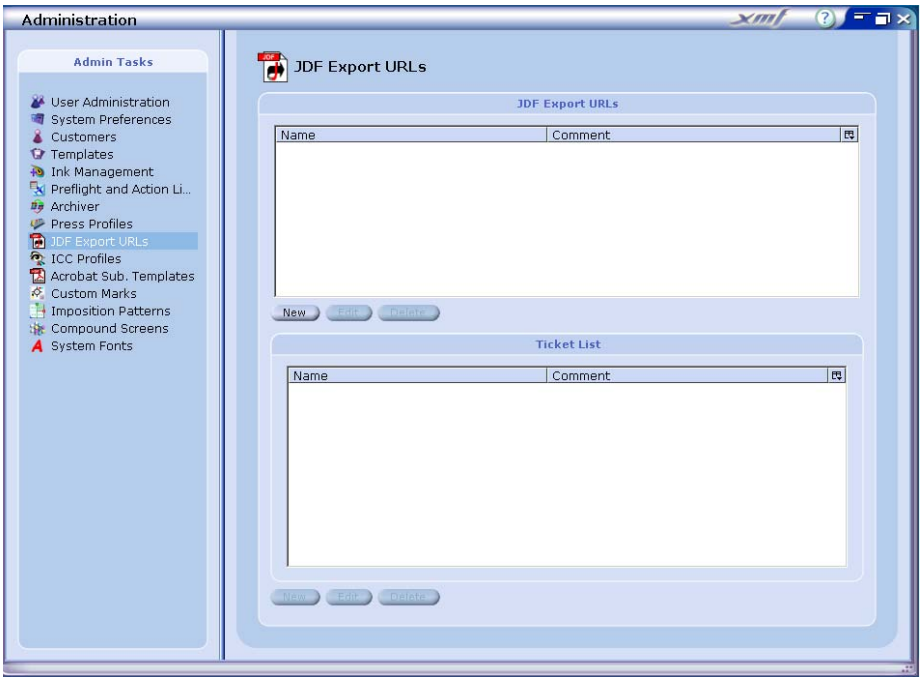
About Media Type Editor

Name	Description
Main Details	• Name - Enter an identifying name for the media. • Material - Select paper or transparency from the drop-down list as appropriate. • Weight (gsm) - Enter the weight of the media (g/m2). • [1]: Thickness New - Enter the media thickness. **Restrictions** • When the value is set to 0 (zero), paper thickness information is not included in the PPF file. • Front Coating - If only the front side of the media is coated, select an option other than None from the drop-down list. • Back Coating - If only the back side of the media is coated, select an option other than None from the drop-down list. • Media Type Details - Select any additional details about the media type from the drop-down list.

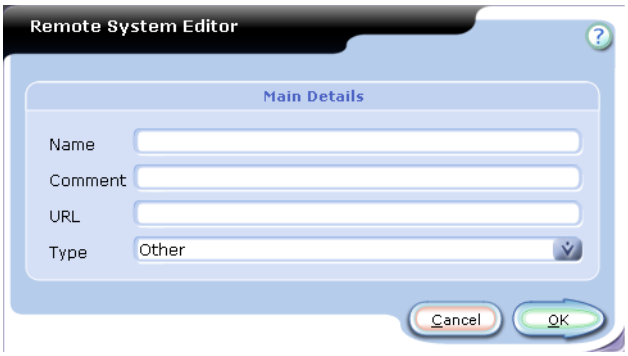
7.9 – JDF Export URLs

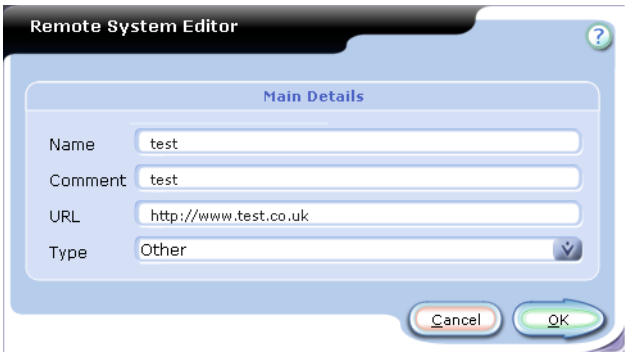
The JDF Export URLs panel is used to define the URLs required when exporting JDF data.

Diagram: JDF Export URLs panel



About JDF Export URLs panel

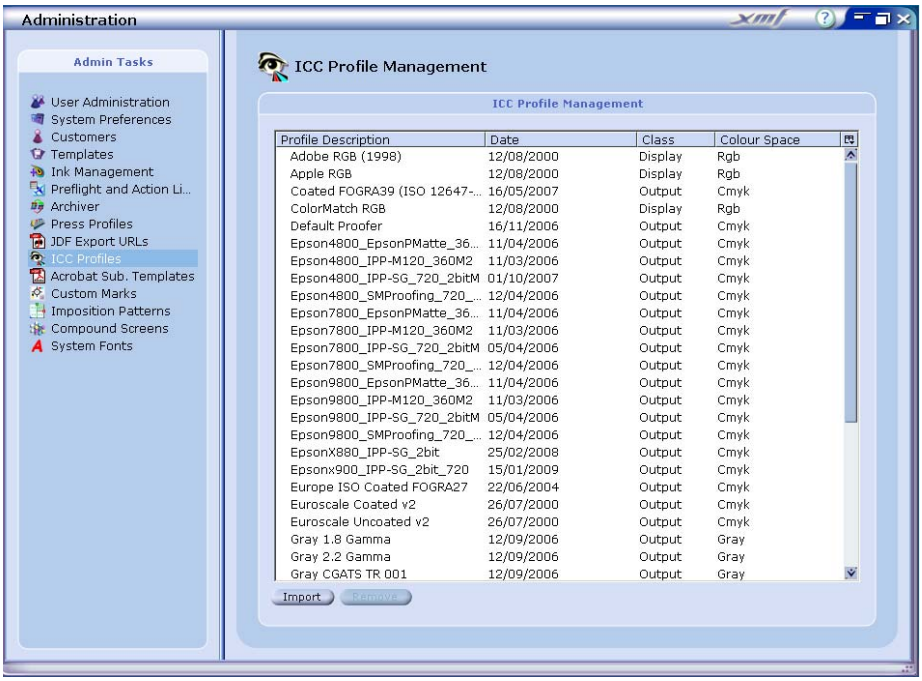
Name	Description
JDF Export URLs	Displays a list of JDF Export URLs. New - Click to open Remote System Editor where you can create a new JDF Export URL.  Enter the following and click the OK button: - Name - Enter the name to be included in the drop down list of JDF Export URLs. - Comment - Enter a comment. - URL - Enter the HTTP location of the remote system. - Type New - Select the type of the Remote system. For details, see 3.15.5.4 - JDF Export URLs.

Name	Description
JDF Export URLs	• Edit - Click to open Remote System Editor where you can edit the selected JDF Export URL.  • Delete - Click to delete the selected JDF Export URL.
Ticket List	Displays a list of Tickets. New - Click to open the New Ticket dialog where you can create a new ticket. Enter the following and click the OK button: - New Ticket Name - Enter the name to be included in the ticket drop-down list of JDF Export Tickets. - New Ticket Description - Enter a comment. • Edit - Click to edit the selected ticket. • Delete - Click to delete the selected ticket.

7.10 – ICC Profile Management

This is used to import ICC Profiles used for XMF system or remove them.

Diagram: ICC Profile Management panel



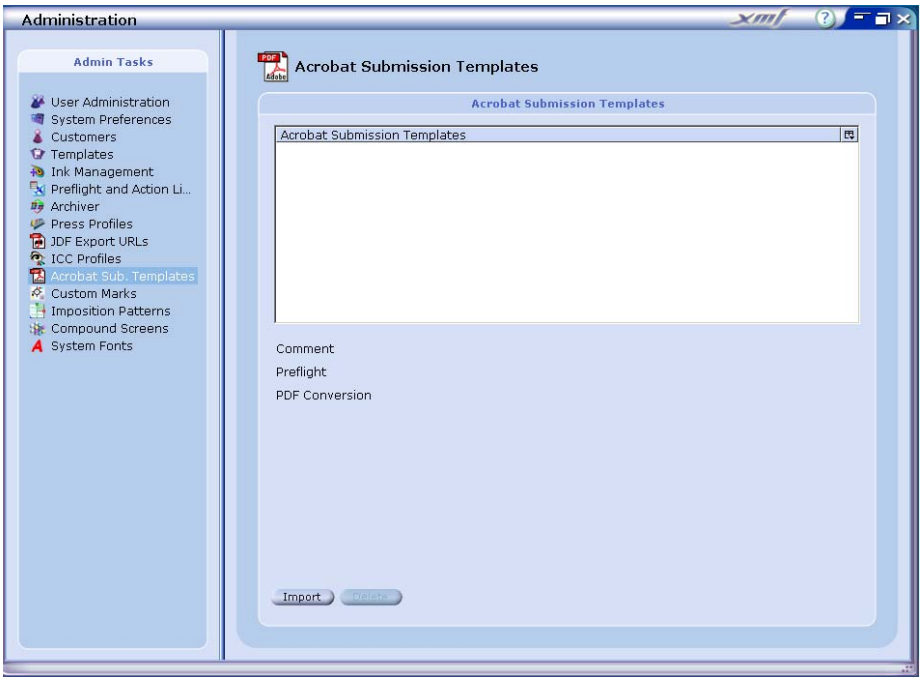
About ICC Profile Management panel

Name	Description
ICC Profile management	Displays a list of available ICC profiles. • Profile Description - A name to identify the ICC Profile. • Date - The date on which the profile was created. • Class - The class of profile. This is either: - Input - Profiles for the image input device, such as a scanner or a digital camera. - Output - Profiles for the image output device, such as a printing press or a proofer. - Display - RGB display profiles. - Link - Device Link Profiles. • Colour Space - The colour space for the profile, e.g. CMYK and RGB. In the case of the Device Link Profile, CMYK-CMYK is displayed, each corresponding to the input and output colour space. • Import - Click to import a profile into the system. • Remove - Click to remove the selected ICC profile.

7.11 – Acrobat Submission Templates

This imports and manages Acrobat submission templates.

Diagram: Acrobat Submission Templates panel



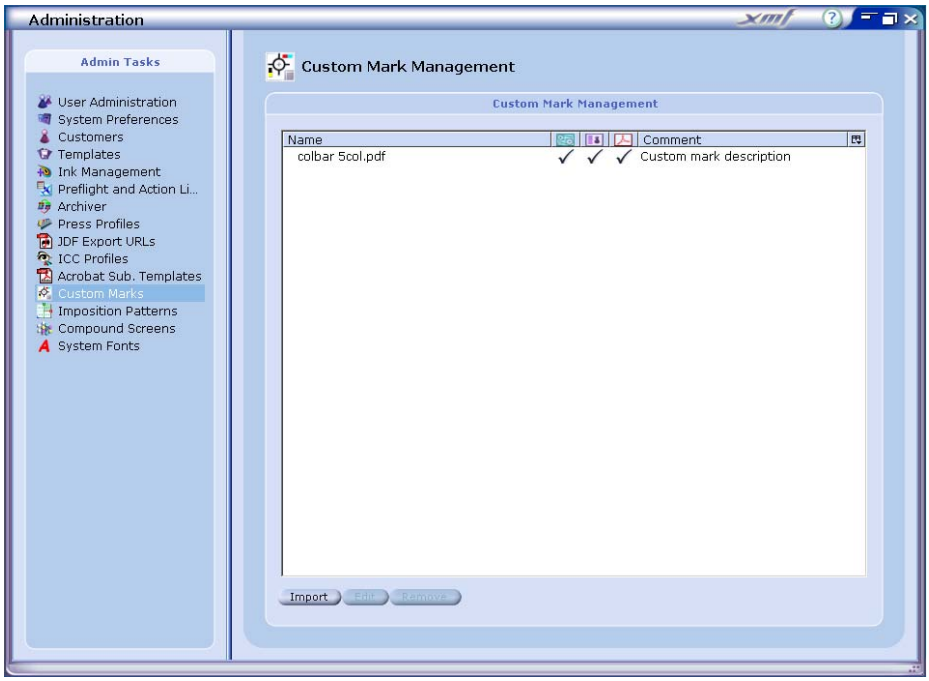
About Acrobat Submission Templates panel

Name	Description
Acrobat Submission Templates	Displays a list of Acrobat Submission Templates. • Import - Clicking this button enables to import an Acrobat submission template from the file on disk. Note that supported formats are JDF, MJD and MJM. • Delete - Click to delete the selected Acrobat submission template.

7.12 – Custom Mark Management

This is used to import and manage custom marks within the XMF system.

Diagram: Custom Mark Management panel



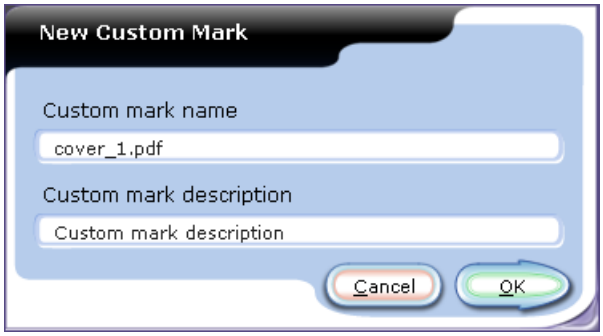
About Custom Mark Management panel

Name	Description
Custom Mark Management	Displays a list of custom marks. • Import - Clicking this button enables you to name the imported mark and provide a comment. See 7.12.1 - New Custom Mark Dialog. • Edit - Click to open the Custom Mark Edit dialog where you can define the name and output target etc. See 7.12.2 - Custom Mark Edit Dialog. • Remove - Click to remove the selected custom mark.

7.12.1 – New Custom Mark Dialog

Click Import in the Custom Mark Management panel and select a file in the file browser to open this panel.

Diagram: New Custom Mark dialog



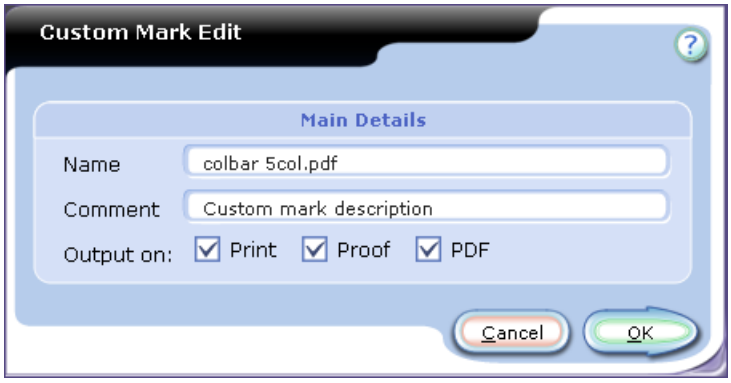
About New Custom Mark dialog

Name	Description
Custom mark name	Enter the custom mark name.
Custom mark description	Enter a comment.
OK	Click to import the custom mark.
Cancel	Click to cancel custom mark import.

7.12.2 – Custom Mark Edit Dialog

Clicking the Edit button on the Custom Mark Management panel opens this dialog, where you can define name and output target etc.

Diagram: Custom Mark Edit dialog



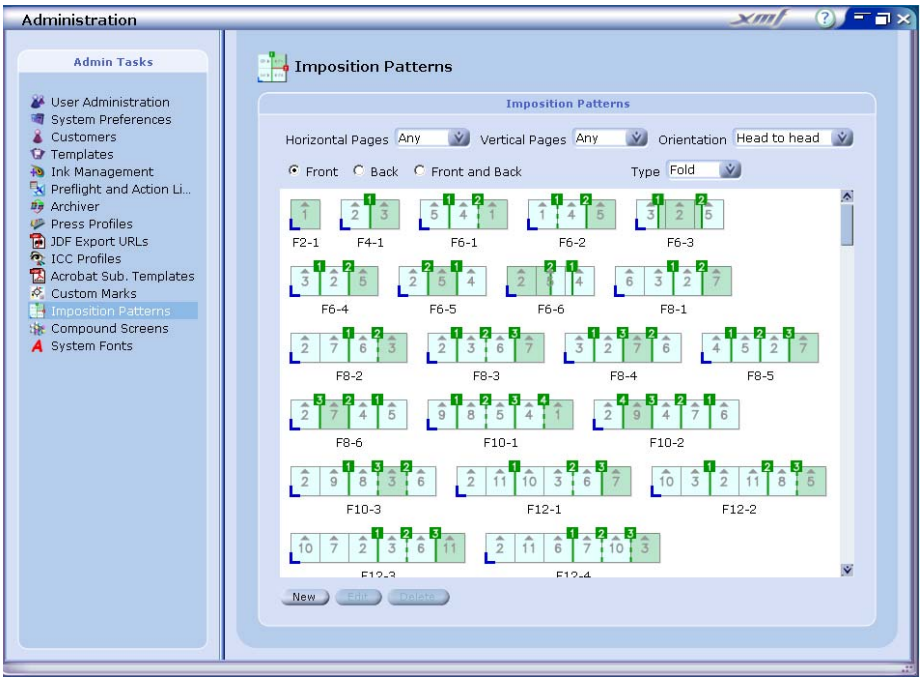
About Custom Mark Edit dialog

Name	Description
Mark Details	Allows the user to define name and output target etc. • Name - Shows the name of the selected custom mark. This can be edited. • Comment - Add a comment that will be associated with the custom mark. • Output on - Tick the check box(es) to select the output target for the mark. This will be used as the default settings on the Custom Marks panel of the Imposition Viewer.
OK	Click to save the edits.
Cancel	Click to cancel the edits.

7.13 – Imposition Patterns

This manages the imposition patterns used in the XMF system. Imposition patterns contain controls to dictate how many pages per sheet, how the sheet is laid out and individual page orientation.

Diagram: Imposition Patterns panel



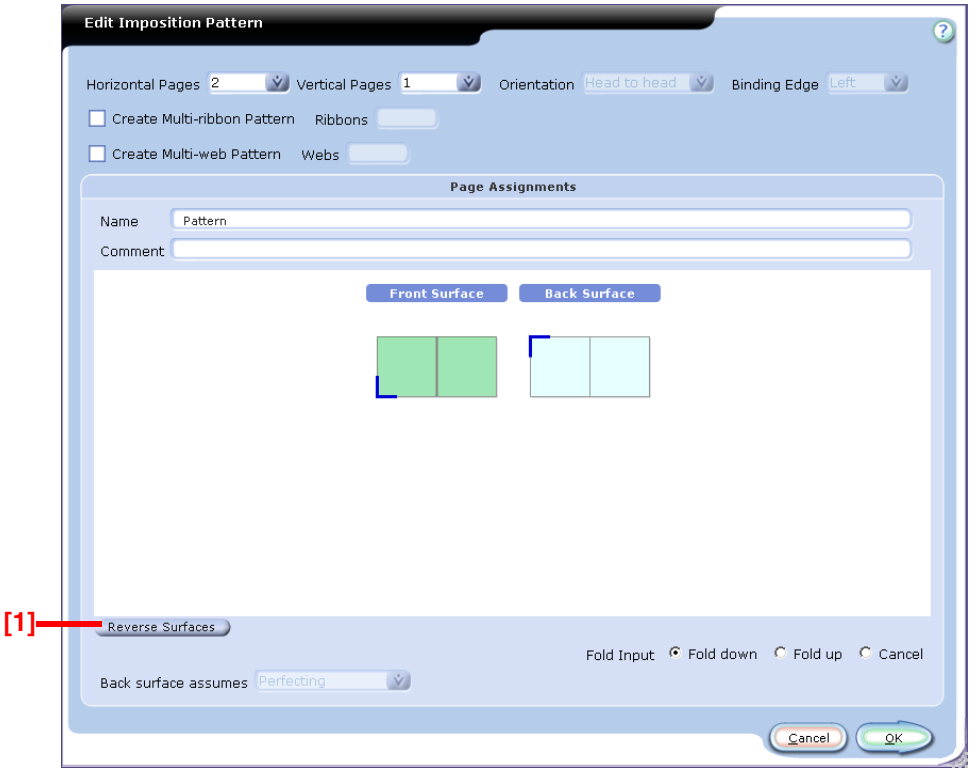
About Imposition Patterns panel

Name	Description
Imposition Patterns	Displays all available imposition patterns and allows for creation of new, and editing and deleting of existing patterns. • Horizontal Pages - Select the number of pages across a sheet from the drop-down list. • Vertical Pages - Select the number of pages down a sheet from the drop-down list. • Orientation - This setting specifies the direction of the pages. Select from Head to head or Foot to foot. • Front/Back/Front and Back - To set the front and back pages, select the relevant page(s) and tick Front, Back or Front and Back. • Type - Select from Fold and Grid. • New - Click to open the Edit Imposition Pattern dialog where you can create a new imposition pattern. • Edit - Click to open the Edit Imposition Pattern dialog where you can edit the selected imposition pattern. • Delete - Click to delete the selected imposition pattern.

7.13.1 – Edit Imposition Pattern

The dialog creates/edits the imposition patterns used in the XMF system.

Diagram: Edit Imposition Pattern dialog



About Edit Imposition Pattern dialog

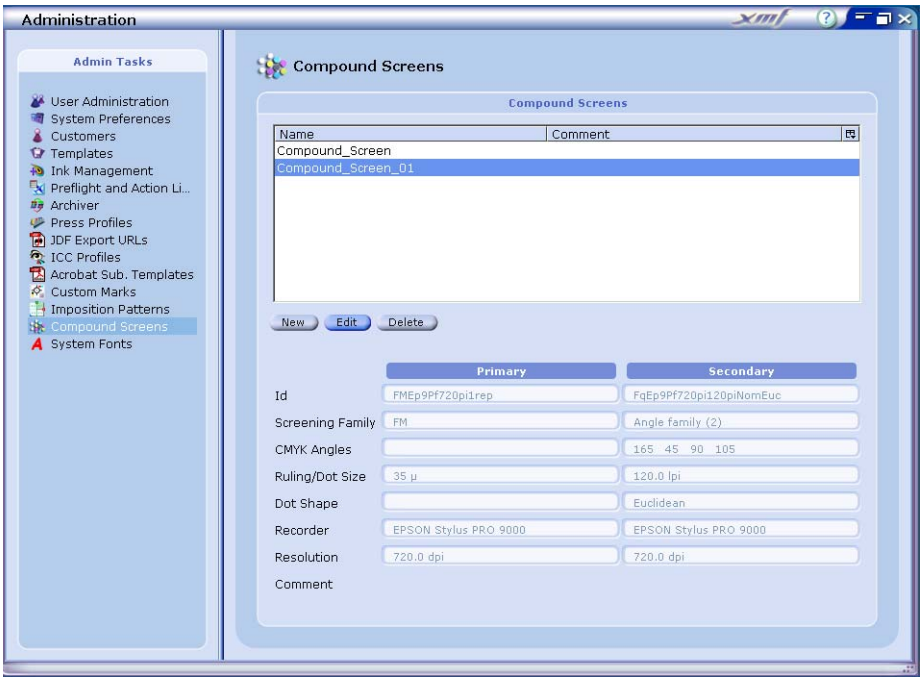
Name	Description
Horizontal Pages	Select the number of pages across a sheet from the drop-down list.
Vertical Pages	Select the number of pages down a sheet from the drop-down list.
Orientation	This setting specifies the direction of the pages. Select from Head to head or Foot to foot.
Create Multi-ribbon Pattern	Tick to create an imposition pattern that supports ribbon processor types. For details, see 4.3.4.2 - Ribbon Support.
Create Multi-web Pattern	Tick to create an imposition pattern that supports multi-web specification web presses. For details, see 4.3.4.3 - Multi-web Support.
Back surface assumes	Select a work style from the drop-down list. The options available are: • Perfecting • Sheet work • Work and tumble • Work and turn • Single Sided

Name	Description
[1]: Reverse Surfaces	**Function Summary** Click this button to reverse the front and back of the imposition pattern being edited and rotate it by 180 degrees. The imposition patterns for which this button is enabled are displayed in the **Imposition Patterns** window, after reversing them and rotating them by 180 degrees. **Restrictions** • Switching between **Head to head** and **Foot to foot** may place Page 1 on the back. If this happens, restore the correct orientation by selecting a pattern from the drop-down menu. • When **Create Multi-web Pattern** is ticked, the stacking order is also reversed.
Fold Input	• Fold down - Select this for downward fold. • Fold up - Select this for upward fold. • Cancel - When you select Cancel from the Fold Input and click the folding line that has been input, you can delete the line.
OK	Click to save the edits.
Cancel	Click to cancel the edits.

7.14 – Compound Screens

This allows users to set up and apply a different screen set (e.g. AM and FM) for printing spot colours.

Diagram: Compound Screens panel



About Compound Screens panel

Name	Description
Compound Screens	Displays a list of compound screens. • New - Click to open the Compound Screen Editor, where you can specify which colours should pertain to the primary and secondary screens. • Edit - Click to open the Compound Screen Editor, where you can edit the selected setting. • Delete - Click to delete the selected compound screen. • Primary - Displays the settings of the primary screen as defined in the Compound Screen Editor. • Secondary - Displays the settings of the secondary screen as defined in the Compound Screen Editor.

7.14.1 – Compound Screen Editor

Allows users to specify which colours should pertain to the primary and secondary screens.

Diagram: Compound Screen Editor

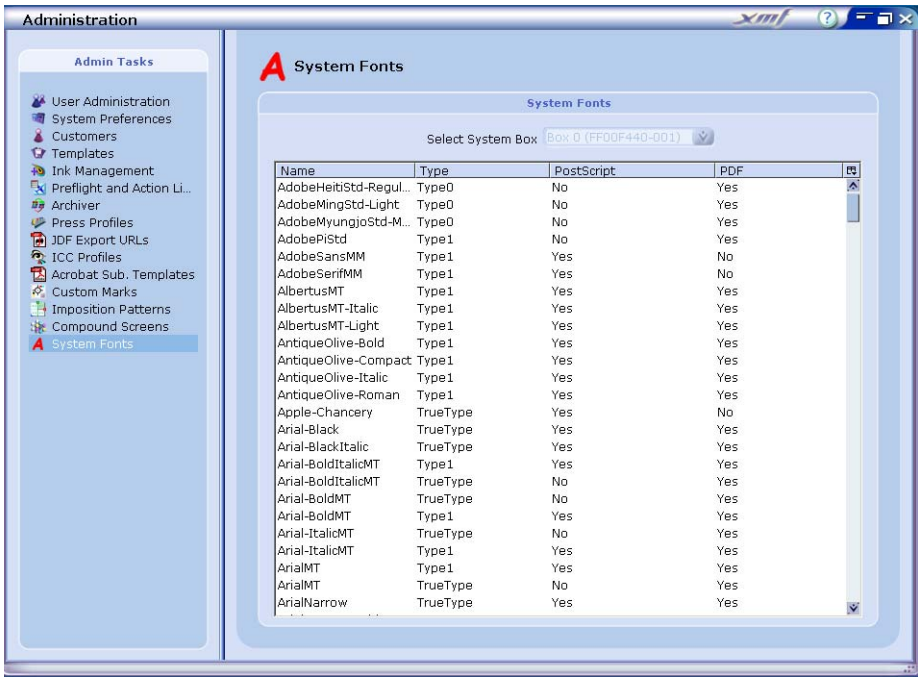
About Compound Screen Editor

Name	Description
Name	Enter the compound screen name.
Comment	Enter a comment.
Screen Selection	Click the Browse button to select settings for the primary and secondary screens.
Secondary Screen Angle Map	This shows the list of secondary screen angle mapping. The Secondary Screen Angle Map allows users to pre-specify the separations and angles. • Separation - Select a separation from the drop-down list. • Angle - Select an angle from the drop-down list. • Add - Clicking this button after selecting the separation and angle adds the setting to the Secondary Screen Angle Map. • Change - Click to change the selected Secondary Screen Angle Map setting. • Remove - Click to remove the selected setting from the Secondary Screen Angle Map.
OK	Click to save the edits.
Cancel	Click to cancel the edits.

7.15 – System Fonts

This is a tool for checking that fonts have been correctly installed.

Diagram: System Fonts panel



About System Fonts panel

Name	Description
System Fonts	• Select System Box - For a multi-box system, select a particular box from the drop-down list. In a single box system the selection is disabled.

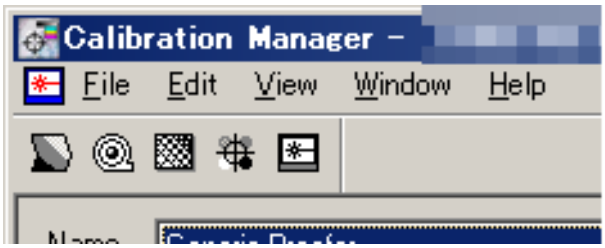
8 – Utilities

This manual explains Calibration Manager and Font Installer.

8.1 – Calibration Manager

The Calibration Manager allows the user to add, modify and delete information about media, cassettes, screen sets, angle families, recorders and proofers.

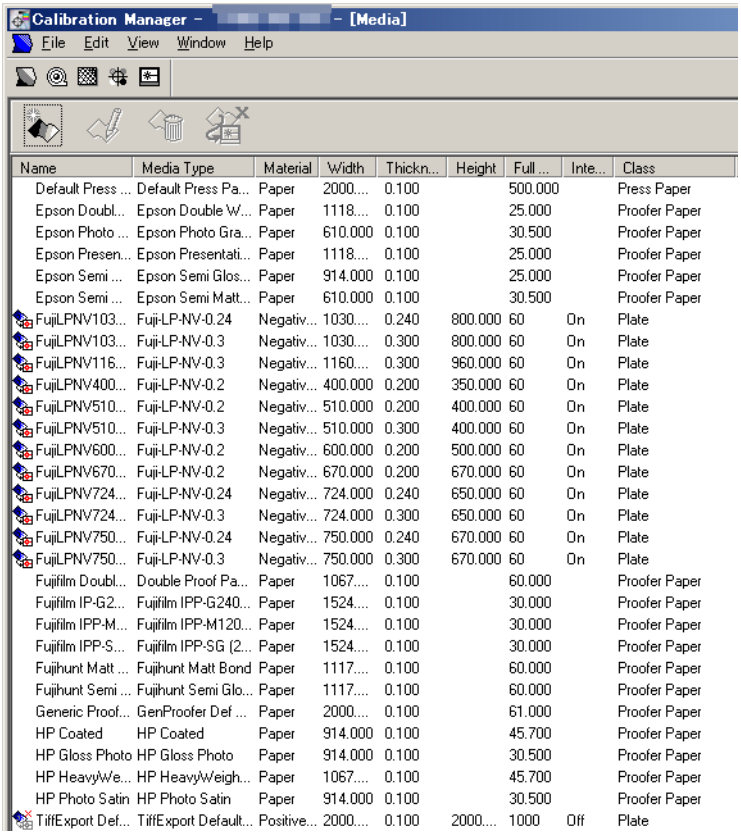
Diagram: Calibration Manager



8.1.1 – Media

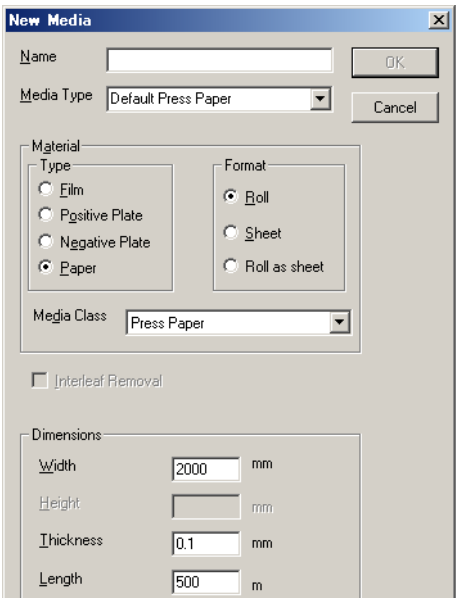
It is important that the Media data held by XMF is correct to ensure correct processing of both the software and the output or proofing device.

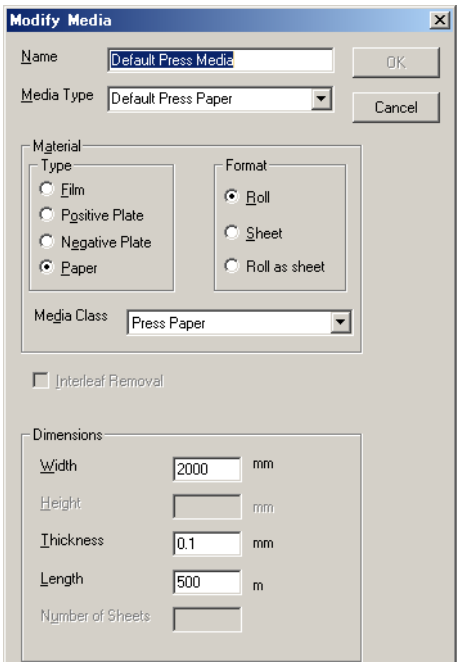
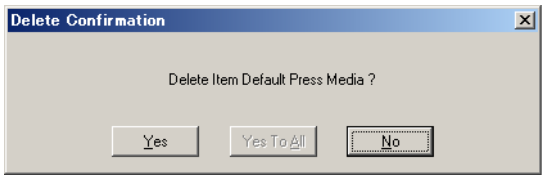
Diagram: Media window



Name	Media Type	Material	Width	Thickn...	Height	Full ...	Inte...	Class
Default Press ...	Default Press Pa...	Paper	2000....	0.100		500.000		Press Paper
Epson Doubl...	Epson Double W...	Paper	1118....	0.100		25.000		Proofer Paper
Epson Photo ...	Epson Photo Gra...	Paper	610.000	0.100		30.500		Proofer Paper
Epson Presen...	Epson Presentati...	Paper	1118....	0.100		25.000		Proofer Paper
Epson Semi ...	Epson Semi Glos...	Paper	914.000	0.100		25.000		Proofer Paper
Epson Semi ...	Epson Semi Matt...	Paper	610.000	0.100		30.500		Proofer Paper
FujiLPNV103...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.24	Negativ...	1030....	0.240	800.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV103...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.3	Negativ...	1030....	0.300	800.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV116...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.3	Negativ...	1160....	0.300	960.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV400...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.2	Negativ...	400.000	0.200	350.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV510...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.2	Negativ...	510.000	0.200	400.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV510...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.3	Negativ...	510.000	0.300	400.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV600...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.2	Negativ...	600.000	0.200	500.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV670...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.2	Negativ...	670.000	0.200	670.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV724...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.24	Negativ...	724.000	0.240	650.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV724...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.3	Negativ...	724.000	0.300	650.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV750...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.24	Negativ...	750.000	0.240	670.000	60	On	Plate
FujiLPNV750...	Fuji-LP-NV-0.3	Negativ...	750.000	0.300	670.000	60	On	Plate
Fujifilm Doubl...	Double Proof Pa...	Paper	1067....	0.100		60.000		Proofer Paper
Fujifilm IP-G2...	Fujifilm IPP-G240...	Paper	1524....	0.100		30.000		Proofer Paper
Fujifilm IPP-M...	Fujifilm IPP-M120...	Paper	1524....	0.100		30.000		Proofer Paper
Fujifilm IPP-S...	Fujifilm IPP-SG (2...	Paper	1524....	0.100		30.000		Proofer Paper
Fujihunt Matt ...	Fujihunt Matt Bond	Paper	1117....	0.100		60.000		Proofer Paper
Fujihunt Semi ...	Fujihunt Semi Glo...	Paper	1117....	0.100		60.000		Proofer Paper
Generic Proof...	GenProofer Def ...	Paper	2000....	0.100		61.000		Proofer Paper
HP Coated	HP Coated	Paper	914.000	0.100		45.700		Proofer Paper
HP Gloss Photo	HP Gloss Photo	Paper	914.000	0.100		30.500		Proofer Paper
HP HeavyWe...	HP HeavyWeigh...	Paper	1067....	0.100		45.700		Proofer Paper
HP Photo Satin	HP Photo Satin	Paper	914.000	0.100		30.500		Proofer Paper
TiffExport Def...	TiffExport Default...	Positive...	2000....	0.100	2000....	1000	Off	Plate

About Media window

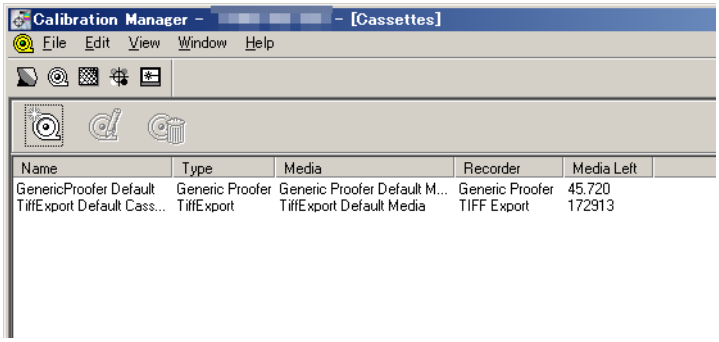
Name	Description
New Media	This is for creating media manually. Click the New Media button to open the New Media dialog.  • Name - Enter the name to identify the media. • Media Type - Specifies the media type. Either create a new media type by typing in the name, or select an existing media type from the drop-down menu. Some media types are supplied with the software. The choice of media type affects the remaining fields. • Type - The general media type; film, plate or paper. The choice affects the options available for the Media Class. • Format - Select the media format, e.g. roll or sheet. The option 'Roll as sheet' is used for some proofing devices, such as the PictroProof, that cut the paper to defined sheet sizes. The format determines which media dimensions can be selected below. • Media Class - The options available in the drop-down menu depend on the selected Type. - Film - This gives a choice of High Contrast Film or Low Contrast Film, which helps the output device to determine the degree of exposure required. - Positive Plate - Has Plate as the only option. - Negative Plate - Has Plate as the only option. - Paper - Gives a choice of Press Paper, Photosensitive Paper or Proofer Paper. • Interleaf Removal - This option is enabled for plates. Tick the box if there is interleaf paper between the plates. • Width - XMF uses this information when determining where the output device starts exposing film or plate or, with a proofing device, where the device starts printing on the paper. Certain output devices, such as the Luxel Violet series, use the information for media handling. - For a roll of film or paper - The width of the roll. - For a sheet of film or paper - The horizontal dimension, as the sheet is fed into the device. - For a plate - The short dimension of the plate.

Name	Description
New Media	• Height - XMF uses this information when determining where the output device starts exposing film or plate or, with a proofing device, where the device starts printing on the paper. Certain output devices, such as the Luxel Violet series, use the information for media handling. - For a sheet of film or paper - The vertical dimension as the sheet is fed into the device. - For a plate - The long dimension of the plate. • Thickness - The physical thickness of the media. Some output devices need this information as the thickness of the media affects the focus setting. • Length - For a roll of film or paper - The physical length of the roll. - For a sheet of film or paper - The number of sheets in one cassette. - For a plate - The number of plates in one cassette.
Modify Media	This is for modifying media manually. Highlight the applicable media entry in the list and click the Modify Media button to open the Modify Media dialog. See the above New Media section for details. 
Delete	This is for removing media from the list. Highlight the applicable media entry in the list and click the Delete Media button, which will open the Delete Confirmation dialog. Click Yes to delete the cassette. 
Download Media	Highlight the media entry in the list and click the Download Media button to download the media to a device.
Remove media	This removes media from a device. Highlight the applicable media entry in the list and click the Remove Media button.

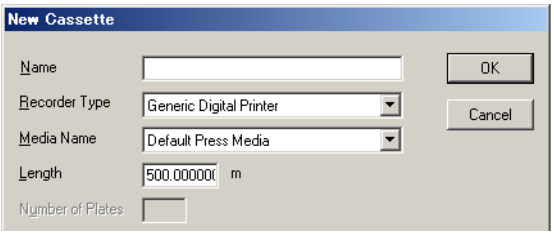
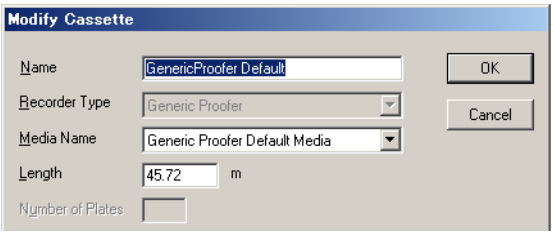
8.1.2 – Cassettes

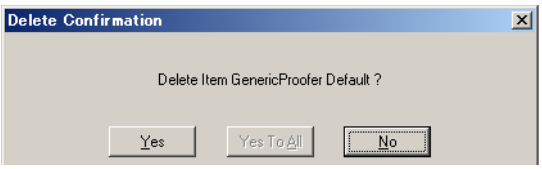
It is important that the Cassette data held by XMF is correct, to ensure correct processing by both the software and the output or proofing device.

Diagram: Cassettes window



About Cassettes window

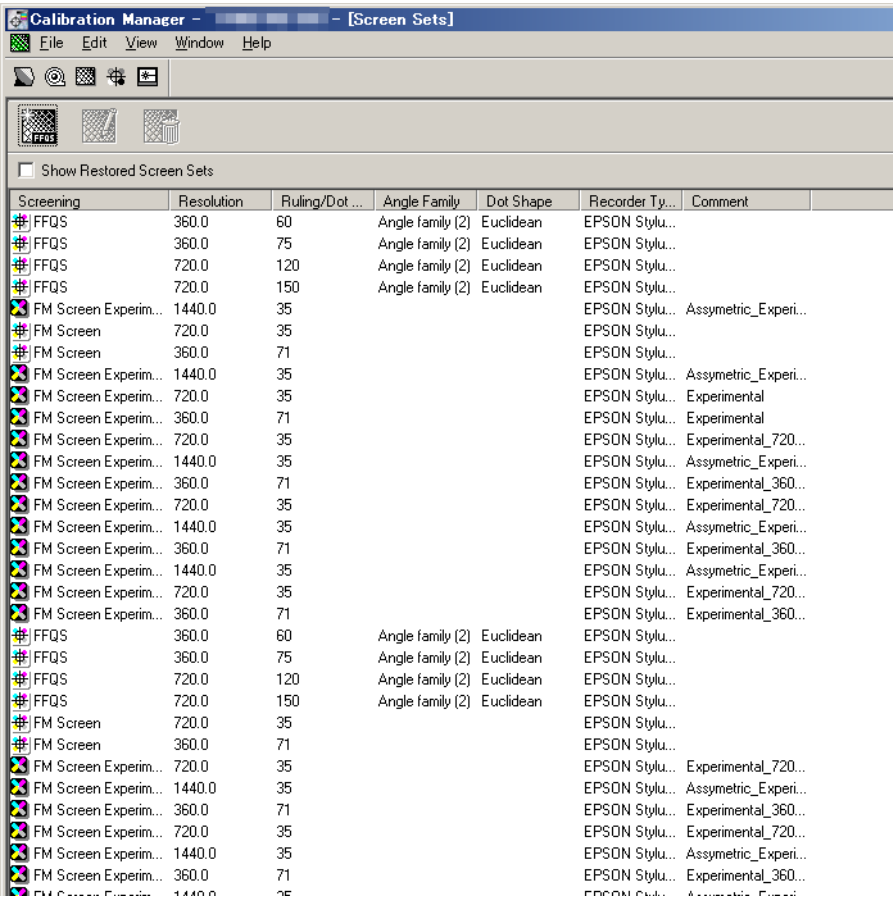
Name	Description
New Cassette	This is for creating cassettes manually. If you want to base the new cassette on an existing one, highlight an appropriate existing cassette. Click the New Cassette button. The New Cassette dialog opens.  • Name - Enter a name to identify the cassette. • Recorder Type - Select the type of the output or proofing device. • Media Name - Select the Media loaded in the cassette. • Length - The length is, by default, set to the length specified for the media. Change it, if necessary, to the actual length of the roll of film or paper in the cassette. • Number of Plates - The number of plates defaults to the number specified for the media - applies only to positive plate or negative plate media types.
Modify Cassette	This is for modifying cassettes manually. Highlight the applicable cassette entry in the list and click the Modify Cassette button to open the Modify Cassette dialog. See the above New Cassette section for details. 

Name	Description
Delete	This is for deleting cassettes. Highlight the applicable cassette entry in the list and click the Delete Cassette button, which will open the Delete Confirmation dialog. Click Yes to delete the cassette. 

8.1.3 – Screen Sets

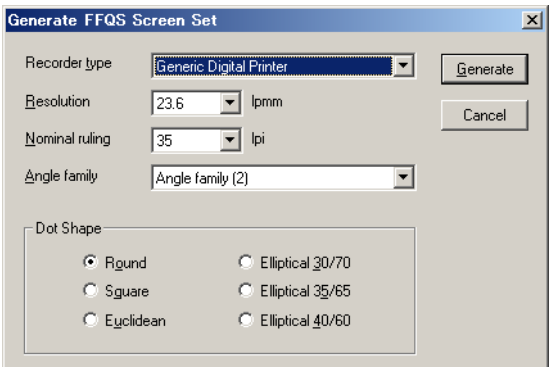
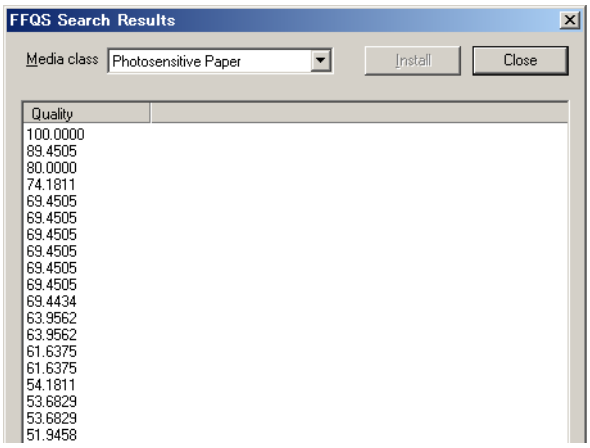
This window is used to generate custom screen sets. Screen sets are supplied with the software for installation, but you may need to generate your own screen sets as well.

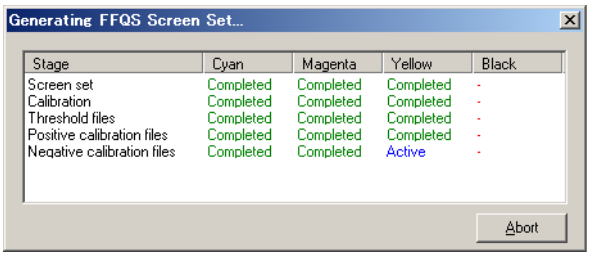
Diagram: Screen Sets window



Screening	Resolution	Ruling/Dot ...	Angle Family	Dot Shape	Recorder Ty...	Comment
FFQS	360.0	60	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FFQS	360.0	75	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FFQS	720.0	120	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FFQS	720.0	150	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	
FM Screen	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen Experim...	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental
FM Screen Experim...	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental
FM Screen Experim...	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_720...
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen Experim...	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_360...
FM Screen Experim...	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_720...
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen Experim...	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_360...
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen Experim...	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_720...
FM Screen Experim...	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_360...
FFQS	360.0	60	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FFQS	360.0	75	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FFQS	720.0	120	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FFQS	720.0	150	Angle family (2)	Euclidean	EPSON Stylu...	
FM Screen	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	
FM Screen	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	
FM Screen Experim...	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_720...
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen Experim...	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_360...
FM Screen Experim...	720.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_720...
FM Screen Experim...	1440.0	35			EPSON Stylu...	Assymetric_Experi...
FM Screen Experim...	360.0	71			EPSON Stylu...	Experimental_360...

About Screen Sets window

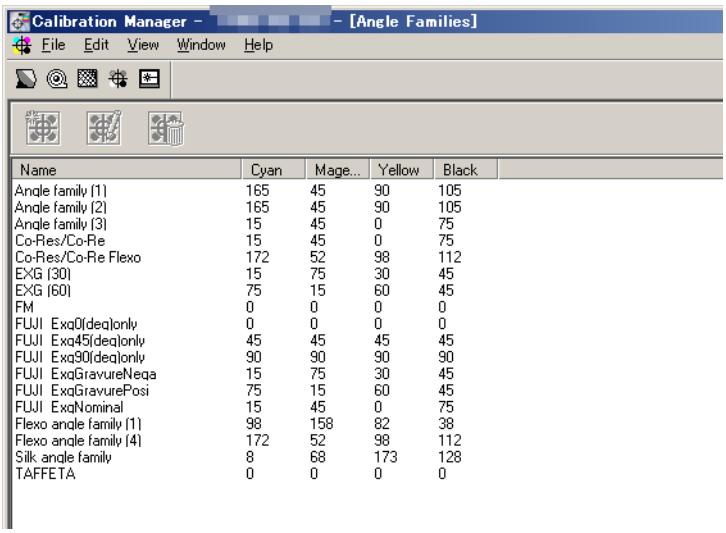
Name	Description
Generate FFQS Screen Set	Click the Generate FFQS Screen Set button. The Generate FFQS Screen Set window will be displayed. Amend the following fields as required:  • Recorder Type - Select the proofing or output device. • Resolution - Select the resolution used to generate the screen sets. • Nominal Ruling - Select the nominal ruling used to generate the screen sets. The exact screen set ruling for the CMYK separations may vary slightly from the nominal ruling in order to avoid moiré fringes. • Angle Family - Select the angle family used to generate the screen sets. • Dot Shape - Select the dot shape used to generate the screen sets. • Generate - Click to generate the screen set. When the screen set generation is complete, FFQS Search Results appears.  • Quality - Select the quality of the screen set. The higher the number, in theory, the better the quality of the printed results. The screen sets are listed in descending order of quality.

Name	Description
Generate FFQS Screen Set	• Media Class - The class of media to be used when installing the screen set. Highlight one or more screen sets, and click the Install button. The following window is displayed as the screen sets are generated: 
Modify Screen Set	Clicking this button opens the Edit Screen Set Comment dialog, where you can edit the comment.
Delete	Clicking this button opens the Delete Confirmation dialog. Click Yes to delete the screen set.

8.1.4 – Angle Families

An angle family is a set of angles for process colours. Angle families are used when generating FFQS screen sets.

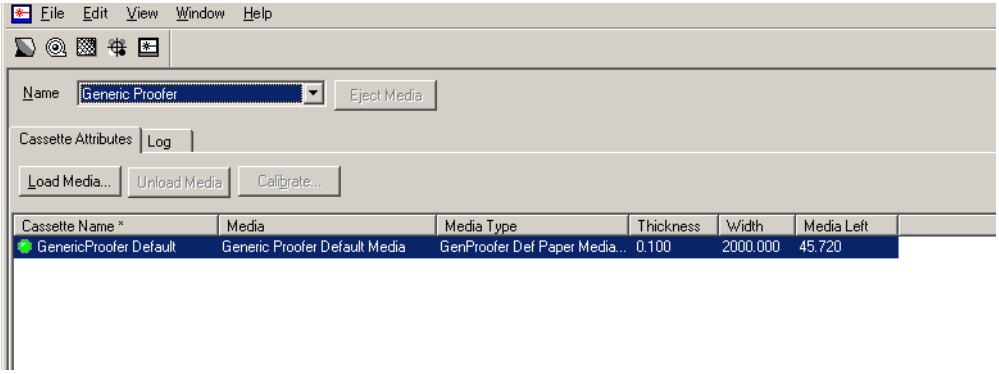
Diagram: Angle Families window



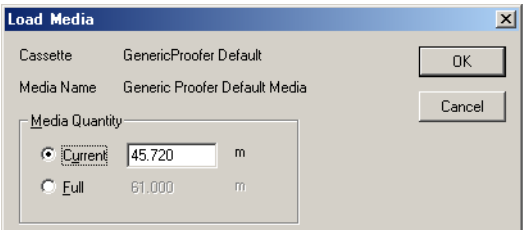
8.1.5 – Recorders & Proofers

The Recorders & Proofers window has two tabs: Cassette Attributes and Log. You can toggle the display using the tabs.

Diagram: Cassette Attributes tab

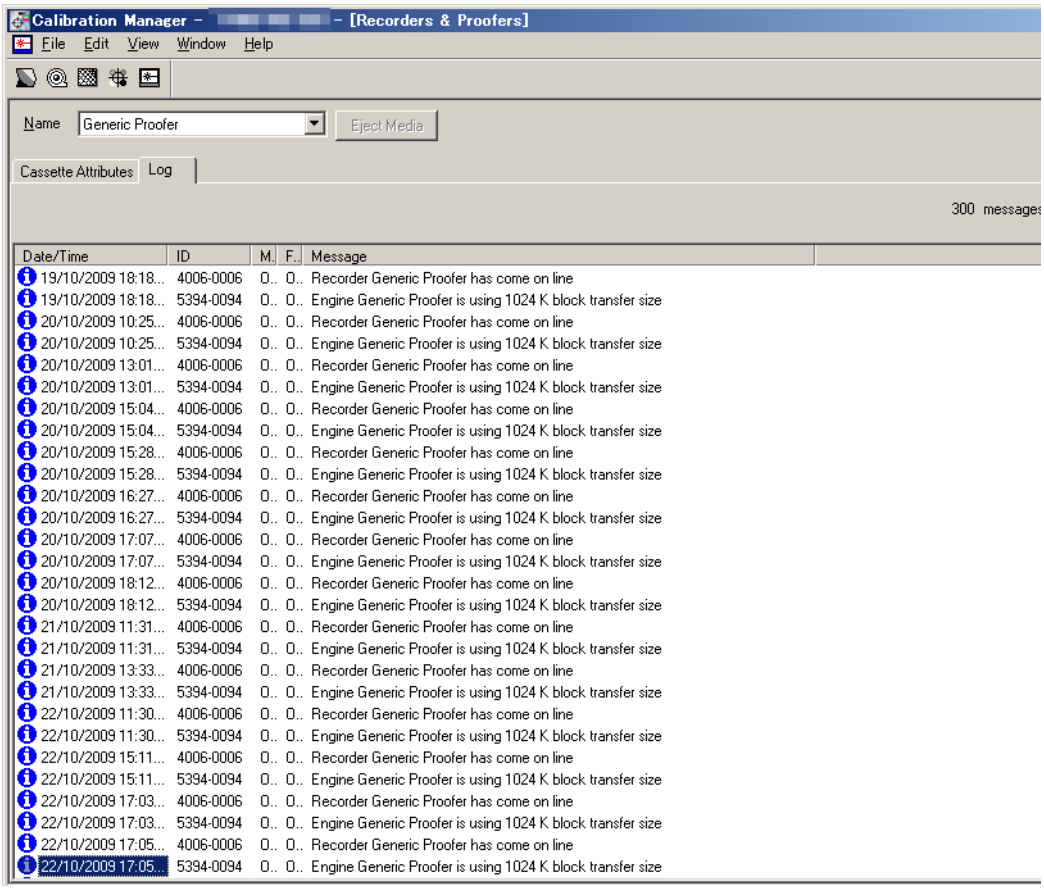


About Cassette Attributes tab

Name	Description
Load Media	Clicking this opens the following window to load media.  • Cassette - Displays the cassette name. • Media Name - Displays the media name. • Media Quantity - The length of media remaining in the cassette. • Current - Select this value for partly used media where the remaining length is known. • Full - Select this value if all of the media in the cassette is unused.
Unload Media	This unselect the current cassette.
Calibration	Click this to display the Calibration Window. See 8.1.6 - Calibration.
List	• Cassette Name - The icon displayed next to the cassette name is one of these: - (Yellow) - Cassette is loaded but not selected by the device. Applies only to devices in which multiple cassettes can be loaded. For devices such as the Luxel Violet Series, loading and selecting the cassette by the machine updates the XMF database and displays the yellow icon automatically. - (Grey) - Cassette is not loaded. For devices such as the Luxel Violet Series, unloading the cassette in the machine updates the XMF database and displays the grey icon automatically. With other devices, select a different cassette in XMF using the Load Media button. This updates the XMF database and displays the grey icon. - (Green) - Cassette is loaded and selected by the device. For devices such as the Luxel Violet Series, loading the cassette in the machine updates the XMF database and displays the green icon. With other devices, use the Load Media button.

Name	Description
List	• Slot - This field is only displayed if the selected device is a multi-cassette device. The slot is the position in the machine of the cassette. If the cassette is not loaded, then this field is blank. • Media - Displays the name of the media used. • Media Type - Displays the name of the media type. • Thickness - Displays the thickness of the media. • Width - Displays the width of the media. • Media Left - This is the length of media left, as calculated by the system.

Diagram: Log tab



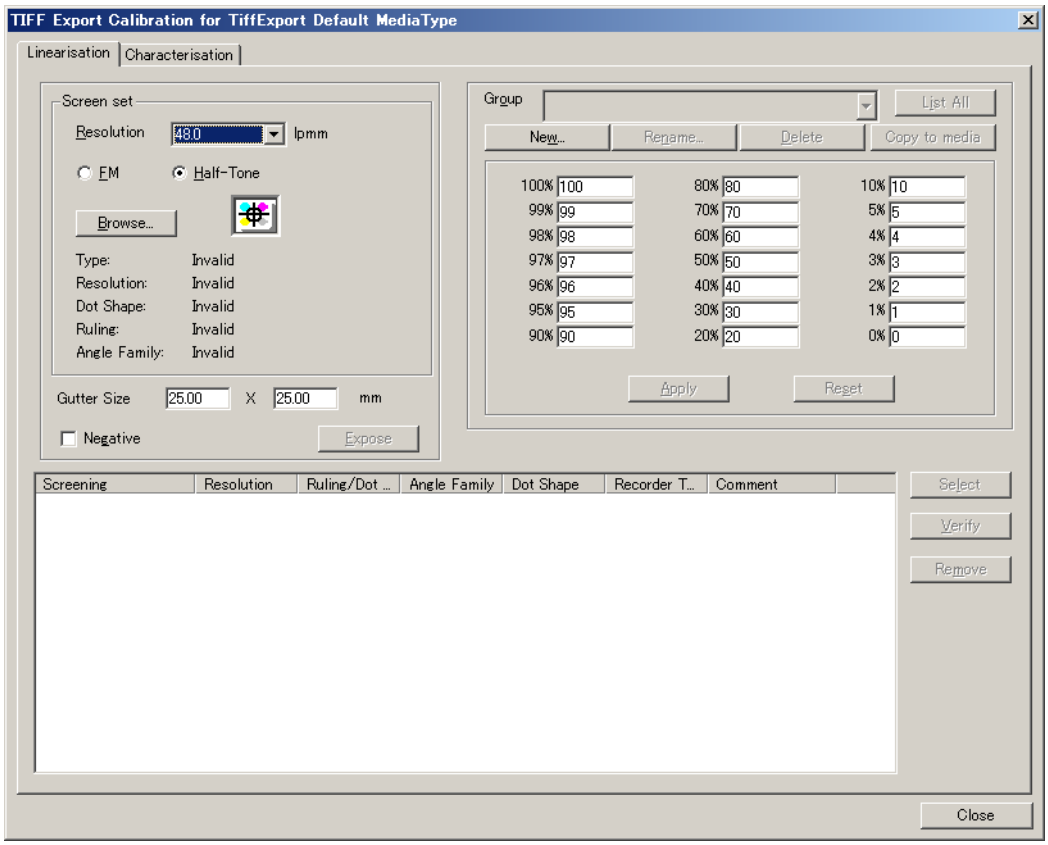
About Log tab

Name	Description
Toolbar buttons (top right of the panel)	• Go to next page - Displays the next 100 lines of messages. This button is disabled at the bottom of the log, or if there are fewer than 100 lines in total. • Go to previous page - Displays the previous 100 lines of messages. This button is disabled at the top of the log, or if there are fewer than 100 lines in total. • Go to top - Displays the top 100 lines of messages. This button is disabled at the top of the log, or if there are fewer than 100 lines in total. • Go to bottom - Displays the bottom 100 lines of messages. This button is disabled at the bottom of the log, or if there are fewer than 100 lines in total.
List	• Message icons - The first symbol on the line indicates the type of message: - - Information message - - Non-fatal error - - Warning message - - Fatal error, or end of messages • Date/Time - The date and time at which the log entry was created. • ID - A reference number for error reporting purposes. • Module (optional) - This column is displayed only if the option ‘Show diagnostic information in all logs’ is ticked in Edit / Preferences. Displays information on the software module in use at the time the message was generated. • File (optional) - This column is displayed only if the option ‘Show diagnostic information in all logs' is ticked in Edit / Preferences. Describes the source of the message, as diagnostic information for an engineer. • Message - This indicates what the software was doing, or attempting to do, or in the case of an error why it failed.
Other information	• 300 message (NN) messages - Indicates the total number of messages in the log. • ****** END OF MESSAGES **** END OF MESSAGES - Indicates the end of the log.

8.1.6 – Calibration

The Calibration window is used to calibrate output devices. There are two different types of calibration that can be performed, namely Linearisation and Characterisation.

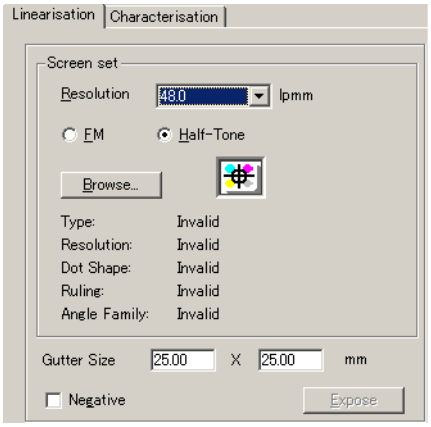
Diagram: Calibration window (when the Linearisation tab is selected)



8.1.7 – Linearisation

This applies a compensation curve to correct any inherent imaging dot gain for the engine and media combination.

Diagram: Linearisation tab - top left



About Linearisation tab - top left

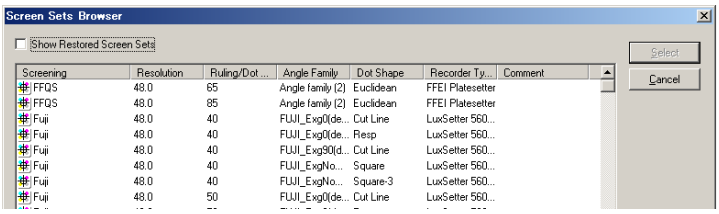
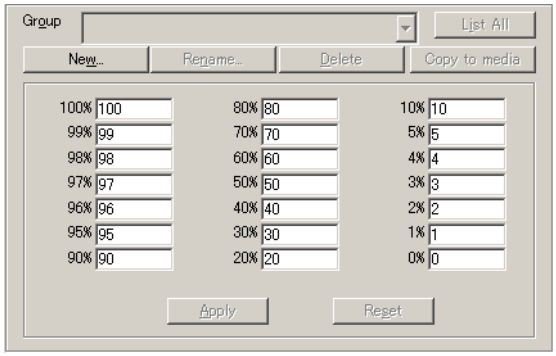
Name	Description
Resolution	Select from the drop-down list.
FM/Half-Tone	Check FM or Half-Tone.
Browse	Click to display the Screen Sets Browser.  The status of each screen set is indicated by an icon: • - Screen set supplied by FUJIFILM Corporation. • - Sample screen set (use at your own discretion). • - Screen set generated by a user (use at your own discretion). • Select - Click a screen set to highlight it, then click this button to display information on the screen set. • Add to Group - Click a screen set to highlight it, then click this button to add the screen set to the Linearisation Group.
Negative	Enable this check box if using negative media.
Expose	Exposes a test page using the selected screen set. If a Linearisation Group has been linked to the screen set, then the Linearisation values are applied.

Diagram: Linearisation tab - top right



About Linearisation tab - top right

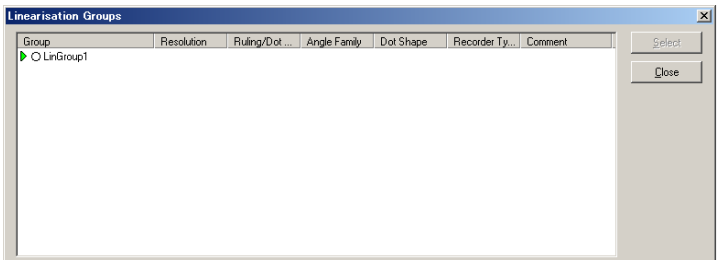
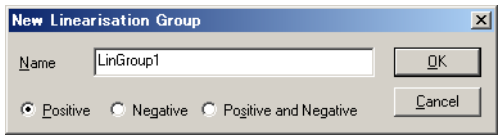
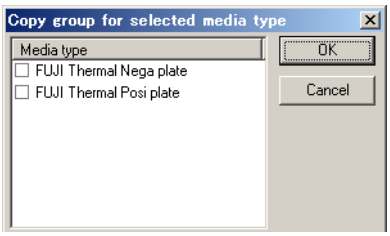
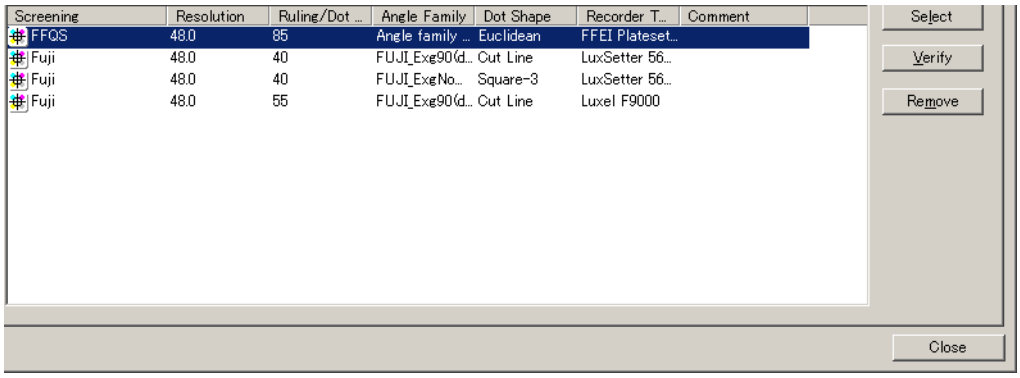
Name	Description
Name	Displays the names of the registered Linearisation Groups.
List All	Click to open the Linearisation Groups window. 
New	Click to open the New Linearisation Group window. Enter a name to identify the Linearisation Group in the Name field.  Select one of the following and click OK: • Positive - For Positive media • Negative - For Negative media • Positive and Negative - For Positive and Negative Media
Rename	Select the group from the drop-down menu and click the Rename button to open the Rename Linearisation Group window, where you can change the name in the Name field.
Delete	Select the group from the drop-down menu and click the Delete button to delete it.
Copy to media	This links the linearisation group to all the screen sets associated with a particular media type. Follow the steps below: 1. Select the linearisation group from the drop-down menu. 2. Click the Copy to Media button. 3. This opens the Copy group for selected media type window. Tick one or more media types and click OK. 
Numeric fields	Enter measured or calculated values in these fields to correct the curve towards the target required.
Apply	Click to save the percentage values against the Linearisation curve.
Reset	Click to reset the entered values so that they match the corresponding tint block values displayed to the left of each field.

Diagram: Linearisation tab - bottom half



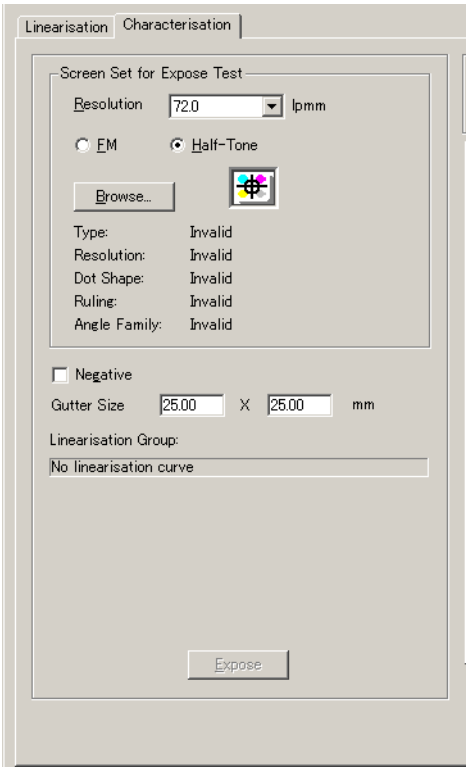
About Linearisation tab - bottom half

Name	Description
Select	Highlight a screen set in the list and click the Select button. When a new linearisation test page is exposed, it uses this screen set.
Verify	Click to create and run a linearisation test page job.
Delete	Highlight a screen set in the list and click this to break the link between a screen set and a linearisation group.

8.1.8 – Characterisation

This is a compensation curve to correct for press dot gain (usually done at the scanner stage for images and in DTP applications for tints and electronic artwork).

Diagram: Characterisation tab - left



About Characterisation tab - left

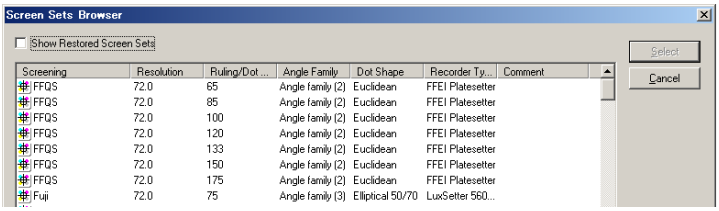
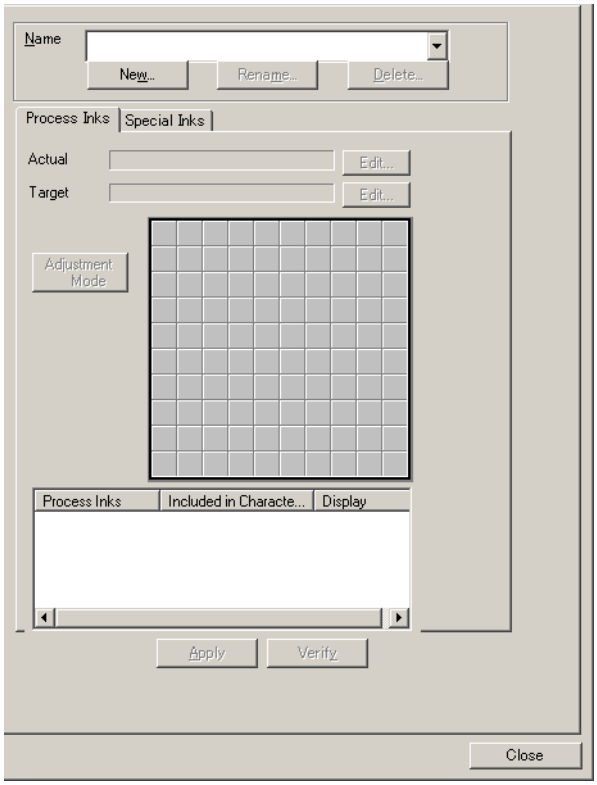
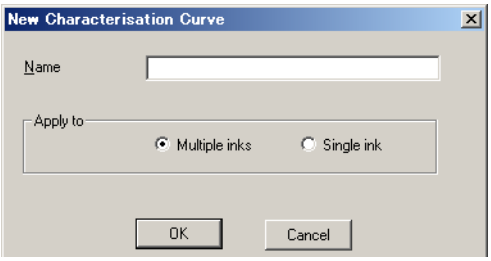
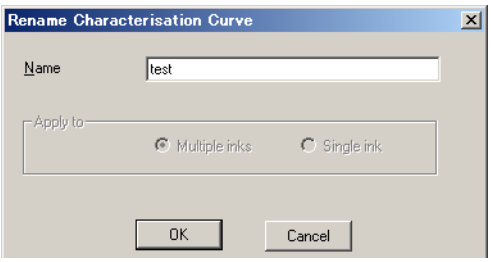
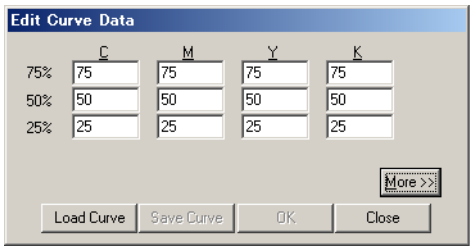
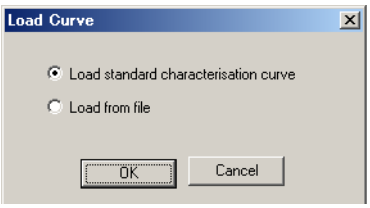
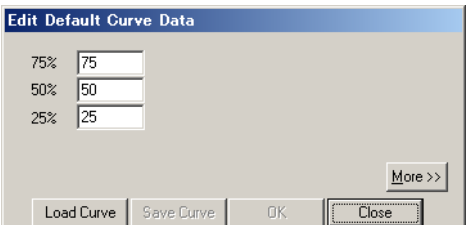
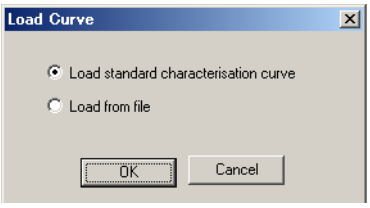
Name	Description
Resolution	Select from the drop-down list.
FM/Half-Tone	Check FM or Half-Tone.
Browse	Click to display the Screen Sets Browser.  The status of each screen set is indicated by an icon: • - Screen set supplied by FUJIFILM Corporation. • - Sample screen set (use at your own discretion). • - Screen set generated by a user (use at your own discretion). • Select - Click a screen set to highlight it, then click this button to display information on the screen set.
Negative	Enable this check box if using negative media.
Expose	Exposes a test page using the selected screen set.

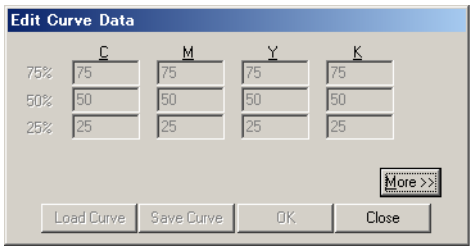
Diagram: Characterisation tab - right



About Characterisation tab - right

Name	Description
Name	Displays the names of the registered characterisation curves.
New	Click to open the New Characterisation Curve window. Enter a name to identify the characterisation curve in the Name field.  Select one of the following and click OK: • Multiple inks - A separate curve is produced for each ink. • Single ink - A single curve is used for all inks.
Rename	Select the curve from the drop-down menu and click the Rename button to display the Rename Characterisation Curve window, where you can change the name in the Name field. 
Delete	Select the curve from the drop-down menu and click the Delete button to delete it.
Process Inks tab (for multiple inks)	Actual - The actual measured values from the characterisation test page. Target - The desired dot gain curve for the press. Edit - Click to open the Edit Curve Data window, where you can amend values for Actual or Target curves  • Numeric fields - Enter measured (or calculated) values. • More - Click this button to display a window allowing curve data to be specified in more detail.

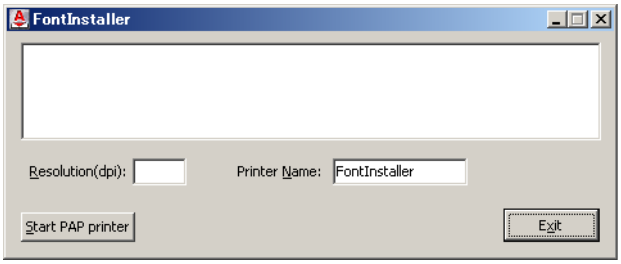
Name	Description
Process Inks tab (for multiple inks)	• Load Curve - Click this button to display the Load Curve window to load stored curves.  - Load standard characterisation curve - Allows the user to load a standard multi-ink characterisation curve. - Load from file - Allows the user to import a multi-ink characterisation curve from outside XMF. Adjustment Mode - Combines the Actual and Target curves into a single characterisation curve for the press. Apply - Applies changes to the multi-Ink characterisation curve. Verify - Exposes a characterisation test page using the curve data specified.
Special Inks tab (for multiple inks)	Actual - The actual measured values from the characterisation test page. Target - The desired dot gain curve for the press. Edit - Click to open the Edit Default Curve Data window, where you can amend values for Actual or Target curves.  • Numeric fields - Enter measured (or calculated) values. • More - Click this button to display a window allowing curve data to be specified in more detail. • Load Curve - Click this button to display the Load Curve window to load stored curves.  - Load standard characterisation curve - Allows the user to load a standard multi-ink characterisation curve. - Load from file - Allows the user to import a multi-ink characterisation curve from outside XMF. Adjustment Mode - Combines the Actual and Target curves into a single characterisation curve for the press. Apply - Applies changes to the multi-Ink characterisation curve. Verify - Exposes a characterisation test page using the curve data specified.

Name	Description
All Inks tab (for single ink)	Actual - The actual measured values from the characterisation test page. Target - The desired dot gain curve for the press. Edit - Click to open the Edit Curve Data window, where you can amend values for Actual or Target curves  • More - Click this button to display a window allowing curve data to be specified in more detail. Apply - Applies changes to the single-Ink characterisation curve. Verify - Exposes a characterisation test page using the curve data specified.

8.2 – Font Installer

Font Installer is a server program that emulates a PostScript printer and allows licensed fonts to be installed from Macintosh clients using Printer Access Protocol (PAP). Font Installer can only be used on a server with Appletalk support (currently Windows 2003 Server). Run Font Installer on the XMF server to install fonts.

Diagram: Font Installer



About Font Installer

Name	Description
Start PAP Printer	Click to initialise Font Installer to install fonts.

INDEX

Symbols

+/- button 283

Numbers

2D Viewer Mode 194
3D display range change 203
3D Options..... 93
3D Viewer..... 200

A

Acrobat Submission Templates 350
Add Job 22
Add Job Dialog 23
Add New Ink Group dialog... 327
Add New Task dialog 296
Add Pages Dialog Box..... 36
Add Queue Dialog 20
Add Sheet Group Dialog 53
Add Sheet Group menu 52
Add Sheet menu 48
Add Signatures Dialog Box... 45
Administration..... 299
Alignment 240
Alignment (Imposition Viewer (Layout))..... 274
Alignment (Imposition Viewer (Stripping))..... 236
All Job..... 283
Angle Families..... 366
Archiver..... 13
Archiver (Administration)..... 331
Archiver Log window..... 334
Archiver Settings dialog 335
Archiver Window 332
Assembly Sections 213
Assignation of Sheet Group to Workflow Items 55
Automation 92

B

Barcode Input..... 15
Barcode Templates..... 321
Bindery Signatures Dialog... 214
Blueline Marks (Imposition Viewer (Stripping))..... 264
Blueline Marks (PDF Export) 174
Blueline Marks (RIP Proof) 151
Blueline Marks (ROOM Proof)... 165
Bypassing..... 73

C

Calibration 370
Calibration Manager..... 360
Capability Set Administration dialog 304
Cassettes 363
Characterisation..... 373
Characterisation for 'Back' Surface..... 345
Colorant Naming Rules dialog... 328
Colour 76
Colour Management (RIP Proof) .. 146
Colour Management (ROOM Proof)..... 164
Compound Screen Editor ... 357
Compound Screens 356
Confirm Delete dialog..... 303, 309
Create Filter Dialog 21
Custom Filter Dialog..... 20
Custom Mark Edit dialog 352
Custom Mark Management ... 351
Custom Marks (Imposition Viewer (Layout))..... 275
Custom Marks (Imposition Viewer (Stripping))..... 243
Customer Editor 308
Customer Information ... 189, 91
Customers 190, 307

D

Device Options..... 185
Device Parameters 99
Device Parameters (RIP Proof).... 133
Device Parameters (ROOM Proof)..... 156
Device Settings 187
device settings 111
Device Status 290
digital print settings 106
Document Options Popup Menu..... 29
Download Manager..... 19
Dynamic Marks 241

E

Edit Imposition Pattern..... 354
Edit User dialog..... 303
Export Settings..... 103, 138

F

File Information 94
File Location..... 176
File Name Templates 318
Finished PDF/X..... 71, 73
Finishing..... 183
Font Installer..... 378
Fonts 74

G

Generic Proofer Setting in Config Tool (Generic Proofer setting in Config Tool)..... 153
Guide Line Function ... 210, 268

H

Hold..... 179
Hold (Workflow Items) 179

I

ICC Profile management 349
Import/Export 305
Imposition..... 187
Imposition (Imposition Viewer (Layout)) 269
Imposition (Imposition Viewer (Stripping)) 211
Imposition (Plates) 109
Imposition (Press) 102
Imposition (RIP Proof)..... 130
Imposition (ROOM Proof) ... 155
Imposition Content 272
Imposition Patterns..... 353
Imposition Preview 286
Imposition Templates..... 314
Imposition Viewer (Layout).... 268
Imposition Viewer (Stripping) 206
Ink Edit dialog 327
Ink Management (Administration)..... 326
Inks (Job Description) 82
inks (Plates)..... 121
Input (input) 62

J

JDF Export 176
JDF Export URLs 191, 347
JDF Input Settings..... 68
JDF Output Settings 184
JDF Output Version 178
JDF Target (Plates) 113
Job Details 61
Job Edit 27
Job Element Manager 28
Job Filter 192
Job Information..... 90
Job Log..... 288
Job Page Properties 97
Job Queue..... 11, 191
Job Queue Management 16
Job Status 192
Job Status panel 285
Job Status window 282
Job Structure Page Context Menu 38
Job Templates..... 311
Job Workflow Manager..... 56, 288

L

Lighting..... 204
Linearisation 370
List of Approvals 181
List of Approvers..... 180
Local Approval 180
Login Window 10

M

Main Client Desktop 8
Management Information 259
Media 100

Media (Calibration Manager)..... 360
Media (Plates) 116
Media (RIP Proof)..... 141
Media (ROOM Proof) 159
Media Type Editor 346
Modify Existing Task dialog ... 297
Multi-web Support 236

N

New Custom Mark dialog 351
New User dialog..... 302
N-Up and Come and Go 229

O

Overprint 88

P

Page Boxes 95, 196
Page Mapping Manager..... 39
Page Options Drop-down Menu..... 30
Page Prep Preferences (page prep preferences)..... 64
Page Preparation 284
pagination..... 41
PDF Export 167
PDF export settings 167
PDF Format (PDF Export)... 170
PDF Format (Plates) 114
PDF Format (Press)..... 104
PDF Format (RIP Proof) 139
Plate Slugline (Imposition Viewer (Layout))..... 278
Plate Slugline (Imposition Viewer (Stripping))..... 254
Plates 108
PostScript Conversion..... 69
Preferences dialog..... 294
Preflight and Action List Management (Administration)..... 330
Preflight and Action Lists..... 190
Preflight and Action Lists (Job Description)..... 75
Preflight Reports 284
Presets 59, 210
Press..... 98
Press Device Profile dialog.. 339
Press Device Profiles 338
Press Media Profile dialog... 343

R

Recorders & Proofers..... 367
Remote RIP Approval..... 186
Remote RIP Approval Job Settings..... 189
Remove Selected Task dialog... 298
Request for Viewing Rendered Results from the Job Queue 17
Retry 12
Ribbon Support..... 232
RIP Proof..... 130
ROOM Proof 155

S

Screen Sets..... 364
Screening (Job Description) 83
Screening (Plates) 118
Screening (RIP Proof)..... 143
Screening (ROOM Proof) ... 160
Search 13
Section Options Menu 37
Section Proof 280
Section Proof Viewer..... 279
Separations 145, 163, 188
Settings 198
Settings (Imposition Viewer (Layout))..... 278
Settings (Imposition Viewer (Stripping)) 266
Sheet Group Panel (sheet group panel)..... 51
Sheet Group Right-click Menu ... 54
Sheet Management..... 49
Sheet Marks 251
Sheets (Imposition Viewer (Stripping)) 216
Sheets Panel (sheets panel)..... 47
Signature 220
Signature Management..... 46
Signatures Panel (signatures panel)..... 44
Slugline (Plates) 125
Slugline (RIP Proof) 147
Split page for brochure..... 34
Status 281
Status for Remote Approval .. 188
Status Tracking Method for Digital Press 107
Stitched PDF 172
Stripping Sheet Templates.. 316
surface inks 123
Surfaces 205
Surfaces (Imposition Viewer (Layout)) 270
System and Device Status.. 289
System Fonts..... 358
System Preferences 306
System Status..... 289

T

Templates 310
Workflow Item Templates ... 312
TIFF Separations Dialog 26
Tools..... 293
Trapping 86

U

Unique ID..... 14
User Administration..... 301
Utilities 359

V

Versioning (2D Viewer Mode) ... 197
Versioning (Job Description).... 89
Viewer 193

W

Windows Printer Driver Support... 136
Workflow Items (workflow items).... 59
Workflow Parameter Templates... 313